A FIRST
LATIN READER
WITH EXERCISES

H. C. NUTTING
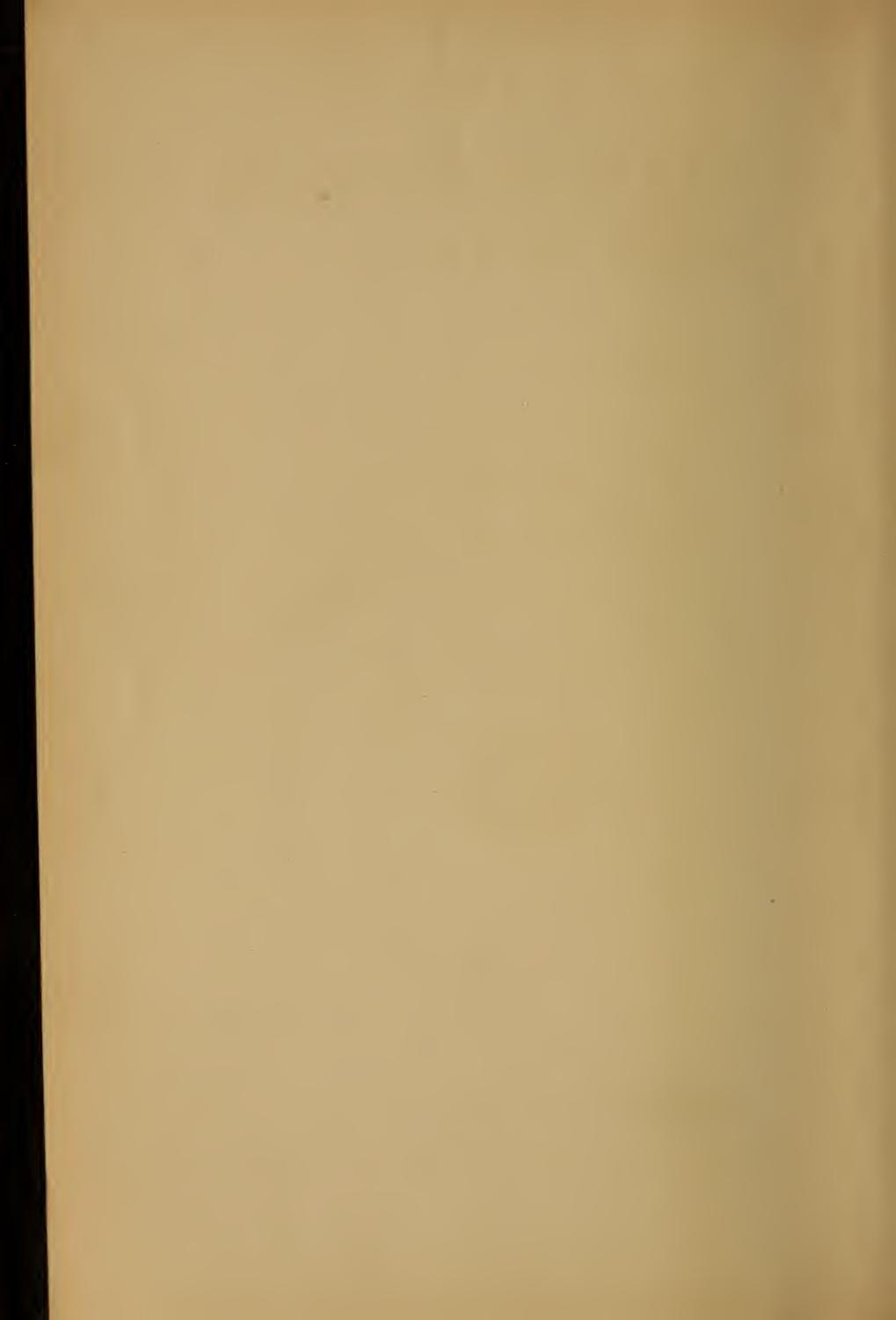
A FIRST
LATIN READER
WITH EXERCISES

BY

H. C. NUTTING, Ph.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY
OF CALIFORNIA

PREFACE

WITH the Primer previously published, this Reader provides for a course of study leading up to Caesar or some other author of like difficulty. Students who are to give five years or more to preparatory Latin would normally devote a year each to the Primer and the Reader; but the maturer pupils in the four-year course will cover easily in their first year the work outlined in both books.

It is hoped too, that, aside from use in this regular sequence, the Reader will be found to meet the needs of many teachers who are looking for a carefully graded text for supplementary reading or for translation at sight.

The plan for "beginning Latin" embodied in Primer and Reader differs from others most fundamentally, perhaps, in that it concentrates so definitely upon the problem of developing the student's power to read Latin; and it is quite in harmony with that general design that this second book is called a "Reader," and that in it the Latin-English exercises are massed at one point, with notes at the foot of the page.

Teachers using the Reader can best coöperate toward realizing the writer's aim if each recitation period is divided definitely into two parts, the first to be devoted, without distraction, to the business of learning to read, the other being reserved for grammatical drill and for composition work, oral or written. In this way, without loss in any essential particular, it will be found possible to bring the student along, by natural stages, to the point where he will

attack a simple passage from Caesar or Nepos, not as a Chinese puzzle by laborious effort to be tortured into something remotely resembling sense, but as a story from the reading of which some pleasure and profit is to be derived.

For the development of a system of Latin-English exercises so graded as to serve the purpose for which the Reader is made, of course no Latin author was available; and the text, therefore, is necessarily for the most part original. With the idea of stimulating interest, and to bring into play the necessary vocabulary and syntax while yet meeting halfway the many who do "not care for (foreign) war," the first hundred lessons have been made to deal almost entirely with matters of American history, the initial series (1–45) summing up briefly and chronologically the main events of the years 1492–1783, and the second group (46–100) comprising short anecdotes assembled without regard for chronological sequence. Next follow two narratives from Caesar simplified (101–125), and the concluding series (126–140) is made up of selections from the original text of Caesar, Nepos, Suetonius, Sallust, and Cicero. This final group, of course, is not a part of the gradatim plan, but was added that the student might have the satisfaction of reading some "real Latin." The passage from Suetonius (131), chiefly because of its large vocabulary, will probably be found too difficult for most pupils; if so, the intrinsic interest of the passage may make it seem worth the teacher's while to undertake a translation for the class.

With a view to discouraging the habit of constant recourse to the general vocabulary, a series of lesson preparations has been provided in the form of a word list showing the important new words in each successive exercise: moreover, with the exception of proper names and

numerals, all words which are used in but a single lesson
are defined in the footnotes on that exercise.   For teach-
ers who are using the Reader as a text for sight reading,
the cross references of the notes may prove helpful as pro-
viding a means of locating familiar material with which
to elucidate the lesson of the day.

In preparing the Latin text, I have derived some help
from the handbooks in common use, but my main reliance
has been Merguet's " Lexikon zu den Schriften Cäsars."
I would also acknowledge gratefully the generous help of
my colleague, Dr. M. E. Deutsch, who has read a large
part of the text and given me the benefit of several valuable
suggestions.

<div style="text-align: right">H. C. N.</div>

BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA.
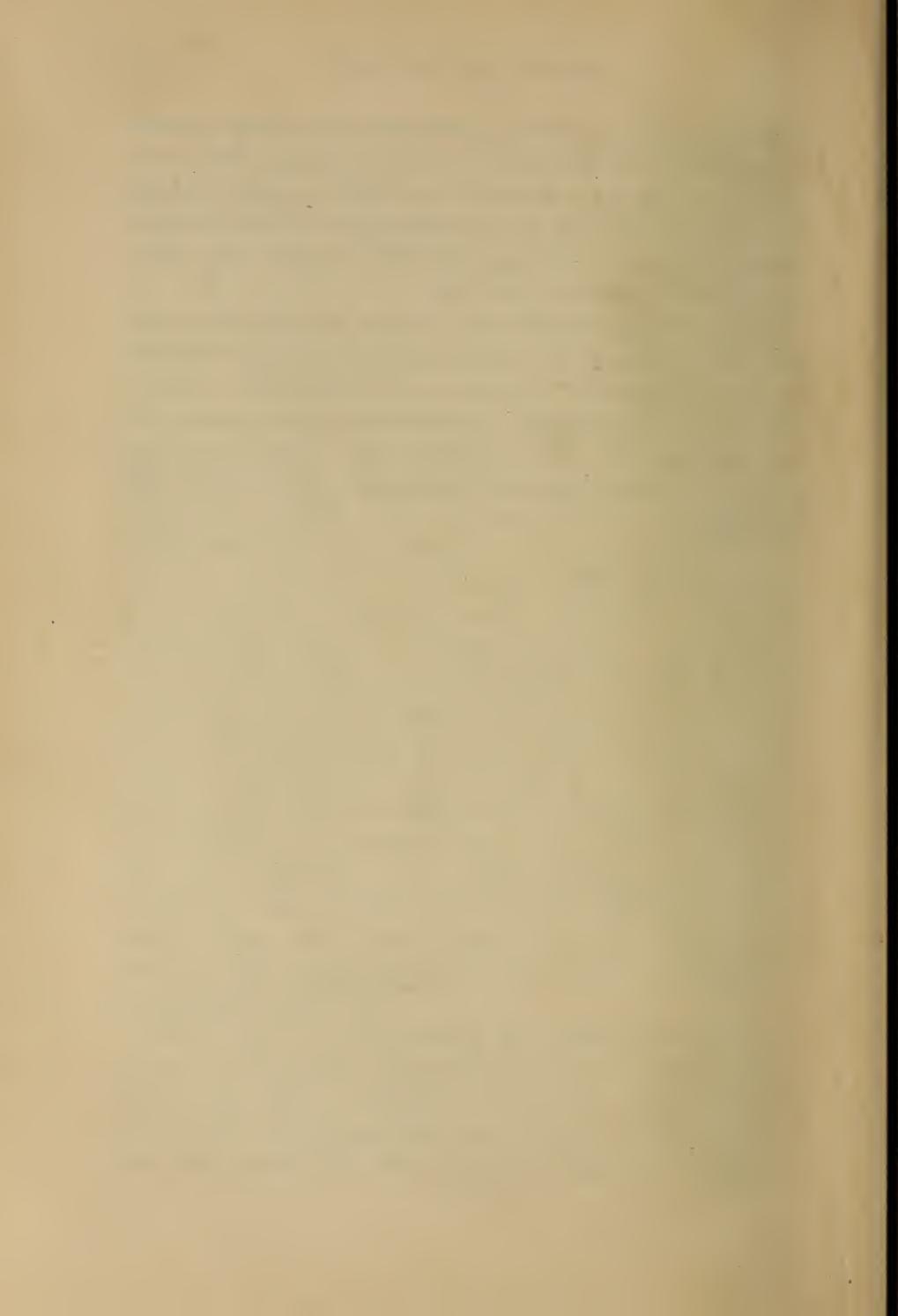
TO THE TEACHER

FROM the present vigorous discussion touching methods of Latin instruction it seems very clear that there is increasing dissatisfaction with a course of study which begins with memorizing forms and numerous abstract rules, and ends (for students who do not persevere beyond the Caesar year) with a microscopic analysis of very limited portions of Latin text. From the disciplinary point of view, even such a course of study is, beyond doubt, profitable; but it seems likely that criticism will in no large measure be disarmed, until more tangible results can be shown in the matter of the student's power to *read the language*.

In framing the Primer and Reader, therefore, the author has endeavored to formulate a plan for "First Year Latin," which, while retaining the chief merits of the old method, will at the same time hold the pupil's interest, and lay the foundation for a real power to read simple Latin at sight. To meet successfully these additional requirements, two things seem beyond all others essential, namely:

(1) To provide abundant easy reading matter, carefully graded both in vocabulary and syntax; and

(2) To relieve the reading lessons of the dragging weight of constant, minute, grammatical analysis.

In conformity with these ideas, the Reader, as well as the Primer, has been provided with a long gradatim series of easy and interesting Latin stories, which, as stated in the Preface, are designed to be handled briskly in class, with a minimum of grammatical comment. Adequate time

will thus remain for discussion of the material provided for
daily practice in composition, and here the teacher will find
a text for all needful grammatical drill.

With the helps provided in the way of footnotes and Word
List, some classes will doubtless be able to handle many of
the Latin stories of the Reader without previous prepara-
tion ; and, whenever this is the case, the practice should in
every way be encouraged ; for a story always has added
charm when taken up for the first time, especially if it be
not made the subject of unnecessary grammatical discus-
sion.   As for daily practice in composition, the idea will
seem to some, at first sight, impracticable ; but, as a matter
of fact, it is really the most practical method of all.   For
students who are required to write but once a week usu-
ally detest the task ; whereas those who have daily prac-
tice gain a facility which renders the work a pleasure.

In working out the composition exercises of the Reader,
the pupil should be urged to use as little as possible the
general English-Latin vocabulary at the end of the vol-
ume.   For frequent recourse to this source of help there is
little excuse ; for, aside from numerals, proper names, and
the material supplied in the footnotes, the whole series of
composition lessons calls for only about three hundred
Latin words, in addition to those carried over from the
Primer ; moreover, the footnotes give much help in the
way of paraphrase and cross-reference.

It has not seemed wise, either in the Primer or in the
Reader, to introduce many abstract rules regarding Latin
style.   Frequent help, however, is given in the footnotes
of the latter book ; and the student, through abundant read-
ing, will learn much by induction.   The teacher will need
to watch for, and curb, individual peculiarities here and
there ; but it will be found generally that this matter takes

care of itself surprisingly well, so far as fundamentals are concerned. And, at this stage of the work, correctness of syntax is far more important than minute refinement of style.

In cases where the Reader is taken up after the lapse of the long summer vacation, it is very desirable that the work of the new school year be begun with a review of forms and of the few last lessons of the Primer; otherwise the opening lessons of the Reader will seem to the pupil unusually difficult. Even with this help, it may prove in some cases that the first of the English-Latin Exercises of the Reader require more than the usual amount of study; if so, thorough work should be done at this point, even though the reading for a time outruns the composition. Where more mature classes are using the Primer and Reader together as texts for a single year's work, it has been found that the Primer can be covered easily at the rate of a Lesson a day. Such classes will naturally handle many of the Latin stories of the Reader at sight; and the composition work of that volume can be reduced one third by omitting the last paragraph of each Exercise.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LATIN–ENGLISH EXERCISES

EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

x

Tales of Land and Sea

Stories from Caesar Retold

THE WINTER OF 54–53 B.C.

AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

Selected Passages from Latin Prose Authors

List of Maps

ENGLISH–LATIN EXERCISES

AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

LIST OF MAPS

ENGLISH–LATIN EXERCISES

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

abl., ablative.
absol., absolute.
acc., accusative.
act., active.
adj., adjective.
adv., adverb.
C., or c., common (gender).
cf., compare.
compar., comparative.
conj., conjunction.
dat., dative.
decl., declension.
demon., demonstrative.
e.g., for example.
etc., and so forth.
F., f., or fem., feminine.
ff., (and) following.
ftn., footnote.
fut., future.
gen., genitive.
i.e., that is.
imperf., or impf., imperfect.
impers., impersonal.
indecl., indeclinable.
indef., indefinite.
indic., indicative.
infin., infinitive.
intens., intensive.

interrog., interrogative.
l., line.
lit., literally.
loc., locative.
M., m., or masc., masculine.
N., n., or neut., neuter.
nom., nominative.
obj., object.
p., page.
part., or partic., participle.
pass., passive.
perf., perfect.
pers., person.
pl., plural.
pluperf., pluperfect.
posit., positive.
pred., predicate.
prep., preposition.
pres., present.
pron., pronoun.
reflex., reflexive.
rel., relative.
sc., understand, supply.
sing., singular.
subj., subject.
superl., superlative.
transl., translate.
Vocab., Vocabulary.

Nāvis

The above illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall painting. It is interesting particularly as showing the rather primitive steering-gear used by the Romans even for heavy ships of war. In large vessels two helmsmen worked together, each controlling a single sweep. On small boats one man attended to the steering, using either one oar or two, according to the construction of the craft.

LATIN-ENGLISH EXERCISES

EARLY AMERICAN HISTORY

LESSON I

Christopher Columbus

Quōdam in oppidō Ītaliae ōlim nātus est puer, quī
Columbus appellābātur. Diū in patris officīnā labōrāvit.
Sed prope erat mare, puerque saepe ad lītus ībat, ut vidē-
ret nāvēs, quae ē portū ad terrās exībant dīversās.   In
⁵ nāvibus erant hominēs multī, et Columbus mare ipse trāns-
īre saepe voluit; tum autem pecūniam nūllam habēbat.
Sed posteā, cum iam iuvenis esset, usque ad Britanniam
et Āfricam nāvigāvit.

Illīs temporibus nautae timēbant mare Atlanticum, cur-
¹⁰sumque prope lītus tenēbant.   Interdum autem secundum
Āfricae ōram longē nāvigātum erat, quod Henrīcus, rēx
Lūsitāniae, invenīre viam volēbat, quā nāvēs circum Āfri-
cam prōgressae, ad Asiam pervenīre possent.

Line 2. officīnā: officīna, -ae,
F., *workshop*.

7. usque ad: *all the way to*,
lit. *even to*.

9. illīs temporibus: *in those
days*.

10. interdum: not interim.

11. ōram: *i.e.* lītus (ōra, -ae,
F.). — nāvigātum erat: *people had*

sailed, lit. *it had been sailed* (im-
personal passive).

12. quā: *by which*; antece-
dent, viam.

13. possent: *could*; subjunc-
tive in a relative clause of purpose.
In translating the verb possum,
some other rendering than "be
able" should often be chosen.

Quīdam tum crēdēbant terram esse rotundam, Colum-
busque etiam spērāre coeperat se trānsīre mare Atlanticum
posse, et ita ad Asiam pervenīre; nēmō enim intellegēbat
terram tam magnam esse, nec Columbus ipse suspicātus
5 est Americam interpōnī.

LESSON 2

Christopher Columbus (Continued)

Interim Henrīcus rēx mortuus erat. Columbus tamen
in Lūsitāniam profectus est, ut rēgī tum ibi rēgnum obti-
nentī cōnsilium suum aperīret; sed pecūniam, quam petē-
bat, dare nōlēbat rēx. Ex Lūsitāniā igitur in Hispāniam
10 iter fēcit Columbus; ubi rēx Ferdinandus Isabellaque bel-
lum cum Maurīs gerēbant, nec quisquam advenam libenter
audiēbat. Itaque ille, ubi cōgnōvit rēgem et rēgīnam nōlle
ea facere quae spērāverat, ad Galliam versus profectus est;
cum autem montēs trānsīret, nūntius est cōnsecūtus, quī
15 dīxit velle iam Isabellam parāre nāvēs pecūniamque dare.
Quā rē audītā, Columbus laetus rediit, nautāsque validōs
quaerere coepit; sed paene omnēs, perīculum veritī, cum
eō nāvigāre nōlēbant.

Postrēmō autem ē portū exiit tribus cum nāvibus parvīs,
20 quae Pinta, Nīna, Santaque Marīa appellābantur; cumque

1. **quīdam**: masc. pl., used as
a noun. — **rotundam**: rotundus, -a,
-um, *round*, or *spherical*.

4. **nec**: *and . . . not*.

5. **interpōnī**: lit. *to lie be-
tween*.

7. **obtinentī**: pres. part.
modifying **rēgī**.

10. **ubi**: (*but*) *there*.

11. **nec quisquam**: *and nobody*.

12. **ubi**: temporal conjunction.

13. **ea**: (neut. pl.) *the things*.

15. **velle**: *was willing*.

16. **laetus**: *gladly*, or *with joy*.
A Latin adj. is often best trans-
lated by an adverb or a phrase.

17. **veritī**: perf. part. of **vereor**;
to be translated as a present,
the Latin use being somewhat
inexact.

paucōs diēs nāvigāsset, ad īnsulās quāsdam pervēnit, in quibus inveniuntur plūrimae avēs, quārum cantus est pulcherrimus.   Tum per īgnōtum mare fortiter prōgressus est.

LESSON 3

Christopher Columbus (Continued)

Cum multa mīlia passuum Columbus nāvigāsset neque
5 terram vīdisset ūllam, nautae vehementer timēre coepērunt, quod multa audīverant dē nāvibus, quae longē per mare Atlanticum prōgressae domum numquam posteā redierant; in Hispāniam igitur statim redīre volēbant, dux tamen nōluit.   Quārē illī prīmō habuērunt in animō Co-
10 lumbum etiam in mare iacere; postrēmō autem eōrum animī īrātī ā duce mītigātī sunt.

Ōlim nauta quīdam crēdēbat sē terram vidēre, et omnēs gaudēbant; nūbem autem vīderat ille, nōn terram.   Sed paucīs post diēbus rāmum invēnērunt et bācās in marī
15 natantēs, ac Columbus sēnsit sē iam terrae appropinquāre. Mox noctū ignem quoque in lītore vīdērunt, ac māne ad īnsulam pervēnērunt parvam, ubi laetī in harēnam ēgressī paucōs diēs morātī sunt.

Inde profectus, Columbus aliās quoque īnsulās adiit, in
20 quibus erat ea, quae Cūba appellātur.   Gazās tamen invenīre nōn potuit, quās quaerēbat.   Putābat enim sē iam ad

---

1. nāvigāsset: *i.e.* nāvigāvisset.

2. plūrimae: see multus.

4. neque: cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

6. multa: *many (stories)*.

11. mītigātī sunt: *were calmed* (mītigō, 1).

13. nūbem: nūbēs, -is, F., *cloud*.

14. paucīs post diēbus: *a few days later*, lit. *afterward by a few days* (abl. of degree of difference).

15. natantēs: pres. part. of natō. — iam: *at length*.

21. potuit: see the note on possent, p. 1, l. 13.

Asiam pervēnisse ; quārē incolās eārum īnsulārum, quās
adierat, Indōs appellāvit.

LESSON 4

Christopher Columbus (Concluded)

Indī Columbum amābant ; isque, cum ad Hispāniam red-
itūrus esset, in īnsulā quādam colōniam parvam relīquit.
5 Colōnī tamen iniūriās mox Indīs fēcērunt ac brevī ad ūnum
ab eīs interfectī sunt.

Interim Columbus ipse domum properābat ; subitō autem,
cum laetus per mare nāvigāret, tempestāte maximā coortā,
nāvēs flūctibus paene complētae sunt. Tum ille scrīpsit
10 litterās, quās in dōlia conditās in mare iēcit ; crēdēbat enim
nūllam iam esse spem, putābatque dōlia posse ad lītus ven-
tīs ferrī, cīvēsque suōs ita certiōrēs fierī dē eīs īnsulīs, quās
ipse invēnerat. Sed maris violentiam nāvēs sustinuērunt,
et Columbus in Hispāniam incolumis pervēnit ; ubi rēx et
15 rēgīna eius rēbus gestīs gaudēbant, eumque fēcērunt īnsu-
lārum praefectum.

Posteā ad Americam Columbus semel atque iterum nāvi-
gāvit. Rem autem haud fēlīciter gessit, inopsque po-
strēmō mortuus est. Etiam tum terrās, quās invēnerat,
20 Asiae partem esse crēdēbat.

---

3. **reditūrus esset**: *was about to return.*

5. **brevī**: *i.e.* **mox.** — **ad ūnum**: *to a man.*

8. **laetus**: cf. p. 2, l. 16.

10. **dōlia**: **dōlium, -ī, N.,** *cask.* — **conditās**: freely, *he placed . . . (and)*; lit. *what?*

12. **certiōrēs fierī**: *be informed*, or *learn*, lit. *be made more certain.* Supply **posse** with this clause.

13. **violentiam**: **violentia, -ae, F.,** *force.*

14. **incolumis**: for rendering, cf. **laetus**, l. 8. — **ubi**: *there.*

15. **eius rēbus gestīs**: *in his exploits.*

16. **praefectum**: cf. the predicate accusative (**Indōs**) with **appellāvit**, l. 2.

18. **inops** (**-opis**, adj.) : *in poverty.*

LESSON 5

The Cabots

Interim vir quīdam, nōmine Cabot, ā Britanniā cum nāve parvā nautīsque paucīs profectus est atque ad Americam pervēnit. Quī nōn sōlum īnsulās adiit, sed etiam eam terram, quae nunc Canada appellātur. Posteā īdem cum fīliō
5 ad Americam iterum nāvigāvit, ac multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus prōgressus, Indōs vīdit multōs. Interim nautae prope īnsulās quāsdam morābantur, ut piscīs caperent. Quī, cum domum incolumēs redīssent, amīcīs suīs multa nārrāvērunt dē rēbus mīrīs, quās vīderant; quīn
10 etiam dīxērunt sē ursās vīdisse in mare prōgredientēs, ut piscīs raperent.

Cabot fīlius posteā omnīs in partēs nāvigāvit, ac diū cōnātus est viam invenīre, quā circum Eurōpam nāvigāre atque ita ad Asiam pervenīre posset; eam tamen viam
15 numquam invēnit, neque nunc nōta est. Ōlim, cum iam esset senex neque ipse diūtius nāvigāre posset, dōna magna dīcitur dedisse nautīs quibusdam, quōs forte cōgnōverat parvā in nāve ad terrās īgnōtās profectūrōs esse; adeō nāvīs nautāsque semper amāvit.

1. ā : *from.*

3. quī : *he.* — eam : *the.*

8. quī, cum : (*and*) *when they.* — incolumēs : cf. p. 4, l. 14.

9. multa : cf. ea, p. 2, l. 13, and multa, p. 3, l. 6. This noun use of the neuter of adjectives and pronouns is exceedingly frequent in Latin. The English rendering varies with the context.

10. ursās : ursa, -ae, F., *bear.*

12. fīlius : *the younger.*

13. quā : abl. of way by which; cf. quā, p. 1, l. 12.

15. neque : cf. nec, p. 2, l. 4.

16. diūtius : (*any*) *longer.*

17. dīcitur : lit. *he is said.* This personal passive construction is common in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of verbs of saying, thinking, and the like.

18. profectūrōs esse : cf. reditūrus esset, p. 4, l. 3.

LESSON 6

Captain John Smith

Quod colōnī, quī ex Hispāniā in Americam dēductī
erant, aurum multum et argentum ibi inveniēbant, Britannī
quoque colōnōs quōsdam mīsērunt, quī castra pōnerent eā
in terrā, quae Virginia appellātur. Quōs colōnōs Indī mox
5 adortī sunt, sagittīsque occīdērunt paucōs; castra tamen
prope rīpam posita erant, ac nautae ē nāvibus tēla plūrima
inmīsērunt in hostēs, quī sē celeriter in silvās recipere
coāctī sunt.

Brevī autem erat perīculum etiam maius; nam paene
10 omnis cōnsūmptus est cibus, quem colōnī ā Britanniā nāvi-
bus vēxerant. Statim igitur eōrum dux, nōmine Faber, vir
fortis, cum scaphā paucīsque mīlitibus adversō flūmine
longē prōgressus est, ut frūmentum quaereret, quod incolae
libenter dabant prō nūgīs quās colōnī sēcum ferēbant.
15   Posteā dux īdem, cum iterum profectus esset ut invenīret
viam, quā ad Asiam nāvēs pervenīre possent (omnēs enim
iam intellegēbant Americam nōn esse Asiae partem), for-
titer pugnāns ab Indīs captus est.

LESSON 7

Captain John Smith (Continued)

Postrēmō tamen in colōniam incolumis reductus, Faber
20 posteā per lītora omnia iter fēcit; spērābat enim semper

---

3. pōnerent: cf. the note on
possent, p. 1, l. 13.—eā: modifier
of terrā: for translation, cf. eam,
p. 5, l. 3.

4. quōs: *these* (adj.).

10. nāvibus: freely, *in their
ships*; strictly, abl. of means.

12. adversō flūmine: *up
stream*; lit. what?

14. nūgīs: nūgae, -ārum, F.,
trifles.

16. omnēs: *everybody*; cf. the
note on quīdam, p. 2, l. 1. The noun
use of the masc. pl. is very frequent.

sē flūmen esse inventūrum, quō Americam trānsīre et ita
ad Asiam pervenīre posset. In itineribus et dux et mīlitēs
noctū saepe frīgora maxima ferre cōgēbantur; tum, remōtō
ignī et haud procul collocātō, humī iacēre solēbant eōdem
5 locō, ubi ignis modo fuerat. Interdum aquam dulcem nōn
habēbant, eōrumque pānis fluctibus corruptus est.

Ōlim in eōs, cum prope lītus quoddam nāvigārent, ab
incolīs sagittae subitō ex arboribus missae sunt; mīlitēs
tamen, cum posteā in lītore eōsdem Indōs corbulās manibus
10 tenentēs vīdissent, incolās velle frūmentum sibi dare crēdi-
dērunt. Dux autem, īnsidiās veritus, mīlitēs iussit hostēs
prius sonō armōrum terrēre; tum, cum Indī perterritī in
silvās fūgissent, colōnī ad lītus vēnērunt, et in harēnā dōna
posuērunt multa. Quae cum Indī invēnissent, gaudēbant,
15 ac colōnīs iam factī amīcī, frūmentum eīs libenter dedērunt.

LESSON 8

Captain John Smith (Continued)

Dum haec fīunt, Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant,
colōnōrum cōpiās saepe rapiēbant; quīn etiam interdum

1. esse inventūrum: *would
find.*—quō: cf. quā, p. 1, l. 12.

2. et . . . et: *both . . . and.*

3. maxima: for the various
renderings of magnus, see the
Vocab.—tum: *at such times.*—
remōtō: removeō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus,
move.

4. humī: *on the ground;* loca-
tive case.—eōdem locō: the prepo-
sitions in and ex are often lacking
with locō and locīs.

5. interdum: cf. p. 1, l. 10.—
dulcem: dulcis, -is, -e, *fresh.*

6. pānis (-is, M.): *bread.*—

corruptus est: corrumpō, 3, -rūpī,
-ruptus, *spoil.*

9. corbulās: corbula, -ae, F.,
basket.—manibus: for syntax, cf.
nāvibus, p. 6, l. 10.

14. quae: *these* (noun).

15. factī amīcī: freely, *becoming
friendly* (factī from fīō). English
often uses a pres. part. where the
perfect would be more exact.

16. haec: *these things.*—fīunt:
in connection with dum, the pres.
indic. is rendered as an imperfect.

17. rapiēbant: *would steal;* a
common meaning of the impf. indic.

arma quoque ē colōniā rapta sunt, dōnec ūnus ex Indīs, quī
ea tractāre nesciēbat, ita ipse paene sē interfēcit.

Postrēmō ē Britanniā vēnērunt colōnī novī, quī Fabrō,
dē quō suprā dīxī, amīcī nōn erant. Ā quibus domum redīre
5 coāctus, numquam posteā ille ad Virginiam revēnit. Sed
per mare Atlanticum saepe navigāvit, atque ōlim pervēnit
usque ad terram, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur.
Ibi nautae, locō idōneō complūrīs diēs morātī, piscēs cē-
pērunt multōs, quōs sāle condītōs posteā in Britanniam
10 reportāvērunt. Interim dux parvā in scaphā multa mīlia
passuum secundum lītus prōgressus, frūmentum pellēsque
ab incolīs emēbat.

Quī, cum dēmum in Britanniam redīre vellet, Indōs com-
plūrīs in nāvēs accēpit ac sēcum domum redūxit. Quō ubi
15 est perventum omnēsque iam ē nāvibus ēgressī sunt, ūnus
ē praepositīs Indōs paucōs sē sequī nāvemque iterum cōn-
scendere iussit; tum clam ad Hispāniam cum captīvīs
miserīs profectus est. Ibi autem cum Indōs vēndere cōnā-
rētur, sacerdōtēs quīdam, quī dē eius cōnsiliō certiōrēs factī
20 erant, ad nāvem statim properāvērunt; ā quibus captīvī
servātī sunt.

---

1. **ex**: *of*.

2. **tractāre**: *(how) to handle.*
—**ipse . . . sē**: freely, *his own self*.

4. **domum**: *i.e.* to England.

5. **revēnit**: the prefix **re-** often
means "back"; cf. **reportāvērunt**
(l. 10), **redūxit** (l. 14), and **re(d)-
īre** (l. 4).

7. **usque ad**: *as far as*.

8. **locō**: cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

9. **sāle condītōs**: *salted down*
(**condiō**, 4, *season*; **sāl, sālis**, M.,
salt); **condītōs** modifies **quōs**.

11. **pellēs**: **pellis, -is**, F., *skin*,
or *pelt*.

13. **quī, cum**: *when . . . he*.
—**vellet**: *was ready*; for other
meanings of the word see the
Vocab.

14. **in nāvēs accēpit**: translate
freely. — **sēcum**: *i.e.* **sē + cum**. —
quō: *there*; lit. *whither*.

15. **est perventum**: cf. the im-
personal passive on p. 1, l. 11,
and translate according to the con-
text here. — **omnēs**: cf. p. 6, l. 16.

16. **praepositīs**: **praepositus, -ī**,
M., *officer*.

19. **certiōrēs factī erant**: cf.
p. 4, l. 12.

SACERDŌS

Above is shown the statue of a Vestal Virgin found at Rome in
the ruins of the Temple of Vesta, a goddess upon whose altar a
pure bright fire was always kept burning, and whose public
worship was in the hands of virgin priestesses chosen in childhood
for a term of thirty years' service.   The Vestal Virgins were held
in the highest honor, even the consuls yielding them precedence
when they appeared in public ; and a condemned criminal was
saved, if he were but fortunate enough to meet some of them
as he was being led away to execution.

LESSON 9

Captain John Smith (Concluded)

Faber interim colōniam in Britanniam Novam dēdūcere parābat, brevīque cum mīlitibus ac nautīs sēdecim ad Americam versus profectus est. Cum autem mare trānsīret, subitō tempestās magna est coorta, ac nāvēs fluctibus paene
5 frāctae sunt ; quārē domum redīre coāctus est.

Sed paulō post cum ūnā nāve parvā iterum profectus, multōs diēs ad Americam versus fēlīciter nāvigāvit. Tum, pīrātīs procul vīsīs, frūstrā effugere cōnātus est. Pīrātae tamen inventī sunt mīlitēs esse, quōs ipse ōlim in Eurōpā
10 dūxerat ; quī igitur ducem suum veterem volēbant sēcum nāvigāre, is autem ad Americam cursum tenēre māluit. Sed paucīs post diēbus Gallī quīdam, quī per maria omnia praedam quaerēbant, eius nāvem cēpērunt, ipsumque suam nāvem longam coēgērunt cōnscendere. Ibi cum morārētur, eius
15 nautae, quī domum redīre iam diū volēbant, clam dedērunt vēla, incolumēsque in Britanniam pervēnērunt. Ubi tamen poenās posteā dedērunt cum dēmum redīsset Faber, quī cum Gallīs diū nāvigāre coāctus erat. Numquam posteā ille colōniam dēdūcere cōnātus est.

---

2. ad . . . versus : *for*; cf. p. 2, l. 13.

6. paulō post : *a little later*, lit. *afterward by a little*; cf. paucīs post diēbus, p. 3, l. 14. — profectus : cf. the note on factī, p. 7, l. 15.

9. inventī sunt . . . esse : *i.e. proved to be*; lit. what ? — Eurōpā : note the case.

14. morārētur : *was detained*.

15. iam diū : in connection with such adverbial words and phrases as iam, iam diū, etc., an imperf. has almost the force of a pluperf. — dedērunt vēla : sc. ventīs, *i.e. set sail*.

16. incolumēs : cf. p. 4, l. 14. — ubi : see the note on p. 4, l. 14.

LESSON 10

Pocahontas

Prope colōniam, quam Britannī in Virginiam dēdūxerant, habitābat quīdam rēx Indus, cui erat fīlia pulchra. Puella, quae Pōcahonta appellābātur, colōnōs amāvit, ōlimque servāverat eum ducem, dē quō suprā multa dīxī; nam trā-
5 ditum est, cum ille ab Indīs captus esset, hostēsque eum interficere vellent, rēgis fīliam suum corpus interposuisse. Id tamen multī crēdunt numquam esse factum, Fabrumque posteā mentītum esse. Sed frūmentō certē et carne Pōcahonta colōnōs saepe iūvit, et quondam ad oppidum nūntium
10 mīsit, cum hostēs oppidānōs occīdere parārent.

Interdum colōnī, quōrum cōpiae semper parvae erant, fame paene periērunt; quīn etiam ōlim, quamquam libenter equōs quoque edēbant, hominēs multī mortuī sunt. Tum, impetum Indōrum timentēs, oppidānī ipsam rapuērunt
15 Pōcahontam mēnsēsque multōs prō obside tenuērunt, ut pater, fīliā captā, amīcus esse cōgerētur. Puellam, dum in oppidō morātur, ūnus ex colōnīs amāre coepit. Quī, cum eam in mātrimōnium dūxisset, ad Britanniam cum uxōre est profectus; ubi paulō post Pōcahonta mortua est.

---

2. **cui erat**: freely, *who had;* lit. what?

4. **multa**: *much;* cf. **multa,** p. 5, l. 9. — **trāditum est**: *it is related* (**trādō** is short for **trānsdō,** lit. *hand over, pass along*).

6. **suum**: emphatic position, *her own*. When a possessive adj. is employed for clearness merely, it is apt to follow the modified noun; when it precedes the noun, it is often best rendered as **suum** here.

7. **id**: *i e.* the incident. — **multī**: cf. the note on **quīdam,** p. 2, l. 1.

15. **prō**: *as*.

17. **morātur**: for the force of the tense, see the note on **fīunt,** p. 7, l. 16.

LESSON 11

Henry Hudson

Hōc ferē tempore Batāvī, quī volēbant viam invenīre, quā circum Eurōpam ad Asiam nāvigārī posset, parāvērunt nāvem, cui erat nōmen Lūna Dīmidia, et Hudsōnem, virum Britannicum, ducem fēcērunt.

5   Ille prīmō circum Eurōpam nāvigāre frūstrā cōnātus, ad Americam deinde profectus est, quod ibi audīverat esse freta, quibus nāvēs in Asiam trānsīre possent. Quō ubi perventum est, multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus nāvigāvit; cumque loca multa explōrāsset, postrēmō pervēnit ad īnsu-
10 lam, ubi nunc est oppidum, quod Eborācum Novum appellātur. Hīc Indī subitō adortī sunt nautās, quī cum scaphīs portum explōrābant, sagittīsque hominem interfēcērunt ūnum.

Quō factō, dux duōs Indōs rapuit nāvemque cōnscendere
15 coēgit. Tum īnsulā relictā, adversō flūmine profectus est; cum autem haud longē nāvigāsset, captīvī ē nāvī sē iēcērunt in aquam, et nandō ad rīpam incolumēs pervēnērunt. Interim nāvis lēniter prōgrediēbātur, moxque in cōnspectū erant montēs, quōrum incolae frūmentum cōpiāsque aliās
20 nautīs libenter vēndidērunt.

1. **hōc ... tempore**: for syntax, cf. illīs **temporibus**, p. 1, l. 9.

2. **nāvigārī posset**: lit. *it could be sailed;* cf. the impersonal passive **nāvigātum erat**, p. 1, l. 11.

3. **Dīmidia**: *Half* (dīmidius, -a, -um).

7. **quō**: cf. p. 8, l. 14.

9. **cum explōrāsset**: *having explored*. For the form of the verb, cf. **nāvigāsset**, p. 3, l. 1.

14. **quō**: *this* (noun).

15. **adversō flūmine**: cf. p. 6, l. 12.

17. **nandō**: gerund, *by swimming;* the phrase **nandō ... pervēnērunt** may be rendered freely "swam."

LESSON 12

Henry Hudson (Continued)

Cum inde diēs paucōs flūmine adversō nāvigātum esset,
dux ipse ē nāvī in rīpam ēgressus incolās convēnit, quī
libenter sagittās suās frēgērunt omnīs, ut advenae intel-
legerent sē esse amīcōs.   Ibi haud diū morātus, Hudsō
5 iterum lēniter prōgressus est; sed postrēmō flūmen invēnit
angustius fierī, ac sēnsit sē hāc ad Asiam pervenīre nōn posse.
Itaque ad mare rediit, brevīque domum profectus est.

Paucīs post mēnsibus Batāvī nāvēs aliās et hominēs
mīsērunt, quī cum Indīs negōtiārentur; ac posterō annō dux
10 īdem, cum ā Britanniā ad Americam iterum profectus esset,
mare maximum sub septentriōnibus invēnit, quod nunc eius
nōmine appellātur.   Ibi mēnsēs multōs hiemāre coāctus est.
Tum dēmum, cum cibus iam omnis cōnsūmptus esset, nautae
scelerātī, duce in scaphā relictō, in altum vēla dedērunt.

15   Hudsōnem nēmō posteā vīdit; sed nautae, paucīs āmissīs,
incolumēs domum pervēnērunt:— quamquam prīmō fame
omnēs paene perierant; paucīs enim avibus exceptīs, nōn
habēbant quod ēssent, dōnec in cōnspectum vēnit nāvis,
cuius magister eōs frūmentō aliīsque rēbus iuvāre potuit.

---

4. haud diū: freely, *but a short time*.

6. angustius: predicate adj., agreeing with **flūmen**, l. 5. — **hāc**: sc. **viā**; cf. the note on **quā**, p. 5, l. 13.

9. negōtiārentur: cf. the note on **possent**, p. 1, l. 13.

10. cum . . . profectus esset: cf. p. 12, l. 9, and the note.

11. mare: *bay.* — **maximum**: *mighty*; absolute use of the superlative.   In a similar way, com-

paratives may indicate a high degree in general, without distinctly comparing one thing with another. — **sub septentriōnibus** *i.e. toward the north* (septentriōnēs, -um, м., *the "Great Bear"*).

14. altum: *the deep* (*sea*).

15. āmissīs: *i.e.* by death.

17. paucīs . . . exceptīs: freely, *with the exception of a few.*

18. quod ēssent: (*anything*) *to eat* (ēssent from edō). As antecedent for the relative, supply **id** (acc.).

LESSON 13

Colonization in New England

Paucīs post annīs Britannī complūrēs, quī apud Batāvōs
diū habitāverant, in Americam cum līberīs atque uxōribus
ēmigrāre cōnstituērunt. Quī, cum pervēnissent ad lītus
eius terrae, quae nunc Britannia Nova appellātur, impetum
5 Indōrum veritī, lēgātum, nōmine Standisium, cum mīliti-
bus paucīs mīsērunt, quī loca undique explōrāret. Illī
igitur multa mīlia passuum secundum lītus prōgressī
sunt, cum nāvigārent interdiū, noctēsque autem in lītore
agerent.

10 Prīmō terrae incolās rārō vīdērunt; ōlim tamen, cum
māne proficīscī parārent ūnusque ex mīlitibus omnium arma
in scaphā iam collocāvisset, Indī subitō ē silvā magnō clā-
mōre ērūpērunt, sagittīsque vulnerāvērunt paucōs. Sed
mīlitēs statim ad scapham cucurrērunt, ut arma caperent,
15 hostēsque celeriter fugere coāctī sunt.

Postrēmō ad portum tūtum perventum est, ubi tribus ante
annīs multī habitāverant Indī; quī iam ad ūnum morbō
perierant. Quā dē rē certiōrēs factī, colōnī reliquī quoque
ad eum locum vēnērunt, ibique ē nāvī in lītus ēgressī, dīs
20 ēgērunt grātiās castraque posuērunt. Est in lītore etiam
nunc saxum, quod Americānī semper coluērunt colentque

---

2. **līberīs atque uxōribus:** sc.
suīs.

3. **quī, cum:** cf. p. 5, l. 8.

6. **explōrāret:** note the mood.

8. **cum nāvigārent:** translate
by a participial phrase.

10. **rārō:** adv., *seldom*.

11. **omnium:** used as a masc.
noun, modifier of **arma.**

14. **ut arma caperent:** *i.e. to
arm themselves.*

17. **ad ūnum:** *utterly;* cf. p. 4.
l. 5.

18. **quā dē rē:** *i.e.* dē hāc
rē.

19. **dīs:** from **deus.**

21. **coluērunt:** colō, 3, coluī,
cultus, *venerate.*
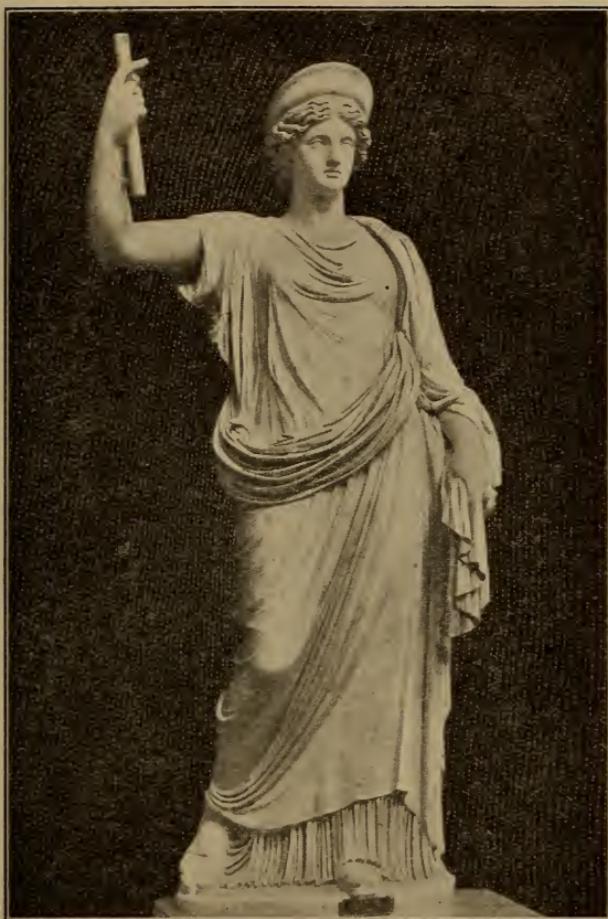
IŪNŌ, RĒGĪNA DEŌRUM

The chief deities worshiped by the Romans were twelve in number: namely, Jupiter, Neptune, Vulcan, Mars, Mercury, Apollo, Juno, Minerva, Vesta, Ceres, Venus, and Diana. Besides these, many minor divinities were recognized.

semper, quod hīc dēmum ē nāvī ēgressī sunt Britannī illī,
quī posteā maiōrēs peregrīnantēs appellātī sunt.

LESSON 14

A Soldier's Courtship

Hieme proximā morbō aut fame colōnī complūrēs periē-
runt, quōrum in numerō erat Standisī quoque uxor. Ille,
5 uxōre mortuā, in mātrimōnium volēbat dūcere quandam
puellam pulchram, cui erat nōmen Prissilla ; sed, cum sē
sentīret mīlitem asperum esse, rem ipse tractāre nōluit,
iuvenemque quendam mīsit, quī puellae patrem convenīret.

Iuvenis, quī forte ipse quoque Prissillam amāre coeperat,
10 amīcō tamen deesse nōlēbat. Quārē maestus profectus est,
lēniterque per lītus ad puellae domum versus ambulāvit.
Quō cum pervēnisset rēsque esset prōposita, pater statim
sē nōn nōlle dīxit. Cum autem iuvenis cum Prissillā ipsā
dē virtūte lēgātī eiusque rēbus gestīs loquerētur, illa diū
15 tacita audīvit, tum rīdēns : " Nōnne prō tē," inquit, " dic-
tūrus es ? " Quā vōce ille vehementer commōtus domum
ad lēgātum rediit. Quī prīmō amīcum verbīs acerbīs

---

1. **quod** : conjunction.

2. **maiōrēs** : as noun, *Fathers.*
— **peregrīnantēs** : *Pilgrim* (pere-
grīnor, 1, *travel abroad*).

4. **quōrum in numerō** : *i.e.
among whom.* — **Standisī** : fīlius
and proper names in -ius and -ium
have regularly this short form of
the gen. ; so also some common
nouns in -ium. Accent, **Standísī.**

6. **cum** : causal conjunction ; cf.,
however, the note on p. 14, l. 8.

10. **maestus** : cf. the rendering
of **laetus**, p. 2, l. 16.

11. **domum** : *residence ;* with
domum in this meaning, the prepo-
sition cannot be omitted (as in l.
16).

12. **quō** : cf. the note on p. 8,
l. 14. — **rēs** : (*his*) *errand.*

13. **nōn** : with **nōlle.** — **cum Pris-
sillā** : we would say "*to* Pris-
cilla."

14. **eius** : *i.e.* of Standish. — **rē-
bus gestīs** : cf. p. 4, l. 15.

15. **nōnne** : *i.e.* **nōn** + **ne.** —
dictūrus es : *going to speak ;* cf.
reditūrus esset, p. 4, l. 3.

accēpit, postrēmō tamen sēnsit nōn illīus culpā rem ita ce-
cidisse. Itaque paucīs post mēnsibus ā iuvene Prissilla in
mātrimōnium ducta est, Standisius autem sibi uxōrem aliam
sūmpsit.

LESSON 15

Unrest among the Indians

5 Indī, quī prope colōniam habitābant, paene omnēs inimīcī
erant, sed vehementer timēbant lēgātum Standisium, dē quō
suprā dīxī; nam is, dux fortissimus, libentissimē bellum
semper gessit, neque umquam perīculum ūllum recūsāvit.
Quī tamen nōn erat crūdēlis; ōlim enim, cum ad oppidum
10 Indōrum inimīcōrum profectus esset hostēsque vīcisset,
trēs Indōs vulnerātōs domum sēcum redūxit, ut eōrum
vulnera ibi cūrārentur.

Hōc ferē tempore colōnī aliī, ā Britanniā profectī, haud
procul condidērunt oppidum alterum. Tum dēmum Indī
15 vehementer commōtī, conciliō convocātō, oppida ambō in-
cendere colōnōsque ipsōs interficere cōnstituērunt; sed rēx
quīdam, quī colōnōs amābat, ad Standisium properāvit,
eumque dē hostium cōnsiliō certiōrem fēcit. Perīculō cōgnitō,
lēgātus statim cum mīlitibus paucīs ad alterum oppidum
20 profectus est. Ibi Indī, cum vīdissent mīlitēs esse paucōs,
arbitrātī sē facile Standisium terrēre posse, eī ostendērunt

---

1. **illīus culpā**: *through (any)
fault of his, i.e.* of the **iuvenis**
(culpa, -ae, F.). — **rem**: *the affair*.

8. **neque umquam**: *and . . .
never*; cf. the rendering of **nec
quisquam**, p 2, l. 11. In transla-
tion, **nec (neque)** should always,
if possible, be resolved thus into
connective and negative.

15. **conciliō**: contrast **cōnsiliō**,
l. 18.

18. **perīculō cōgnitō**: freely, *hav-
ing learned of the danger.* A literal
rendering of **cōgnitus** in the abl.
absol. construction would often be
awkward.

21. **arbitrātī**: cf. the use of
veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

Tum dēmum oppidānī alterum frātrem, quī Philippus appellābātur, ad colōniam dēdūxērunt, eumque coēgērunt arma omnia trādere, quae ipse comitēsque ferēbant; nec vērō dīmīsērunt hominem, dōnec pollicitus est sē reliqua
5 quoque arma trāditūrum, quae domī Indī habēbant.

LESSON 17

The Outbreak of King Philip's War

Philippus, quī patre et frātre mortuīs iam ipse rēx erat, īrātus domum profectus, Indōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī eum libenter secūtī sunt; quīn etiam ōlim quendam cīvem suum interfēcērunt, quod rēgis cōnsilia colōnīs prōdiderat.
10 Complūra iam erant colōnōrum oppida; sed Indī prīmō tantum vīllīs admōvērunt ignīs bovēsque rapuērunt: nam, ā sacerdōtibus monitī, hominem occīdere nūllum ausī sunt, dōnec ā colōnīs ūnus ex ipsōrum numerō vulnerātus est. Tum dēmum, omnibus oppidīs oppugnātīs, caedēs maxima
15 est facta, ac colōnī miserī, aliī cum aquam peterent, aliī cum ā vīllīs in oppida fugerent, undique occīsī sunt.

Ōlim hostēs, cum in castellum quoddam impetum fēcissent sagittāsque ārdentēs mīsissent in tēctum, postrēmō ·ipsī quoque castellō ignem admōvēre cōnātī sunt. Quā rē
20 animadversā, colōnī, quī sē fortiter multās hōrās dēfende-

---

4. hominem: *the man.*
5. trāditūrum: sc. esse. — domī: *at home;* for the case, cf. humī, p. 7, l. 4.
8. suum: *of theirs.*
12. hominem: standing in contrast to vīllīs and bovēs of the preceding clause.

13. ipsōrum: *their own.*
15. aliī . . . aliī: *some . . . others.* — cum: *as.*
17. hostēs, cum: *when the enemy.* Note the changed order of the English. — in: *upon.*
19. ipsī: modifying castellō. — quā rē: *this.*

rant, omnem salūtis spem iam dēpōnēbant; sed subitō imber
coortus est maximus, quō ignēs sunt extīnctī. Quārē Indī
cōnātū dēsistere coāctī sunt.

LESSON 18

A Remarkable Deliverance

Hōc ferē tempore aliō in oppidō latēbat imperātor quīdam,
5 quī ē Britanniā paulō ante fūgerat, quod rēx Britannōrum
eum volēbat interficere. Homō scīlicet nōlēbat oppidānōs
cōgnōscere sē ibi latēre. Sed ōlim, cum colōnī in templō
adessent omnēs, tūtō sē ē latebrīs exīre posse crēdēbat; ita-
que ē fenestrā prōspēxit. Prīmō nēminem vīdit; tum subitō
10 animadvertit multōs Indōs per agrōs clam properantēs, ut
oppidum oppugnārent.

Quibus ille rēbus vehementer commōtus, ex aedibus statim
ērūpit ac colōnōs ad arma vocāvit. Quī cum celeriter ē
templō cucurrissent, advenā duce cum Indīs fortiter
15 pugnāvērunt, hostēsque postrēmō in silvās fugere coāctī
sunt.

Imperātor interim, postquam Indōs fugere intellēxit, ad
latebrās statim sē recēpit, nec posteā ā colōnīs invenīrī po-
tuit. Quī igitur crēdidērunt ducem ē caelō ā dīs missum
20 esse, quī sē adiuvāret, sīcut multīs ante annīs Castor et
Pollūx ōlim subitō adfuērunt in aciē auxiliumque Rōmānīs

1. dēpōnēbant : note the tense.
—imber (-bris, M.): *shower*.

3. cōnātū dēsistere : *give up*
(lit. *desist from*) *the attempt*.

6. homō : cf. hominem, p. 20,
l. 4.

12. quibus . . . rēbus: transl.
as singular (cf. quā rē, p. 20, l. 19).

13. cum . . . cucurrissent : cf.
the note on p. 14, l. 8.

14. advenā duce : abl. absol.,
lit. *the stranger* (*being*) *leader*;
transl. freely.

18. invenīrī : note the last letter
of the word.—potuit : for the trans-
lation, cf. the note on **possent**,
p. 1, l. 13.

19. quī: cf. the rendering of
quī in the note on p. 5, l. 3. —
ducem : *a leader*.

tulērunt, cum illī hōrās multās pugnāssent cum hostibus,
neque eōs in fugam dare potuissent.

LESSON 19

Philip finds Allies

Dum haec geruntur, Indī quīdam longinquī, quibus erat
castellum maximum, armīs aliīsque rēbus Philippum iuvāre
5 coepērunt.   Quō cōgnitō, colōnī, quamquam iam hiems
erat, id castellum statim oppugnāre cōnstituērunt; nam
putābant hanc quoque gentem prīmā aestāte bellum gerere
parāre, cōnsiliaque hostium ipsī praeoccupāre volēbant.

Itaque viā nivālī cum exercitū validō profectī, per silvās
10 ad castellum iter fēcērunt.   Ibi ācerrimē est pugnātum,
ac colōnī multī interfectī sunt; castellum tamen expugnātum
est, Indōrumque cōpiae omnēs ignī sunt cōnsūmptae: qui-
bus rēbus factīs, colōnī vulnerātōs sēcum ferentēs domum
lēniter sē recēpērunt.

15 Hōc dētrīmentō vehementer commōtī, Indī iam undique
convēnērunt, oppidaque colōnōrum oppugnāre coepērunt
singula.   Subitō veniēbant in cōnspectum; tum, colōnīs
occīsīs vīllīsque incēnsīs, celeriter in silvās sē recipiēbant,
cum interim mīlitēs, quī arma graviōra ferēbant, nūllō
20 modō cōnsequī poterant.   Itaque diū colōnī miserī undique

---

3. dum, etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.
5. quō: neuter. — cōgnitō: cf.
the note on p. 17, l. 18.
7. prīmā: *the early*, lit. *the
first (part of)*.
8. ipsī: may be omitted in
translation.
9. viā: for syntax, cf. quā, p. 5,
l. 13. — nivālī: nivālis, -is, -e,
snowy.

10. ācerrimē est pugnātum:
freely, *a desperate battle was
fought;* lit. what?
13. vulnerātōs: as noun, *the
wounded.* — ferentēs: nom. case.
17. singula: modifying oppida.
— veniēbant: for the translation,
cf. the note on rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17.
19. cum: *while.*
20. cōnsequī: sc. eōs (*i.e.* Indōs).

interfectī sunt; Standisius enim iam prīdem mortuus erat:
sed postrēmō dux alius inventus est, quī fēlīciter cum Indīs
bellum gerere sciēbat.

LESSON 20

Captain Church

Cercās, quī iam dux colōnōrum factus est, nōn modo cum
5 hostibus fēlīciter bellum gerere sciēbat, sed etiam Indōs
interdum sociōs sibi ascīscere potuit. Quō cōnsiliō ōlim
profectus, ad quandam gentem pervēnit haud longinquam,
cuius rēgīnae diū fuerat ipse amīcus; quārē spērābat eius
cīvibus facile sē persuādēre posse, ut colōnōs adiuvārent.
10 Ibi tamen ab Indīs impetus ācerrimus in Cercam eiusque
comitēs facta est; quī igitur in palūde coāctī sunt latēre,
dōnec in scaphā vēnērunt mīlitēs complūrēs, quī eōs ex
perīculō ēriperent.

Cercās, quamquam cōnsilium tum perficere nōn potuerat,
15 convenīre tamen rēgīnam iterum cōnārī cōnstituit. Itaque
paucīs post mēnsibus ūnō cum mīlite Indīsque tribus pro-
fectus, in eiusdem gentis fīnēs dēnuō iter fēcit; quō ubi
est perventum, comitibus in scaphā relictīs, ad rēgīnam ipse
prōgressus est. Cum eā dum loquitur, Indī multī, quī per

3. **gerere**: cf. the use of the
infin. with **nesciēbat**, p. 8, l. 2.

4. **Cercās**: gen. **Cercae**, etc.
— **modo**: the adv., *only.*

5. **etiam**: *also.*

6. **sociōs**: (*as*) *allies.* — **cōn-
siliō**: *design.*

8. **rēgīnae**: dat. case.— **ipse**:
he. — **eius**: *i.e.* the queen's.

9. **persuādēre**: *persuade*, lit.
make (*it*) *agreeable* (hence the dat.

cīvibus). — **posse**: replacing the
fut. infin., which is lacking in this
verb.

14. **Cercās, quamquam**: cf. the
note on **hostēs, cum**, p. 20, l. 17.

15. **convenīre**: dependent on
cōnārī.

17. **dēnuō**: *i.e.* **iterum**. — **quō**:
cf. p. 8, l. 14.

19. **cum**: preposition. — **per**:
around in.

herbam latuerant, subitō armātī exsiluērunt.   Quī tamen,
cum intellēxissent Cercam minimē esse territum, humī tum
sēdērunt conciliōque habitō pollicitī sunt sē colōnōs adiū-
tūrōs in bellō, quod illī cum Philippō gerēbant.

LESSON 21

The Death of Philip

5   Cercās cum hīs sociīs suīsque mīlitibus iam omnēs in
partīs iter fēcit per silvās, et undique hōstes in fugam
dedit.   Quārē postrēmō Philippus ipse paucīs cum comiti-
bus per vallīs multa mīlia passuum in palūdēs longinquās
fugere coāctus est; numquam enim colōnīs sē dēdere cōn-
10 stituerat: quīn etiam ōlim, cum quīdam ex eius amīcīs
dīcere ausus esset pācem cum eīs faciendam esse, rēx īrā-
tus hominem suā manū occīdit.   Cuius reī acerbitāte com-
mōtus, frāter mortuī statim ad colōnōs perfūgit eōsque
certiōrēs fēcit. dē palūde, ubi Philippus tum latēbat.
15   Itaque dux colōnōrum, quī multōs diēs frūstrā quaesīverat
rēgem modoque domum redierat ut uxōrem cōnsōlārētur,
iterum celeriter profectus est, mīlitēsque suōs prope illam
palūdem sine morā īnstrūxit.   Quā rē animadversā, Philip-
pus eiusque comitēs per vallēs longius fugere cōnātī sunt;
20 rēx vērō īnfēlīx, interceptus ā mīlitibus quī in silvā collocātī

1. **quī tamen, cum** : *but when
. . . they* ; cf. **quī, cum,** p. 8,
l. 13.

2. **humī** : cf. p. 7, l. 4. — **tum** :
may be omitted in translation.

5. **suīs** : *his own* ; cf. **suum,**
p. 11, l. 6, and the note.

10. **quīdam** : *a certain one.*

12. **hominem** : cf. p. 20, l. 4.
— **suā** : cf. **suīs,** l. 5. — **reī** : for

the various meanings of **rēs,** see
the Vocab.— **acerbitāte** : **acerbitās,**
-**ātis,** F., *harshness.*

13. **mortuī** :   *of   the   dead*
(*man*) ; part., used as a noun, masc.
sing.

16. **modo** : (*but*) *just.*

18. **quā rē** : cf. p. 20, l. 19.

20. **vērō** : *i.e.* **tamen.** — **īnfēlīx**
(-**īcis,** adj.) : *ill-starred.*

erant, ā frātre eiusdem Indī interfectus est, quem ipse occī-
derat. Caput Philippī secūrī abscīsum colōnī sēcum domum
tulērunt; ubi suprā portam positum est, ut omnēs vidērent
rēgem rē vērā mortuum esse.

LESSON 22

End of the War

5   Quō dētrīmentō perterritus lēgātus Philippī, quī paucīs
cum comitibus ē palūde effūgerat, in silvīs procul latēbat.
Quem Cercās diū frūstrā quaesīvit; sed postrēmō Indum
senem cēpit et puellam, quōs viam ostendere coēgit: quō
modō in lēgātī castra subitō perventum est.

10 Ibi Cercās, quamquam comitēs perpaucōs sēcum habēbat,
arma Indōrum, quae humī collocāta erant, audācter rapuit.
Quō factō, lēgātus magnā vōce: "Captus sum," inquit.
Cercās vērō: "Ubi est cēna? nam vēnī ut vobīscum cēnā-
rem." Tum lēgātus: "Equīnam carnem māvīs," inquit,
15 "an būbulam?" Quō audītō, Cercās scīlicet dīxit sē mālle
būbulam.

Carne sine morā cōnsūmptā, reliquī (noctū enim impetus
factus erat) mox humī iacēbant sōpītī; sed Cercās et lēgātus
diū vigilābant. Postrēmō Indus surrēxit et silentiō ēgres-

---

2. abscīsum: agreeing with caput.

3. suprā: preposition, *over*.

4. rē vērā: *in very fact* (vē-rus, -a, -um, lit. *true*, or *actual*).

5. lēgātus: *lieutenant*.

7. quem: *him*.

8. senem: *aged* (from senex).

10. perpaucōs: the prefix per- is intensive.

12. magnā: *i.e. loud*.

13. Cercās vērō: sc. inquit.

14. equīnam: equīnus, -a, -um, (*of*) *horse*.— māvīs: what form of mālō?

15. an: conjunction, *or*.— būbulam: būbulus, -a, -um, (*of*) *cow*.

19. Indus: *the Indian*.— silentiō: abl., used as adv.

sus est; quārē alter crēdēbat eum exīsse ut arma alia sū-
meret. Brevī autem aderat lēgātus manibus ferēns īnsīgnia
quae quondam Philippus gesserat. "Haec nunc tua sunt,"
inquit, īnsīgniaque ante Cercae pedēs humī posuit. Ita
5 bellum cōnfectum est.

LESSON 23

William Penn and the Friends

Dum haec in Britanniā Novā geruntur, in aliās Americae
partēs ex Eurōpā veniēbant colōnī multī; in quibus erant
complūrēs, quī sē Amīcōs appellābant. Cuidam virō clārō,
quī hanc religiōnem erat amplexus, rēx Britannōrum tum
10 magnam pecūniam dēbēbat; quod aes aliēnum ut solveret,
in Americā prōvinciam novam hōc ferē tempore cōnstituit,
virumque illum lēgātum fēcit; quae prōvincia ē nōmine lē-
gātī Pennsylvēnia appellāta est.

Lēgātus, quod religiō Amīcōrum gentibus Eurōpae grāta
15 nōn erat, colōnōs plūrimōs statim ad Pennsylvēniam prae-
mīsit, paucīsque post mēnsibus in prōvinciam ipse profec-
tus est; ubi urbem condidit, quae Philadelphia appellātur.
Propter religiōnem Amīcī crēdunt bellum gerere nefās esse,
atque omnibus cum hominibus cōmiter vīvere volunt; itaque

---

1. **alter**: *the other* (*i.e.* Church).

2. **aderat**: *was back* (*again*). — **manibus**: for syntax, cf. **nāvibus**, p. 6, l. 10. — **īnsīgnia**: *trappings* (**īnsīgne, -is,** N.).

3. **gesserat**: *had worn.* — **tua**: **tuus, -a, -um,** *yours.*

6. **dum haec,** etc.: cf. p. 7, l. 16.

7. **veniēbant**: note the tense. — **in**: *among.*

10. **magnam**: (*a*) *large* (*sum*

of). — **dēbēbat**: **dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itus,** *owe.* — **quod**: *this* (adj.). — **ut**: the acc. preceding belongs to this purpose clause.

11. **cōnstituit**: *established.*

12. **lēgātum**: *governor.* — **ē**: freely, *after.*

14. **grāta**: freely, *popular* (*with*); lit. what?

17. **ubi**: *there.*

18. **nefās esse**: *that it is a crime* (**nefās,** indeclinable noun).

per multōs annōs continuōs in prōvinciā erat pāx, etiam cum
lēgātus ille mortuus esset.

De cōmitāte lēgātī multa nārrantur; quīn etiam trāditum
est illum, cum ōlim per prōvinciam iter faceret, parvam
5 puellam vīdisse ad templum euntem, eamque in ipsīus equō
positam ad templum ita dēdūxisse.

LESSON 24

Nathaniel Bacon in Virginia

Dum in Britanniā Novā bellum gerit Philippus, in Vir-
giniā quoque Indī impetūs saepe in colōnōs faciēbant, mul-
tōsque agricolās, quī procul ab oppidīs habitābant, cum
10 cruciātū occīdērunt. Quō perīculō commōtī, colōnī multa
mīlia passuum nūntiōs ad caput prōvinciae mīsērunt, quī
lēgātum ōrārent, ut mitteret mīlites, quī hostīs coercērent.
Lēgātō autem nūllō modō persuādērī potuit ut colōnōs ad-
iuvāret, quod cum Indīs ipse negōtiābātur nec quaestum
15 dīmittere volēbat; quīn etiam iuvenis quīdam, nōmine Bēcō,
quī ā Britanniā tribus ante annīs in prōvinciam vēnerat,
cum dīxisset sē velle in Indōrum fīnīs dūcere colōnōs pau-
cōs, quī iam ipsī arma cēperant, ā lēgātō domī est iussus
manēre.

20   Iuvenis autem, sine morā ad castra colōnōrum clam pro-

---

1. **per**: freely, *for*. — con-
tinuōs: continuus, -a, -um, *con-
secutive*. — cum: *after*.

3. **multa**: cf. p. 5, l. 9. — trā-
ditum est: cf. p. 11, l. 4.

5. **euntem**: from eō. — eam:
her. — ipsīus: *his own*.

6. **positam**: part. (from pōnō),
agreeing with eam.

11. **caput**: *capital*.

13. **persuādērī potuit**: lit. *could
it be made agreeable*; cf. persuā-
dēre, p. 23, l. 9.

15. **volēbat**: cf. velle, p. 2,
l. 15.

17. **cum**: translate much earlier
in the English sentence.

18. **ipsī**: *on their own mo-
tion*, *i.e.* without waiting for
the governor to act.

fectus, cum prīmum in eōrum cōnspectum vēnit summō
assēnsū omnium dux factus est. Quī igitur, quamquam
sciēbat lēgātum posteā īrātum sē fortasse interfectūrum,
in fīnīs tamen Indōrum cōpiās dūxit, hostēsque in fugam
5 undique dedit. Quod ubi est audītum, lēgātus ex oppidō
celeriter profectus est, ut Bēcōnem caperet suppliciumque
dē eō sūmeret, quod iniussū suō bellum cum Indīs gereret.

LESSON 25

Nathaniel Bacon (*Continued*)

Brevī autem ad caput prōvinciae lēgātus celeriter redīre
est coāctus; nūntiātum enim est oppidānōs, quōs domī re-
10 līquerat quīque iuvenī ducī amīcissimī erant, rēs novās ibi
agitāre. Quibuscum lēgātus tum pācem fēcit; postquam
vērō Bēcō dēmum ē bellō longinquō domum rediit, colōnī,
lēgātum adhūc esse īrātum arbitrātī, noctēs diēsque ducis
cārī aedēs custōdiēbant; eumque, cum paulō post decuriō
15 factus esset, multī comitēs armātī ad oppidum secūtī sunt.
Ibi tamen lēgātus, quī quoque cōpiās coēgerat, Bēcōnem
statim rapuit, mox autem ab oppidānīs īrātīs dīmittere co-
āctus est. Sed iuvenis, paucīs post diēbus certior factus

1. **cum prīmum** : *i.e. as soon as*.

2. **omnium** : as (masc.) noun, modifying **assēnsū**. — **quī** : cf. p. 5, l. 3.

3. **īrātum** : *in* (*his*) *anger.* — **fortasse** : adv., *perhaps.* — **interfectūrum** : sc. **esse**.

4. **cōpiās** : (*his*) *troops*.

5. **quod** : *this* (noun).

6. **supplicium** : supplicium, -ī, N., *punishment*.

7. **dē** : lit. *from.* **supplicium sūmere** is the converse of **poenās dare**.

10. **iuvenī** : here as adjective.— **rēs novās** : *revolution*; lit. *what?*

11. **agitāre** : agitō, 1, *plan.* — **quibuscum** : cf. **sēcum**, p. 8, l. 14.

13. **arbitrātī** : cf. the use of **veritī**, p. 2, l. 17.— **noctēs diēsque** : *night and day*.

14. **decuriō** (-ōnis, M.) : *member of the legislature*.

16. **coēgerat** : *had called together*.
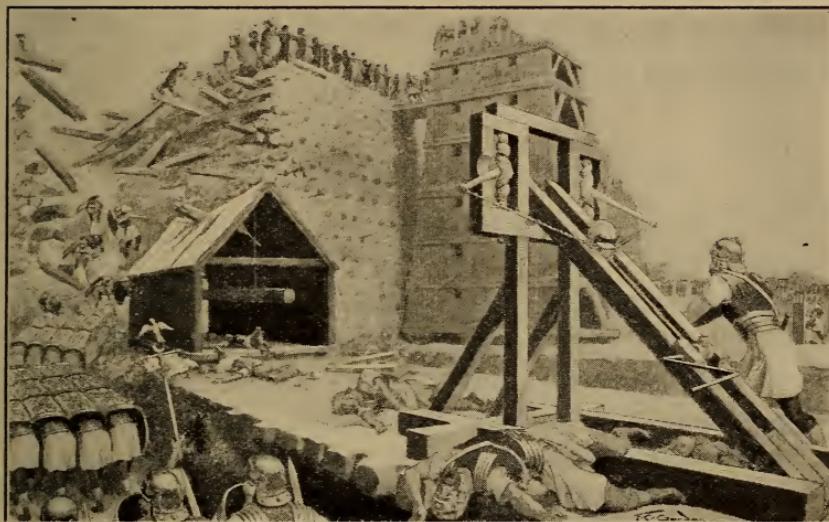
BALLISTA

Ancient "artillery" was not very formidable, as may be seen from the above illustration, which gives a modern artist's conception of an áttack upon a walled town. Roman "cannon" were simply huge catapults, some of which threw stones or masses of metal, others projected heavy darts.

lēgātum parāre sē iterum in custōdiam dare, clam noctū fūgit ex oppidō, nec posterō diē ab inimīcīs suīs invenīrī potuit.

Colōnī scīlicet undique libenter convēnērunt, ut ducem cārum adiuvārent; isque iam mēnsēs multōs, modo cum 5 Indīs modo cum lēgātō, fēlīciter bellum gessit. Ōlim, cum obsidēret urbem, quod erat caput prōvinciae, ballistāsque circum mūrōs collocāre vellet, uxōrēs inimīcōrum ē praediīs proximīs dēductās ante mīlitēs suōs posuisse dīcitur, ut sine perīculō suōrum opus perficerētur.

LESSON 26

Nathaniel Bacon (*Concluded*)

10   Lēgātus, cum eā in urbe multōs diēs obsessus esset, postrēmō cum comitibus omnibus nāvīs cōnscendit, quae in flūmine propinquō ad ancoram cōnsistēbant, ac sine morā profectus est, ut auxilium peteret. Quō factō, Bēcō, quī sentiēbat lēgātum mox cum sociīs esse reditūrum, ur-15 bem statim incendit; ipse autem, labōribus perīculīsque frāctus, paulō post mortuus est.

Tum eius comitēs, cum intellegerent lēgātum solēre ini-mīcōs etiam mortuōs contumēliīs afficere, corpus ducis cārī tulērunt ad flūmen et in aquam mersērunt; quārē lēgātus, 20 cum redīsset ad urbem amīcōsque Bēcōnis multōs interfē-cisset, ipsīus iuvenis corpus invenīre nōn potuit.

---

2. invenīrī: note the last letter of the word.

4. modo . . . modo: *at one time . . . at another.*

6. quod: relative, agreeing with the predicate noun.

8. dīcitur: cf. p. 5, l. 17, note.

9. suōrum: *to* (lit. *of*) *his men.*

10. lēgātus, cum: cf. **hostēs, cum**, p. 20, l. 17.

17. cum intellegerent: cf. the note on p. 14, l. 8. — **solēre**: cf. **solēbant**, p. 7, l. 4.

18. mortuōs: (*when*) *dead.*

19. mersērunt: **mergō**, 3, **mersī**, **mersus**, *bury*, lit. *sink.*

20. multōs: *many* (*of*).

Paucīs post annīs ille lēgātus pessimus quoque poenās
dedit; nam ā rēge domum revocātus, summā īgnōminiā
affectus ibi mortuus est. Interim Virginia reliquaeque
prōvinciae paulātim validiōrēs fīēbant. Sed antequam dē
5 bellō loquor, quod posteā ā colōnīs cum Britannīs gestum
est, quaedam dīcenda sunt de puerō, quī imperātor summus
Americanōrum futūrus erat.

LESSON 27

The Boyhood of George Washington

Hīc puer, quī Vasingtō appellābātur, in Virginiā nātus
est sexāgintā ferē annīs post bellum, quod cum lēgātō eius
10 prōvinciae gesserat Bēcō ille, dē quō modo dīxī. Puerō
erat frāter maior, quī tribūnus mīlitum factus ad bellum
abierat, quod Britannī cum Hispānīs tum gerēbant eīs in
īnsulīs, ad quās Columbus prīmum nāvēs appulit.

Vasingtō, postquam frāter ad exercitum profectus est, dē
15 bellō saepe cōgitābat; cumque lūdēbant puerī ac simulā-
bant sē esse mīlitēs, semper erat ille imperātor. Posteā
vērō, puer magnus et validus factus, celerrimē dīcitur cur-
rere potuisse neque equum timuisse ūllum.

Frāter iam volēbat Vasingtōnem nautam fierī, māter
20 autem nōluit; itaque ille domī aliquamdiū mānsit et didicit
omnia, quae ibi in lūdō trādēbantur. Sed paucīs post an-

---

4. **fīēbant**: note the tense.

6. **quaedam**: (neut. pl.) *some-thing*.

7. **futūrus erat**: *was destined to be*; cf. p. 4, l. 3, and p. 16, l. 15.

8. **nātus est**: cf. p. 1, l. 1.

9. **post**: here preposition.

16. **imperātor**: pred. nom.

17. **vērō**: *moreover*.—**et**: omit in translation.—**factus**: render by a clause introduced by "when." —**dīcitur**: cf. p. 30, l. 8.

21. **omnia**: *everything*.—**lūdō**: lūdus, -ī, M., *school*.—**trādēbantur**: *i.e. was taught*; lit. what?

nīs vir quīdam, cui erat maximum praedium longinquum,
hominem condūcere voluit, quī terminōs praediī suī cōnsti-
tueret; ac Vasingtō, quī hanc quoque artem didicerat, ab
eō conductus in praedium missus est.

LESSON 28

Experiences on the Frontier

5   In praediō, quod īnstar prōvinciae erat, habitābant agri-
colae paucī, at multī Indī. Hīc Vasingtō mēnsēs multōs
per silvās et montēs longē iter fēcit, ac saepe equō vectus
rīvōs et flūmina trānsiit; noctū autem solēbat sub caelō
prope ignem humī iacēre, quod casās colōnōrum nōn amā-
10 bat. Ōlim cum ita sōpītus iacēret, subitō ignis in foenum
cecidit, ex quō lectus eius factus erat; quō ex perīculō ipse
tamen servātus est ab agricolā quōdam, quī tum vigilābat.

  Trēs annōs in praediō morātus est Vasingtō, ibique mōrēs
Indōrum cōgnōscere coepit; quārē, ubi domum ūndēvīgintī
15 annōs nātus rediit, ā lēgātō Virginiae tribūnus mīlitum fac-
tus est: nam Virginiā tōtā reliquīsque prōvinciīs colōnī arbi-
trābantur bellum cum Gallīs mox gerendum esse. Britannī
enim multī iam trānsierant montēs cōnsēderantque in valli-
bus, quae a Gallīs prius explōrātae erant; quibus rēbus

2. **terminōs**: terminus, -ī, M.,
boundary.

3. **hanc . . . artem**: *i.e.* of
surveying.

6. **hīc**: the adverb.

8. **autem**: *moreover*.

9. **humī**: cf. p. 7, l. 4 — **amā-
bat**: *fancy*; for other meanings of
this word, see the Vocab.

10. **foenum**: foenum, -ī, N.,
straw.

11. **ex quō**: (*out*) *of which*. —
quō ex perīculō: for word order,
cf. eā in terrā, p. 6, l. 3.

14. **ūndēvīgintī annōs nātus**:
at nineteen years of age, lit. *hav-
ing been born nineteen years*.

15. **tribūnus mīlitum**: *a major*.

16. **Virginiā tōtā**: *throughout
all Virginia*. The prep. in is often
omitted when the abl. is modified
by tōtus.

Gallī commōtī, cum hanc regiōnem dīmittere nōllent, ca-
stella complūra ibi pōnēbant, quae Britannōs arcērent.

LESSON 29

A Dangerous Mission

Quamquam spēs pācis iam paene sublāta erat, lēgātus
Virginiae cōnstituit tamen nūntium mittere, sī ūllō modō
5 rēs sine bellō compōnī possent. Itaque Vasingtō, sine
morā dēlēctus quī hanc rem difficilem tractāret, paucīs cum
comitibus per silvās fortiter profectus est; cumque montēs
quoque trānsīsset, Indīs quibusdam ad concilium vocātīs
persuāsit ut ad Gallōrum castra sē sequerentur.
10 Quō ubi perventum est, Gallī nūntium cōmiter accēpē-
runt, respondērunt tamen sē numquam nisi bellō coāctōs
ex illīs fīnibus discessūrōs. Quārē Vasingtō, quī Gallōrum
cōpiās maximās summā sollicitūdine animadverterat, do-
mum statim properāre coepit; cum vērō ad montēs per-
15 ventum esset, impedīmentīs relictīs, ūnō cum comite et
duce Indō etiam celerius prōgressus est.
Via scīlicet erat ipsa perīculōsa (nam hiems iam erat):
alterum autem fuit perīculum maius; colōnīs enim inimī-
cus erat dux. Quī ōlim, cum advesperāsceret, tēlum subitō

1. **cum . . . nōllent**: translate
by a participial phrase.

2. **pōnēbant**: note the tense.—
arcērent: note the mood.

4. **sī**: (*if*) *perchance*.

5. **compōnī**: compōnō, 3, -po-
suī, -positus, *settle*.

6. **tractāret**: note the mood.

8. **Indīs**: cf. the note on **per-
suādēre**, p. 23, l. 9. — **vocātīs**:
modifier of **Indīs**.

11. **nisi**: introducing the part.
coāctōs.

13. **cōpiās**: *stores*, or *supplies*.
— **sollicitūdine**: sollicitūdō, -inis,
F., *anxiety*.

14. **vērō**: *and*.

16. **duce**: *guide*.

18. **alterum**: *another*; contrast
the commoner meaning of **alter**
on p. 34, l. 1. — **colōnīs**: construe
with **inimīcus**.

in Vasingtōnem mīsit. Quō factō, colōnus alter Indum in-
terficere volēbat. At Vasingtō, quī tēlō vulnerātus nōn
erat, hominem discēdere incolumem passus est ; iam autem
nōn sōlum interdiū sed noctū quoque iter faciendum
5 arbitrābātur, quod perīculum sentiēbat maximum esse.

LESSON 30

A Dangerous Mission (*Continued*)

Paulō post ad flūmen magnum perventum est ; quod
cum rate trānsīrent, Vasingtō forte in aquam frīgidam
cecidit, ūnāque cum comite in īnsulā parvā morārī coāctus
est, dōnec diēs postera illūxit : tum dēmum per glaciem,
10 quae in flūmine natābat, summō cum perīculō ad rīpam
alteram ambō vēnērunt. Deinde, equō ab Indīs emptō,
facilius fēcērunt iter, et postrēmō incolumēs domum pervē-
nērunt. Ubi lēgātus, cum dē pertināciā Gallōrum certior
factus esset, molestē ferēns illōs tam audācter respondisse,
15 Vasingtōnem iussit mīlitēs trāns montēs dūcere ad castella
eīsdem in locīs pōnenda, ē quibus ipse modo redierat.

Interim colōnī aliī, ē prōvinciā clam per montēs pro-
fectī, in illīs regiōnibus longinquīs locum quendam, castrīs
maximē idōneum, audācter occupāvērunt. Quī vērō brevī
20 ā Gallīs sē dēdere coāctī sunt ; nam Vasingtō, quamquam iam
cōgēbat cōpiās atque intellegēbat omnia sibi esse facienda

1. in : *at.*

7. rate : ratis, -is, F., *raft ;*
for syntax, cf. nāvibus, p, 6, l. 10.

10. in : *upon the surface of.* —
natābat : cf. natantēs, p. 3, l. 15.

11. ab : *from.*

12. facilius : *i.e. more com-
fortably.*

13. ubi : cf. ubi, p. 4, l. 14.

14. illōs . . . respondisse : *that
they had replied.*

15. ad castella . . . pōnenda :
to establish forts.

16. quibus : the antecedent is
locīs.

21. sibi : dat. case, this being
the regular agency construction
with the gerundive. The whole

ut hīc locus dēfenderētur, cīvibus tamen suīs satis mātūrē
auxilium ferre nōn potuit.

LESSON 31

The Beginning of the French and Indian War

At paucīs post diēbus, per loca aspera summō labōre
prōgressus, in hostium fīnēs pervēnit Vasingtō, castraque
5 ibi parva posuit.   Deinde paulō longius profectus explōrā-
tōrēs cēpit paucōs; tum autem certior factus Gallōs Indōsque
adesse plūrimōs, iterum sē in castra recēpit.   Quō factō
Gallī, cum sociīs Indīs celeriter cōnsecūtī, in castra impetum
fēcērunt ācerrimum; sed postrēmō, colōnīs multās hōrās frū-
10 strā oppugnātīs, ē castrīs Vasingtōnem cum armīs eā con-
diciōne exīre passī sunt, ut exercitum ex hīs fīnibus statim
redūceret.   Ille igitur invītus domum iter facere coāctus est.

Posterō autem annō ē Britanniā legiōnēs complūrēs mis-
sae sunt ad Gallōs expellendōs ex eīs locīs, unde illī modo
15 Vasingtōnem discēdere coēgerant.   Imperātor factus erat
vir Britannicus, nōmine Braddoc, dux fortis, quī tamen cum
Indīs bellum gerere nesciēbat.   Crēdēbat vērō sē omnia
scīre, neque ā Vasingtōne aut reliquīs colōnīs sē monērī
volēbat; quārē, cum ad bellum profectus esset, quamquam
20 multa mīlia passuum per viās perīculōsās silvāsque maximās
iter legiōnibus erat faciendum, explōrātōrēs praemittere

phrase may be rendered freely
*that he must exert himself to the
utmost for the defense*, etc.
    1. **suīs**: modifier of **cīvibus**.
    8. **Indīs**: here as adj.
    10. **eā condiciōne . . . ut**: *on
these terms, that*.
    12. **invītus**: cf. the note on
laetus, p. 2, l. 16.

    14. **ad Gallōs expellendōs**: pur-
pose clause; cf. the similar phrase
on p. 34, l. 15.
    17. **gerere**: cf. the infinitive
with **nesciēbat**, p. 8, l. 2. —
omnia: *all (about the subject)*.
    18. **sē**: omit in translation.
    21. **legiōnibus**: for syntax, cf.
sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

nōluit, nec grātiās colōnīs ēgit, quī operam suam ultrō
pollicitī sunt : nam nē cōnspectum quidem legiōnum suā-
rum putābat Indōs esse lātūrōs.

LESSON 32

Braddock's Defeat

Postrēmō vērō, cum in fīnēs hostium longē iter factum
5 esset, subitō in silvīs Indōrum ululātus est audītus ; tum
tēla plūrima inmissa sunt, ac mīlitēs Britannicī, quī ho-
stem nūllum vidēbant, undique cadere coepērunt. Colōnī
interim in silvam celeriter inrūpērunt, arboribusque inter-
positīs cum Indīs ācriter pugnābant ; at imperātor legiōnēs
10 in viā habēbat īnstrūctās, nec suōs locō cēdere passus est,
quamquam caedem maximam fierī sentiēbat. Itaque illī
paene omnēs aut interfectī sunt aut vulnerātī, ac Braddoc
ipse vulnus accēpit, ex quō paulō post mortuus est. Va-
singtō mīlitēs perterritōs prīmō cohortārī cōnātus, imperā-
15 tōre vulnerātō exercitūs reliquiās ad castra redūxit, ubi
impedīmenta maxima relicta erant. Ibi, conciliō convocātō,
tribūnī centuriōnēsque celeriter ē fīnibus hostium sibi dis-
cēdendum esse statuērunt.

Quō proeliō admoneor ut dīcam dē incommodō maximō,
20 quod ā Rōmānīs acceptum est apud lacum Trasumennum,

7. **vidēbant :** we would say
"*could* see."

8. **arboribus . . . interpositīs :**
freely, *getting behind trees* ; lit.
what?

10. **habēbat :** *kept.* — **suōs :** cf.
suōrum, page 30, l. 9. — **locō :**
from their places ; cf. the note on
p. 7, l. 4.

12. **aut . . . aut :** *either . . . or.*

14. **imperātōre vulnerātō :** trans-
late by a phrase introduced by
"after."

17. **discēdendum esse :** imper-
sonal use of the gerundive.

19. **ut :** *to.*

20. **apud :** *at.* — **lacum Trasu-
mennum :** in north central Italy.

cum Hannibal, dux Poenōrum, ibi īnsidiās clam fēcisset.
Secundum lītus est via angusta, tum agrī apertī. In locō
apertō Hannibal castra posuit, mīlitēs autem multōs in
latebrīs prope viam collocāvit. Tum, cum Rōmānī temerē
5 viā angustā ad Hannibalis castra versus iter facerent, subitō
Poenī ē latebrīs ērūpērunt et hostīs perterritōs in lacum
compulērunt.

LESSON 33

Later Events of the War

Etsī in proeliō, dē quō suprā dīxī, Gallī victōriam erant
adeptī Britannīque ex illīs regiōnibus celerrimē sē recēpe-
10 rant, Vasingtōnis tamen virtūtem omnēs laudābant. Quem
igitur colōnī, cōpiīs tōtā ex prōvinciā coāctīs, summum
fēcērunt ducem et in montēs cum exercitū ad hostīs arcen-
dōs mīsērunt; ubi bellum cum Gallīs eōrumque sociīs mēn-
sēs multōs fēlīciter gessit: tribusque post annīs, cum iam
15 imperātōrēs complūrēs ē Britanniā ad Americam missī
essent, ūnā cum lēgātīs aliīs legiōnēs quāsdam ille ē Penn-
sylvēniā trāns montēs dūxit atque hostēs ex eīs locīs discē-
dere coēgit, ubi illī quondam Britannīs tantum dētrīmentum
intulerant.

20 Quō incommodō acceptō, Gallī tamen minimē animō
dēmissī bellum alibī ācriter gessērunt; nam Indī, quī erant
paene omnēs amīcī, eōs omnibus modīs adiuvābant. Sed

---

2. in locō apertō: freely, *in
the open*; lit. what ?

5. viā angustā: for syntax,
cf. the note on quā, p. 5, l. 13;
here the abl. may be rendered
"along."

8. erant adeptī: adipīscor, 3,
adeptus sum, *gain*, or *secure*.

10. quem: not relative in the
English translation.

18. Britannīs: dat. case; trans-
late "upon."

20. animō dēmissī: lit. *cast
down in mind*, *i.e. discouraged.*
The abl. case here expresses speci-
fication.

postrēmō, multīs dētrīmentīs frāctī, pācem petiērunt; quam mox adeptī sunt, Canadā aliīsque regiōnibus Britannīs trāditīs.

Vasingtō interim ab exercitū domum redierat, ubi in mā-
5 trimōnium dūxit mātrōnam quandam, quae Marta appellā-
bātur; tum annōs paucōs in praediō suō mānsit ōtiōsus.

LESSON 34

The Outbreak of the Revolution

Nunc mihi dīcendum est dē bellō, quod colōnī paucīs post annīs cum Britannīs ipsīs gessērunt. Diū rēx senā-
tusque Britannōrum ā prōvinciīs vectīgālia quaedam exigere
10 erant cōnātī, etsī hae lēgēs lātae erant in conciliō, in quō suffrāgium ferre Americānō nūllī licēbat. Id colōnī molestē ferēbant; ac postrēmō, cum iam tanta iniūria nōn diūtius ferenda vidērētur, omnibus ex prōvinciīs in ūnum locum virī dēlēctī, in eīs Vasingtō, ad cōnsilium commūne capiendum
15 convocātī sunt. Hī, conciliō habitō, litterās ad rēgem Britannōrum mīsērunt, quibus postulābant ut colōnīs iūra eadem concēderentur, quae domī cīvēs reliquī obtinēbant. Quibus litterīs acceptīs, rēx īrātus nōn sōlum iūra concēdere

---

1. petiērunt: *i.e.* petīvērunt.
—quam: *this* (noun).

2. adeptī sunt: cf. the note on p. 37, l. 8. — Britannīs: dat. case.

6. ōtiōsus: translate by another part of speech.

9. vectīgālia: vectīgālia, -ium, N., *taxes.*

10. lēgēs: lēx, lēgis, F., *measure*, or *law.*

11. suffrāgium ferre: *cast a vote* (suffrāgium, -ī, N.).—id: *this* (*state of affairs*).

13. ferenda: *bearable*; lit. what? — in ūnum locum: with convocātī sunt, l. 15.

14. in eīs: cf. in, p. 26, l. 7. — cōnsilium . . . conciliō: contrast the meaning of the two words.

15. litterās: for the force of the plural, see the Vocab.

16. quibus: *in which*; strictly, abl. of means.

17. obtinēbant: freely, *enjoyed.*

nōluit, sed etiam in Americam mīsit mīlitēs multōs, quī ā
colōnīs audāciae poenās repeterent.

Apud oppidum parvum, nōmine Lexingtōnem, prīmum
pugnātum est, magnā cum caede Britannōrum ; nam agri-
5 colae, murīs interpositīs, tēla plūrima inmīsērunt in hostēs,
quī ita sex mīlia passuum sē recipere coāctī sunt ad urbem,
unde paulō ante profectī erant. Quibus rēbus factīs, con-
cilium idem, quod ad rēgem litterās mīserat, quaerere coepit
imperātōrem, quī omnīs cōpiās Americānās dūceret. Cī-
10 vēs scīlicet memoriā tenēbant rēs gestās Vasingtōnis in
bellō, quod paucīs ante annīs cum Gallīs Indīsque gestum
erat ; quārē ille summō assēnsū omnium dux brevī factus
est.

LESSON 35

Operations about Boston

Sed antequam Vasingtō in Britanniam Novam pervenīre
15 potuit, iterum ācriter pugnātum est in quōdam colle, ubi
posteā Americānī columnam maximam eōrum nōmine
statuērunt, quī ibi prō lībertāte vītam suam largītī sunt.
Eō in proeliō Britannī vīcērunt ; sed nē hostēs quidem satis
laudāre poterant virtūtem colōnōrum, quī impetum veterā-
20 nōrum tam audācter excēperant.

Vasingtō, postquam illūc pervēnit, hostīs mēnsēs multōs

2. audāciae : *for* (lit. *of*) *their
insubordination.*

3. apud : *near.*—prīmum : the
adverb.

6. ita : *i.e.* under a hot fire.

7. concilium : (*deliberative*)
body.

9. cīvēs : (*his*) *fellow-citizens.*

10. memoriā tenēbant : *i.e. had
not forgotten.*

16. columnam : columna, -ae,
F.,   *monument.* — nōmine :   *in
honor.*

17. statuērunt : *i.e.* posuērunt.
— vītam : translate as though the
noun were plural.

18. eō : modifier of proeliō.

21. Vasingtō, postquam : cf.
the note on hostēs, cum, p. 20,
l. 17. — illūc : adv., *thither.*

COLUMNA

In the picture is shown a monument about a hundred feet in height, erected at Rome in 104 A.D., in honor of the emperor Trajan. On its sides are sculptured scenes descriptive of one of Trajan's important campaigns, a fact which makes this column a very important source of information about the details of Roman military life.

intrā mūnītiōnēs Bostōnis continuit. Tum, cum eius cōpiae maiōrēs factae essent, subitō noctū prope urbem clam collem quendam occupāvit, atque ibi vāllum summā celeritāte exstrūxit ; quīn etiam ubi diēs illūxit duxque hostium mūnīti-

5 ōnēs novās animadvertit, vehementer commōtus ille : " Hī colōnī ūnā nocte," inquit, " tanta opera perfēcērunt, quanta meus exercitus mēnse tōtō perficere nōn potest." Hōc vāllō exstrūctō, cum cotīdiē tēla plūrima ballistīs Americanō-rum in urbem mitterentur, hostēs brevī nāvēs cōnscendere

10 atque ē portū fugere coāctī sunt.

Colōnī adhūc bellum gesserant ut iūra cīvium Britan-nicōrum sibi concēderentur ; iam vērō, cum neque rēx neque senātus eōs audīre vellet, dē Britanniā dēscīscere novamque condere rem pūblicam cōnstituērunt.

LESSON 36

The Battles of Long Island and Trenton

15 Interim Britannī Novum Eborācum terrā marīque oppu-gnāre parābant. Haud procul est magna īnsula, quae Longa appellātur. Ibi ē nāvibus ēgressī hostēs cum Americānīs ācriter pugnāvērunt. Quō proeliō victus Vasingtō nōn sōlum ex īnsulā discēdere sed etiam Novum Eborācum

20 dīmittere coāctus est. Hīs rēbus factīs, colōnī omnēs animō

6. **tanta . . . quanta:** *such . . . as.*

7. **potest:** *could,* a common idiomatic use of the pres. indic. of this verb. — **hōc vāllō,** etc.: the abl. absol. may be translated by a "when" clause, and the following words by a participial phrase.

8. **ballistīs:** abl. of means.

12. **cum:** causal. — **neque . . . neque:** *neither . . . nor.*

13. **dē:** *from.*—**dēscīscere:** dē-scīscō, 3, -scīvī, -scītum est, *sepa-rate.*

14. **rem pūblicam:** *common-wealth.*

15. **terrā marīque:** *by land and sea,* the abl. expressing place where.

20. **animō . . . dēmissī:** cf. the note on this same phrase, p. 37, l. 20.

vehementer erant dēmissī; quārē Vasingtō, quamquam tōtō
cum exercitū Britannicō in aciē pugnāre nōn audēbat,
putāvit tamen aliquid sibi faciendum esse, quod spem cīvibus
suīs adferret. Quam facultātem mox nactus est. Nam
5 Britannī, quī invītī cum Americānīs ipsī pugnābant, multōs
Germānōs condūxerant, quī in exercitū stīpendia facerent;
quōrum Germānōrum pars quaedam haud procul ā Novō
Eborācō in hībernīs iam collocāta erat. Quō cōgnitō, Va-
singtō noctū profectus, etsī erat tempestās maxima flūmen-
10 que quoddam trānseundum erat, ad eōrum castra versus
audācter iter fēcit; quō in itinere duo hominēs frīgore periē-
runt. Hostēs, quī nihil suspicābantur diemque fēstum
celebrābant, ab Americānīs facillimē captī sunt. Tum
dēmum colōnī iterum spem magnam habēre coepērunt.

LESSON 37

The Retreat from Trenton

15 Paulō post Vasingtō, cum ausus esset iterum prōgredī ad
eundem locum ubi Germānōs illōs cēperat, perīculum adiit
maximum. Nam subitō aderant Britannī plūrimī, nec
propter natantem glaciem flūmen trānsīre Americānī pote-
rant. Tum imperātor Britannicus, quī Cornivallis appellā-
20 bātur, cum Vasingtōnem crēderet iam dēmum circumventum
esse, glōriāns, "Crās," inquit, "ā mē iste vulpēs capiētur."

2. aciē: *regular engagement.*
4. adferret: note the mood.
—quam facultātem: freely, *an opportunity for which.*
5. invītī: *with reluctance.* — ipsī: *in person.*
9. erat: *there was.*
12. diem . . . fēstum: *a holiday* (fēstus, -a, -um).

16. illōs: *i.e.* those mentioned in l. 7.
20. cum . . . crēderet: translate by a participial phrase; so also on the next page, l. 11. In Latin the pres. part. is used much less freely than in English.
21. crās: adv., *to-morrow.* — vulpēs (-is, c.): *fox.*

At Vasingtō suōs iussit sub vesperum in castrīs ignīs
facere, ut cotīdiē solēbant, cum interim paucī maximō cum
strepitū circum vāllum opus fēstīnārent; quod eō cōnsiliō
iussit, ut Britannī arbitrārentur ibi impetum hostium excipere
5 Americānōs parāre.   Nocte tamen intempestā colōnī, sine
strepitū ūllō ex castrīs ēgressī, viīs dēviīs iter fēcērunt cir-
cum exercitum Britannicum, atque in agrōs apertōs inco-
lumēs pervēnērunt.   Itaque māne imperātor Britannōrum
" vulpem istum " invenīre nōn potuit; Vasingtō enim etiam
10 tum oppidum oppugnābat alterum, ubi quīdam Britannī aliī
castra posuerant. Quārē Cornivallis, cum sentīret sē ēlūsum
esse, celeriter sē recēpit, ut impedīmenta cōnservāret sua,
quae ad pugnam profectus post tergum longē relīquerat.

LESSON 38

Burgoyne's Campaign

Posterō annō alius imperātor Britannicus ex Canadā per
15 prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem legiōnēs quāsdam dūcere
cōnātus est.   Cui omnia prīmō fēlīciter ēvēnērunt; Tae-
conderōga enim capta est ūnā cum cōpiīs omnibus, quās
eō Americānī comportāverant.   Cum autem Germānī
multī ē Britannicō exercitū in proximam prōvinciam
20 missī essent ut equōs aliāsque cōpiās colōnōrum raperent,

---

2. **ut**: *as.* — **solēbant**: sc.
facere. — **paucī**: here used as a
(masc. pl.) noun.

3. **vāllum**: of course, of their
own camp. — **fēstīnārent**: fēstīnō,
1, *hurry along.* — **quod**: *i.e.* id
quod, *a thing which.* — **cōnsiliō**:
design.

10. **oppugnābat**:   note   the
tense.

13. **ad pugnam**: *for a battle
(merely)*, *i.e.* not for a campaign.

16. **cui**: *for whom*. — **omnia**:
note the gender.

18. **eō**: *there*, lit. *thither*; cf.
the note on **quō**, p. 8, l. 14.

agricolae, quī ā pueritiā arma ferre solitī erant, undique
statim convēnērunt; Germānīsque magnō cum dētrīmentō
ex illā prōvinciā discēdere coāctīs, imperātōrem ipsum mox
ācerrimē adortī sunt Americānī, quōrum in diēs cōpiae
5 maiōrēs fīēbant.

Quō proeliō victī hostēs, quī iam omnibus ex partibus
obsidēbantur, in Canadam redīre prīmō frūstrā cōnātī,
postrēmō Americānīs in dēditiōnem vēnērunt. Tum sci-
licet colōnī omnēs ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, quod perīculum
10 maximum effūgisse vidēbantur. Sed alibī hostēs ācriter
gerēbant bellum; cuius ēventus adhūc maximē dubius erat.

LESSON 39

Valley Forge

Dum geruntur haec, dē quibus modo dīxī, Britannī Phi-
ladelphiam oppugnāre parābant, quae urbs tum erat caput
reī pūblicae Americānae. Unde Vasingtō, cuius cōpiae
15 numerō erant multō īnferiōrēs, hostēs nūllō modō arcēre
poterat; quārē senātus ad aliud oppidum sē recēpit, ac
Philadelphia nūllō dēfendente ā Britannīs capta est.

4. **in diēs**: *from day to day*.

6. **omnibus ex partibus**: *on all sides*.

8. **Americānīs**: dat. case.

9. **quod**: conjunction.

10. **vidēbantur**: sc. **sibi**, *i.e. they seemed to themselves*; freely, *they thought that they*, etc.

11. **gerēbant**: note the tense. — **maximē dubius**: by the prefixing of **maximē**, an adj. (or adv.) is raised to the superlative degree.

12. **haec**: neut. pl.

13. **quae urbs**: *the city which*; lit. what?

15. **numerō**: for syntax, cf. **animō**, p. 37, l. 20. — **multō**: (*by*) *much*.

16. **senātus**: *Congress*.

17. **nūllō**: supplying the missing abl. of **nēmō**. — **dēfendente**: sc. **eam** (*i.e.* **Philadelphiam**). For the pres. part., being active in meaning, may take an object even when used, as here, in the abl. absol. construction.

Paucīs post diēbus circiter quīnque mīlibus passuum ab
eādem urbe ācriter pugnātum est, sed tum quoque Vasingtō
discessit īnferior. Quī igitur, cum hiems iam adesset, mīli-
tēs suōs in hībernīs collocāvit in quādam valle, ubi mēnsēs
5 multōs summā cum inopiā omnium rērum necessāriārum
miserrimē vīctum est. Nam nōn sōlum in aerāriō nūlla
erat pecūnia, sed in castrīs mox frūmentum quoque dēficere
coepit; mīlitēsque miserī, quibus erant saga nūlla, saepe
noctēs tōtās prope ignem vigilāre coāctī sunt. Quīn etiam
10 trāditum est, cum agmen in hīberna iter faceret, multōrum
pedēs nūdōs in nive vestīgia cruenta fēcisse.

Sed iam dēmum ex Eurōpā sociī Americānīs auxilium
ferre parābant; multī enim etiam aliīs ex gentibus mo-
lestē ferēbant Britannōs iūra cīvium colōnīs concēdere
15 nōluisse.

LESSON 40

Help from France

Ita hōc ferē tempore factum erat ut Gallī, quī Britannōs
minimē amābant, cum Americānīs facerent foedus atque
trāns mare imperātōrem cum classe mitterent, quī colōnōs

---

1. quīnque mīlibus passuum:
abl. of degree of difference. — ab:
(*away*) *from.*

2. pugnātum est: *a battle was
fought;* lit. what?

3. cum: *as,* or *since.*

5. cum: freely, *under the
stress of.*

6. miserrimē: miserē (adv.),
wretchedly. — vīctum est: imper-
sonal pass. (from vīvō). — aerāriō:
aerārium, -rī, N., *public treasury.*

8. quibus: dat. case; cf. cui,
p. 11, l. 2.

10. multōrum: as (masc.) noun;
cf. multī, l. 13.

12. Americānīs: indirect obj.
with auxilium ferre.

13. aliīs ex gentibus: *i.e. of
other nationalities.*

16. factum erat: *it had come
to pass.*

17. cum: preposition. — foedus:
foedus, -eris, N., *alliance.*

adiuvāret. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, Britannī illī, quī Phila-
delphiae cōnsēderant, cum sentīrent flūmine classe obsessō
sē undique oppugnārī posse, celeriter sēsē coniūnxērunt cum
cōpiīs aliīs, quae in prōvinciā proximā collocātae erant. Ita
5 Philadelphia rursus in Americānōrum potestātem pervēnit.

Adhūc Britannī crēdiderant colōnōs facile vincī posse:
sed iam dēmum sēnsērunt sē rem difficillimam tractāre;
cumque in prōvinciīs, quae ad merīdiem spectant, colōnī
rārī multīs cum servīs in praediīs maximīs habitārent, in
10 eās cōnstituērunt exercitūs suōs mittere, sī ibi rem gerere
fēlīcius possent. Nec vērō eōs cōnsilium fefellit; nam
Gorgia ūnā cum aliīs quibusdam prōvinciīs brevī est occu-
pāta, et ubicumque in aciē pugnātum est, Americānī victī
sunt. Quibus dētrīmentīs minimē animō dēmissī, colōnī
15 iam manūs parvās coēgērunt, quae in silvīs palūdibusque
latēbant, dōnec occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae nancī-
scerentur; tum subitō impetū factō aut capiēbant Britannōs
aut eōs in fugam dabant.

LESSON 41

Benedict Arnold

Dum haec geruntur, in prōvinciā Noveborācēnsī quīdam
20 imperātor Americānus, nōmine Arnoldius, dux audāx ac

1. **quibus rēbus**: *this.* — **Phila-**
delphiae: locative case.

2. **flūmine ... obsessō**: trans-
late by a conditional clause.

3. **oppugnārī**: note the last
letter of the word. — **posse**: *could.*
— **sēsē**: *i.e.* sē.

8. **cum**: *since*, or *inasmuch
as.*

10. **eās**: referring to **prōvinciīs**,
l. 8. — **sī**: cf. sī, p. 33, l. 4.

11. **nec vērō**, etc.: freely, *and
the plan* WAS *successful*; lit. what?

13. **ubicumque**: conjunction,
wherever.

15. **manūs**: *companies*, or
bands.

16. **latēbant**: cf. the note on
rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17. — **reī bene
gerendae** (gen. case): freely, *suc-
cessful action.* — **nancīscerentur**:
translate the subjunctive "could."

strēnuus, Britannīs parābat prōdere castra, quae colōnī in
rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis posuerant, quōque ab Americānīs
comportāta erant omnia, quae ad bellum necessāria erant;
nam castra nātūrā locī mūnītissima erant, ac fūnis quoque
5 ferreus ibi trāns flūmen ductus erat, nē nāvēs hostium
longius adversō flūmine nāvigāre possent.

Britannī, cum iam diēs prōditiōnis appropinquāret, nūn-
tium mīsērunt, quī ducem convenīret Americānum, litte-
rāsque ab eō reportāret.   Incolumis ad Arnoldium pervēnit
10 nūntius;   sed cum ad Britannōs redīret, ab Americānīs
tribus captus est : quī captīvum sine morā in castra pro-
xima dēdūxērunt, quamquam ille miser omnibus modīs ab
eīs salūtem impetrāre cōnātus est.   Quā dē rē certior fac-
tus, Arnoldius ad Britannōs quam celerrimē perfūgit; quō-
15 rum in exercitū imperātor brevī factus est.

Nūntius interim, causā cōgnitā, capitis est damnātus;
litterās enim, quās manū ducis Americānī scrīptās ferēbat,
dēlēre nōn potuerat, antequam in castra ā colōnīs tribus
ductus est.   Arnoldius, cum contrā suōs cīvēs ācerrimē bel-
20 lum gessisset, postrēmō apud Britannōs mortuus est, etiam
eīs ipsīs invīsus quōs tantā perfidiā adiuvāre cōnātus erat.

1. **castra, quae**, etc.: namely,
West Point.

2. **quōque** :   *i.e.*   quō + que,
and into which; for quō, cf. the
note on p. 8, l. 14.

3. **omnia**: note the gender.
— **ad** : *for*.

4. **nātūrā** : note the case. —
fūnis (-is, M.) : *chain*.

5. **ferreus (-a, -um)** : *iron*.
— **ductus erat** : *had been stretched*.

7. **prōditiōnis** : prōditiō, -ōnis,
F., *betrayal*; cf. the verb prōdō,
l. 1.

12. **ille miser** : *he, poor fellow*.

14. **quam celerrimē** : *as quickly
as possible*. — **quōrum in exercitū** :
and in their army.

16. **cōgnitā** :   *tried*. — **capitis** :
i.e. to death.   The charge or
(less often) the penalty may be
expressed, as here, by the genitive.

17. **manū** : abl. of means with
scrīptās.

19. **cum . . . gessisset** : *after
waging*. — **suōs** : observe the em-
phatic position (cf. the note on
suum, p. 11, l. 6).

21. **eīs ipsīs** : dat. case; con-
strue with **invīsus**.

LESSON 42

A Roman who fought against his Country

Quibus rēbus admoneor ut pauca dīcam dē Coriolānō,
clārō duce Rōmānō; quī imperātor fortissimus, ā cīvibus
iniūriā damnātus, ab urbe discessit sēque coniūnxit cum
hostibus, quī anteā bellum Rōmānīs saepe intulerant.

5   Dēnuō mox bellō indictō, hostibus prīmō rēs undique
fēlīciter ēvēnērunt, Rōmānīque lēgātōs pācis petendae causā
ad Coriolānum mittere coāctī sunt.   Quī autem, propter
iniūriam ā cīvibus inlātam adhūc īrātus, asperius respondit
lēgātōsque maestissimōs domum dīmīsit; quīn etiam īdem
10 nūntiī ā senātū iterum missī nē in castra receptī quidem sunt.

Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, Rōmānī graviter permōtī etiam
sacerdōtēs mittere cōnstituērunt, sī ab eīs saltem Coriolānī
animus ferōx flectī posset; cum vērō nē hī quidem quicquam
impetrāre potuissent, tum māter ipsa uxorque Coriolānī ūnā
15 cum aliīs mātrōnīs complūribus ad hostium castra maestae
profectae sunt.

Quō ubi perventum est, mātris verbīs vehementer com-
mōtus Coriolānus pollicitus est sē sine morā cum exercitū ē
fīnibus Rōmānōrum discessūrum.   Posteā apud hostīs mul-

1. pauca : *a few* (*words*).
2. quī : *this* (adj.).
3. iniūriā : abl. used adverbi-
ally. — urbe : *the city*, *i.e.* Rome,
often thus designated as being *the*
city par excellence.
4. Rōmānīs : dat. case.
5. dēnuō : *i.e.* iterum.
6. pācis petendae causā : *i.e.*
ad pācem petendam.   Literally
causā means " for the sake of."
8. asperius : ˙*rather harshly*
(asperē : adv., *harshly*) ; for the

rendering of the comparative, cf.
the note on **maximum**, p. 13,
l. 11.

9. lēgātōs : *envoys* or *ambas-
sadors*. — maestissimōs : pred. adj.
— īdem : pl.
13. ferōx (-ōcis, adj.) : *fierce*.
— flectī : flectō, 3, flexī, flexus,
influence. — vērō : *and*. — quic-
quam : *any concession*, lit. *any-
thing*.
15. maestae : *in* (*the garb of*)
mourning.

tōs annōs vīxit, nec libenter; nam trāditum est eum esse
solitum dīcere senī miserrimum esse exsilium.

LESSON 43

The Surrender of Cornwallis

Sed ut ad Americānōs redeāmus, ab eīs diū ac variā for-
tūnā bellum cum Britannīs gestum est. At paulātim oppida
5 prōvinciārum, quae ad merīdiem spectant, rursus in pote-
stātem Americānōrum venērunt, ac Cornivallis, quī iam ibi
bellum gerēbat, in Virginiam postrēmō sē recipere coāctus
est; quā in prōvinciā summā cum licentiā rapere et agere
coepit omnia.

10 Vasingtō autem iam aderat cum exercitū sociīsque Gal-
licīs; et Cornivallis in urbe mūnītissimā, quae Eborācopolis
appellātur, undique obsessus, oppugnātiōnem duōs mēnsēs
aegrē sustinuit. Tum hostēs, cum frūstrā ērumpere cōnātī
essent parsque mūnītiōnum ab Americānīs esset expugnāta,
15 sē suaque omnia Vasingtōnī dēdidērunt. Cornivallis autem
ipse, nē suīs oculīs īgnōminiam exercitūs vidēret, eō diē sē
esse aegrum simulābat, atque in tabernāculō, dōnec dēditiō
est facta, maestus morātus est.

Hāc victōriā nūntiātā, Americānī ecfrēnātē gaudēbant;
20 ac senātus in templum convocātus dīs grātiās maximās ēgit.

1. vīxit: from vīvō. — nec
libenter: cf. the note on p. 17,
l. 8.

2. senī: *for an old man;* senī
is from senex.

3. ut . . . redeāmus: *to return.*

6. ibi: *in that region.*

8. licentiā: licentia, -ae, F.,
lawlessness. — rapere et agere:
freely, *rob and plunder;* strictly,

steal (goods) *and drive off* (live
stock).

11. mūnītissimā: *strongly for-
tified.*

13. hostēs: *i.e.* the English.

16. nē . . . vidēret: freely,
in order to avoid seeing.

16. suīs: cf. again suum, p. 11,
l. 6.

20. dīs: cf. p. 14, l. 19.

MŪNĪTIŌNĒS

Above may be seen the remains of a Roman camp, showing still very well the nature of its defenses ; namely, a *vāllum*, strengthened at short intervals by small towers.

Omnēs enim sentiēbant Britannīs pācem iam dēmum esse
petendam.

LESSON 44

Washington retires to Private Life

Pāce factā, Carletō, dux Britannicus, quī tum Eborācum
Novum praesidiō tenēbat, cum exercitū nāvēs cōnscendere
5 domumque redīre ā rēge iussus est.

. Illam in urbem Vasingtō lēgātōs suōs paulō post convo-
cāvit. Cumque pauca locūtus eōs valēre iussisset, lēgātī,
quī eō duce annōs circiter octō stīpendia fēcerant, lacrimās
nōn potuērunt diūtius continēre, sed flentēs imperātōrem
10 dextrā tenuērunt. Lēgātīs dīmissīs, Vasingtō, ut imperium
suum dēpōneret, ad urbem statim profectus est, ubi senātus
tum habēbātur.

Cum iter faceret, multitūdinēs maximae ex oppidīs omni-
bus ēgressae flōrēs in viā sparsērunt; et inter fausta nōmina
15 etiam pater patriae est appellātus. Sīc prōgressus est usque
ad urbem, ubi eum senātus exspectābat; tum, imperiō dēpo-
sitō, domum sine morā contendit, arbitrātus sē iam in prae-
diō iūre ōtiōsum vīvere posse, sīcut fēcerat, antequam bellum
indictum est.

1. **Britannīs**: cf. the note on
sibi, p. 34, l. 21.

6. **lēgātōs**: *staff officers.*

7. **eōs valēre iussisset**: *had
bidden them (to) fare well* (valeō,
2, valuī).

8. **eō duce**: cf. advenā duce, p.
21, l. 14. — **circiter**: cf. p. 45, l. 1.
— **stīpendia fēcerant**: cf. p. 42,
l. 6.

10. **ut**: *for the purpose (of).*
11. **senātus . . . habēbātur**:

freely, *Congress was . . . in ses-
sion.*

13. **cum**: *as.*

14. **sparsērunt**: spargō, 3,
sparsī, sparsus, *scatter.* — **fausta**:
faustus, -a, -um, *complimentary.*

16. **exspectābat**: note the tense.

17. **arbitrātus**: cf. the note on
veritī, p. 2, l. 17.

18. **iūre**: abl. of iūs, used ad-
verbially; cf. iniūriā, p. 48, l. 3.
— **ōtiōsum**: cf. p. 38, l. 6, note.

LESSON 45

The Father of his Country

Laus maxima Vasingtōnī tribuenda est, quod sē rēgem facere nōluit. Sed eius nōmen manet semperque mānsūrum est in animīs hominum, in aeternitāte temporum, neque aliud umquam ab Americānīs aequē amābitur. Quod ille pater
5 patriae appellātus est, hīc est honor, quī paucīs contigit. Nam abhinc multōs annōs Cicerō ita est vocātus, cum vīcisset cīvīs pessimōs, quī rem pūblicam perdere voluerant; et antīquitus hoc idem cōgnōmen Camillō ā cīvibus grātīs iūre datum est.

10 Nam ille vir Rōmānus, dux fortis clārusque, iniūriā in iūs vocātus, abierat in exsilium, vīvēbatque apud Ardeātēs, cum Gallī plūrimī trāns montēs in Ītaliam subitō profectī, proeliō ācrī vīcērunt Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendērunt. Tum Camillus, conciliō convocātō, Ardeātēs hortātus est ut
15 audācter fīnēs dēfenderent suōs, Rōmānīsque fortiter auxilium ferrent. Itaque, illō duce, oppidānī noctū clam profectī, in quōsdam Gallōs, quī sine custōdiīs in agrō apertō

---

1. laus (laudis, F.): *credit.* — tribuenda est: *is due* (tribuō, 3, tribuī, tribūtus, *give,* or *ascribe*). — quod: *that* (conjunction).

2. mānsūrum est: cf. futūrus erat, p. 31, l. 7.

3. aeternitāte: aeternitās, -ātis, F., *endless extent.* — temporum: *the ages.* — aliud: *(any) other.*

4. aequē: adv., *equally.* — quod: *as for the fact that.*

5. hīc est: *this is;* for the gender, cf. the note on quod, p. 30, l. 6. — paucīs: *(only) a*

few; masc., as noun. — contigit: contingō, 3, -tigī, *fall (to the lot of),* or *happen (to).*

7. perdere: perdō, 3, perdidī, perditus, *ruin.*

8. cōgnōmen: cōgnōmen, -inis, N., *title.* — grātīs: *grateful.*

11. Ardeātēs: *people of Ardea* (a town about twenty miles south of Rome).

12. Gallī: *the Gauls,* a people inhabiting the country now known as France.

13. urbem: cf. the note on urbe, p. 48, l. 3.

humī iacēbant sōpītī, maximō clāmōre fēcērunt impetum,
eōsque in fugam dedērunt.   Ac paulō post reliquī quoque
hostēs, quī in castrīs ad Rōmam morātī erant, ā Camillō
paene ad ūnum occīsī sunt.

3. **ad Rōmam**: *near* (or *at*) *Rome*.   4. **ad ūnum**: cf. p. 4, l. 5.

TALES OF LAND AND SEA

LESSON 46

The Settler's Daughter

In Britanniā Novā quondam agricolae, quī semper im-
petūs timēbant Indōrum, in agrōs cotīdiē sēcum arma ferre
solēbant; ac prope quendam vīcum in colle ēditō castellum
quoque positum erat, quō, sī quandō opus esset, colōnī
5 līberōs uxōrēsque statim dēdūcerent.   Quō ex castellō ōlim
sīgnum subitō datum est Indōs adesse.   Hōc audītō, agri-
colae, equīs in agrīs sine morā relictīs, ad vīllās cucurrērunt,
et mulierēs ac līberōs quam celerrimē in castellum dēdūcere
coepērunt.

10   At vir quīdam, cui erat fīlia tantum, ad castellum cum
eā pervenīre nōn potuit, priusquam Indī in cōnspectum
vēnērunt; itaque puellam parvam in arbore cavā collocā-
vit, nē hostēs eam invenīre possent, ipseque, ut auxilium
cīvibus suīs ferret, per agrōs fortiter contendit.

15   In proeliō, quod est ibi commissum, ab Indīs captī, in
silvās longinquās dēductī sunt agricolae paucī, in eīs ille
vir, dē quō modo dīxī.   Oppidānī scīlicet crēdidērunt fīliam
ūnā cum patre captam esse: sed ille multīs post mēnsibus

---

3. ēditō: ēditus, -a, -um, *high.*
4. quō: cf. quō, p. 47, l. 2.
— sī quandō: *if at any time*, or
whenever. — opus esset: *there
should be need.*
7. sine morā: *i.e. instantly.*

8. quam celerrimē: cf. p. 47,
l. 14.
11. priusquam: *i.e.* antequam.
15. est . . . commissum: *i.e.*
commissum est.
16. in eīs: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

ex Indōrum vīcō clam effūgit; cumque postrēmō domum
pervēnisset neque in oppidō fīliam potuisset invenīre, cīvīs
suōs ad arborem cavam dēdūxit. Ibi reperta sunt ossa
tantum et sagitta ūna.

LESSON 47

The Trials of War

5   Ab hostibus trānsmarīnīs quī ōlim bellum cum colōnīs
Americānīs multōs annōs gessērunt, facinora atrōcia facta
esse dīcuntur plūrima.   Nam cuidam colōnō erant duo
equī pulcherrimī, quōs ille maximā dīligentiā cūrābat; at
imperātor hostium, quī hoc oppidum praesidiō tenēbat,
10 quīque erat omnibus oppidānīs superbiā maximē invīsus,
illōs equōs quondam ad sē dūcī iussit, quod nūntium cum
litterīs ad castra longinqua mittere vellet.   Sed ūnum ex
equīs nēmō posteā vīdit, alterque paucīs post hōrīs in viā
moribundus haud procul repertus est.

15   Praedam quoque ē vīllīs undique rapere solēbant hostēs;
sed eōs quondam duo servī Āfrī callidē ēlūsērunt; post-
quam enim mīlitēs appropinquāre nūntiātum est, hī servī
fidēlēs, tabulā abreptā, argentum dominī celeriter sub aedi-
bus condidērunt.   Ūnus autem ex eīs sub aedibus ar-
20 gentum vix ab alterō accēperat, cum subitō hostēs in
cōnspectum vēnērunt.   Itaque ille, quī suprā stābat, tabu-

---

3. ossa : os, ossis, N., *bone*.

5. trānsmarīnīs : trānsmarī-
nus, -a, -um, *from across the sea.*

6. atrōcia : atrōx, -ōcis, adj.,
dastardly.

7. dīcuntur : note the pl. verb.

10. quīque : *i.e.* quī + que. —
omnibus oppidānīs : dat. case;

construe with invīsus. — superbiā :
abl. of cause.

11. quod . . . vellet : *on the
ground that he wanted.*

16. callidē : adv., *cleverly.*

18. tabulā : tabula, -ae, F., *board.*

21. ille : *the one.* — tabulam :
cf. l. 18.

lam statim dēmīsit, nē quid hostēs suspicārentur; ac servus
alter, quī nūllō modō ēvādere poterat, trīs diēs noctēsque
sub aedibus dīcitur sine aquā cibōve mānsisse.

LESSON 48

The Attempt to surprise Detroit

Postquam bellum, quod ā Britannīs cum Gallīs Indīsque
5 gerēbātur, paene cōnfectum est, multaque castella longin-
qua in potestātem Britannōrum vēnērunt, quīdam rēx
Indōrum, nōmine Pontiac, dux fortis et ācer, castella illa
recipere Britannōsque ita ex eīs regiōnibus expellere sē
posse spērāre coepit; quārē, conciliīs undique convocātīs,
10 Indōs hortātus est ut sē fortiter sequerentur atque hostīs
invīsōs ad ūnum interficerent.

Cum iam ad caedem faciendam Indī omnia expedīrent,
ē castellō quōdam mulier forte ēgressa barbarōs in taber-
nāculīs arma parāre animadvertit. Quā rē nūntiātā, lēgātus
15 Britannicus, quī ibi praeerat, nihil tamen verēbātur, dōnec
puella Inda, quae eum amābat, castellum maesta intrāvit,
cōnsiliumque tōtum Indōrum ostendit. Tum vērō castel-
lum custōdiīs maiōribus firmātum est, nec nimis mātūrē;
nam posterā nocte procul in silvīs audīrī poterat cantus

1. dēmīsit: not dīmīsit. —
quid: *i.e.* aliquid. After nē and
sī, the short forms quis, quid, etc.,
are regularly used.

3. dīcitur: cf. dīcuntur, p. 55,
l. 7.

4. bellum, quod, etc.: namely,
the French and Indian War.

8. recipere: a compound of
capiō. This and the following
infin. depend on posse, l. 9.

9. posse: *could.*

10. sē: *him.*

14. quā rē: *this observation.*

15. nihil . . . verēbātur: freely,
felt no concern; lit. what?

18. nimis: adv., *too.* The
whole phrase may be rendered
freely *and none too soon.*

19. audīrī: note the last letter
of the word. — cantus: cf. p. 3,
l. 2.

hostium, quī circum ignēs saltābant: sīc enim Indī sē ad caedem incitāre solēbant.

LESSON 49

The Attempt to surprise Detroit (Continued)

Māne ad castellum cum comitibus circiter sexāgintā vēnit Pontiac, conciliumque postulāvit. Haud magnō in-
5 tervāllō sequēbātur reliqua multitūdō Indōrum, quī simulā-bant sē extrā mūnītiōnēs pilā lūsūrōs.

Portīs castellī patefactīs, Pontiac, quī nihil suspicābātur, ūnā cum comitibus, quī omnēs arma vestīmentīs tēcta ferē-bant, sine morā intrāvit; deinde autem vehementer permō-
10 tus mīlitēs omnēs et complūrēs negōtiātōrēs cum armīs circumstāre animadvertit. Postquam vērō ad prīncipia dēductus est ac vīdit duōs trēsve tantum adesse centuriōnēs, audācter cum lēgātō loquī coepit.

Priusquam ad castellum perventum est, comitēs rēx
15 monuerat sē, cum pauca prius dē pāce locūtus esset, lēgātō zōnam datūrum; quō sīgnō impetum statim in lēgātum centuriōnēsque faciendum esse, cum interim Indī cēterī, quī extrā mūnītiōnēs relictī erant, per portās inrumperent praesidiumque adorīrentur.

2. **caedem:** (*the business of*) *murdering.*

4. **intervāllō:** translate the abl. "at" (strictly, abl. of manner).

6. **pilā:** (*at*) *ball;* abl. of means (pila, -ae, F.). — **lūsūrōs:** sc. esse.

8. **quī omnēs:** *all of whom.* — **vestīmentīs:** abl. of means; but translate "under."

10. **cum armīs:** *i.e.* (*fully*) *armed.*

11. **circumstāre:** *i.e.* in such a way as to encircle Pontiac and his followers. — **prīncipia:** prīn-cipia, -ōrum, N., *headquarters.*

15. **pauca:** note the gender; cf. multa, p. 5, l. 9.

16. **zōnam:** zōna, -ae, F., *belt.* — **datūrum:** *would offer.* — **quō sīgnō:** abl. of time when; trans-late "at."

17. **cēterī:** *i.e.* reliquī.

Cum vērō porrigere zōnam ille cōnārētur, lēgātus sīgnum dedit, et subitō prīncipia sonō armōrum complēta sunt. Tum dēmum barbarī, quī iam plānē sentiēbant omnia cōnsilia sua patefacta esse, vultū dēmissō ē castellō silentiō sunt 5 ēgressī, atque in silvās properāvērunt; ubi ē cōnspectū Britannōrum mox āmissī sunt.

LESSON 50

A Successful Ruse

Colōnī, cum bellum gererent, hostīs saepe fallāciīs ēlūsērunt. Sīcut dux quīdam Americānus, quī mēnsēs multōs cum exercitū fuerat, uxōris conveniendae causā ōlim clam 10 domum profectus est. Cuius adventū cōgnitō, oppidānī, quī paucī hostibus favēbant, certiōrem fēcērunt lēgātum Britannicum, quī castrīs praeerat proximīs, ducem illum in oppidō latēre.

Itaque sine morā cum legiōne noctū profectus, lēgātus ad 15 oppidum celeriter contendit; ubi statim aedibus Americānī ignēs admōtī sunt. Quō animadversō, ille scīlicet crēdēbat spem omnem iam esse sublātam: sed fīlia ex aedibus fortiter ēgressa lēgātō, "Māter mea," inquit, "aegra est. Dā mihi, obsecrō, salūtem eius saltem miserae."

1. **zōnam**: see p. 57, l. 16. — **sīgnum dedit**: *i.e. made a motion.*

2. **prīncipia**: see p. 57, l. 11.

7. **fallāciīs**: *tricks* or *trickery* (fallācia, -ae, F.).

8. **sīcut**: *as, for instance.*

9. **causā**: cf. the note on p. 48, l. 6.

10. **oppidānī**: (*his*) *townsmen.*

11. **quī paucī**: cf. quī omnēs, p. 57, l. 8.

12. **praeerat**: cf. p. 56, l. 15.

The word means literally "to be before" or "to be over," notions which, in Latin, call for the dative.

14. **legiōne**: (*his*) *regiment.*

15. **Americānī**: as noun, gen. sing.

16. **ignēs**: translate as sing., and turn the whole phrase into the active form. — **quō**: neuter.

19. **obsecrō**: *I beg (you)* (obsecrō, 1). — **eius . . . miserae**: *of her, poor woman.*

Quā rē impetrātā, mulier cum lectō lēniter ēlāta est;
mīlitēs autem, nē dux ipse ūllō modō effugere posset, aedēs
interim omnibus ex partibus circumstābant : quīn etiam
haud procul sunt morātī, dōnec aedēs tōtae ignī cōn-
5 sūmptae sunt.   Tum laetī ad castra sē recēpērunt, inter sē
glōriantēs ūnum saltem Americānum scelerātum poenās
dedisse.   At incolumis erat ille; nam, cum uxor efferrētur,
sub lectō manibus genibusque ambulāverat, neque eum
vīderat quisquam.   Sīc astūtiā fīliae servātus mox ad ex-
10 ercitum tūtō rediit.

LESSON 51

How the Town was Saved

Multīs post annīs, quam ea, quae modo dīxī, facta sunt,
duae puellae Americānae, quae aliō in oppidō prope mare
habitābant, facinus memorābile ausae sunt.   Ōlim enim,
cum pater eārum longē abesset, in cōnspectum subitō vēnit
15 nāvis longa Britannica; ex quā, cum in portum pervēnisset,
mīlitēs multī scaphīs vectī ad lītus celeriter contendērunt
atque Americānōrum coepērunt incendere nāvigia, quae
tum forte in portū ad ancoram cōnsistēbant.

Fugam iam parābant oppidānī cēterī; at puellae illae,

---

1. rē : *concession.* — ēlāta est :
from efferō.

3. omnibus ex partibus : cf.
p. 44, l. 6.

4. tōtae : cf. the note on lae-
tus, p. 2, l. 16.

5. inter sē : *among themselves.*

8. manibus, etc. : abl. of
means ; translate "upon" (genū,
-ūs, N., *knee*). — neque . . . quis-
quam : cf. p. 2, l. 11.

9. astūtiā : astūtia, -ae, F.,
quick wit.

11. post . . . quam : *i.e.* post-
quam. — ea : *the events.*

13. facinus : not as on p. 55, l.
6 (see the Vocab.).   The phrase,
as a whole, should be rendered
freely.

19. parābant : *were making
preparations for.*   What are other
meanings of this word ?

MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS

Among the ancients, music was a comparatively undeveloped art. The scantiness of the music of the stage is indicated by the above scene from a comedy, where the actor in the foreground is manipulating a tambourine (*tympanum*), while another in the rear plays upon double pipes (*tibiae*).

In the Roman army, music was not employed as an accompaniment for the march; but various trumpets were used for sounding signals. In the picture below may be seen the long straight trumpet (*tuba*) used by the infantry.

tībiā tympanōque arreptīs, secundum lītus clam properāvē-
runt, ac colle parvō interpositō clārē canere coepērunt.
Quō sonō audītō, Britannī vehementer commōtī armātōs
plūrimōs appropinquāre arbitrābantur (nam Americānī mul-
5 taeque gentēs aliae tībiā tympanōque canere solent, cum in
proelium prōgrediuntur). Quārē, veritī nē interciperentur,
hostēs, nāvigiīs oppidānōrum relictīs, celerrimē sē ad suam
nāvem longam recēpērunt; nam nōn diūtius de iniūriīs īn-
ferendīs cōgitābant, sed sine morā nāvem solvērunt atque
10 in mare apertum prōgressī sunt. Ita ā puellīs duābus
oppidum servātum est.

LESSON 52

An Example of Fortitude

Indī Americānī summum cruciātum sine gemitū patī
possunt, atque Indī Asiāticī nūdī dīcuntur inter nivēs vītam
agere, neque ēdere gemitum, etsī ignēs admoveantur. Illī
15 tamen cruciātū fortiter ferendō Rōmānōs nūllō modō supe-
rant. Nam ōlim, cum diū neque fēlīciter bellum cum rēge

1. tībiā: tībia, -ae, F., *flute.* —
tympanō: tympanum, -ī, N., *drum.*
2. interpositō: cf. p. 36, l. 8.
— clārē: adv., *loudly.*
5. tībiā tympanōque: see l. 1;
for syntax, cf. manibus, p. 59, l. 8.
6. nē: (after a verb of fear-
ing) *that.*
7. suam: cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.
8. īnferendīs: *inflicting;* cf.
the force of the gerundive as seen
in the use with ad and causā in
purpose clauses.
9. solvērunt: lit. *loosed,* or
released; see the Vocab.

13. nūdī: pred. adj. — vītam:
translate as pl.
14. ēdere: not edere. — etsī:
even though. — ignēs: translate as
sing. — admoveantur: sc. eīs;
subjunctive, because part of the
indirect discourse. Render the
whole phrase freely.
15. ferendō: *in (the matter
of) bearing;* cf. īnferendīs, l. 8.
The ablative expresses specifica-
tion.
16. neque fēlīciter: *and unsuc-
cessfully;* cf. the note on p. 17,
l. 8.

Porsinnā gestum esset, C. Mūcius, clārus iuvenis Rōmānus,
Tiberim cōnstituit sōlus trānsīre rēgemque hostium, sī pos-
set, interficere. Itaque tēlō veste tēctō profectus est;
cumque flūmen clam trānsīsset, in castra hostium incolumis
5 pervēnit. Ibi tamen rēgem ā comitibus internōscere nōn
potuit, ac prō Porsinnā scrībam occīdit; deinde frūstrā
effugere cōnātus ad rēgem ipsum dēductus est. Quī cum
vellet penitus cōgnōscere cōnsilia, quae in sē inita erant,
ignēs iussit admovērī, ut iuvenis omnia prōdere cōgerētur.
10 Ille autem ultrō dextram in ignem porrēxit, cruciātumque
sine gemitū passus est. Quō vīsō rēx, tantam fortitūdinem
admīrātus, captīvum incolumem dīmīsit, ac paulō post ā
Rōmānīs pācis condiciōnēs petīvit, quod cum gente, ex quā
erant iuvenēs tantae virtūtis, diūtius bellum gerere nōllet.

LESSON 53

A Hasty Leave-Taking

15 Prīmō bellō, quod Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt,
hostēs, cum ex Canadā per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem

1. **Porsinnā**: king of Etruria,
a district of Italy just north of
Latium.— **C.**: *i.e.* **Cāius** (*Gaius*).

2. **Tiberim**: acc. sing. of **Ti-
beris.** — **sī**: *if.*

3. **veste**: *i.e.* **vestīmentō**: cf.
p. 57, l. 8.

5. **internōscere**: **internōscō**, 3,
-**nōvī**, -**nōtus**, *distinguish.*

6. **scrībam**: **scrība**, -ae, M.,
clerk.

7. **ad**: *before.* — **quī**: the king.
— **cum vellet**: translate by a par-
ticipial phrase.

8. **penitus**: adv., *fully.* — **in**:
against. — **inita erant**: **ineō**, -**īre**,
-**iī**, -**itus**, *enter into.*

9. **omnia**: *everything.*

11. **quō**: neut.

13. **quod**: *because* (*as he said*).
— **ex quā . . . iuvenēs**: freely, *the
young men of which.*

14. **tantae virtūtis**: the gen.
expresses characteristic or qual-
ity; translate first literally and
then freely.

15. **prīmō bellō**: abl. of time
when.

ad mare iter facere cōnābantur, ā sociīs Indīs multum
adiūtī sunt; barbarī enim paulum ante exercitum prōgressī,
vīllīs undique incēnsīs, colōnōs summā crūdēlitāte occīdē-
bant. Quārē agricolārum omnium suspēnsī erant animī.

5 Dum rēs ita sē habent, in praediō quōdam servus Āfer
ōlim subitō ex hortō perterritus fūgit, dominumque certiō-
rem fēcit sē Indum in herbā latentem vīdisse. Quō
audītō, dominus statim ad frātris vīllam profectus est, ut
cum eō cōnsilium commūnicāret; interim uxor fīlium iussit
10 equōs carrumque parāre. Tum, postquam rediit pater,
pauca in carrum imposuērunt, aedibusque ac bōbus re-
lictīs, ad rīpam flūminis satis magnī, quod prope fluēbat,
sine morā prōgressī sunt. Id cum trānsīssent, celeriter
inde per agrōs contendērunt ūnā cum colōnīs aliīs, quī in
15 hīs regiōnibus diūtius morārī nōn audēbant. At nē sīc
quidem sine labōribus perīculīsque effūgērunt; nam in
itinere, tempestāte subitō coortā, māter līberīque sub caelō
noctem agere coāctī sunt: sed postrēmō in prōvinciam
proximam incolumēs pervēnērunt.

LESSON 54

The Capture of a Man-of-War

20 Ōlim multī armātī Americānī ad Canadam versus iter
faciēbant, ut ibi cum Gallīs pugnārent. Quī postrēmō
pervēnērunt ad lacum, quī trānseundus erat, sī longius prō-

---

1. **Indīs**: here adj.
3. **occīdēbant**: cf. rapiēbant, p. 7, l. 17.
5. **rēs**: *matters.*
8. **vīllam**: *farm;* cf. the commoner meaning of the word in l. 3.
9. **commūnicāret**: commūnicō, 1, *make . . . jointly.*

11. **pauca**: note the gender.
— **bōbus**: from bōs.
12. **satis**: *quite.*
14. **aliīs**: not reliquīs or cēterīs.
18. **noctem agere**: cf. vītam agere, p. 61, l. 13.
20. **armātī**: strictly, noun; but the phrase may be rendered freely.

gredī vellent; in lacū autem ultrō citrōque nāvis longa
Gallica nāvigābat, nē quis ibi scaphīs trānsīre posset.

 Americānī scīlicet nāvem longam sibi statim capiendam
esse intellēxērunt. Conciliōque convocātō, cum variae sen-
5 tentiae dictae essent, subitō lēgātus quīdam, maximae vir-
tūtis vir, imperātōrī "Ego," inquit, "sī mihi mīlitēs sex et
cuneōs complūrīs dabis, celeriter rem cōnficiam." Mīlitibus
cuneīsque datīs, lēgātus nocte intempestā ad nāvem longam
clam scaphā vectus est; ubi cuneōs sīc īnseruit, ut gubernā-
10 cula nūllam in partem movērī possent.

 Māne Americānī lacum trānsīre coepērunt. Quō animad-
versō, Gallī, quī nihil suspicābantur, vēlīs passīs in hostēs
impetum facere cōnātī sunt; at nāvis, ventīs statim ad lītus
dēlāta, facile capta est ā quibusdam Americānīs, quī ad id
15 ipsum in lītore morātī erant. Nāve longā captā, scaphae
Americānōrum sine ūllō incommodō ad lītus ulterius pervē-
nērunt, mīlitēsque rursus ad Canadam per montēs silvāsque
lēniter prōgressī sunt.

LESSON 55

The Fall of New London

 Cum Britannī Novum Eborācum praesidiō tenērent,
20 colōnī classīs onustās rēbus omnibus, quae ad bellum
necessāriae sunt, secundum lītus Novae Britanniae ad

1. ultrō: not as on p. 62, l. 10; see the Vocab.
2. nē quis: *so that no one*; cf. the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.
4. sententiae: cf. sentiō.
8. nocte intempestā: cf. p. 43, l. 5.
9. īnseruit: īnserō, 3, -seruī, -sertus, *force in*. — ut: introduc-ing a clause of result. — gubernā-cula: cf. the illustration facing p. 1.
10. movērī: note the last letter of the word.
12. passīs: from pandō.
13. ventīs: abl. of means.
14. id ipsum: *this very pur-pose*.
16. ulterius: modifier of lītus.

occidentem nāvigantēs interdum vidēbant; tum, ē portibus
liburnicīs celerrimē vectī, onerāriās capiēbant, sī quae forte,
tardius prōgressae, intervāllō maiōre sequēbantur nāvēs
longās, quae eīs praesidiō missae erant.   Id Britannī diū mo-
5 lestē tulerant; cumque īnsula Longa iam tōta subācta esset,
nē posteā umquam colōnī in nāvēs suās impetum facere
audērent, Novum Londīnium dēlēre cōnstituērunt.

    Itaque ab īnsulā noctū profectī, fretum clam trānsiērunt;
sed ventīs adversīs impedītī portum nōn potuērunt intrāre,
10 dōnec diēs postera illūxit.   Tum celeriter ē castellīs sīgnum
colōnīs datum est hostēs adesse, et agricolae armātī omni-
bus ex partibus in oppidum convēnērunt.   Quī, cum Bri-
tannī ē nāvibus ēgressī essent, ad lītus versus fēcērunt iter,
mūrīsque interpositīs tēla plūrima in hostēs inmīsērunt.
15 At Britannī, quī numerō erant multō superiōrēs, mox inrū-
pērunt in oppidum atque ignēs undique aedibus templīsque
admōvērunt.   Quō vīsō, colōnī, ut uxōrēs līberōsque in
loca tūta dēdūcerent, ex oppidō in agrōs sē recēpērunt.

LESSON 56

The Fall of New London (Continued)

    Prope oppidum erant castra quaedam, quae Americānī
20 praesidiō haud magnō tenēbant.   Quō cum hostēs pervē-

1. nāvigantēs: modifying clas-
sīs, p. 64, l. 20. — interdum: not
interim. — vidēbant: *used to sight.*
    2. capiēbant: cf. rapiēbant,
p. 7, l. 17. — sī quae: *if any*; cf.
the note on quid, p. 56, l. 1.
    3. tardius . . . maiōre: ab-
solute comparatives (cf. the note
on p. 13, l. 11). — intervāllō: cf.
p. 57, l. 4.
    4. eīs praesidiō: *as an escort*

for them, lit. *for a protection to
them*, praesidiō being a dat. of
service. — id: *i.e.* this preying
upon their shipping.
    5. subācta: subigō, 3, -ēgī,
-āctus, *subdue.*
    6. nē . . . umquam: *so that
never.*
    8. fretum: *sound.*
    15. numerō: cf. p. 44, l. 15.
    16. ignēs: translate as sing.

nissent, colōnōs statim sē dēdere iussērunt. Datō autem
respōnsō minimē grātō, ācerrimē ibi pugnātum est: sed
Britannī, quī, ut suprā dīxī, numerō multō erant superiōrēs,
postrēmō cōnscendērunt mūnītiōnēs, castraque expugnā-
5 vērunt; quīn etiam virtūte colōnōrum, quī animō obsti-
nātō restiterant, adeō exacerbātī sunt, ut summā crū-
dēlitāte occīderent dēditōs quōsdam, quī arma iam prōiē-
cerant.

Deinde tamen, castra funditus dēlenda esse arbitrātī,
10 vulnerātōs prius efferre coepērunt; sed id tantā saevitiā,
ut hominēs miserī in carrum alius super alium abicerentur.
Tum ā Britannīs circiter vīgintī carrus dūcī coeptus est ad
vīllam quandam, ubi vulnerātī ab amīcīs cūrārī possent.
At praeceps erat via, ac postrēmō ā mīlitibus carrus diūtius
15 retinērī nōn poterat, sed per dēclīve celeriter dēlātus, in
arborem inlīsus est. Ipsā concussiōne quīdam ē vulnerātīs
interfectī esse dīcuntur; ac cēterōrum ululātus etiam trāns
portum audītus est.

Sed iam undique colōnī plūrimī ad oppidum auxilī ferendī
20 causā properābant, hostēsque celeriter ad nāvīs sē recipere
coāctī sunt.

---

2. respōnsō: noun, derived
from respondeō.

3. ut: *as.*

6. adeō: cf. p. 5, l. 18. —
exacerbātī sunt: exacerbō, 1, *ex-
asperate.*

7. dēditōs: as noun; cf. vul-
nerātōs, l. 10.

9. funditus: adv., *totally,* or
utterly. — arbitrātī: cf. veritī, p. 2,
l. 17.

10. id: sc. fēcērunt.

12. coeptus est: the passive
forms of this verb are used

when the dependent infinitive is
passive.

13. possent: note the mood.

14. praeceps (-cipitis, adj.):
steep.

15. per dēclīve: *along the
slope;* dēclīve being used as a neut.
noun (from dēclīvis, -is, -e, *steep*).
— dēlātus: *i.e. rolling down;* lit.
what?

16. concussiōne: concussiō,
-ōnis, F., *shock.* — ē: *of.*

19. auxilī: cf. the note on
Standisī, p. 16, l. 4.

LESSON 57

Captivity among the Indians

Priusquam prōvinciae Americānae validae sunt factae, Indī oppida longinqua saepe adoriēbantur; miseraque erat fortūna eōrum colōnōrum, quī ab eīs captī sunt. Ē quibus ūnus haec ferē dē sē commemorat:

5 "Ōlim," inquit, "cum barbarī subitō in cōnspectum vēnissent, ego cum oppidānīs cēterīs fugā petīvī salūtem, et in palūdem proximam quam celerrimē contendī. Sed in lutō prōlapsus, ā tribus Indīs captus sum, atque ūnā cum reliquīs captīvīs in silvās longē sum dēductus; ubi diēs multōs 10 per montēs summō cum labōre fēcimus iter, cum interim contumēliās acerbissimās cotīdiē ferre cōgēbāmur.

"Noctū hostēs captīvōs humī supīnōs collocābant, cuneīsque in terrā dēfīxīs, manūs pedēsque artē religābant, nē quis nostrum per tenebrās effugere cōnārētur. Interdum 15 autem tanta erat inopia cibī, ut barbarī, veritī nē frūmentum dēficeret, nōs etiam ignī mandāre semel iterumque in animō habērent. At ego, postquam frīgore fameque sum paene necātus, paucīs post mēnsibus ā dominō novō emptus, postrēmō domum incolumis pervēnī."

---

2. adoriēbantur: cf. capiēbant, p. 65, l. 2.

4. haec: neut. pl. — commemorat: *i.e.* nārrat. The whole phrase may be rendered freely *discourses somewhat as follows*, etc.

5. inquit: present tense.

6. fugā: abl. of means; we would say, "*in* flight"; cf. other renderings of this abl., p. 57, ll. 6 and 8.

7. quam: cf. p. 47, l. 14. — lutē: lutum, -ī, N., *mud*.

11. contumēliās: cf. p. 18, l. 1.

13. artē: adv., *tightly.* — nē quis: cf. the same phrase on p. 64, l. 2.

14. nostrum: from ego.

15. autem: *moreover.* — nē: cf. p. 61, l. 6.

16. mandāre: mandō, 1, *consign.* — semel iterumque: see the Vocab.

LESSON 58

A Fresh Supply of Powder

Ōlim puella, quae Elizabēta appellābātur, oppidānīs suīs ita salūtī fuit. Subitō ab Indīs oppidum erat oppugnātum, colōnīque statim sē recēperant in castellum parvum, quod barbarī diū expugnāre frūstrā cōnātī sunt. At dēficere iam 5 coeperat pulvis ille paene magicus, quō celeritāte exitiālī tēla Americānōrum aliārumque gentium multārum longissimē feruntur. Quārē colōnī vehementer erant animō dēmissī; quamquam enim in vīllā haud longinquā cōpia pulveris satis magna relicta erat, nēmō eam putābat 10 ūllō modō ad castellum tūtō adferrī posse, quod Indī in īnsidiīs undique latēbant. Multī tamen perīculum subīre volēbant, sed Elizabēta : " Ego ībō," inquit ; " puella enim sum, mēque carēre facilius potestis."

Cōnsiliō ā duce probātō, puella mox ē castellō palam 15 ēgressa est, lēniterque ad vīllam versus ambulāvit. Quā rē novā permōtī, Indī prīmō ēventum tacitī exspectābant, et Elizabēta nūllō impediente ad vīllam facillimē pervēnit; cum autem, pulvere arreptō, ad castellum rursus celeriter currere coepisset, tum barbarī, quī iam sē ēlūsōs sentiēbant, 20 tēla plūrima undique coniēcērunt. Sed puella fortis sine

2. ita : *in the following way.* — salūtī : lit. *for a safety ;* cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4, and see the Vocab. — erat oppugnātum : contrast expugnāre, l. 4.

5. quō : abl. of means.

7. animō dēmissī : cf. p. 37, l. 20.

10. modō : freely, *chance.* For other renderings, see the Vocab.

11. subīre : subeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *risk,* lit. *undergo.*

12. volēbant : *were willing.*

13. mē . . . carēre : *spare me,* lit. *be without me ;* mē is abl. case. — potestis : *you could ;* cf. potest, p. 41, l. 7.

16. rē : *performance.*

17. nūllō impediente : cf. nūllō dēfendente, p. 44, l. 17.

vulnere intrā portam castellī recepta est, colōnīque pulvere
sublevātī impetūs Indōrum potuērunt sustinēre, dōnec
amīcī auxilī ferendī causā ex oppidīs fīnitimīs frequentēs
convēnērunt.

LESSON 59

A Battle against Great Odds

5 In quōdam lacū maximō, cuius in lītore positum est oppi-
dum Taeconderōga, ācriter quondam ab Americānīs cum
Britannīs pugnātum est. Americānīs parvae erant nāvēs
et paucae ; at dux Britannicus, quī facile ē Canadā cōpiās
adferre poterat, multās nāvēs longās summā dīligentiā īn-
10 strūctās parāverat ; sē enim Taeconderōgam brevī expu-
gnātūrum spērābat.

Imperātor tamen colōnōrum, vir maximae virtūtis, etsī
numerō erat multō īnferior, committere proelium minimē
dubitāvit ; sed cum hōrās multās esset pugnātum noxque
15 iam adesset, nāvēs vix nābant Americānae, tēlaque paene
dēfēcerant. Quō quidem tempore Britannī, noctem veritī,
proeliō dēstitērunt ; sed ad ancoram haud procul cōnsistē-
bant, nē colōnī per tenebrās effugere cōnārentur.

At Americānī nocte intempestā, lucernīs extīnctīs, silentiō
20 dedērunt vēla, et magnō circuitū hostēs vītāvērunt. Itaque
māne, cum Britannī proelium redintegrāre vellent, vix
in cōnspectū erat nāvis ūlla ; quārē illī, ancorīs sublātīs,
summā celeritāte īnsequī coepērunt. Postquam autem
Americānōs fugientēs paene adsecūtī sunt, cōnstitit ea

2. sublevātī : sublevō, 1, *help out*.

6. Americānīs : dat. case.

9. īnstrūctās : *equipped*.

12. maximae virtūtis : cf. tantae virtūtis, p. 62, l. 14.

17. proeliō : for syntax, cf. cōnātū, p. 21, l. 3.

19. lucernīs : lucerna, -ae, F., *lantern*.

24. fugientēs : participle as adj.

nāvis, quā vehēbātur dux ipse colōnōrum, et sōla hostium
sustinuit impetum, dōnec reliqua classis Americāna in por-
tum mūnītum pervenīre potuit ; quīn etiam nē illam quidem
praedam cēpērunt Britannī ; nam suō nāvigiō, cum ad lītus
5 appulsum esset, Americānī ipsī ignīs admōvērunt.

LESSON 60

A Night Attack

Bellō prīmō, quod ā Britannīs cum Americānīs gestum
est, in flūmine quōdam Carolaenae Ulteriōris īnsula parva
praesidiō Britannicō tenēbātur : interim dominus īnsulae,
vir locuplēs reīque pūblicae amantissimus, molestē scīlicet
10 ferēbat castra hostium in praediō suō collocāta esse, eō
magis quod mīlitēs interdum sē īnsolenter gerēbant.

Postrēmō Americānī cōnstituērunt adversō flūmine nāvi-
gāre cōpiāsque Britannicās, sī possent, ex īnsulā expellere.
Itaque clam profectī, nāvibus nocte intempestā ad īnsulam
15 silentiō appulsīs, impetum ācerrimum subitō fēcērunt. Quā
rē novā permōtī Britannī ad arma celeriter cucurrērunt ; et
dominus quoque īnsulae, quī nesciēbat amīcōs adesse, im-
petum ab hostibus factum arbitrātus, ūnā cum uxōre
līberīsque in silvās tardius sē contulit ; ipse enim pedibus

4. suō : cf. suum, p. 11, l. 6.

5. appulsum esset : cf. appulit,
p. 31, l. 13.

6. bellō prīmō : cf. p. 62,
l. 15.

7. Ulteriōris : lit. *Farther*
(from the point of view of the capi-
tal of the United States), *i.e. South.*

9. reī . . . pūblicae amantis-
simus : *most loyal to his country*,
lit. *most loving of the common-*
wealth (objective gen.) ; amantis-
simus is the superlative of the
part. amāns.

10. eō magis : *and all the more*,
lit. *on this account (the) more.*

11. īnsolenter : adv., *insolently*,
or *impudently*.

16. rē : *action.*

19. tardius : absol. compar. —
pedibus captus : *being crippled*, lit.
being incapacitated in his feet.

captus ā servīs tum sellā ferēbātur. Ubi sīc ad casam lon-
ginquam perventum est, māter subitō clāmāvit puerum
īnfantem in aedibus relictum esse. Quō audītō, fīlia forti-
ter per tenebrās profecta celeriter domum cucurrit; cumque
5 inter tēla amīcōrum et hostium in aedēs pervēnisset, puerum
ē cūnīs rapuit incolumemque ad mātrem sēcum redūxit.

LESSON 61

A Choice of Evils

Parvō in oppidō Novae Britanniae habitābat quīdam
agricola, cui erant līberī octō. Is ōlim, cum subitō nūntiā-
tum esset Indōs appropinquāre, ex agrīs ad bona līberōsque
10 servandōs summā celeritāte properāvit; aegra enim domī
uxor iacēbat.

Quō igitur cum pervēnisset, līberīs convocātīs atque ad
castellum proximum statim praemissīs, ipse uxōrem ad
iter parāre cōnātus est. Sed iam in cōnspectū erant Indī,
15 neque diūtius ūlla erat salūtis spēs. Itaque uxōre bonīsque
relictīs, agricola, quī iam anteā statuerat cum līberīs sibi
vīvendum aut prō eīs moriendum esse, equum cōnscendit,
atque ad castellum versus quam celerrimē contendit. Lī-
berōs mox adsecūtus est, et omnēs, etsī Indī vestīgiīs
20 sequēbantur, in castellum incolumēs pervēnērunt; nam

1. sellā: sella, -ae, F., *sedan
chair*; for syntax, cf. rāvibus,
p. 6, l. 10.
    2. clāmāvit: cf. clāmor.
    3. īnfantem: īnfāns, -antis,
adj., *infant.*
    6. cūnīs: cūnae, -ārum, F.,
cradle. — mātrem: (*her*) *mother.*
    10. servandōs: agreeing with
the nearer noun. For the form of

the phrase as a whole, cf. ad Gal-
lōs expellendōs, p. 35, l. 14. —
aegra: pred. adj.
    17. vīvendum: sc. esse. Note
that this and the following gerun-
dive are impersonal; but translate
that he must, etc.
    19. vestīgiīs sequēbantur: *i.e.
were following the trail* (lit. *in
their footsteps*).

quotiēns propius accesserant barbarī, pater cōnsistēbat in
viā, eōsque armīs terrēbat.   Sed interim uxor aegra, mulier
magnae fortitūdinis, ūnā cum captīvīs aliīs ab Indīs in
silvās dēdūcēbātur.

LESSON 62

Lost in the Woods

5   Multōs abhinc annōs quīdam puer parvus mātre īnsciente
in silvam clam profectus, diū ibi sēcum sub arboribus lūsit.
Quī, cum iam advesperāsceret, viam reperīre nōn potuit ac
brevī intellēxit sub caelō sibi noctem agendam esse.   Itaque
ex foliīs lectum fēcit, cumque per arborēs lūnam stellāsque
10 aliquamdiū suspēxisset, postrēmō somnō gravissimō quiēvit.
Māne iterum viam invenīre frūstrā cōnātus, famem bācīs
sustinuit; quō modō quīnque diēs per silvās errāvit.   Deinde
noctū ignem animadvertit, et celeriter prōgressus in vīcum
Indōrum subitō pervēnit.   Ā quibus cōmiter acceptus, mul-
15 tōs diēs ibi morātus est.

Dum haec fīunt, lēgātus prōvinciae ūnā cum comitibus
paucīs puerī quaerendī causā in scaphā profectus erat, oppi-
daque Indōrum fīnitima adībat omnia.   Quae rēs puerō
salūtī fuit; nam postrēmō repertī sunt quīdam barbarī,
20 quī nūntiāvērunt ipsum incolumem esse viamque ostendē-

1. **propius**: absol. compar., *too
near.* — accesserant: translate as if
a perfect. — cōnsistēbat: note the
tense, and contrast the force of
the imperfect dēdūcēbātur, l. 4.
5. **abhinc**: cf. p. 52, l. 6. —
īnsciente: īnsciēns, -entis, adj.:
lit. *not knowing;* translate the
abl. absol. freely.
6. **profectus**: *slipping away.*
— sēcum: *i.e. by himself.*

9. **stellās**: stella, -ae, F.,
star.
10. **suspēxisset**: suspiciō, 3,
suspēxī, suspectus, *watch*, lit. *look
up at.* — somnō gravissimō: abl.
of manner.
18. **rēs**: *proceeding.* — puerō
salūtī fuit: cf. oppidānīs . . . sa-
lūtī fuit, p. 68, l. 1.
20. **ipsum**: *he.* — viam: *i.e.*
the way to reach him.

runt.   Puerō sīc receptō, lēgātus sīcās dedit eīs Indīs, ā
quibus ille servātus erat.   Barbarī scīlicet dōnīs tam grātīs
gaudēbant, puer autem domum reductus est.

LESSON 63

The Battle of Saratoga

Saepe prō patriā fortissimē pugnāvit iste Arnoldius, quī
5 posteā Britannīs prōdere cōnātus est ea castra mūnītissima,
quae in rīpā flūminis Hudsōnis posita sunt : et nōn num-
quam etiam salūtī cīvibus suīs fuit ; tantopere enim ā
mīlitibus amābātur, ut ipsō adventū suō ad victōriam eōs
incitāre posset.

10 Ōlim Saratōgae, cum eius ōrdinem adēmisset imperātor,
quōcum simultātem gerēbat, ille, sonō proeliī ad aurēs ad-
lātō, " Ego," inquit, " sī dux esse nōn possum, at saltem
manipulāris erō ; '' quae cum dīxisset, iniussū imperātōris
equum cōnscendit celerrimēque in proelium vectus est : ubi
15 mīlitēs, duce vetere cōgnitō, clāmōre sublātō laetī secūtī
sunt, atque impetum ācerrimē fēcērunt in eam partem, ubi
aciēs hostium cōnfertissima vīsa est.   Ibi summā virtūte
pugnāns Arnoldius est vulnerātus, victōria autem ab Ameri-
cānīs parta est.

2. **ille** : the boy.

3. **gaudēbant** : *were delighted.*
— **autem** : omit in translation.

4. **iste** : *that* (in the disparag-
ing sense), a frequent meaning of
this word ; cf. p. 42, l. 21.

6. **nōn numquam** : *i.e. some-
times.*

8. **ipsō** : *mere.*

10. **Saratōgae** : for syntax, cf.
Philadelphiae, p. 46, l. 1. —
adēmisset : adimō, 3, -ēmī, -emp-
tus, *take away.*

11. **quōcum** : *i.e.* quō + cum.
— **simultātem gerēbat** : *he was at
odds* (simultās, -ātis, F., *quarrel*).

13. **iniussū imperātōris** : cf. in-
iussū suō, p. 28, l. 7.

16. **partem** : *direction.*

17. **vīsa est** : from videor.

Etsī vulnera Arnoldī nōn erant exitiālia, tempus tamen mortī opportūnissimum erat.   Odium enim perfidiae, quā ille posteā ūsus est, glōriam eius rērum gestārum semper obruet; quīn etiam trāditum est (ut suprā commemorāvī) 5 nē Britannōs quidem, quī eius perfidiā victōriam sē nactū- rōs spērāverant, hominem ūllō in honōre habuisse, postquam bellum cōnfectum esset.

LESSON 64

Unwelcome Visitors

Britannī, cum iam iterum cum Americānīs gererent bel- lum pugnīsque nāvālibus saepe victī essent, postrēmō cōn- 10 stituērunt usque ad Lovīsiānam classem mittere, sī ibi fēlīcius rem gerere possent.   Quārē appulsīs nāvibus ad eum locum, ubi in mare fertur flūmen maximum, quem Indī patrem aquārum vocābant, mīlitēs multī in lītus ēgressī praedia fīnitima·explōrāre coepērunt.

15   Sīc factum est ut quīdam adulēscēns Americānus, quī in vīllā ōtiōsus hōrā diēī ferē quārtā morābātur, mīlitēs com- plūrīs in hortō latentēs subitō animadverteret.   Quā rē novā graviter commōtus, comitēs ut sine morā latebrās

1. **Arnoldī**: cf. **Standisī**, p. 16, l. 4. — **tempus**: *occasion*. — **ta- men**: may be omitted in transla- tion.

2. **mortī**: note the case. — **odium** (-ī, N.): *contempt*. —**per- fidiae**: objective gen.; translate "for." — **quā**: the case regularly used with **ūtor**.

4. **obruet**: obruō, 3, -ruī, -rutus, *dim*, lit. *overwhelm*.

7. **cōnfectum esset**: for mood, cf. the note on **admoveantur**, p. 61, l. 14.

9. **nāvālibus**: nāvālis, -is, -e, *naval*.

10. **usque   ad   Lovīsiānam**: freely, *to far-away L.* — **sī**: *in the hope that;* cf. **sī**, p. 33, l. 4.

12. **fertur**: *rolls;* cf. **dēlātus**, p. 66, l. 15. — **quem**: for gender, cf. the note on **quod**, p. 30, l. 6.

15. **factum est ut**: *it hap- pened that* (factum est from **fīō**).

16. **hōrā diēī ferē quārtā**: *i.e.* about 10 A.M.   See the note on p. 75.

17. **rē**: *happening*.

CANIS

Just inside the street door of a Pompeian house is found worked into the mosaic of the pavement this representation of a watchdog. The words *Cavē canem* signify " Beware of the dog."

HŌRAE

The Romans divided the time between sunrise and sunset into twelve equal hours — long in summer, and short in winter. Above is shown a sundial used to mark the time in the great public baths at Pompeii.

quaererent hortātus est, et ipse prīmō fugā salūtem petīvit;
sed ab hostibus statim circumventus, sē dēdere tum nōn
dubitāvit.   At paulō post fenestrā patefactā ērūpit, cum-
que tēla hostium undique in eum conicerentur, incolumis
5 pervēnit in palūdem, ubi Britannī armīs impedītī summō
labōre sequēbantur.

Itaque iuvenis, cum dēmum ab hostibus intervāllō satis
magnō abesset, arborem nactus idōneam in quā latēret,
celeriter cōnscendit.   Brevī autem sonum exiguum sub
10 arbore audīvit; cumque dēspēxisset, ibi vīdit canem, quam
maximē amābat.   Quārē perīculum veritus, comitem fidē-
lem, quae per palūdem dominum secūta erat, invītus necāvit,
multīsque cum lacrimīs sub foliīs tēxit.   Deinde aliquamdiū
tacitus in arbore morātus est; postquam autem Britannī
15 quaerendō dēfessī ad vīllam sē recēpērunt, magnō circuitū
custōdiās hostium vītāvit, eōrumque dē adventū certiōrem
fēcit imperātōrem Americānum, quī oppidum haud longin-
quum praesidiō tum tenēbat.

LESSON 65

The Boyhood of Daniel Boone

Abhinc annōs circiter ducentōs in Pennsylvēniā nātus est
20 puer, quī posteā factus est explōrātor clārissimus.   Quīn
etiam ā prīmā pueritiā ille arma ferre cōnsuēverat, ac in

1. **fugā**: cf. p. 67, l. 6.
2. **tum**: *i.e.* for the time being.
3. **fenestrā patefactā**: abl. of
way by which; translate *through.*
— **cum**: concessive.
7. **ab**: *from.*
8. **abesset**: *i.e. was separated.*
10. **dēspēxisset**: dēspiciō, 3,
-spēxī, -spectus. *look down;* cf.
suspēxisset, p. 72, l. 10.

12. **invītus**: cf. p. 35, l. 12.
14. **postquam**: freely, *when at
length.* — **quaerendō**: cf. nandō, p.
12, l. 17.
15. **magnō circuitū**, etc.: cf. p.
69, l. 20.
20. **factus est**: from fīō.
21. **prīmā**: *early;* cf. p. 22,
l. 7. — **cōnsuēverat**: *i.e.* solē-
bat.

silvīs ambulāns ferās saepe occīdit. Ōlim, cum vespere
prīmō domum nōn redīsset, vīcīnī, veritī nē puer ab Indīs
aut ferīs esset interfectus, frequentēs convēnērunt, com-
plūrīsque diēs errāvērunt per silvās, sī ūllō modō eum in-
5 venīre possent; quī postrēmō pervēnērunt ad casam rāmīs
caespitibusque aedificātam ā puerō ipsō, quī frūstum carnis
in ignem porrigēns humī sine timōre sōlus sedēbat. Nam
ē viā nōn errāverat; sed cōnsultō sē longius contulerat in
silvās, quod procul ab oppidīs sine comitibus etiam tum
10 libenter habitābat.

Paucīs post annīs pater multa mīlia passuum ad loca
longinqua cōnstituit in silvās ēmigrāre, quod ipsī quoque
urbēs oppidaque minimē grāta erant. Quās ad sēdēs novās
ubi perventum est, puer, cum pater frātrēsque arborēs ex-
15 cīderent agrōsque ad satūs accipiendōs parārent, ferīs
interfectīs carnem ē silvā cotīdiē domum reportābat. In-
terdum noctū quoque vēnātus esse dīcitur: quō quidem
tempore facibus ārdentibus ūtī solēbat; lūmina enim, ut
saepe ab explōrātōribus audīvimus, ad ferās ē latebrīs ēlici-
20 endās magnō ūsuī sunt.

---

2. nē: cf. the note on p. 61,
l. 6.

5. rāmīs caespitibusque: abl.
of means with aedificātam; trans-
late (freely) "of."

7. sine timōre: *i.e. uncon-
cerned*; cf. timeō.

8. longius: absolute compara-
tive.

9. etiam tum: *i.e. even when
so young.*

10. libenter habitābat: *i.e. he
had a liking for living.*

11. pater: sc. eius.

12. in silvās: acc., because of
the verb of motion (ēmigrāre); we

would say "*in* the woods." —
ipsī: *him;* construe with grāta.

13. quās: *this.*

15. satūs: satus, -ūs, M., *crop.*

16. reportābat: note the tense.

17. vēnātus: note the case
(and that dīcitur is personal).
— quō . . . tempore: *i.e. at night;*
freely, *on such occasions.* In trans-
lating, quidem may be omitted.

18. facibus: fax, facis, F.,
torch; for syntax, cf. quā, p. 74,
l. 2. — ut: *as.*

19. ab: *from.*

20. magnō ūsuī: cf. the note on
praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4.

LESSON 66

The End of the Pequots

Nātiō Indōrum crūdēlissima, quae haud procul ā Novō
Londīniō habitābat, quondam īnsidiās collocāre ac colōnōs
singulōs undique interficere subitō coepit. Quibus rēbus
nūntiātīs, ē prōvinciā proximā manus exigua missa est, quae
5 agricolīs auxiliō esset poenāsque ab Indīs repeteret. At
mīlitēs longē ā lītore prōgredī nōn audēbant; quī igitur,
parvō frūmentī numerō dīreptō tabernāculīsque paucīs in-
cēnsīs, ē fīnibus hostium brevī domum sē recēpērunt. Bar-
barī vērō, hāc iniūriā graviter permōtī, incendia ac caedēs
10 undique etiam crūdēlius iam miscuērunt.

Tum dēnique ē prōvinciā missa est classis, cuius prae-
fectus iussus erat mīlitēs expōnere in quōdam portū parvō,
quī haud longē ā castrīs Indōrum aberat. Ille autem, ho-
stēs ita cōnsilium suum facile cōgnōscere posse arbitrātus,
15 praeter illum portum nāvigāvit, cumque classis ē cōnspectū
barbarōrum longē discessisset, tum dēmum nāvēs ad lītus
appulit. Deinde in terram ēgressus, sine morā per silvās
viā dēviā cum exercitū profectus est, ut ā tergō hostēs ado-
rīrētur. In itinere quāsdam Indōrum nātiōnēs fīnitimās
20 adiit, ē quibus multī armātī operam suam polliciti sunt.

5. auxiliō: cf. ūsuī, p. 77,
l. 20, and see the Vocab. — poenās
. . . repeteret: cf. p. 39, l. 2.

7. numerō: *amount.* — dī-
reptō: dīripiō, 3, -ripuī, -reptus,
plunder (cf. rapiō).

9. incendia . . . caedēs: trans-
late as singulars. With incendium
cf. incendō.

10. crūdēlius: crūdēliter, adv.,
savagely.

11. prōvinciā: *i.e.* eādem prō-
vinciā.

12. iussus erat: *i.e. was under
orders.* — expōnere: expōnō, 3,
-posuī, -positus, *land.*

14. ita: *i.e.* if he followed
orders.— posse: cf. note, p. 23, l. 9.

18. viā dēviā: cf. viīs dēviīs,
p. 43, l. 6. — ā tergō: cf. the
use of ex in the phrase omnibus ex
partibus.

Sīc postrēmō perventum est ad sēdēs hostium, quī, ratī
propter timōrem colōnōs praetervectōs esse, iam minus
dīligenter castra sua custōdiēbant.

LESSON 67

The End of the Pequots (Continued)

Noctū castrīs appropinquāvērunt colōnī. Intus erant
5 uxōrēs quoque līberīque Indōrum, intusque audīrī poterat
cantus barbarōrum, quī, circum ignīs saltantēs, victōriās
superiōrēs celebrābant. Colōnī aliquamdiū tacitī exspectā-
vērunt; tum, cum diēs iam illūcēsceret Indīque saltandō
dēfessī somnō quiēscerent gravī, subitō in castra portīs
10 duābus inrūpērunt.

Quō impetū repentīnō commōtī, hostēs tamen celeriter ē
lectīs exsiluērunt, tabernāculīsque interpositīs, tēla in mīlitēs
conicere fortiter coepērunt plūrima. Quō animadversō, dux
colōnōrum statim intellēxit cōnsilium sibi mūtandum esse,
15 suōsque tabernāculīs ignēs admovēre iussit, deinde celeriter
ēgressōs undique castra circumstāre. Quō modō Indī mi-
serī, ignī ē castrīs fugere coāctī, ā colōnīs paene ad ūnum
interfectī sunt; et sī quī forte aciem perrūperant, eōs sociī
Indī libenter occīdērunt.

20 In proeliō multī quoque ē colōnīs sunt vulnerātī, atque
exercitus statim Novum Londīnium sē recipere coāctus est;

1. ratī: *i.e.* arbitrātī.
6. saltantēs: cf. saltābant,
p. 57, l. 1.
7. superiōrēs: here, of time.
— exspectāvērunt: *waited.*
8. saltandō: for syntax, cf.
nandō, p. 12, l. 17.
9. somnō . . . gravī: cf.

p. 72, l. 10. — portīs: cf. the
note on fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.
18. sī quī . . , eōs: lit. *if any
. . , them* (cf. the note on quid,
p. 56, l. 1).
19. Indī: as adj. — libenter oc-
cīdērunt: freely, *were glad to kill.*
21. Novum Londīnium: town

quō, ut iussum erat, nāvēs iam redierant, ut ibi ducem mīli-
tēsque exspectārent.　　Sed hostēs paucīs post mēnsibus al-
terā pugnā victī sunt, neque umquam posteā iniūriam ūllam
colōnīs facere potuērunt; quīn etiam brevī in manūs parvās
5 dīvīsī, aliī in aliam nātiōnem ascītī sunt.

LESSON 68

A Difficult Escape

Quondam puerī duo sine timōre in agrīs apertīs cotīdiē
labōrābant; nam, etsī colōnī tum bellum cum Gallīs Indīs-
que gerēbant, in hīs regiōnibus nēmō barbarōs ūllōs nūper
vīderat.　　Sed ōlim duo Indī subitō ex arboribus ērūpērunt
10 proximīs, puerīsque arreptīs sē celerrimē in silvam recēpē-
runt.　　Quā rē novā perterritus puer minor flēre coepit; sed
alter, quī plānē sentiēbat flētum nihil prōfutūrum esse, frā-
trem hortātus est ut sē fortiter gereret.　　Per silvam ūnā
cum captīvīs iam properābant barbarī.　　Quī, postquam sīc
15 diēs multōs iter fēcērunt, ad lacum pervēnērunt longin-
quum, ubi cum aliīs cīvibus suīs hiemāre cōnstituerant.

Ibi dum morantur, linguam barbarōrum discere coepē-
runt puerī.　　Quō modō maior prīmā aestāte repperit Indōs
in animō habēre in Canadam dūcere captīvōs, eōsque ibi in

names in the acc. and abl. do not
require prepositions to express the
ideas "to" and "from."

　1. **iussum erat** : note the gender.

　2. **alterā pugnā** : we would say
"in" rather than "by."

　3. **neque umquam** : cf. the note
on p. 17, l. 8.

　4. **colōnīs** : dat. case.

　5. **aliī in aliam** : *some into one
. . . , some into another.*

　11. **minor** : *i.e. the younger;*
cf. **maior**, l. 18.

　12. **flētum** : flētus, -ūs, M., *cry-
ing;* cf. fleō. — **nihil** : adverbial
acc., *not . . . at all,* lit. *in no re-
spect.* — **prōfutūrum esse** : prō-
sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *help,* or
avail.

　16. **suīs** : *of theirs.*

　18. **maior** : cf. **minor**, l. 11. —
prīmā aestāte : cf. p. 22, l. 7.

servitūtem Gallīs vēndere. Quārē, cibō armīsque arreptīs, frātrēs duo ex hībernīs noctū clam fūgērunt; ubi autem diēs illūxit, in arbore cavā sē somnō dedērunt.

Interim Indī cum canibus undique puerōs quaerēbant. 5 At frāter maior, cum canēs propius ad arborem accessissent, ē somnō lātrātū excitātus, callidō ūsus cōnsiliō frūstum carnis eīs prōiēcit. Quae rēs puerīs salūtī fuit; cum enim canēs carnem dēvorārent, barbarī nihil suspicantēs arborem praeteriērunt. Quō vīsō, puerī rursus profectī per silvās errā- 10 vērunt, dōnec fame labōribusque paene cōnfectī sunt; tum in quoddam oppidum colōnōrum sibi anteā īgnōtum subitō pervēnērunt.

LESSON 69

Stories about Daniel Boone

Ille explōrātor clārus, cuius dē pueritiā paulō ante dīxī, inter ferās Indōsque paene tōtam ēgit aetātem. Ōlim ē 15 Carolaenā Citeriōre trāns montēs ūnā cum aliīs explōrātōribus quīnque audācter in vallēs longinquās contendit; ubi ūnō cum comite ab Indīs captus, postquam ab eīs septem diēs summā dīligentiā custōdītus est, noctū clam surrēxit, comiteque ē somnō excitātō, incolumis ad casam pervēnit, 20 quam ipse cēterīque explōrātōrēs paulō ante fēcerant.

Paucīs post annīs eāsdem in regiōnēs colōnōs cum uxō-

1. servitūtem: servitūs, -ūtis, F., *slavery*; cf. servus.

2. autem: *and.*

5. propius: *quite close*; what use of the compar.?

6. lātrātū: lātrātus, -ūs, M., *barking.* — ūsus: translate as if ūsus est . . . et.

7. quae: *this.*

11. sibi: construe with īgnōtum.

13. cuius: modifier of pueritiā.

14. aetātem: not aestātem.

15. Citeriōre: (citerior, -ior, -ius), lit. *Nearer, i.e. North*; cf. the note on Ulteriōris, p. 70, l. 7.

20. cēterī: contrast the force of aliīs, l. 15.

ribus līberīsque dēdūxit ad locum, quī castellō maximē idō-
neus vidēbātur.   Ubi aliquamdiū fortūnā prōsperā ūsus est;
sed quondam eius fīlia, quae errābat in agrīs, ut flōrēs car-
peret, ūnā cum puellīs aliīs ab Indīs capta, in silvās com-
5 plūra mīlia passuum ducta est.   Dum autem iter faciunt,
puellae prūdentēs omnibus locīs aut rāmōs frēgērunt parvōs
aut humī pannōs relīquērunt; quae rēs magnō ūsuī erat patri-
bus īrātīs, quī haud longō intervāllō vestīgiīs īnsequēbantur.
Barbarīs victīs, puellae laetae domum reductae sunt.

10   Paulō post ille explōrātor ipse iterum captus, diū apud
Indōs vīvere coāctus est.   Sed postrēmō, cum per aquam
prōfluentem cucurrisset, nē vestīgia ūlla faceret, ad amīcōs
incolumis pervēnit.   Multīs autem ante mēnsibus uxor
līberīque, patrem iam prīdem mortuum ratī, ad propinquōs
15 suōs in Carolaenam Citeriōrem maestī sē recēperant.

LESSON 70

An English Privateer

Abhinc multōs annōs, etsī illō ipsō tempore bellum
iūstum cum Hispānīs nōn gerēbātur, quīdam praefectus
Britannicus per maria nāvigābat omnia, gazamque ac nāvēs
Hispānōrum omnibus locīs spoliābat; itaque accidit ut, cum

6. **prūdentēs**: **prūdēns, -entis**,
adj., *wide-awake.* — **omnibus locīs**:
cf. the note on **eōdem locō**, p. 7,
l. 4; translate *everywhere.* — **aut
. . . aut**: cf. p. 36, l. 12.

7. **pannōs**: **pannus, -ī**, M., *strip
of cloth.*

8. **intervāllō**: cf. the note on
p. 57, l. 4. — **vestīgiīs**: cf. p. 71,
l. 19.

12. **prōfluentem**: **prōfluēns, -en-**
tis, part., *running,* lit. *flowing
forward.*

14. **ratī**: modifying the whole
phrase **uxor līberīque.** — **propin-
quōs**: here, as noun.

15. **in**: cf. the note on **in
silvās**, p. 77, l. 12. — **Citeriōrem**:
cf. p. 81, l. 15.

16. **illō ipsō**: *that particular.*

17. **iūstum**: **iūstus, -a, -um,**
regular.

secundum lītus Americae Ulteriōris nāvigāret, urbēs illīus
regiōnis adīret multās, incolāsque magnam vim aurī argen-
tīque trādere cogeret.

Līmae duodecim nāvigia in portū ad ancoram consistē-
5 bant; quae cum ille spoliāret, certior factus aliam nāvem
gazā onustam haud procul abesse, praedā ē duodecim nāvi-
giīs cōnfēstim in suum receptā, ē portū statim solvit, sum-
māque celeritāte coepit īnsequī; dīvitiās enim etiam maiōrēs
sē iam captūrum spērābat.

10 Mox in cōnspectū erat nāvis fugiēns; quae nūllō modō
ēvādere potuit, cum Britannī celeritāte tantopere superā-
bant. Nāve trāditā, dīvitiae maximae intus repertae sunt;
quīn etiam gubernātor ipse duo pōcula argentea habuisse
dīcitur. Quae cum praefectus vīdisset, gubernātōrī, "Duo
15 pōcula tū habēs," inquit; "alterum mihi dandum est."
Tum gubernātor miser, quī omnia trādenda plānē intellegē-
bat, invītus praefectō in manūs pōcula trādidit ambō.

LESSON 71

A Roman Vandal

Quibus rebus admoneor ut dē pessimīs facinoribus Ver-
ris, hominis plānē scelerātī, pauca nunc dīcam. Nam ille,

4. **Līmae**: a town name; what
case?

7. **suum**: sc. nāvigium. — **sol-
vit**: cf. nāvem solvērunt, p. 61, l.
9.

8. **dīvitiās**: dīvitiae, -ārum,
F., *treasures*.

10. **fugiēns**: cf. fugientēs, p.
69, l. 24.

11. **cum**: causal. — **celeritāte**:
for syntax, cf. animō, p. 37, l. 20.
— **tantopere**: cf. p. 73, l. 7.

12. **dīvitiae**: cf. l. 8.

13. **gubernātor**: cf. guberná-
culum. — **ipse**: *even*.

15. **alterum**: *one* (of the two).

16. **trādenda**: sc. esse. —
plānē: *full well*.

17. **praefectō**: dat. case;
translate as if a genitive.

19. **hominis**: in apposition
with **Verris**. — **plānē**: *utterly*;
cf. the rendering in the note on l.
16. — **pauca**: note the gender.
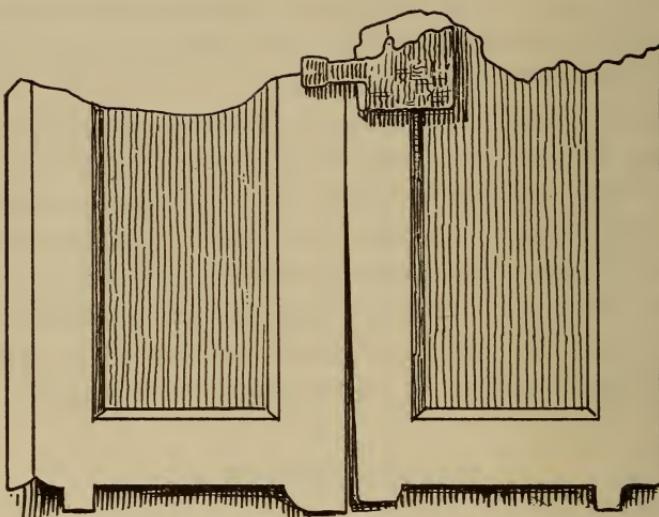
FORĒS

These remnants of a house door serve to show why the word for "door" is plural in Latin. Roman house doors were arranged almost always to open inward rather than outward; on the inside there was a more or less primitive lock or bolt, and sometimes a bar too was used.

cum praetor in Siciliā esset, omnibus locīs oppida templa-
que spoliāvit; quīn etiam tantae erat avāritiae, ut nē pau-
perrimī quidem Siculī bona vidēre posset, quīn statim ea
possidēre vellet. Interdum autem ā suīs comitibus est
5 ēlūsus.

Sīcut memoriae trāditum est eum ōlim certiōrem factum
cuidam Siculō esse duo pōcula argentea; quō audītō, etsī
aedēs eiusdem hominis nūper spoliātae erant, nūntium
statim mīsit, quī pōcula ad sē sine morā dēferrī iubēret.
10 Siculus igitur, veritus nē sibi malum accideret maius, cōn-
fēstim cum pōculīs ad praetōrem profectus est. Quō ubi
pervēnit, praetor forte iam quiēscēbat; sed ante forēs am-
bulābant quīdam ex ipsīus amīcīs, hominēs improbī, quōrum
tamen cōnsiliō ille multum ūtī cōnsuēverat: quī Siculō
15 statim, "Ubi sunt pōcula?" inquiunt. Tum homō miser
prīmō querī coepit bona omnia sibi ēripī, deinde eōs vehe-
menter hortātus est ut sibi auxiliō essent. Quō audītō, illī
"Quantum nobīs dabis," inquiunt, "sī pōcula tibi nōn ēri-
pientur?" Tum Siculus spē ērēctus, praemium satis ma-

---

1. **praetor** (-ōris, M.) : *(as)
governor.* — **templa** : see the pic-
ture of a Sicilian temple shown on
p. 96.

2. **tantae ... avāritiae** :
for syntax, cf. p. 62, l. 14. — **pauper-
rimī** : pauper, -eris, adj., *poor.*

3. **quīn ... vellet** : *without
wishing,* lit. *but that* (quīn) *he
wanted.*

4. **possidēre** : possideō, 2,
-sēdī, -sessus, *possess.* — **suīs** :
note the position of the word. —
est ēlūsus : *was cheated.*

6. **memoriae trāditum est** : *it
is recorded,* lit. *it is handed down
to remembrance.*

10. **malum** : as noun, modified
by maius.

11. **ad praetōrem** : *to the gov-
ernor's residence* (cf. l. 1).

12. **forte** : with the verb, render
"chanced to"; cf. the free treat-
ment of libenter, p. 77, l. 10.

13. **ipsīus** : *i.e.* Verris. — **impro-
bī** : improbus, -a, -um, *unprincipled.*

14. **ūtī** : freely, *depend upon.*
— **cōnsuēverat** : cf. p. 76, l. 21.

16. **sibi** : dat. of disadvantage;
we would say "*from* him."

17. **auxiliō** : cf. p. 78, l. 5.

18. **quantum** : as noun.

19. **ērēctus** (-a, -um, part.) :
elated, or *inspired.*

gnum pollicitus est, pōculaque brevī domum laetus reportāvit
comitēs enim praetōris, cum ille ē somnō experrēctus esset,
audācī mendāciō ūsī nōn dubitāvērunt cōnfīrmāre pōcula
sibi nōn digna vidērī, quae in eius mēnsā pōnerentur.

LESSON 72

Indian Vengeance

5   Indī Americānī nōn sōlum cum colōnīs saepe bellum
gessērunt, sed inter sē quoque pugnāre cōnsuēverant ācer-
rimē.   Sīcut in Britanniā Novā rēx quīdam, nōmine Mian-
tōnimō, diū per īnsidiās cōnātus est interficere Uncam,
rēgem fīnitimum, ut ipse sōlus duārum nātiōnum rēgnum
10 obtinēret; cum autem ista cōnsilia eum fefellissent omnia,
subitō magnō cum exercitū in vīcīnī fīnēs quam celerrimē
contendit: Uncās vērō, dē eius adventū ab explōrātōribus
certior factus, cōpiās coēgerat et sine morā ad pugnam
profectus est.

15   Ubi aciēs duae īnstrūctae sunt, Uncās, paulum ante suōs
prōgressus, sē velle dīxit sōlum cum Miantōnimōne sōlō
dīmicāre, ut sine dētrīmentō cēterōrum rēs diiūdicārī posset.
Quod cum ille recūsāret, Uncās cōnsultō in terram prō-
lapsus est, eiusque mīlitēs, clāmōre sublātō, super ducem

2. experrēctus esset: exper-
gīscor, 3, -perrēctus sum, *wake up.*

3. mendāciō: mendācium, -ī,
N., *lie.* — ūsī: translate as if a
present.

4. digna . . . quae: with sub-
junct., *worthy to* (dignus, -a, -um).
— mēnsā: mēnsa, -ae, F., *table.*

8. īnsidiās: see the Vocab.

9. duārum: *the two.*

10. fefellissent: from fallō.

12. Uncās: for the declension,
cf. the note on Cercās, p. 23, l. 4.

16. velle: *was willing.* — sō-
lum: pred. adj. with dīmicāre;
what other part of speech has the
same form? (cf. l. 5).

17. cēterōrum: we would say
"*to* the others." — diiūdicārī: dī-
iūdicō, 1, *decide,* or *settle.*

18. quod: *this (proposal).* —
ille: Miantonimo.

iacentem sagittās plūrimās coniēcērunt in hostīs; quī re-
pentīnā rē perterritī sē cōnfēstim in silvās palūdēsque con-
tulērunt.   Quā in fugā periērunt multī, rēxque ab Uncā
ipsō captus est.   Ab inimīcō salūtem petere dux victus
5 scīlicet nōlēbat, et paulō post secūrī percussus est: quō
quidem tempore Uncās, cum inimīcum humī moribun-
dum vīdisset, eius umerum sīcā appetīvisse dīcitur, frū-
stumque carnis inde abscīsum vultū laetō dēvorāsse; tan-
tae enim saevitiae sunt mōrēs Indōrum.

LESSON 73

A Tale of Brave Women

10   Abhinc multōs annōs, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad occi-
dentem spectant adhūc rārī essent colōnī, explōrātōrēs quī-
dam, domō trāns montēs profectī, per regiōnēs īgnōtās
multa mīlia passuum iter fēcērunt, et postrēmō locum idō-
neum nactī, procul ab amīcīs in rīpā pulcherrimī flūminis
15 castellum parvum collocāvērunt; quibus rēbus factīs, nūn-
tiōs mīsērunt, quī eōdem mulierēs līberōsque dēdūcerent.

Hiems iam appropinquābat; omnēs tamen cum nūntiīs
libenter domō ēgressī sunt, et nāvigiīs parvīs vectī secundō

1. **iacentem**: *prostrate*; lit.
what? — **repentīnā rē**: sc. **hāc**.

4. **ab** : *of*.

5. **secūrī percussus est**: *i.e.
was executed*; lit. what?

6. **quidem**: omit in translation.

7. **sīcā**: abl. of means.

8. **inde**: *i.e. from it.* — **vultū
laetō**: cf. p. 58, l. 4. — **dēvorāsse**:
for the form, cf. **nāvigāsset**,
p. 3, l. 1.

10. **occidentem**: cf. p. 65, l. 1.

12. **domō**: the acc. and abl. of
domus have the construction of
town names (cf. the note on p. 79,
l. 21).

16. **eōdem**: bearing the same
relation to **īdem**, as **eō** to **is**, and
quō to **quī**.

17. **omnēs**: *i.e.* the women and
children.

18. **secundō**: cf. the force of
the prep. **secundum**, and contrast
that of **adversō** (**flūmine**).

flūmine ad castellum versus per aquam glaciē impedītam
summō labōre contendērunt.   Barbarī interim paene cotī-
diē ē rīpīs tēla coniciēbant; et postrēmō multī ē colōnōrum
numerō exitiālī morbō affectī sunt.   Quā rē cōgnitā, hostēs
5 ē rīpā scaphīs audācter prōgressī, nāvigium cēpērunt quō
aegrī vehēbantur, hominēsque miserōs interfēcērunt omnēs.

   Tantīs in perīculīs nōn virī sōlum sed etiam mulierēs
virtūtem maximam praestitērunt.   Sīcut, cum scapha quae-
dam in saxō abscondītō adhaesisset, mulierēs duae exsiluē-
10 runt in aquam frīgidam, scaphamque dē saxō dētrūsērunt,
cum alterius vir hostēs armīs dēterrēbat.   Atque in libur-
nicā quādam puella vix adulta omnibus salūtī fuit; cum
enim ab Indīs tēla conicerentur plūrima, virīque sē tegere
cōnārentur, haec virgō fortis, cum liburnicam vī flūminis
15 ad rīpam dēferrī animadvertisset, gubernāculīs arreptīs
nāvem in cursū tenuit, dōnec vulnerāta est; quīn etiam nē
tum quidem gemitum ūllum ēdidit, neque ē manibus guber-
nācula ēlābī passa est.

LESSON 74

The Treasure Seekers

   Et hāc et aliīs aetātibus hominēs credulī cōnsuēverant in
20 cavernīs maris frūstrā quaerere nāvēs, quae ōlim gazā

6. aegrī: as noun; cf. vulne-
rātī, etc.

11. alterius: *of one* (of the
two). — vir: *husband.*

12. adulta: adultus, -a, -um,
part., *grown up.*

13. sē tegere: *i.e. get under
cover.*

14. virgō (-inis, F.): *maiden.*
— cum . . . animadvertisset:
translate by a partic. phrase.

15. gubernāculīs: cf. p. 64, l. 9.

16. in cursū: *i.e.* in the chan-
nel.

18. ēlābī: ēlābor, 3, -lapsus
sum, *slip;* cf. prōlābor.

19. et . . . et: cf. p. 7, l. 2.
— aetātibus: *i.e.* temporibus. —
credulī: crēdulus, -a, -um, *credu-
lous.*

20. cavernīs: caverna, -ae, F.,
cavern.

onustae in marī naufragium fēcisse dīcuntur ; interdum
autem fortūnā prōsperiōre ūsī sunt.　Sīcut abhinc multōs
annōs quīdam negōtiātor, ē Britanniā Novā paucīs cum
comitibus profectus, ad locum nāvigāvit longinquum, ubi
5 gaza maxima multīs ante annīs naufragiō āmissa esse
dīcēbātur.　Quō cum vēnisset, arborem altissimam statim
excīdit scaphamque fēcit, quae ad freta fīnitima explōranda
ūsuī esset.

　　Aliquamdiū nihil repertum est.　Ōlim tamen, cum nautae
10 tōtō diē dīligenter labōrāvissent ac spē omnī paene sublātā
ad nāvem sē dēfessī cōnferrent, quīdam ex eīs forte sub-
mersam animadvertit algam fōrmōsam, cuius pulchritūdine
captus servum Indum ē scaphā exsilīre eamque carpere
iussit ; ille vērō, ubi cum algā sē ex aquā ēmersit, sub marī
15 cōnfirmāvit sēsē multa arma vīdisse.　Quō audītō, omnēs
ecfrēnātē gaudēbant, cum sentīrent sē iam dēmum nāvi-
gium invēnisse, quod mēnsēs multōs quaesīverant.　Quārē
statim in mare exsiluērunt Indī aliī ; ā quibus brevī ē nāvi-
giō lāminae argenteae complūrēs ēlātae sunt.　Posterō diē
20 nautae, cum eōdem prīmā lūce cum praefectō redīssent, ē
marī vim argentī incrēdibilem ūnā cum gemmīs plūrimīs
facile recēpērunt.

　　1. naufragium: naufragium,
-ī, N., *shipwreck* (nāvis + frangō).

　　2. ūsī sunt: *they have had.*

　　8. ūsuī esset: see the Vocab.

　　10. tōtō diē: translate as if
acc. — omnī: freely, *entirely.*

　　11. quīdam: as noun (sing.).
— forte: cf. the note on p. 85,
l. 12. — submersam: submersus,
-a, -um, part., *submerged, i.e.
under the surface.*

　　12. algam: alga, -ae, F., *sea-
weed.* — fōrmōsam: fōrmōsus, -a,

-um, *graceful.* — pulchritūdine:
pulchritūdō, -inis, F., *beauty.*

　　13. servum: *helper.*

　　14. sē . . . ēmersit: *emerged,*
or *came up* (ēmergō, 3, -mersī.
-mersus).

　　15. sēsē: *i.e.* sē.

　　19. lāminae: lāmina, -ae, F.,
plate, or *strip.*

　　20. prīmā lūce: cf. vespere
prīmō, p. 77, l. 1.

　　21. gemmīs: gemma, -ae, F.,
jewel.

LESSON 75

A Dangerous Conspiracy

Ōlim in fīnibus Indōrum ab Americānīs cōnstitūta est
prōvincia maxima, ex quā pars quaedam etiam nunc In-
diāna appellātur.   Prōvinciā cōnstitūtā rēx Indus, nōmine
Tecumsa, quī nē cīvēs suī brevī patriam tōtam dīmitterent
5 timēre coeperat, omnibus locīs palam dīcere nōn dubitāvit
sine cōnsēnsū omnium nātiōnum Indīs agrum nūllum vēn-
dendum esse; ac postrēmō, conciliīs undique convocātīs,
barbarōs hortātus est ut sē sequerentur hostīsque invīsōs ē
fīnibus suīs expellerent.

10   Deinde, cum ad caput prōvinciae lēgātī conveniendī
causā iter fēcisset, quamquam in lēgātī aedium vestibulō
ipsī comitibusque subsellia posita erant, ibi sedēre nōluit:
terram enim cōnfīrmāvit esse Indōrum mātrem, sēque in
eā stāre mālle; itaque lēgātus ad colloquium in silvam
15 prōgredī coāctus est.   Ibi dum colloquuntur, Tecumsa ve-
hementer est īrā commōtus, eiusque comitēs secūrīs cōn-
fēstim arripuērunt.   Sed Americānī paucī, quī adstābant,
statim expediērunt arma, mīlitēsque summā celeritāte ad
lēgātum dēfendendum adcurrērunt; quibus rēbus territī,
20 Indī nihil tum ausī sunt.   At lēgātus, quī plānē sentiēbat
cum barbarīs sibi mox dīmicandum esse, cōpiās satis magnās

---

4. nē: depending on timēre,
l. 5.—tōtam: translate by an adv.

5. omnibus locīs: cf. p. 82, l.
6.

6. cōnsēnsū: cōnsēnsus, -ūs,
M., *concurrence.* — Indīs: dat.
case.

11. vestibulō: vestibulum, -ī,
N., *entrance court.*

12. ipsī: Tecumseh.—subsel-
lia: subsellium, -ī, N., *bench.*

17. paucī: *the few.*

18. expediērunt: *i.e.* expedīvē-
runt. — ad . . . dēfendendum:
cf. the construction with causā,
l. 11.

19. adcurrērunt: adcurrō, 3,
-currī, -cursum est, *run up.*

quam celerrimē cōgere coepit. Tecumsa interim, ut omnīs
Indōs ad arma vocāret, reliquās gentēs dīligenter iam cir-
cumībat.

LESSON 76

A Dangerous Conspiracy (Continued)

Priusquam rēx Indus cum sociīs redīre potuit, lēgātus,
5 sibi initium bellī esse faciendum ratus, cōnsiliō callidō
ūsus est; nam ex urbe ad pugnam profectus, legiōnēs
flūmine adversō pauca mīlia passuum dūxit, tum subitō in
rīpam trānsiit alteram. Putābat enim (id quod factum est)
barbarōs īnsidiās collocātūrōs eā in rīpā, in quā prīmō iter
10 facere ipse coepisset. Cōpiīs igitur flūmen trāductīs, sine
dētrīmentō ūllō contendit ad oppidum, ubi domicilium Te-
cumsa habēbat.

Cum lēgātus propius accessisset, rēgis frāter, quī tum
oppidō praeerat, nūntium mīsit, quī dīceret posterō diē
15 Indōs condiciōnēs pācis petītūrōs. Itaque Americānī prope
oppidum posuērunt castra, armīsque expedītīs sē somnō
dedērunt. At vigiliā circiter quārtā subitō audītus est
ululātus Indōrum, quī undique castra iam obsidēbant;
quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō, mīlitēs ē somnō excitātī ignīs

---

5. initium: initium, -ī, N., *be-
ginning.* The whole phrase may
be rendered freely, *thinking that
he ought to take the initiative in
the war;* lit. what?

8. id quod factum est: *as
actually proved to be the case,* lit.
*the thing which (actually) hap-
pened.*

9. eā: modifying rīpā. — **in
quā:** *upon* (or *along*) *which.*

10. flūmen trāductīs: *i.e.* trāns

flūmen ductīs (cf. trādō for
trānsdō).

11. domicilium: domicilium, -ī,
N., *residence.*

14. praeerat: cf. p. 58, l. 12,
and the note.

17. vigiliā . . . quārtā: *i.e.*
toward morning, the night being
divided into four equal watches.

19. quō sonō ad aurēs adlātō:
cf. p. 73, l. 11. — **ignīs:** *the
(camp) fires.*

cōnfēstim extīnxērunt, nē ab hostibus cōnspicī possent.
Sīc trīs ferē hōrās in nocte obscūrā ab Americānīs fortis-
simē pugnātum est; tum prīmā lūce, ēruptiōne factā, in
fugam coniēcērunt hostīs, oppidumque incendērunt.

5   Oppidō incēnsō Tecumsa, postquam rediit, cōnsilia sua
perficere nūllō modō potuit; paucīs autem post mēnsibus,
cum Americānī Britannīs bellum indīxissent, in exercitū
Britannicō lēgātus factus est.

LESSON 77

A Quick-Witted Messenger

Ōlim, cum in prōvinciīs, quae ad merīdiem spectant,
10 Americānī cum Britannīs diū gessissent bellum ac saepe
superātī essent, dux quīdam Americānus ad imperātōrem
alium litterās mittere volēbat; at prīmō reperīrī poterat
nēmō, quī eās dēferre audēret, quod undique hostēs viās
obsidēbant. Postrēmō autem mulier quaedam, "Ego lit-
15 terās adferam," inquit; "quidvīs audēre mālō, quam domī
animō morārī suspēnsō."

Equō adductō, nūntia sine morā cōnscendit, ac, cōnfēstim
profecta, in itinere ab hostibus intercepta est. Quam cap-
tam mīlitēs maximā dīligentiā custōdiērunt, dōnec mulier
20 vocārī posset, quae litterās quaereret, sī quae forte nūntiae
vestīmentīs tēctae essent.

Dum vērō mulier exspectātur, nūntia litterās celeriter

---

1. **possent**: subject, **mīlitēs**
(see p. 91, l. 19).

7. **cum . . . indīxissent**:
translate by a partic. phrase. —
Britannīs: translate the dat.
"upon."

8. **lēgātus**: *an officer*.

13. **audēret**: *would venture.*

15. **quam**: *(rather) than.*

17. **nūntia** (-ae, F.): *messenger.*

18. **captam**: *i.e. after her
capture.*

20. **posset**: *could.* — **sī quae**: cf.
p. 65, l. 2.

perlēgit, cumque eās discerpsisset, frāgmenta chartae ēdit
singula.   Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit: altera enim mulier, cum
postrēmō vēnisset, nihil scīlicet invenīre potuit; quārē
mīlitēs, veniā contumēliae petītā, nūntiam incolumem abīre
5 passī sunt.   Illa autem summā celeritāte ad castra Ameri-
cāna contendit, imperātōremque certiōrem fēcit dē rēbus
omnibus, quae in litterīs scrīptae erant.

LESSON 78

Fortune favors the Brave

In exercitū Americānō ōlim erat centuriō quīdam, nō-
mine Iasper, quī semper in perīculīs maximīs libenter ver-
10 sābātur.   Sīcut, cum Britannī castra quaedam oppugnā-
rent, vēxillumque Americānum tēlīs abreptum in terram
extrā mūnītiōnēs cecidisset, inter tēla, quae plūrima ho-
stēs coniciēbant, ē castrīs ērūpit ille, vēxillumque arreptum
in vāllō rursus posuit.

15 Ac paulō post, cum cōgnōvisset Americānōs paucōs ā
Britannīs capitis damnātōs Savannam ad mortem dēdūcī,
ūnō cum comite profectus, ad fontem haud procul ab eā urbe
in īnsidiīs latēbat, ut cīvibus suīs, sī posset, auxiliō esset.
Mox in cōnspectum vēnērunt captīvī, quōs mīlitēs decem

1. discerpsisset: discerpō, 3,
-cerpsī, -cerptus, *tear up.* —
frāgmenta: frāgmentum, -ī, N.,
bit. — chartae: charta, -ae, F.,
paper.

2. fuit: *proved to be.*

4. contumēliae: translate the
gen. "for" (cf. audāciae, p. 39,
l. 2).

6. contendit: *pushed on.*

9. libenter versābātur: freely,
delighted to be.

11. vēxillum (-ī, N.): *flag,* cf.
the Roman flags shown on p. 162.

12. plūrima: freely, *thick and
fast.*

16. capitis: cf. p. 47, l. 16, and
the note. — Savannam: see the
note on p. 79, l. 21. — ad mortem:
i.e. to execution.

custōdiēbant; ē quibus octō, ubi ad fontem perventum est, armīs sub arboribus relictīs, aquam haurīre properāvērunt. Tum Iasper eiusque amīcus ērūpērunt ē latebrīs, duōbusque custōdibus occīsīs mīlitēs cēterōs sē dēdere coēgērunt:
5 deinde cum captīvīs Britannicīs atque cīvibus, quōs servāverant, cōnfēstim ad castra Americāna sē contulērunt.

Haud semper autem Iasperō rēs tam fēlīciter ēvēnērunt; paucīs enim post annīs interfectus est, cum summā audāciā prōcucurrisset ex aciē atque in hostium vāllō vēxillum
10 dēfīxisset Americānum.

LESSON 79

Andrew Jackson

Nunc mihi pauca dīcenda sunt dē rēbus gestīs Americānī cuiusdam, nōmine Iacsōnis, quī obscūrō locō nātus, postrēmō reī pūblicae prīnceps factus est.   Quī adhūc puer in bellō, quod prīmum Britannī cum Americānīs gessērunt,
15 fortiter versātus, ūnā cum frātre ab hostibus captus, in carcere morbō gravī affectus est.   Māter autem brevī efficere potuit ut fīliī ambō cum captīvīs Britannīs commūtārentur.

Multīs post annīs, cum Britannī iterum cum Americānīs

1. quibus: *i.e.* mīlitibus. — ad: *near*.

2. haurīre: hauriō, 4, hausī, haustus, *draw*.

3. duōbus: *the two*.

7. Iasperō, etc.: cf. the similar phrase, p. 43, l. 16.

8. cum: conjunction.

9. vēxillum: cf. p. 93, l. 11.

12. locō: *station*; for syntax, cf. the note on p. 7, l. 4.

13. adhūc: (*while*) *still*. — in bellō, quod prīmum: *i.e.* in prīmō bellō, quod.

16. efficere . . . ut: freely, *arrange that*; lit. what?

17. captīvīs: translate as adj. — commūtārentur: commūtō, 1, *exchange*; in connection with this verb, cum may be rendered "for."

19. iterum: *i.e.* from the year 1812 on.

bellum gererent, Indī, quōdam castellō Americanōrum ex-
pugnātō, nōn sōlum armātōs sed etiam mulierēs līberōsque
summā crūdēlitāte occīdērunt.   Quā caede nūntiātā, Iacsō,
dīlēctū habitō, quam celerrimē profectus est, ut hostīs co-
5 ercēret; cumque multa mīlia passuum iter fēcisset, etsī
mīlitēs labōrandō dēfessī semel iterumque negābant sē
longius prōgressūrōs, pervēnit postrēmō ad castra mūnītis-
sima, quae in rīpā flūminis Tallapūsae posuerant Indī.
Ubi ācriter pugnātum est ; castra tamen sunt capta, hostēs-
10 que paene ad ūnum aut ibi periērunt aut in Flōridam fugere
coāctī sunt.   Victōriā potītus Iacsō summā cōmitāte rēgem
Indōrum accēpit, quī equō vectus castra intrāre est ausus
petītum ut frūmentō Americānī iuvārent mulierēs lībe-
rōsque Indōs, quī in silvīs latentēs famem aegrē iam tole-
15 rābant.

LESSON 80

Pirates Ashore

Quondam in marī Atlanticō secundum lītus Americānum
ultrō citrōque nāvigābant pīrātae, quī omnibus locīs nāvēs
vel Americānās vel Britannicās spoliābant ; ē quibus ūnus,
summae audāciae homō, liburnicīs praeerat complūribus.
20 Is ōlim oppugnāre cōnstituit oppidum longinquum, quod
numquam anteā spoliātum erat, cuiusque incolae locuplētēs
esse dīcēbantur.

Sine dētrīmentō liburnicae in portum vēnērunt; tum

---

4. dīlēctū: dīlēctus, -ūs, M.,
levy.

5. etsī: modifying the pre-
ceding clause.

6. labōrandō: gerund.

11. victōriā: the same con-
struction as with ūtor.

13. petītum : supine ; another
way of saying ut peteret. —
frūmentō : (*a contribution of*)
grain.

14. latentēs : *in their hiding
places* : lit. what?

17. nāvigābant : *kept sailing.*
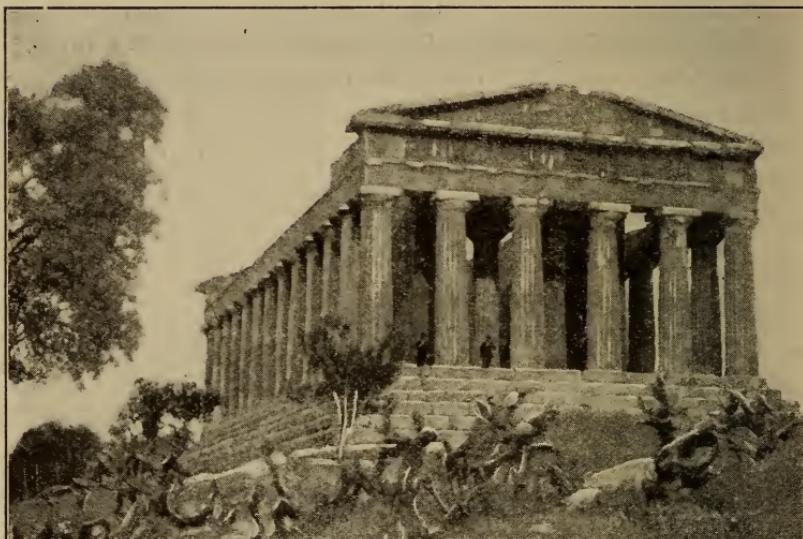
TEMPLUM

The above building, found in Sicily, is of Grecian architecture. It is known as the Temple of Concord. Roman temples were regularly constructed on Greek models.

autem captīvus quīdam, quī minus dīligenter custōdiēbātur,
in mare clam exsiluit, ac nandō incolumis pervēnit ad lītus :
quī sine morā oppidānōs dē cōnsiliīs pīrātārum certiōrēs
fēcit.   Quō nūntiō acceptō, oppidānī summā dīligentiā
5 bona sua cēlāre coepērunt.   Deinde, postquam pīrātae ē
nāvibus ēgressī mīlitēs paucōs, quī oppidō erant praesidiō
relictī, in fugam coniēcērunt, cīvēs ipsī, aedibus clausīs,
tēla in hostēs prīmō coniēcērunt plūrima ; sed postrēmō,
timōre dētrīmentī etiam maiōris coāctī, sē maestī dēdidē-
10 runt.   Quōs omnīs pīrātae, victōriā potītī, in templa quae-
dam coēgērunt.   Ubi illī fame sunt paene necātī ; victōrēs
enim interim tam bene sē habēbant, ut omnīnō captīvōrum
miserōrum oblīvīscerentur.

LESSON 81

Carrying the Tribute

Abhinc multōs annōs Americānī, antequam rēs pūblica va-
15 lida facta est, tribūtum pendere solēbant cuidam rēgī Afri-
cānō, nē pīrātae eārum regiōnum (quī sub eius imperiō erant)
nāvēs suās spoliārent.   Ōlim, cum praefectus Americānus
tribūtī istīus ferendī causā ad Āfricam nāvigāsset, rēx ille,
quī forte nūntium cum dōnō Bȳzantium hōc ferē tempore

1. minus : *not very* ; what use
of the compar. ?

4. nūntiō : *news*, or *informa-
tion*.

5. cēlāre : cēlō, 1, *conceal*, or
hide.

6. paucōs : cf. paucī, p. 90, l.
17. — praesidiō : cf. p. 65, l. 4.

10. quōs omnīs : cf. quī omnēs,
p. 57, l. 8.

11. coēgērunt : *crowded.* — vic-
tōrēs : victor, -ōris, M., *victor*.

12. tam bene sē habēbant :
were having so good a time.

15. facta est : freely, *had
grown.* — pendere : pendō, 3, pe-
pendī, pēnsus, *pay.*

16. nē : *so that . . . not.*

19. Bȳzantium : see the note
on p. 79, l. 21.

ad rēgem suprēmum mittere volēbat (nam ipse quoque tri-
būtum pendere cōgēbātur), ab Americānīs postulāvit ut
nāve suā hanc rem susciperent.   Praefectus scīlicet sē nōlle
respondit; sed-rēx, "Nōnne servī estis?" inquit: "nōnne
5 tribūtum mihi penditis? Hanc rem mehercle nisi cōnfēstim
suscipiētis, nāvēs omnēs Americānae, quae in marī Medi-
terrāneō nāvigant, ā pīrātīs statim capientur."   Praefectus
igitur animō haud aequō Bȳzantium proficīscī coāctus est:
ubi autem rēx suprēmus Americānōs summō accēpit honōre;
10 cumque discēderent, ducī etiam dedit diplōma.

Cum nāvis paucīs post diēbus ad lītus Āfricae rursus
appulsa esset, rēx Āfricānus, quī iam oblītus erat sē polli-
citum esse nihil amplius ab Americānīs postulātum īrī, prae-
fectum iussit iterum Bȳzantium nāvigāre; cumque id
15 recūsāret, etiam mortem praesentem minātus est.   Tum
praefectus diplōma porrēxit; quō vīsō, tantus timor rēgis
animum occupāvit, ut veniā contumēliārum petītā Ameri-
cānōs sine morā redīre domum paterētur.

LESSON 82

A Successful Ambuscade

Eō tempore, quō colōnī cum Philippō, rēge Indōrum
20 clārō, bellum gerēbant, oppidō quōdam ā barbarīs incēnsō,

1. rēgem suprēmum: *i.e.* the Sultan.

2. pendere: cf. p. 97, l. 15. — ab: *of.*

4. nōnne: *i.e.* nōn + ne: this combination assumes the answer "yes."

5. mehercle: interjection, *by my halidom;* lit. *(so help) me, Hercules.*

8. Bȳzantium: translate the acc. "for"; cf. p. 97, l. 19.

10. diplōma: acc. sing. of di-plōma, -atis, N., *passport.*

13. postulātum īrī: what in-fin.?

15. recūsāret: *object to;* sub-ject, praefectus. — minātus est: minor, 1, *threaten.*

16. diplōma: cf. l. 10.

17. contumēliārum: cf. p. 93, l. 4, and the note.

19. quō: *when,* lit. *during which.*

magna vīs frūmentī ab eīs integra in agrīs relicta est. Quō
cōgnitō, imperātor colōnōrum, tantam frūmentī cōpiam nōn
temerē dīmittendam ratus, ab oppidō fīnitimō lēgātum cum
mīlitibus proficīscī iussit, ut frūgēs ad bellī sēdem reportāret.
5 Ille igitur iūmenta carrōsque statim coēgit multōs, ac cōn-
fēstim in agrōs illōs contendit; ubi nūllō impediente frū-
mentum omne in carrōs sine morā impositum est.

Postquam tamen cōpiās redūcere coepit, lēgātus silvās
veritus (per quās tria mīlia passuum iter faciendum erat)
10 mīlitēs prīmō armīs expedītīs prōgredī iussit. Cum vērō
agmen ē silvā incolume ēvāsisset, omnia perīcula suōs iam
effūgisse arbitrātus, viā minus dīligenter explōrātā, in
īnsidiās subitō incidit, quās hostēs fēcerant in palūde
quādam, per quam rīvus parvus fluēbat. Quem ad locum
15 ubi perventum est, repente audītus est undique ululātus
Indōrum, tēlaque plūrima inmissa sunt. Quā rē novā
permōtī mīlitēs nūllō modō resistere potuērunt, praesertim
cum numerō barbarī multō essent superiōrēs. Quīn etiam ē
proeliō colōnī vix septem octōve effūgērunt; quārē prop-
20 ter clādem ibi acceptam hīc locus posteā "rīvus cruentus"
appellābātur.

LESSON 83

An Intrepid Commander

Eōdem bellō quīdam colōnī in scaphīs ōlim eō cōnsiliō
profectī sunt, ut cum Indīs fīnitimīs aut pācem facerent,

3. fīnitimō: *i.e.* to the burned
town.

4. frūgēs: frūx, frūgis, F., *fruit*
(of the earth); pl., *crop.* — bellī
sēdem: *i.e. the base of operations.*

5. iūmenta: iūmentum, -ī, N.,
beast of burden. — multōs: see
the note on ratī, p. 82, l. 14.

12. arbitrātus, etc.: use but
one part. in the English sentence.

13. incidit: incidō, 3, -cidī,
fall into (in + cadō).

14. rīvus: *brook.*

19. octōve: *i.e.* octō + ve.

22. eōdem bellō: for syntax,
cf. prīmō bellō, p. 62, l. 15.

aut eīs indīcerent bellum, sī Philippum adiuvāre per-
sevērārent. Ē scaphīs ēgressī, per agrōs contendēbant
colōnī, cum subitō ululātus audītus est, et barbarī impetū
repentīnō mīlitēs ad lītus sē recipere coēgērunt : nam in
5 eō quoque proeliō Indī numerō erant multō superiōrēs; dux
enim colōnōrum quīndecim tantum mīlitēs sēcum tum ha-
bēbat.

Is autem, vir summae cōnstantiae, locum idōneum
nactus, suōs hortātus est nē sē animō dēmitterent, et ipse
10 ācriter dīmicāvit. Dum rēs sīc geritur, animadvertit
forte ūnum ē comitibus ita territum, ut nūllō modō
pugnāre posset. Quō vīsō, hominem iussit lapidēs com-
portāre, quī prō mūnītiōne ūsuī essent : quod cum iste
faceret, sagitta subitō lapidem percussit, quem manibus
15 ferēbat; quō mīrāculō permōtus (nam vītam ā dīs ita
servātam esse exīstimābat), animōs homō resūmpsit, sum-
māque virtūte ūnā cum cēterīs pugnāvit.

Brevī tēla colōnōrum dēficere coepērunt; sed nāvis
adventū opportūnō servātī sunt. Dux tamen, cum nōllet
20 Indōs putāre sē timōre discessisse, etiam tum in agrīs
paulum morātus est ad petasum petendum, quem ad
fontem paulō ante relīquerat.

---

1. eīs : cf. the note on **Britan-
nīs**, p. 92, l. 7.
4. **ad** : *toward*.
8. **locum** : *position*.
9. **animō** : for syntax, cf.
the more familiar phrase, **animō
dēmissus**.
11. **forte** : cf. the note on
p. 85, l. 12.
12. **quō** : neut. — **lapidēs** : lapis,
-idis, M., *stone*.
13. **prō** : *as*, or *for*. — **ūsuī** : cf.
p. 89, l. 8. — **essent** : note the

mood. — **iste** : the soldier.
14. **manibus** : cf. p. 7, l. 9.
15. **mīrāculō** : mīrāculum, -ī, N.,
providence, lit. *strange happen-
ing*.
16. **animōs** : *courage.* — **resūmp-
sit** : resūmō, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus,
recover.
19. **cum nōllet** : translate by a
partic. phrase.
20. **timōre** : abl. of cause.
21. **petasum** : petasus, -ī, M.,
broad-brimmed hat.

LESSON 84

Burned at the Stake

Dē crūdēlitāte Indōrum multa nārrantur.   Sīcut, cum
oppidum colōnōrum quoddam ā Gallīs barbarīsque esset
expugnātum, ampliusque quīnquāgintā oppidānī captī
essent, hostēs cum captīvīs miserīs cōnfēstim domum con-
5 tendērunt.   Dum autem iter faciunt, ūnus ē captīvīs, homō
obēsus, quī onus grave ferre coāctus tardius sequēbātur, sē
posse clam effugere ratus, onus subitō in viā dēposuit
atque in arbore cavā latēre cōnātus est.

Hīc autem ab Indīs brevī repertus, veste dētractā per
10 nivem nūdus prōgredī est coāctus; quō modō usque ad
noctem iter factum est.   Tum barbarī, captīvō ad arborem
religātō, ignem pedetemptim admovēbant, dōnec homō
moribundus vīsus est; deinde rursus paulum redūcēbant,
quō diūtius cruciārētur.   Quīn etiam, nē hōc quidem
15 contentī, frūsta abscīdērunt vīscerum, ut cruciātū captīvī
oculōs suōs pāscerent, cum interim canerent aut saltārent
rīdentēs; et postrēmō, nē contumēlia ūlla deesset, corpus

3. **amplius**: *i.e. more (than)*;
cf. such expressions as "*above* a
thousand."

6. **obēsus** (-a, -um): *stout.* —
tardius: absol. compar.

7. **onus**: onus, -eris, N., *load.*

9. **hīc**: the adv. — **veste**: *i.e.*
vestīmentō.

11. **iter factum est**: translate
by an active form.

12. **ignem**: *the fire.* — **admovē-
bant**: *kept moving up.*

13. **redūcēbant**: sc. eum (*i.e.*
ignem).   For the force of this im-
perfect, cf. **rapiēbant**, p. 7, l. 17.

14. **quō**: replacing ut, as it
regularly does when the purpose
clause contains a comparative. —
cruciārētur: cruciō, 1, (*keep in*) *tor-
ture.* — **hōc**: (neut.) noun.

15. **contentī**:   contentus,   -a,
-um, with abl., *content (with).* —
frūsta: not   frūstrā. — **vīscerum**:
vīscus, -eris, N., (sing. and pl.)
flesh.

16. **pāscerent**: pāscō, 3, pāvī,
pāstus, with abl., *feast . . . (upon).*
Strictly, cruciātū is abl. of means.

17. **deesset**: what is the literal
force of the word (dē + sum)?

mortuī in favīllam resīdere passī sunt, quō posteā maiōre
amīcī dolōre afficerentur, cum eius cāsum vidērent miserri-
mum.

LESSON 85

An Early Morning Surprise

Ōlim Gallī Indīque castellum quoddam hieme expugnāre
5 cōnstituerant.   Quārē per nivem altam summō labōre prō-
gressī, nocte intempestā in silvā haud procul ab oppidō
castra collocāvērunt ; deinde, impedīmentīs praesidiō pau-
cīs relictīs, vigiliā quārtā ferē exāctā ad mūnītiōnēs pede-
temptim accessērunt.   Nam per nivem gelū rigidam iter iam
10 faciendum erat, timēbantque nē sonus ā colōnīs audīrētur ;
quam ob rem ab imperātōre iussī erant paulum prōgredī,
tum paulum stāre, tum iterum paulum prōgredī, ut strepi-
tus exercitūs per nivem iter facientis sonus tantum ventō-
rum vidērētur.   At nihil suspicābantur colōnī ; quīn etiam
15 custōdēs ipsī somnō gravissimō quiēscēbant.   Itaque hostēs
facillimē in castellum pervēnērunt ; nix enim ūnā ex parte
tam alta fuit, ut mūnītiōnēs vix exstārent.   Tum dēmum,
ululātū ācrī sublātō, barbarī colōnōs perterritōs cōnfēstim dē-
trāxērunt ē lectīs, et undique caedēs incendiaque miscuērunt.

1. **mortuī**: as noun (gen. masc.). — **favīllam**: favīlla, -ae, F., *embers*. — **resīdere**: resīdō, 3, -sēdī, *sink down*. — **quō**: cf. p. 101, l. 14. — **maiōre**: (*all the*) *greater*.

2. **amīcī**: nom. pl.

4. **hieme**: abl. of time when or within which.

7. **paucīs**: as (masc.) noun.

8. **exāctā**: from **exigō** ; construe with **vigiliā**, and cf. the note on p. 91, l. 17.

9. **gelū**: gelus, -ūs, M., *frost*. —

rigidam: rigidus, -a, -um, *crusted*, lit. *stiff*.

10. **nē**: note the nature of the governing verb .

13. **facientis**: modifying **exercitūs**. — **sonus**: pred. nom. with **vidērētur** (sc. **esse**). — **tantum**: the adv.

16. **ūnā ex parte**: cf. **omnibus ex partibus**, p. 44, l. 6.

17. **exstārent**: exstō, 1, ——, ——, *project*, or *appear* (*above*).

19. **caedēs**, etc. : cf. p. 78, l. 9.

In castellō praedā multā hostēs potītī sunt atque ad
vesperum, caede incendiīsque aliquandō dēfessī, sē ad
silvam contulērunt.   Victōria tamen nōn incruenta parta
erat: nam intrā castellum erant complūra tēcta minōra ;
5 quōrum ūnum cum barbarī expugnāre frūstrā cōnārentur,
tēlīs inde coniectīs multī interfectī erant.

LESSON 86

Some Very Distinguished Geese

Quibus rēbus admoneor dē impetū, quem Gallī antīquī
abhinc multōs annōs in Capitōlium fēcērunt, cum exercitūs
vīcissent Rōmānōs, urbemque ipsam incendissent.   Prīmō
10 interdiū hostēs adortī sunt, summāque audāciā saxa aspera
ascendērunt ; sed Rōmānī dēsuper eōrum aciem tam facile
tantāque caede dēiēcērunt, ut numquam posteā idem
audērent.

Deinde autem, cum multōs diēs Capitōlium obsessum
15 esset nec praesidium (quamquam summa erat cibī inopia)
sē dēdere vellet, noctū Capitōlium oppugnāre hostēs cōn-
stituērunt.   Itaque sēmitā asperā, quam paucīs ante diēbus

---

1. **praedā** : for syntax, cf. vic-
tōriā, p. 95, l. 11. — **ad** : *toward.*

2. **aliquandō** : *i.e.* dēmum.

3. **incruenta** : incruentus, -a,
-um, lit. *bloodless* ; translate freely.
— **parta erat** : from pariō.

5. **quōrum** : neut.

7. **Gallī** : as on p. 52, l. 12. —
antīquī : antīquus, -a, -um, *ancient.*

8. **cum** : *after.* — **exercitūs** :
note the ū.

9. **ipsam** : *proper.*   The Ro-
mans were so demoralized that

they made no attempt to hold any
part of Rome other than the lofty
and isolated Capitol.

10. **interdiū** : in contrast to
noctū, l. 16. — **hostēs** : subject of
the verb.

11. **dēsuper** : adv., *from above.*

12. **idem audērent** : *repeated
the venture* ; lit. what?

14. **deinde** : *later.*

15. **nec** : *and yet . . . not.*

17 . **sēmitā** : abl. of way by
which (sēmita, -ae, F., *footpath*).

Gallus quīdam forte animadverterat, tertiā ferē vigiliā ūnus mīles inermis paulum ascendit; cui deinde arma trādita sunt. Is sequentēs adiuvābat, illī rursus aliōs. Quō modō Gallī complūrēs ad summum collem tantō silentiō pervēnē-
5 runt, ut custōdēs nihil sentīrent; quīn etiam nē canēs quidem excitātī sunt. Sed repente ānserēs Iūnōnis sacrī clangōrem clārum ēdidērunt: quae rēs Rōmānīs salūtī fuit; nam M. Mānlius, vir summae cōnstantiae, sonō ācrī audītō, comitēs ad arma vocāns cōnfēstim in prīmum Gallum im-
10 petum fēcit ācerrimum, eumque dē saxō prōiēcit. Gallus cāsū suō aliōs quoque dēturbāvit; et hostēs, magnō dētrī-mentō acceptō, etiam hōc cōnātū dēsistere coāctī, in castra maestī sē recēpērunt.

LESSON 87

An Army of Two

Longum est cōnsilia nārrāre, quibus ūsī sunt colōnī eīs
15 in bellīs, quae cum Britannīs et Indīs gessērunt. Sīcut ōlim, cum per prōvinciam Noveborācēnsem nāvis Britannica adversō flūmine nāvigāret, in rīpā forte stābant līberī duo; quī veritī nē, sī agricolās armātōs exspectāssent, auxilium·

---

2. inermis (-is, -e): *without (his) arms*, lit. *unarmed*.

3. sequentēs: acc. masc., *those following.* — illī: supply a verb from the preceding clause.

4. summum: *the top of;* cf. the use of prīmā, p. 22, l. 7.

6. ānserēs: ānser, -eris, m., *goose.* — sacrī: sacer, -cra, -crum, with gen., *sacred (to).* — clangōrem: clangor, -ōris, m., *cry.*

7. ēdidērunt: from ēdō (not edō).

8. M.: *i.e.* Mārcus.

11. cāsū: *fall.* — dēturbāvit: dēturbō, 1, *carry off (one's) feet.*

12. cōnātū dēsistere: cf. p. 21, l. 3.

14. longum est: *'twould be a long (tale);* cf. the similar idiomatic use of the present indicative of possum, *e.g.* p. 41, l. 7.

17. forte: cf. the note on p. 85, l. 12.

18. exspectāssent: *should wait for;* lit. *should have waited for.*

sērō adferrētur, cōnstituērunt, sī possent, Britannōs ipsī
dēterrēre.

Post domum, quae in prōmunturiō posita erat, silva erat
parva.   Itaque līberī, cum ad aedēs cucurrissent, armīs
5 cōnfēstim arreptīs, portā postīcā in silvam clam ēgressī
sunt ; tum autem palam ē silvā in aedēs cum armīs prope-
rāvērunt.   Quod idem cum saepius fēcissent, Britannī, quī
cōnspiciēbant procul nec quicquam plānē vidēre poterant,
manum magnam in aedēs convēnisse ratī, pedetemptim
10 tamen prōgredī persevērāvērunt : dum vērō praeter prō-
munturium nāvigant, subitō alter ex līberīs inmīsit tēlum ac
gubernātōrem graviter vulnerāvit ; quī cum prōlapsus gu-
bernācula ē manibus dīmīsisset, nāvis ē cursū flūmine se-
cundō ferrī coepta est.   Quam ob rem Britannī, sē sīc omnīs
15 interficī posse arbitrātī, animō minimē aequō sē recēpērunt
ad oppidum, unde nūper profectī erant.

LESSON 88

Horatius at the Bridge

Quae rēs memorābilis mē admonet dē facinore similī sed
maiōre, quod Rōmae antīquitus ab Horātiō quōdam factum
esse trāditur.   Cum enim bellum ā rēge Porsinnā esset
20 Rōmānīs indictum, Iāniculum impetū repentīnō captum est

1. **sērō** : adv., *late* ; in this con-
text, *too late.*

3. **domum** : (*their*) *home.* —
posita erat : *had been built.*

5. **portā** : *door* ; for syntax, cf.
sēmitā, p. 103, l. 17. — **postīcā** :
postīcus, -a, -um, *back.*

7. **idem** : note the gender, and
cf. p. 103, l. 12. — **saepius** : *over
and over again* ; what use of the
compar. ?

8. **quicquam** : neut. of **quis-
quam** (cf. p. 2, l. 11).

11. **alter ex** : *one of* (the two).

13. **secundō** : cf. p. 87, l. 18.

14. **coepta est** : cf. the note on
coeptus est, p. 66, l. 12.

18. **Rōmae** : note that this is a
town name.

20. **Iāniculum** : a hill on the
west bank of the Tiber, opposite
Rome.

Pōns

Until the second century B.C., the only bridge across the Tiber at Rome was of wood. Afterward several stone bridges were built, one of which is shown above.

Rōmānīque perterritī trāns Tiberim in urbem quam celer-
rimē fugere coepērunt. Tum Horātius, quī sentiēbat hostēs,
nisi pōns esset perruptus, urbe quoque statim potītūrōs,
cīvīs suōs hortātus est ut pontem ignī ferrōque perrumpe-
5 rent, cum ipse impetum hostium sōlus sustinēret.

Itaque cum duōbus amīcīs fidēlibus, quōs pudor eum
dēserere nōn patiēbātur, ad prīmum aditum pontis fortiter
prōgressus, audācissimē ibi cōnstitit.   Quā audāciā obstupe-
factī, hostēs prīmō paulum morātī sunt, deinde impetum
10 ācriōrem fēcērunt ; Horātius vērō, minās contumēliāsque
vōciferāns, summā virtūte dīmicābat, nec locō cessit prius-
quam post tergum pōns perruptus est.   Tum in Tiberim
armātus dēsiluit, et ad rīpam alteram incolumis pervēnit,
quō paulō ante, exiguā parte pontis adhūc relictā, amīcōs
15 duo sē recipere coēgerat.

Sīc memoriae trāditum est ; Līvius autem (ā quō haec
nārrantur) facinus hoc apud posterōs plūs glōriae quam
fideī habuisse palam cōnfitētur.

1. **quam celerrimē** : translate
freely.

3. **pōns (pontis, M.)** : *bridge.*
— **esset perruptus** : cf. exspectās-
sent, p. 104, l. 18 ; for mood, cf.
admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

4. **ferrō** : ferrum, -ī, N., *iron ;*
freely, *the ax.*

5. **cum** : *while.*

6. **pudor (-ōris, M.)** : *shame.*

7. **patiēbātur** : we would say
"*would* not allow" ; cf. vidēbant,
p. 36, l. 7. — **aditum** : aditus, -ūs,
M., *approach.* — **pontis** : cf. l. 3.

8. **obstupefactī** : obstupefac-
tus, -a, -um, part., *amazed.*

10. **minās** : minae, -ārum, F.:
threats.

11. **vōciferāns** : vōciferor, 1,
shout out. — **dīmicābat** : *fought on.*
— **locō** : cf. the note on p. 7,
l. 4.

13. **dēsiluit** : dēsiliō, 4, -siluī,
leap down.

14. **quō** : the adv. ; cf. p. 47,
l. 2. — **exiguā parte**, etc. : translate
by a "while" clause.

16. **memoriae**, etc. : cf. p. 85,
l. 6, and translate freely. — **haec** :
neuter.

17. **apud posterōs** : *i.e. in the
following generations ;* lit. what ?
— **plūs** : see multus. — **glōriae** :
partitive gen.

18. **cōnfitētur** : cōnfiteor, 2,
-fessus sum, *admit.*

LESSON 89

A Favor Repaid

Ōlim Indus īgnōtus in dēversōrium ēsuriēns vēnit; cum autem diū frūstrā vēnātus erat, cibum emere nōn potuit. Sed colōnus quīdam, quī animadverterat fame hominem esse paene cōnfectum, caupōnam iussit cibum dare, ipseque
5 pecūniam solvit. Indus colōnō grātiās maximās ēgit pollicitusque est sē semper beneficium memoriā custōdītūrum.

Paucīs post annīs colōnus ipse ab Indīs captus est et in Canadam dēductus; ubi ā dominō in silvās saepe līgnātiōnis causā missus est. Ōlim, cum procul ab aedibus labōrāret,
10 subitō in cōnspectum vēnit Indus quīdam, quī eum hortātus est ut paulō post in locum certum ad colloquium venīret. Colōnus haud invītus pollicitus est; tum īnsidiās veritus cōnsilium mūtāvit, neque ad locum vēnit cōnstitūtum. Paucīs post diēbus Indus eum iterum convēnit, iterumque
15 hortātus est ut aliō diē ad locum dēstinātum īret.

Quō ubi perventum est, Indus sē sequī iussit, ac per silvās celeriter profectus est. Alter, etsī timor eius occupābat animum, fīnemque itineris omnīnō nesciēbat, est tamen secūtus; cumque diēs multōs per silvās iter fēcissent, po-
20 strēmō ad oppidum pervēnērunt, quod colōnus laetus ut suum cōgnōvit. Tum dux, "Ego is sum," inquit, "quem tū abhinc multōs mēnsīs cibō iūvistī. Hōc modō referō grātiam."

---

1. ēsuriēns (-entis, part.):
hungry. — cum: *inasmuch as.*

4. cōnfectum: *exhausted.* —
caupōnam: caupōna, -ae, f., *mistress of* (*the*) *inn.*

8. līgnātiōnis: cf. the use of
the gerundive with causā to express purpose.

14. Indus: *the Indian.*

15. dēstinātum: dēstinātus, -a,
-um, *designated.*

16. sē: obj. of sequī.

17. eius: modifier of animum.

18. fīnem: contrast fīnēs.

20. ut suum: *as his own.*

21. is: *the man.*

22. grātiam: contrast the
meaning of grātiās, l. 5.

LESSON 90

An Earthquake in Colonial Times

Cum iam colōnī plūrimī Britanniam Novam incolēbant,
ōlim noctū, dum hominēs ferē omnēs somnō gravī quiēscunt,
repente mōtus terrae maximus factus est.   Sonō horrendō
ad aurīs adlātō, colōnī graviter permōtī ē lectīs cōnfēstim
5 exsiluērunt, tēcta ratī undique labefactārī; quīn etiam erant
quī timērent nē vēnisset diēs mundī ultima aut certē ades-
set. Interim in marī nautae mōtum sēnsērunt, crēdēbantque
nāvīs suās in saxa abscondita dēlātās esse; in agrīs autem
bovēs, cum mūgītūs maximōs ēderent, omnīs in partēs per-
10 territī cucurrērunt.

Quīdam cōnfīrmant sē tum vīdisse ignem per terram
currere; ac certē quōdam locō erat terrae hiātus, ex quō
pulvis levis fūmō similis aliquamdiū efferēbātur.   Diēbus
proximīs complūrēs cōnsecūtī sunt mōtūs, sed minōrēs;
15 multīque hominēs, quī adhūc religiōnem sprēverant, prop-
ter timōrem ad cultum deōrum sē convertērunt.   Trāditum
quoque est, aquam cuiusdam fontis, quī terrae mōtū humī
dēpressus erat, posteā hieme interdum glaciem factam

---

3. **mōtus** (-ūs, M.): lit. *move-
ment.*

5. **labefactārī:** labefactō, 1,
shake down. — **erant quī:** *there
were (some) who.* The subjunc-
tive is used regularly after any
tense of sunt quī or nēmō est quī.

6. **mundī:** mundus, -ī, M., *the
world.*

8. **autem:** *moreover.*

9. **cum . . . ēderent:** note the
ē, and translate by a partic. phrase.
— **mūgītūs:** mūgītus, -ūs, M., *bel-
lowing.*

11. **quīdam:** here, noun.—**per:**
along.

12. **hiātus** (-ūs, M.): with gen.,
cleft (in), lit. *yawning (of).*

13. **levis** (-is, -e): *light* (of
weight). — **efferēbātur:** *i.e. kept
rising;* lit. what?

16. **cultum:** cultus, -ūs, M.,
worship.

17. **humī:** *into the ground;*
what is the commoner meaning?

18. **dēpressus erat:** dēprimō, 3,
-pressī, -pressus, *sink.* — **glaciem
factam esse:** *i.e.* froze solid.

esse, quamquam anteā omnī tempore annī ūberius fluere
cōnsuēverat.

LESSON 91

Evils of the Slave Trade

Gentēs, quae Āfricam incolunt, quondam inter sē saepe
dīmicābant, captīvīque ā negōtiātōribus emptī, nāvibus in
5 terrās sunt trānsportātī dīversās, ubi dominīs novīs trāditī
summīs labōribus aetātem in agrīs agēbant. Dum autem
nāvigant, condiciō captīvōrum miserrima erat; nam trā-
ditum est dominōs, quī quaestum volēbant facere quam
maximum neque aliud cūrābant, valētūdinī salūtīque ser-
10 vōrum operam minimam dedisse.

Quī igitur miserī in locīs angustīs foedīsque procul ā lūce
caelīque spīritū saepe claudēbantur. Quīn etiam interdum,
ut nāvēs quam plūrimōs portārent, inter sē vinculīs iūnctī,
supīnī diēs noctēsque iacēre coāctī sunt, spatiō minimō
15 tantum relictō, ubi paucī vice alternā sē exercēre possent:
quōrum cruciātus, tempestāte coortā, maximus erat; tum
enim forīs omnibus clausīs vix respīrāre poterant, multīque

---

1. **quamquam:** *whereas.* —
ūberius: adv.(positive not in use),
very freely.

4. **nāvibus:** *by ship.*

6. **labōribus:** translate as sing.
— aetātem : cf. **vītam** with the same
verb, p. 61, l. 13. — **dum . . . nāvi-
gant,** etc. : freely, *it was, however,
while they were on shipboard,
that,* etc.

9. **aliud:** *anything else.*

11. **quī . . . miserī:** *the poor
wretches.* — locīs : *quarters.* —
foedīs : **foedus, -a, -um,** *foul.*

12. **caelī:** (*open*) *air.* — spīri-
tū : **spīritus, -ūs,** M., *breath.*

13. **inter sē:** *i.e. to one another.*
— iūnctī : **iungō, 3, iūnxī, iūnctus,**
bind.

15. **paucī:** *i.e. small groups.* —
vice alternā, abl. phrase, *in turn.*
— exercēre : **exerceō, 2, -uī, -itus,**
exercise.— possent : note the mood.

16. **quōrum:** (*but*) *their.* —
tempestāte coortā : translate by a
" when " clause.

17. **forīs:** **forus, -ī,** M., *gangway.*
— respīrāre : **respīrō, 1,** *breathe.*

moriēbantur.   Quō modō saepe factum est ut vīvī, vinculīs
retentī, inter mortuōs iacēre cōgerentur, dōnec posterō diē
nautae solverent mortuōs corporaque in mare abicerent.

LESSON 92

A Pirate Outdone

Illīs temporibus, cum servī plūrimī ex Āfricā in terrās
5 dīversās trānsportārentur, saepe in marī coniūrātiōnem
inter sē nautae fēcērunt, dominōque nāvis aut coniectō in
vincula aut interfectō, ducem novum ipsī dēligēbant; quō
modō pīrātae factī secundum lītus Āfricae ultrō citrōque
nāvigābant et nāvēs gentium spoliābant omnium.

10   Quōrum ē numerō quīdam in portum ōlim vectī longin-
quum, ubi in lītore collocāta erant castra parva Britannica,
lēgātum tēla aurumque ē castrīs ad sē mittere summā
superbiā iussērunt.   Ille vērō, vir maximae cōnstantiae,
aurum respondit sē nōn datūrum esse, sed tēla libenter mis-
15 sūrum, sī eōrum nāvis propius accessisset.   Tum pīrātae
īrā commōtī castra ācerrimē adortī sunt, ac lēgātus Britan-
nicus, postquam tēla dēfēcērunt ē castrīs sē recipere coāc-
tus, postrēmō ab hostibus captus est; quī eum cum
custōdibus cōnfēstim ad ducem mīsērunt.   Iste scīlicet

---

1. moriēbantur: cf. rapiēbant,
p. 7, l. 17. —factum est ut: cf.
p. 74, l. 15.

3. solverent . . . abicerent:
translate both the subjunctives
"should."

5. marī: *the high seas.*

8. pīrātae: predicate nom.

9. nāvēs: *commerce.*

10. ē: *of.*

12. aurum: do not confuse
aurum with auris.

14. libenter: cf. the note on
p. 93, l. 9.

15. accessisset: cf. esset per-
ruptus, p. 107, l. 3.

16. īrā commōtī: freely, *filled
with wrath.*

18. cum custōdibus: *i.e. under
guard.*— ducem: (*their*) *chief.*

hominem horrendīs exsecrātiōnibus accēpit, quod animō
tam obstinātō rēsistere ausus erat; lēgātus autem minimē
territus audācter respondit atque etiam maiōribus exsecrā-
tiōnibus quam dux ipse ūsus est. Quae rēs eī salūtī fuit;
5 nam pīrātae cēterī, novā rē dēlectātī, cachinnōs sustulērunt
maximōs et ultrō vītam hominī concessērunt, quod male
dīcendō ducem ipsum superāre potuerat.

LESSON 93

Colonization in Africa

Americānī Britannīque, cum dēmum plānē coepissent
cōgnōscere mala, quae ab emptiōne servōrum oriuntur,
10 colōniās in Āfricam statuērunt dēdūcendās esse, in quās
lībertīnī mitterentur; illīsque temporibus erant etiam quī
servōs ferē omnēs postrēmō sīc in patriam redūcī posse
exīstimārent.

Colōniae, quae prīmō sunt eō dēductae, nōn erant validae,
15 et saepe cum incolīs Āfricānīs pugnandum erat. Sīcut
ōlim, cum colōnī quīdam prōmunturiō īnsulāque emptīs

---

1. **exsecrātiōnibus:** exsecrātiō,
-ōnis, F., *curse.*

5. **novā rē:** *at the unexpected
turn (of events)*; abl. of cause.
— **dēlectātī:** dēlectātus, -a, -um,
part., *highly amused*, lit. *delighted.*
— **cachinnōs:** cachinnus, -ī, M.,
roar of laughter.

7. **dīcendō:** abl. of specifica-
tion.

9. **mala:** as (neut.) noun; cf.
the somewhat similar use of the
neut. **bona.** — **emptiōne servōrum:**
freely, *traffic in slaves;* lit. what?

— **oriuntur:** orior, 4, ortus sum,
arise (cf. coorior).

10. **in Āfricam . . . dēdūcendās
esse:** freely, *ought to be planted in
Africa.*

11. **lībertīnī:** lībertīnus, -ī, M.,
freedman. — **mitterentur:** note the
mood.

12. **patriam:** *i.e. (their) right-
ful country.* — **posse:** *could.*

13. **exīstimārent:** cf. the note
on erant quī, p. 109, l. 5.

14. **eō:** the adv.; for meaning,
cf. quō, p. 107, l. 14.

oppidum parvum in lītore condidissent, nātiōnēs proximae
molestē ferēbant peregrīnōs illīc cōnsēdisse; verēbantur
enim nē iūra sua vetera āmitterent, emptiōque servōrum
(quā ex rē quaestum magnum faciēbant) mox tōta repri-
5 merētur. Quārē, armātīs undique convocātīs, in oppidum
colōnōrum repente impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum. Intrā
mūnītiōnēs erant dux aeger et trīgintā quīnque tantum
hominēs, quī arma ferre possent; at illī, cum in proeliō
quīndecim ex ipsōrum numerō aut vulnerātī aut interfectī
10 essent, hostēs praedā occupātōs postrēmō in fugam coniē-
cērunt. Paucīs autem post diēbus oppugnātiō ā barbarīs
redintegrāta est; quī nē tum quidem rem bene gessērunt.
Itaque, pāce iam dēmum factā, haec quidem colōnia paulātim
numerō vīribusque aucta est.

LESSON 94

A Prize Won and Lost

15 Ōlim, cum nāvis longa Americāna per mare Mediterrā-
neum nāvigāret, nautae procul vēlum vīdērunt; quō vīsō,
praefectus, liburnicās pīrātārum haud procul abesse ratus,
suōs summā celeritāte īnsequī iussit. Dum autem vēlīs
rēmīsque contendunt, subitō nāvis in saxīs absconditīs
20 adhaesit, neque ūllō modō dētrūdī poterat. Quō cāsū

2. **molestē ferēbant**, etc.: *i.e.
were much wrought up that*, etc.
—**illīc**: adv.. *there.*

4. **tōta**: translate as if an adv.

6. **intrā**: *behind.*

8. **cum**: *after.*

9. **ipsōrum**: *their.*

10. **occupātōs**: *busied.*

12. **nē . . . quidem**: see the
Vocab.

13. **haec quidem colōnia**: freely,

this particular colony; lit. what?
(Do not confuse **quidem** with
quīdam.)

14. **vīribus**: contrast the mean-
ing of **vīs** and **vīrēs** (see the
Vocab.).

19. **rēmīs**: rēmus, -ī, M., *oar.*
Roman ships often had both sails
and oars, and **vēlīs rēmīsque** came
to be a standing phrase for "at
full speed."

secundum lītus nūntiātō, pīrātae oppugnandī causā undique
convēnērunt, et Americānī, etsī, ut nāvem levārent, in mare
iēcerant omnia, postrēmō sē dēdere coāctī sunt.

Quā victōriā partā, rēx pīrātārum, veritus nē aliae nāvēs
5 longae oppidum suum oppugnārent, Americānōs miserōs
mūnītiōnēs firmāre coēgit, cum interim ā pīrātīs captīvī
tantā dīligentiā custōdiēbantur, ut, quamquam diēs noc-
tēsque dē fugā cōgitābant, rem numquam perficere possent.

Eīs nautīs, quī noctū quoque labōrāre volēbant, pecūniam
10 dedit rēx, cum opera sua vellet quam mātūrrimē perficī;
illī autem pecūniam acceptam statim prōfūdērunt, et ēbriī
per oppidum vagantēs iniūriās oppidānīs saepe intulērunt.
Tum mīrīs modīs poenās dedisse dīcuntur; hominis enim
supīnī sola pedum verberābantur, idque saepe tam vehemen-
15 ter ut sanguis exīret. Interdum autem, pecūniā līctōribus
data, storeīs interpositīs nautae verberābantur, cum interim
lēgātus huic reī praepositus (quī tamen extrā forēs carceris
morārī solēbat) ex clāmōribus iūdicābat hominēs cruciātūs
patī maximōs.

LESSON 95

A Prize Won and Lost (*Continued*)

20 Interim pīrātae longam nāvem Americānam dē saxīs
dētrūserant; quam ob rem captīvī scīlicet etiam molestius

1. oppugnandī causā: freely,
to the attack. What part of the
verb is oppugnandī?

2. levārent: levō, 1, *lighten*.

10. vellet: *he was anxious
(that)*. — mātūrrimē: from mātūrē.

11. prōfūdērunt: prōfundō, 3,
fūdī, -fūsus, *squander*. — ēbriī:
ēbrius, -a, -um, *intoxicated*.

13. mīrīs modīs: transl. as sing.
—hominis: modifying pedum, l. 14.

14. supīnī: (*placed flat*) *on his
back*. — sola: solum, -ī, N., *sole* (of
the foot).—verberābantur: verberō,
1, *beat*. — idque: freely, *and that
too;* strictly, id is subject of fīēbat
supplied.

15. sanguis (-inis, M.) : *blood.—*
exīret: freely, *flowed*. — līctōribus:
līctor, -ōris, M., *policeman*.

16. storeīs: storea, -ae, F.,
mat.

ferēbant nāvem suam in hostium potestātem vēnisse:
itaque eōrum dux, Bēnbrigius nōmine, litterās clam mīsit,
quibus hortātus est alium praefectum Americānum, quī
eōdem in marī nāvigābat, ut cīvibus auxiliō venīret prae-
5 damque ē manibus hostium ēripere cōnārētur. Ille, litterīs
acceptīs, suspīciōnis vītandae causā liburnicam mīsit; quae
nocte intempestā portum ingressa, ad nāvem longam cursū
tam incertō nāvigāvit, ut pīrātae quī in eā custōdiās agēbant,
veritī nē liburnica in nāvem inlīderētur, magnā vōce guber-
10 nātōrī imperārent ut ancorās iaceret. Is autem respondit
ancorās āmissās esse.

Quō respōnsō dēceptī, pīrātae liburnicam vagantem pro-
pius accēdere patiēbantur, cum subitō ex eā septuāgintā
armātī gladiīs dēstrictīs in nāvem longam ascendērunt
15 atque in hostīs perturbātōs impetum fēcērunt ācerrimum.
Pīrātae fortissimē dīmicāvērunt; brevī autem paene ad
ūnum occīsī sunt. Tum, cum reliquī sē in mare iēcissent,
ignēs multīs simul locīs nāvī longae Americānī ipsī admōvē-
runt, quattuorque tantum vulnerātīs, liburnicā salvā ad
20 classem sē recēpērunt.

Paulō post oppidum ipsum classe est oppugnātum,
atque invītus rēx pīrātārum captīvōs Americānōs incolumēs
abīre patī coāctus est.

---

3. **quibus**: cf. the note on p. 38, l. 16.

4. **cīvibus auxiliō**: cf. the same construction with the verb **sum**.

6. **liburnicam**: this being the type of vessel used by the pirates themselves (cf. p. 113, l. 17).

8. **eā**: *i.e.* nāve longā.

9. **magnā**: see the Vocab. for the varied meanings of this adj.

12. **respōnsō**: noun.— **dēceptī**:

dēcipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, *throw off (one's) guard.* — **vagantem**: *erratic;* lit. what? (cf. vagantēs, p. 114, l. 12). — **propius**: absol. compar., *very close.*

. 14. **dēstrictīs**: dēstrictus, -a, -um, part., *drawn.*

19. **quattuor**: as noun. — **salvā**: *i.e.* incolumī; translate the abl. by "with."

22. **invītus**: translate by a phrase. — **incolumēs**: *scot free.*

LESSON 96

A Mysterious Disappearance

Colōniīs multīs iam in Americam dēductīs, Gallī etiam
in Indōrum fīnēs sacerdōtēs mittere cōnsuēverant, nōn
sōlum ut barbarī ad suam religiōnem converterentur, sed
etiam ut illī amīcī essent, sī quandō cum Britannīs dīmi-
5 candum esset. Quī hominēs sānctī interdum maximīs in
perīculīs versābantur; sīcut ōlim in regiōnibus longinquīs,
quae posteā cīvitātis Noveborācēnsis pars factae sunt, sacer-
dōtēs complūrēs, quī cum negōtiātōribus paucīs castellum
parvum ibi tenēbant, subitō certiōrēs factī sunt Indōs pere-
10 grīnōs omnīs occīdere cōnstituisse.

Palam fugere nōn audēbant sacerdōtēs, neque eīs ūllae
erant nāvēs, quibus ad Canadam veherentur. Itaque clam
intrā castellum scaphās facere statim coepērunt; deinde,
postquam omnia ad fugam iam sunt parāta, barbarōs ad
15 convīvium vocāvērunt. Illī convēnērunt laetī; cumque
ēdissent omnia, quae sacerdōtēs apposuerant, domum re-
gressī in tabernāculīs mox sōpītī iacēbant. Tum Gallī
silentiō scaphās ad rīpam portāvērunt, et flūmine secundō
ad Canadam versus profectī sunt.

20   Māne Indī vīdērunt castellum clausum; quā rē ani-
madversā, prīmō sacerdōtēs vōta facere crēdēbant. Po-
strēmō tamen, fenestrīs ingressī, intus esse nēminem

1. colōniīs . . . dēductīs:
translate by a "when" clause.
4. sī quandō: cf. p. 54. l. 4.
5. sānctī: sānctus, -a, -um,
pious.
6. versābantur: freely, *were
exposed (to).*
11. eīs: dat. case.

14. omnia: note the gender.
15. convīvium: convīvium, -ī,
N., *feast.* Cf. the illustration on
the opposite page.
21. vōta facere: *to be at prayers*
(vōtum, -ī, N., *prayer*).
22. fenestrīs: cf. the note on
p. 76, l. 3.

CONVĪVIUM

The Oriental fashion of reclining at meals was much in vogue among the Greeks and Romans. The above illustration is taken from a wall decoration at Pompeii.

timōre maximō sēnsērunt; nesciēbant enim Gallīs ūllās esse scaphās, eōsque arte magicā effūgisse iūdicābant.

LESSON 97

Early Days in Liberia

Cum in Āfricā abhinc multōs annōs condita esset rēs pūblica, quae Līberia appellātur, incolae eius regiōnis no-
5 vae cīvitātī inimīcissimī erant.   Nam advenae statuerant emptiōnem servōrum reprimendam esse, Āfrī autem quaestum suum dīmittere nōlēbant.

Ōlim prope colōniam quandam subitō multitūdō barbarōrum armātōrum per silvam viam rumpere audīta est.   Sed
10 in oppidō arma multa apud sacerdōtem quendam condita erant; quī, ūnā cum duōbus fabrīs, quī eīsdem in aedibus habitābant, tēla cōnfēstim in hostīs inmittere coepit, multōsque vulnerāvit.   Dux tamen Āfrōrum paucīs cum comitibus fortiter prōgressus iam coepit perrumpere pālōs, quī
15 circum aedēs in terrā dēfīxī erant.   Illum autem ūnus ex fabrīs statim tēlō interfēcit, barbarīque cēterī, hōc cāsū perterritī, cōnfēstim vertērunt terga et quam celerrimē in silvam sē contulērunt.   At paulō post, molestē ferentēs ducem mortuum in colōnōrum potestāte relictum, corporis quaerendī

1. **timōre maximō**: *to their great alarm*; lit. what?
4. **Līberia**: note the significance of the name (cf. **lībertās**).
6. **emptiōnem servōrum**: cf. p. 112, l. 9. —**reprimendam**: translate the gerundive "must."
9. **viam**: (*their*) *way*. — **rumpere**: translate as if a present part. (**rumpō, 3, rūpī, ruptus**, lit. *break*).

10. **apud**: *at the house of*; what are other meanings of this word?
11. **fabrīs**: **faber, -brī**, M., *carpenter*.
12. **tēla . . . inmittere coepit**: *opened fire*.
14. **pālōs**: **pālus, -ī**, M., *stake*; pl., *palisade*.
19. **in . . . potestāte**: freely, *in the hands*. — **relictum**: sc. **esse**.

causā rediērunt, summāque virtūte identidem impetum in
aedēs fēcērunt ācerrimum, dōnec, cum hōram amplius dīmi-
cātum esset, subitō proeliō dēstitērunt et rursus maestī in
silvam regressī sunt.

LESSON 98

An Experience with Robbers

5 Quondam in rīpīs illīus flūminis, quī linguā Indōrum
pater aquārum appellābātur, pīrātae multī in spēluncīs
latēbant, ut nāvigia spoliārent, quae illīs temporibus merci-
bus variīs onusta ultrō citrōque nāvigābant; quīn etiam
quōdam locō castra parva fēcerant, ibique summā audāciā
10 nāvēs vel maximās adoriēbantur.

Quem locum ōlim negōtiātor locuplēs, ventum idōneum
nactus, vēlīs passīs incolumis est praetervectus; quī autem
ad rīpam nāvem suam appellere nōn ausus est, dōnec duo
diēs inde adversō flūmine nāvigāvit. Interim vērō pīrātae,
15 quī nāvem vīderant praetereuntem, nec praedam tam
pulchram dīmittere volēbant, rēctā viā per silvam erant
secūtī, et locō opportūnō in īnsidiīs iam latēbant; quī, nāve

---

1. **identidem**: adv., *time and again*.

2. **hōram amplius**: cf. p. 101, l. 3, and the note.

3. **proeliō**: cf. p. 69, l. 17.

5. **quī**: for gender, cf. **quod**, p. 30, l. 6. — **linguā**: we would say, " *in* the language."

6. **spēluncīs**: spēlunca, -ae, F., *cave*.

7. **mercibus**: merx, mercis, F., (sing. and pl.) *merchandise*.

9. **ibi**: *at that point*.

10. **vel**: *even.* — **maximās**: *of the largest size.*

12. **nactus**: freely, *with the aid of;* lit. what ? — **passīs**: see the Vocab. under **pandō**.

13. **duo diēs**: *for the space of two days.*

15. **praetereuntem**: from **praetereō**.

16. **rēctā**: rēctus, -a, -um, *straight*, or *direct*. The robbers were able to gain upon the trader because of the bends in the river.

ad rīpam appulsā, ē silvā subitō ērūpērunt, ac nautās captōs
ad castra sua nāvem redūcere coēgērunt.

Ibi negōtiātōris coquus Āfer cōnsiliō callidō ūsus est;
nam simulābat dominum sibi iniūriās intulisse, sēque gau-
5 dēre eum captum esse: quō modō in amīcitiam pīrātārum
inrēpsit, quī crēdēbant hominem socium fidēlem esse fu-
tūrum. Sed ōlim, cēnā omnibus in nāve appositā, coquus
repente proximum pīrātam in flūmen prōiēcit; quō sīgnō
nautae cēterōs quoque in aquam dētrūsērunt. Pīrātae ad
10 rīpam nandō pervēnērunt; negōtiātor autem nāvem cōn-
fēstim solvit ac summā celeritāte domum profectus est.

LESSON 99

The Capture of Stony Point

Ōlim Britannī castra satis magna occupāverant in rīpā
flūminis Hudsōnis, haud procul ā castellīs complūribus,
quae adhūc tenēbant Americānī victī. Quārē colōnī, ca-
15 stella sua magnō esse in perīculō ratī, castra statim sibi
dēlenda esse exīstimābant. Quam ad rem cōnficiendam
dēlēctus est quīdam Antōnius, vir fortissimus, quī anteā
facinora saepe ausus erat audācissima.

Omnibus rēbus parātīs, Americānī, per silvās clam prō-
20 fectī, sōlis occāsū prope castra Britannica in latebrīs cōn-

---

1. **captōs:** translate as if cēpē-
runt et.

3. **coquus** (-ī, M.): *cook.* —
ūsus est: *put into execution.*

6. **inrēpsit:** inrēpō, 3, -rēpsī,
worm (*one's*) *way.*

7. **omnibus:** *i.e. for the whole
party.*

8. **quō sīgnō:** cf. p. 57, l. 16.

10. **nandō:** cf. p. 12, l. 17.

15. **magnō:** modifier of **perī-
culō.**

16. **dēlenda esse:** for the trans-
lation, cf. the note on **reprimen-
dam,** p. 118, l. 6.

18. **ausus erat:** freely, *had per-
formed.*

20. **sōlis:** sōl, sōlis, M., *sun.* —
occāsū: abl. of time when (occāsus,
-ūs, M., lit. *setting*).

sēdērunt, ibique hōrās complūrīs morātī sunt; tum tertiā
ferē vigiliā silentiō ad castra accessērunt, cum interim duce
ūterentur servō Āfrō, quī Pompēius appellābātur.

Ūnā cum servō praegrediēbantur duo mīlitēs, quī vestī-
5 menta agricolārum gerēbant. Quārē custōdēs nihil suspi-
cantēs hominēs propius accēdere passī sunt; Pompēius enim
erat omnibus nōtus, quod anteā ad castra saepe vēnerat ut
vēnderet bācās: quīn etiam sīgnum eī ā Britannīs interdum
datum erat. Ita factum est ut sine strepitū custōdēs ā
10 mīlitibus duōbus caperentur; et legiōnēs ipsae paene in
castra vēnērunt, priusquam Britannī sēnsērunt hostēs
adesse. Tum autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma et for-
tissimē dīmicāvērunt.

In proeliō Antōnius graviter vulnerātus est; castra
15 autem sunt expugnāta ab Americānīs, quī brevī dēiēcērunt
opera omnia, quae Britannī magnā dīligentiā ibi effēcerant.

LESSON 100

Nathan Hale

Postquam Britannī Longā īnsulā tōtā potītī sunt, Va-
singtō tamen Novī Eborācī aliquamdiū morātus est, cum
discēdere nōllet, dōnec dē cōnsiliīs hostium certior factus

2. cum . . . ūterentur: trans-
late by a partic. phrase. — duce:
(as) guide.

3. quī . . . appellābātur:
named.

4. praegrediēbantur: praegre-
dior, 3, -gressus sum, go on
ahead.

5. nihil suspicantēs: i.e. with-
out suspicion.

6. propius: cf. the force of the
word on p. 115, l. 12.

7. omnibus: as (masc.) noun
dat. case.

8. sīgnum: countersign.

9. datum erat: had been com-
municated. — factum est ut: cf.
p. 74, l. 15. — sine strepitū: with-
out (making any) disturbance.

12. concurrērunt: sc. Britannī.

18. Novī Eborācī: locative
case; cf. domī and humī.

19. factus esse: cf. exspectās-
sent, p. 104, l. 18.

esset. Diū ille hominem frūstrā quaerēbat, quī veste mū-
tātā castra Britannica speculandī causā adīre vellet; po-
strēmō autem ad hanc rem suscipiendam lēgātus adulēscēns
repertus est: quī, vestīmentīs magistrī puerōrum sūmptīs,
5 liburnicā vectus ad īnsulam incolumis pervēnit. Ubi Bri-
tannī, quī nihil suspicābantur, hominem līberē circum ca-
stra omnia ambulāre passī sunt. Ille autem dīligenter
faciēbat dēscrīptiōnēs; commentāriōs vērō, nē sibi essent
dētrīmentō, sī in manūs hostium vēnisset, Latīnē scrīpsit.
10 Tum paucīs post diēbus, rē bene cōnfectā, ad locum rediit,
unde ad continentem trānsitūrus erat.

Dum autem ibi liburnicam exspectat, in dēversōriō ā
perfugā quōdam cōnspectus est, quī Britannōs sine morā
dē eius latebrīs certiōrēs fēcit. Itaque ab hostibus cōnfē-
15 stim missa est nāvis longa, quae hominem interciperet.
Scaphā ē nāvī ad lītus appulsā, lēgātus scīlicet amīcōs adesse
crēdēbat; quārē ē latebrīs palam prōgressus, in lītore fa-
cile captus est. Is paulō post ā Britannīs capitis damnā-
tus, fortissimē sē gerēbat; cumque tempus moriendī iam
20 adesset, aequissimō animō "Hoc sōlum mē paenitet," inquit,
"quod mihi est ūna vīta tantum, quam prō patriā largiar."

1. ille: omit in translating. —
quī . . . vellet: *willing.* — veste
mūtātā: *i.e. in disguise.*
2. speculandī causā: *i.e. as a
spy*; lit. what?
4. magistrī puerōrum: *a tutor.*
6. līberē: adv., *freely,* or *at
will.*
8. dēscrīptiōnēs: dēscrīptiō,
-ōnis, F., (*a*) *drawing* (cf. scrībō).
— commentāriōs: commentāriī,
-ōrum, M., *notes.*
9. dētrīmentō: dat. of service
(cf. praesidiō, p. 65, l. 4); translate
freely. — vēnisset: cf. factus esset,

p. 121, l. 19. — Latīnē: adv., *in
Latin.*
11. trānsitūrus erat: *was to
cross.*
18. is: omit in translating. —
capitis damnātus: cf. the note on
p. 47, l. 16.
19. moriendī: freely, *of execu-
tion.*
20. aequissimō: *fully composed.*
— mē paenitet: *causes me regret*
(paenitet, 2, paenituit).
21. quod: *that.* — largiar: sub-
junctive. For the phrasing of the
whole clause, cf. p. 39, l. 17.

STORIES FROM CAESAR RETOLD

THE WINTER OF 54-53 B.C.

LESSON 101

In 58 B.C. Julius Caesar became governor of northern Italy and the vast country extending from the Alps to the North Sea, and spent the next nine years in disciplining various tribes of that great territory.

Unexpected Trouble

Caesar, cum in Galliā bellum gerēbat, tōtam aestātem hostēs premere solitus est, tum, ut vīrēs mīlitum cōnservā- ret, exercitum in hīberna dēdūcēbat : nam caelum eārum regiōnum hieme asperrimum est ; quārē ille iūdicābat
5 aestāte sibi cum hostibus esse dīmicandum, reliquōs autem annī mēnsēs in hībernīs mīlitēs retinendōs esse. Ōlim, cum trānsīsset in Britanniam multōsque diēs cum incolīs eius īnsulae bellum gessisset, aestāte exāctā ad continentem rediit. Ibi certior factus est propter siccitātem in Galliā
10 summam esse frūmentī inopiam. Itaque exercitum in partēs complūrēs dīvīsum in dīversīs cīvitātibus hiemandī causā collocāvit.

1. cum : *at the time when.* — aestātem : not aetātem. The acc. may be rendered " throughout."

2. vīrēs : do not confuse vīs and vir.

3. dēdūcēbat : note the tense. —caelum : *climate.*

4. asperrimum : *i.e.* as com- pared with that of Italy. — ille : omit in translating.

6. ōlim : freely, *one year.*

8. aestāte exāctā : freely, *at the very end of the season ;* cf. vigiliā . . . exāctā, p. 102, l. 8.

9. siccitātem : siccitās, -ātis, F., *drought.*

11. dīvīsum : freely, *after di- viding,* etc. ; lit. what ? — in . . . collocāvit : *quartered upon.* — dī- versīs cīvitātibus : the tribes of

123

GALLIA

Quō factō, dux quīdam Gallōrum, nōmine Ambiorīx, cum exercitus tot in partēs dīvīsus esset, Rōmānōs iam dēmum facile superārī posse ratus, ūna castra longinqua subitō est adortus; impetus autem fortiter exceptus est ā nostrīs,
5 quī equitēs hostium cōnfestim in fugam dedērunt. Quā spē dēiectī, Gallī clāmāvērunt sē colloquium velle; quō audītō, lēgātī quī illīs castrīs praeerant, extrā mūnītiōnēs nōn dubitāvērunt eōs mittere, quī cum Ambiorīge colloquerentur.

LESSON 102

A Parley with the Enemy

Ad colloquium missus est C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus,
10 et Q. Iūnius, Hispāniēnsis, quī iam ante ā Caesare ipsō saepe dēlēctus erat, ut cum Ambiorīge ageret.

Eīs, cum extrā mūnītiōnēs ēgressī essent, rēx cōnfirmāvit Gallōs ūniversōs cōnstituisse eō ipsō diē omnia hīberna Caesaris simul oppugnāre, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī

Gaul were numerous, and more or less independent of one another. In dividing his force for the winter, it was Caesar's idea, in view of the scanty crops, to distribute more widely than usual among the Gallic tribes the burden of supplying the grain needed by his soldiers.

1. **cum**: causal.

3. **longinqua**: this particular camp (No. 4 on the map) was distant about two hundred miles from Caesar's headquarters at Samarobriva.

4. **nostrīs**: the story being told from the point of view of the Romans.

5. **quā spē**: the same construction as with **dēsistō** (*e.g.* p. 119, l. 3); translate freely.

7. **castrīs**: for syntax, cf. p. 58, l. 12.

8. **eōs**: *men*.

9. **C.**: *i.e.* **Cāius** (*Gaius*). — **eques Rōmānus**: *a Roman knight*, *i.e.* a member of the middle order in the Roman state.

10. **Q.**: *i.e.* **Quīntus**.

12. **rēx**: *i.e.* **Ambiorīx**.

13. **ūniversōs**: freely, *generally*; lit. what?

14. **nē qua**: *so that no*; cf. the note on **quid**, p. 56, l. 1. — **legiō**: *legion* (a body of about

subsidiō venīre posset; sē tamen invītum castra oppugnāsse,
sed voluntātī cēterōrum Gallōrum cīvitātem suam resistere
nōn potuisse.   "Nec tamen," inquit, "Caesaris in mē
beneficiōrum immemor sum; itaque vōs magnopere hor-
5 tor, ut quam celerrimē exercitum vestrum ad proxima
hīberna dēdūcātis.   Magna enim manus Germānōrum
Rhēnum nūper trānsiit, quōrum multitūdinī nūllō modō
resistere poteritis.   Quārē salūtī vestrae statim cōnsulite."
Simul pollicitus est sē Rōmānōs per fīnīs suōs incolumēs
10 iter facere passūrum.

Quā ōrātiōne habitā, discessit Ambiorīx; nūntiī autem
rediērunt in castra lēgātōsque dē rēgis verbīs certiōrēs
fēcērunt.

LESSON 103

Division of Opinion in the Roman Camp

Q. Sabīnus et L. Cotta lēgātī, rē repentīnā permōtī, ea
15 verba, etsī ab hoste dicta erant, tamen nōn neglegenda
esse exīstimābant; itaque, cōnsiliō convocātō, quid optimum
factū esset diū disputātum est.

Tribūnī centuriōnēsque complūrēs nihil sibi temerē agen-

4000 infantry, supplemented usu-
ally by a small detachment of cav-
alry, mostly foreign). In the camp
attacked, the force amounted to a
legion and a half; the other camps
were manned by a legion apiece.

1. subsidiō: dat. of service.
2. voluntātī: voluntās, -ātis,
F., *wish*; for syntax, see the
Vocab. under resistō.
3. in mē (acc.): *to me*.
4. immemor (-oris, adj.): *un-
mindful*.

5. vestrum: vester, -tra, -trum,
your.
7. trānsiit: *has crossed*.
12. lēgātōs: *the commanders*.
14. L.: *i.e.* Lūcius. — lēgātī:
cf. l. 12.
15. neglegenda: neglegō, 3,
neglēxī, neglēctus, *disregard*, or
ignore.
16. cōnsiliō: *council of war*.
17. factū: supine, *to do*. — es-
set: subj. in indirect question.
18. tribūnī   (sc.   mīlitum):

dum, neque ex hībernīs iniussū Caesaris discēdendum iūdi-
cābant; cum enim castra mūnītissima essent, crēdēbant sē
Germānīs facile resistere posse, dōnec Caesar cum legiōni-
bus subsidiō venīret. Sabīnus autem, veritus nē Gallī cum
5 Germānīs sē coniungerent, statim discēdendum cēnsuit;
sciēbat enim Germānīs magnō dolōrī fuisse victōriās supe-
riōrēs Rōmānōrum, neque arbitrābātur Gallōs, quī tot con-
tumēliās ā Rōmānīs accēperant, sē cum hoste quōvīs
coniungere dubitātūrōs.

10 Ōrātiōne in utramque partem habitā, cum Cotta senten-
tiae collēgae suī ācriter resisteret, Sabīnus postrēmō īrātus
"Fīat," inquit, "ut vōbīs vidētur; ego nōn is sum, quī
mortis perīculō magnopere terrear."

LESSON 104

The Advice of the Enemy is Taken

Quibus verbīs commōtī, omnēs statim ē cōnsiliō surrēxē-
15 runt, lēgātōsque vehementer hortātī sunt nē suā pertināciā
rem in summum perīculum dēdūcerent: neque enim ūllum

(military) tribunes. Of these there
were six for each legion; in rank
they stood next to the legion com-
mander. — centuriōnēs : *centurions*
(subordinate officers, ranking from
captain down).

3. legiōnibus : *troops.*

6. dolōrī : dat. of service. —
superiōrēs : as on p. 79, l. 7.

8. ā : *at the hands of.* — sē :
obj. of coniungere, l. 9. — hoste : sc.
Rōmānōrum. — quōvīs : from quīvīs.

10. in utramque partem : freely,
pro and con. — cum . . . resiste-
ret : translate by a partic. phrase. —

sententiae : for syntax, cf. Ger-
mānīs, l. 3.

11. collēgae : collēga, -ae, M., lit.
colleague; here, *brother officer*
(namely, Sabinus).

12. fīat : *let it be.* — ut . . . vidē-
tur : *as (it) seems best.* — is . . . quī :
cf. eōs . . . quī, p. 125, l. 8.

16. rem : *matters.* — neque :
in combination with enim and
other postpositive words, neque
usually replaces nōn. In the trans-
lation of this particular clause,
combine the negative with ūllum
(= nūllum).

hostem sibi timendum esse, sī modo omnēs idem probārent;
in dissēnsiōne autem nūllam esse spem.

Cum iam ad mediam noctem disputātum esset, tum dē-
mum Sabīnī sententia superāvit, ac māne castra mōtum
5 īrī mīlitibus prōnūntiātum est.   Cōnsūmpta est vigiliīs re-
liqua pars noctis, cum mīlitēs bona colligerent sua, nec
satis scīrent quid in hībernīs relinquendum, aut quid sēcum
portandum esset.   Deinde prīmā lūce ē castrīs longissimō
agmine maximīsque impedīmentīs profectī sunt; plērīque
10 enim nōn suspicābantur Ambiorīgem omnia ea, quae dē
Germānōrum adventū dīxerat, mentītum esse, cum spērāret
ita sē Rōmānōs ex hībernīs ēlicere posse.

At interim hōstēs, quī ex nocturnō strepitū intellēxerant
lēgātōs cōnstituisse cōnfēstim castra movēre, in silvās
15 paulum sē recēperant īnsidiīsque locō idōneō collocātīs
adventum Rōmānōrum cupidē exspectābant.

LESSON 105

The Romans are Ambushed

Ita factum est ut, cum maior pars agminis Rōmānōrum
in magnam vallem dēscendisset, Gallī subitō ē latebrīs

1. **timendum esse**: *need be feared*, a common force of the gerundive, esp. in negative phrases. The indirect discourse at this point is due to the idea of saying (**dīxē-runt**) implied in **hortātī sunt**, p. 127, l. 15. — **modo**: consult the Vocab. under **sī**. — **idem probārent**: *i.e. should agree upon one plan*; lit. what?

2. **dissēnsiōne**: **dissēnsiō, -ōnis,** F., *disagreement.*

4. **mōtum īrī**: what part of the verb?

5. **vigiliīs**: we would say "*in wakefulness.*" What is another meaning of this word?

6. **colligerent**: **colligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus,** *get together.* Translate this clause by a partic. phrase.

7. **relinquendum**: sc. **esset**; for mood, cf. **esset**, p. 126, l. 17. — **aut**: we would say "and."

8. **longissimō**: and, therefore, *straggling.*

11. **cum spērāret**: cf. the cum-clause in l. 6.

ērumperent, atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium com-
mitterētur.   Sabīnus, quī adhūc nihil suspicātus erat,
ācerrimō hostium impetū vehementer commōtus, in omnīs
partēs properāvit ac cohortēs dispōnere cōnātus est: Cotta
5 vērō, quī cōgitāverat haec posse in itinere accidere, ob
eamque causam cēnsuerat ex hībernīs nōn discēdendum
esse, virum magnum interim sē praebēbat; omnibus enim
modīs commūnī cōnsulēbat salūtī, ac fortissimē officia et
imperātōris et mīlitis simul praestābat.

10   Tum, quod propter longitūdinem agminis nōn facile
prōvidērī poterat quid quōque locō faciendum esset, lēgātī
suīs imperāvērunt ut, impedīmentīs relictīs, in orbem cōn-
sisterent.   Quod cōnsilium (etsī eōdem imperātōrēs summī
in eius modī cāsū ūtī solent) tum haud fēlīciter accidit; nam
15 hōstēs, nōn sine maximō timōre impedīmenta ā Rōmānīs
relicta esse ratī, etiam ācrius iam dīmicāvērunt.

1. **nostrīs**: dat. case; con-
strue with **inīquissimō**. — **commit-
terētur**: note the termination,
which indicates the case of **proe-
lium**.

3. **ācerrimō**: translate the su-
perlative " exceedingly."

4. **cohortēs**: ten cohorts con-
stituted a legion (p. 125, l. 14,
note).

5. **haec**: neut. — **ob eamque
causam**: the prep. **ob** does not
combine with **-que**, which is, there-
fore, passed on to the following
word.

7. **virum magnum**: pred. acc.
— **praebēbat**: praebeō, 2, -uī, -itus,
show.

8. **commūnī . . . salūtī**: for
syntax, cf. p. 126, l. 8. — **et . . .
et**: correlative.

9. **mīlitis**: *a soldier (in the
ranks)*.

10. **longitūdinem**:   longitūdō,
-inis, F., *extent* (cf. longus).

11. **prōvidērī**: note the last let-
ter of the word. — **quōque**: from
quisque. — **faciendum**: cf. the note
on p. 128, l. 1.

12. **in orbem**: *i.e.* so as to form
a circle.

13. **eōdem**: referring to cōnsi-
lium.

14. **modī**: *sort*.

16. **etiam ācrius**: (*all the*) *more
fiercely*.

LESSON 106

The Enemy Prevail

Accēdēbat ut mīlitēs multī ab sīgnīs discēderent et bona
sua cārissima ab impedīmentīs arripere cōnārentur : cēterī
autem, quamquam ā Fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem
spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors
5 prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat.
Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorīx suōs procul tēla conicere
iussit nec propius accēdere.   Quam ob rem, cum iam aliqua
cohors excesserat ex orbe atque impetum fēcerat, summā
celeritāte fugiēbant hostēs ; cum autem cohors rursus ad
10 aciem sē recipere coeperat, tum Gallī, undique coortī, no-
strōs ācerrimē premēbant.

Cum sīc ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnātum esset,
T. Balventius, vir fortis et magnae auctōritātis, trāgulā
graviter vulnerātus est ; Q. Lūcānius, fortissimē pugnāns,
15 dum circumventō fīliō subsidiō venit, est interfectus ; ac
L. Cotta lēgātus, cum mīlitēs hortārētur, fundā percussus
est.   Quibus rēbus permōtus Sabīnus, cum procul Ambio-
rīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspēxisset, interpretem suum

1. accēdēbat : impersonal use,
it was added (*that*) ; freely, *matters
were made worse by the fact* (*that*).
— ab sīgnīs : *i.e.* from their places
in the line.   Each cohort had its
own special standards.

4. quotiēns . . . prōcurrerat :
cf. p. 72, l. 1, with the note on
the pluperfect.

5. ab : cf. the use of this prep.
in the phrase ā tergō. — cadēbat :
note the tense.

7. propius : absol. compar.

8. excesserat : excēdō, 3, -cessī,
-cessum est, *move out*. — orbe : cf.
p. 129, l. 12.

10. aciem : *i.e.* orbem. — coortī :
freely, *closing in*.

12. hōram octāvam : cf. the
note on p. 74, l. 16.

13. T. : *i.e.* Titus.

15. circumventō : translate by a
relative clause.

16. fundā : funda, -ae, F., *sling*;
see the illustration on p. 140.

18. suōs : reflexive to Ambio-
rīgem. — interpretem : interpres,
-etis, C., *interpreter*.

Cn. Pompēium ad eum mīsit rogātum, ut sibi mīlitibusque
parceret.

LESSON 107

Annihilation of the Roman Force

Rēx respondit nihil Rōmānīs timendum esse, sēque Sabīnī
ipsīus salūtem praestāre, sī ille ad colloquium venīre vellet.
5 Quō audītō, Cotta tamen negāvit ad armātum hostem sē
itūrum, atque in eō persevērāvit.   Sabīnus autem tribūnōs
mīlitum centuriōnēsque quī adstābant sē sequī iussit;
cumque propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, iussus arma abi-
cere, pāruit, ac suīs ut idem facerent imperāvit.   Dum
10 autem ibi dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt, Sabīnus paulā-
tim circumventus ā Gallīs occīsus est.

Tum vērō hostēs sustulērunt ululātum, impetūque in
nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbāvērunt.   Ibi L. Cotta pu-
gnāns periit cum maximā parte mīlitum.   Reliquī sē in
15 hīberna recēpērunt, unde erant nūper ēgressī.   Ē quibus
L. Petrosidius aquilifer, homō magnārum vīrium, cum cōn-
fertissimā multitūdine hostium premerētur, aquilam intrā
vāllum prōiēcit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pugnāns inter-
fectus est.

20   Rōmānī aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinuērunt;

1. **Cn.**: *i.e.* **Cnaeus**(*Gnaeus*).—
rogātum: cf. **petītum**, p. 95, l. 13.

4. **vellet**: cf. the note on **ad-
moveantur**, p. 61, l. 14.

6. **eō**: (neut.) noun.

8. **propius**: with the force of
a prep., *quite near to.*

9. **idem**: note the gender.

14. **cum**: *i.e.* **ūnā cum.**

16. **aquilifer (-erī, M.):** *stand-
ard bearer*, lit. *eagle bearer.* —
Aside from the standards of the
cohorts, each legion carried a sil-
ver eagle. — **vīrium**: from what
nom. sing.? Give some of the
meanings of the singular.

17. **aquilam**: **aquila, -ae,** F.,
eagle.

18. **ipse**: **autem** may be sup-
plied.
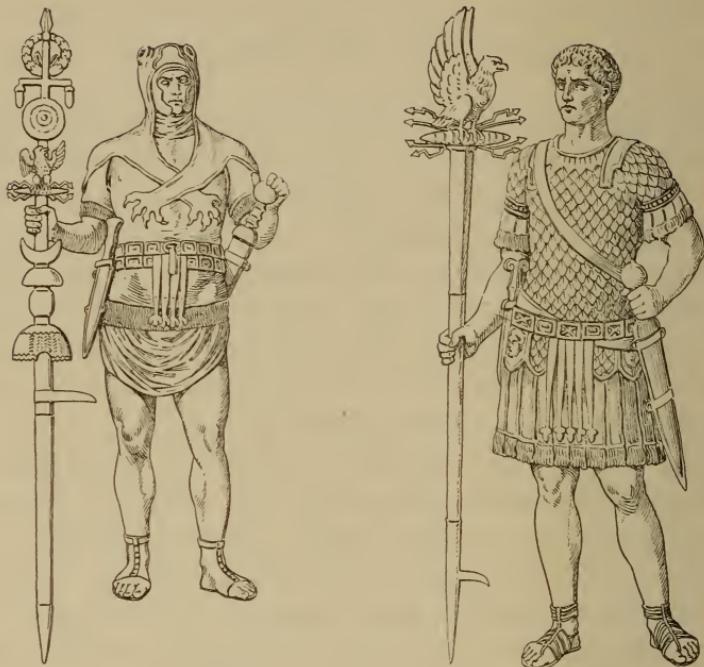
STANDARD BEARERS

The standards carried in the Roman army were numerous and rather diverse (see also the illustration on page 162). As the eagle was the chief standard of the legion, upon it was lavished all the enthusiastic devotion which modern soldiers feel for their flag. No disgrace was so deep and terrible as to have the eagle fall into the hands of the enemy.

tum, dēspērātā salūte, ad ūnum omnēs sē ipsī interfēcērunt.
Paucī, quī paulō ante ē proeliō effūgerant, per silvās incertīs
itineribus ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna pervēnērunt,
atque eum dē rēbus gestīs fēcērunt certiōrem.

LESSON 108

The Gauls attack a Second Camp

5 Hāc victōriā sublātus, Ambiorīx statim cum equitātū in
Aduātucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō fīnitimī, profectus est;
neque noctem neque diem intermīsit, peditātumque sē
iussit subsequī.

Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduātucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in
10 Nerviōs pervēnit, eōsque hortātus est, nē suī in perpetuum
līberandī occāsiōnem dīmitterent.   Interfectōs esse lēgātōs
duo Rōmānōs magnamque partem exercitūs interīsse docuit;
facillimēque opprimī posse eam quoque legiōnem, quae cum
Q. Cicerōne in fīnibus eōrum hiemāret.   Quā ōrātiōne
15 facile Nerviīs persuāsit.

---

1. dēspērātā : dēspērō, 1, *de-
spair of.* — sē ipsī : cf. ipse . . .
sē, p. 8, l. 2.   The men probably
ran upon one another's swords.

3. ad T. Labiēnum : in con-
nection with in hīberna, this phrase
may conveniently be rendered by a
genitive.   For the location of Labi-
enus' camp, see the map on p. 124.

4. gestīs : lit. *done;* translate
freely, using a relative clause.

5. sublātus : from tollō. — in :
into the territory of.

6. Aduātucōs : for this and
other peoples mentioned, see again
the map on p. 124.

7. intermīsit : sc. cursum, *i.e.*

drew rein. — sē : omit in transla-
tion.

9. concitātīs : concitō, 1, *stir up.*

10. suī : gen. pl.

11. līberandī : gerundive, tak-
ing its form from suī.   Render the
gen. (freely) "to."

13. facillimēque : as governing
verb for this clause, dīxit may be
supplied.

14. Q. Cicerōne : another of
Caesar's lieutenants (see the map).
— eōrum : *i.e.* Nerviōrum. — hie-
māret : for mood, cf. admoveantur,
p. 61, l. 14.

15. Nerviīs persuāsit : *won
over the Nervii;* lit. what?

Itaque cōnfēstim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs,
nātiōnēsque aliās, ut quam maximīs cōpiīs auxiliō statim
venīrent, repente ad Cicerōnis hīberna hostēs sē ostendē-
runt; ubi nōnnūllī mīlitēs, morte Sabīnī Cottaeque nōndum
5 nūntiātā, sine timōre extrā mūnītiōnēs officiīs variīs operam
dabant. Ex hīs quīdam, quī lignātiōnis causā in silvās
discesserant, repentīnō equitum adventū interceptī sunt.
Cēterī autem celeriter concurrērunt ad arma, vāllumque
cōnscendērunt.

LESSON 109

The Besieged attempt to Communicate with Caesar

10 Missae sunt ad Caesarem cōnfēstim ā Cicerōne litterae;
obsessīs autem omnibus viīs, ab hostibus missī interceptī
sunt. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā compor-
tāverant, nostrī turrēs circiter CXX incrēdibilī celeritāte
exstrūxērunt.

15 Posterō diē hostēs, multō maiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs, castra
iterum oppugnāvērunt, fossamque complēre cōnātī sunt.
Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, nostrī restitērunt. Hoc idem
reliquīs deinceps diēbus factum est. Nūlla pars noctis
labōribus mīlitum carēbat: nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs

2. **aliās**: not reliquās or cēte-
rās. — **ut**: the construction is de-
termined by the idea of urging or
commanding implied in the send-
ing of messengers. — **maximīs cō-
piīs**: abl. case; translate "with."

3. **ad**: *in the neighborhood of*.

6. **lignātiōnis causā**: cf. p.
108, l. 8.

7. **equitum**: *i.e.* of the enemy.

9. **cōnscendērunt**: *manned*.

11. **missī**: part., as (masc.) noun.

12. **noctū**: *during the (follow-
ing) night*. — **māteriā**: māteria,
-ae, F., *timber*.

17. **quā**: freely, *as*; strictly,
abl., in the same construction as
eādem ratiōne.

18. **reliquīs**: *the following*. —
deinceps: adv., *in turn*.

19. **labōribus mīlitum**: freely,
toil for the soldiers. — **carēbat**:
was without, or *lacked*; cf. the note
on mē . . . carēre, p. 68, l. 13.

facultās quiētis dabātur : nec Cicerō ipse, etsī tenuissimā
erat valētūdine, nocturnō tempore ad quiētem ūtēbātur,
priusquam mīlitum vōcibus sibi parcere coāctus est.

Tum ducēs Nerviōrum, quī aliquam causam amīcitiae
5 cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle nūntiāvērunt.
Factā potestāte, eadem commemorant, quae paulō ante
Ambiorīx cum Sabīnō ēgerat. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī
morte, et cōnfīrmant sē nihil recūsāre nisi hīberna, atque
hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlle ; quam ob rem
10 Rōmānīs licēre incolumibus ex castrīs discēdere et quās-
cumque in partēs velint sine timōre proficīscī.

LESSON 110

Heroic Defense of their Camp

At Cicerō, quī iniussū Caesaris castra movēre nōlēbat,
Gallīs respondit nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī
ūllam accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem ; sī ab armīs
15 discēdere atque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere vellent, spē-
rāre sē eōs, quae petīssent, impetrātūrōs.

1. quiētis : quiēs, -ētis, F.,
rest. — tenuissimā : tenuis, -is, -e,
slight ; here, *poor.*

2. valētūdine : cf. p. 110, l. 9.
The abl. phrase expresses quality
or characteristic ; cf. the similar
use of the genitive.

4. causam : *i.e. ground.*

6. potestāte : *i.e.* facultāte. —
commemorant : *i.e.* dīcunt. In
animated narration, the pres. in-
dic. is often thus used for the
perfect.

7. cum Sabīnō ēgerat : *had
treated (in his dealings) with Sa-
binus.*

9. hanc . . . cōnsuētūdinem :
i.e. the practice of quartering a divi-
sion of the army upon them for the
winter. — inveterāscere : invete-
rāscō, 3, -veterāvī, *become fixed.*

10. incolumibus : pred. dat. —
quāscumque : quīcumque, quaecum-
que, quodcumque, *whatsoever.*

14. ūllam : modifier of con-
diciōnem.

15. lēgātōs : as on p. 48, l 9.

16. quae : *i.e.* ea quae, lit. *the
things which* ; freely, *the con-
cessions which.* — petīssent : *i.e.*
petīvissent ; cf. also the note on
exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

Hāc spē dēiectī Nerviī vāllō pedum decem et fossā pedum quīndecim hīberna circumdant.   Eīs autem nūlla erat ferramentōrum cōpia, quae ad eam rem ūsuī sunt; gladiīs igitur caespitēs circumcīdere et manibus sagīsque 5 terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur.   Quā ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potest; nam hōrīs ferē tribus decem mīlium passuum in circuitū mūnītiōnem pedum quīndecim perfēcērunt.

Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē, maximō coortō ventō, hostēs 10 tēla fervefacta in casās iēcērunt; quae celeriter comprehendērunt ignem, et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distulērunt.   Tum Gallī, victōriam ratī iam dēmum esse partam, maximō clāmōre vāllum scālīs ascendere coepērunt.   At tanta erat virtūs nostrōrum, ut, cum 15 maximā tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur, suaque impedīmenta omnia ignī cōnsūmī intellegerent, dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō.   Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen

---

1. **hāc spē dēiectī**: cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5.

2. **circumdant**: for tense, cf. p. 135, l. 6. — **eīs**: *i.e.* Nerviīs.

3. **ferramentōrum**: ferramentum, -ī, N., *iron implement.* — **eam**: *such.* — **rem**: *business.*— **ūsuī sunt**: *are needed.*

4. **circumcīdere**: circumcīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus, *cut out*, lit. *cut around.*

5. **exhaurīre**: exhauriō, 4, -hausī, -haustus, *remove*, lit. *haul out.*

7. **pedum quīndecim**: freely, *fifteen-foot* (including both vāllum and fossa, as thus far completed).

10. **fervefacta**: fervefactus, -a, -um, *red-hot.* — **casās**: *barracks.* — **quae**: feminine.

11. **ventī**: gen. case. — **magnitūdine**: abl. of cause (magnitūdō, -inis, F., *force*, lit. *greatness*; cf. magnus); translate "by reason of."

12. **distulērunt**: sc. **eum** (*i.e.* ignem).

13. **vāllum**: *i.e.* castrōrum; not the vāllum of l. 1. — **scālīs**: scālae, -ārum, F., *ladder* (s).

14. **cum**: concessive.

15. **maximā . . . multitūdine**: freely, *a perfect storm.*

16. **dē vāllō**: *i.e. from (his position upon) the rampart.* — **dēcēderet**: dēcēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *withdraw.*

17. **nostrīs**: dat. case; translate "for."

hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium
interīret aut vulnerārētur.

LESSON III

A Messenger eludes the Enemy

Quantō erat in diēs gravior oppugnātiō, tantō crēbriōrēs
litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; ē quibus nōn-
5 nūllī, in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum interceptī, cum cru-
ciātū necātī sunt.   Intrā hīberna autem erat Nervius
quīdam, nōmine Verticō, quī ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat, cum
prīmum castra oppugnāta sunt.   Hīc servō spē lībertātis
magnīsque persuāsit praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dē-
10 ferret.   Ille celeriter profectus, et Gallus inter Gallōs sine
ūllā suspīciōne versātus, ad Caesarem incolumis pervēnit.
Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnitum est.

Caesar, acceptīs litterīs hōrā ferē ūndecimā diēī, nūntium
cōnfēstim in Bellovacōs mittit ad M. Crassum, cuius
15 hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum quīnque et vīgintī;
iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē
venīre.   Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, quī eī

1. ut: *that.* — eō diē: *i.e.*
the day referred to on p. 136, l. 17
as hīc diēs.

3. quantō . . . tantō: with
the comparatives, *the . . . the*, lit.
by how much . . . by so much. —
erat: *became.* — in diēs: cf. p. 44,
l. 4. — crēbriōrēs: crēber, -bra,
-brum, lit. *frequent:* transl. as adv.

8. servō: sc. suō (*i.e.* "of
his "); dat. case, to be construed
with persuāsit, l. 9.

10. ille: the slave. — Gallus:
(*since he was*) *a Gaul.* — inter
. . . versātus: freely, *mixing*

with; lit. *what?* — sine: *without*
(*exciting*).

12. perīculīs: translate as sing.

13. hōrā . . . ūndecimā diēī:
cf. the note on p. 74, l. 16.

14. in: cf. the note on p. 133,
l. 5. — mittit: cf. commemorant, p.
135, l. 6. — ad M. Crassum: see
the map on p. 124.

15. eō: *i.e.* Caesare.

16. iubet: sc. eum (*i.e.* Cras-
sum). — ad: *to* (*join*).

17. alterum: sc. nūntium. —
ad C. Fabium: see the map again.
— eī: *i.e.* Fabiō.

nūntiet, ut legiōnem in Atrebatēs addūcat, quōrum per
fīnēs sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō ut, sī
reī pūblicae commodō fierī possit, cum legiōne ad fīnēs
Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quae
5 paulō aberat longius, nōn arbitrātur exspectandam; equitēs
circiter CCCC ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

LESSON 112

Caesar heads a Relief Force

Hōrā ferē tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū
Caesar certior est factus. Eō diē mīlia passuum vīgintī
prōgressus est. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeposuit, legiō-
10 nemque eī trādidit, quod ibi relinquēbat impedīmenta exer-
citūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentumque
omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā comportāverat.
Paulō post Fabius, ut imperātum erat, in itinere cum
legiōne occurrit. At Labiēnus, morte Sabīnī et clāde
15 cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae
vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem prō-

---

1. legiōnem: sc. suam. — in
Atrebatēs : i.e. F. was to march
south to join Caesar, as the latter
moved eastward.

2. ut: in this connection,
scrībit implies imperat also ; hence
the ut-clause.

3. reī pūblicae commodō : lit.
*with the well-being of the common-
wealth* ; freely, *without endanger-
ing the public weal.* — possit : *it
may.* — legiōne : sc. suā.

7. hōrā . . . tertiā : i.e. of the
day   following. — antecursōribus :
antecursor, -ōris, M., *courier.*

9. praeposuit : with dat., *left
in charge (of).*

11. cīvitātum : i.e. the Gallic
states ; translate the gen. "from."
— litterās : *documents.*

12. eō : the adv.

13. imperātum erat : note the
gender.

14. occurrit : sc. eī (*i.e.* Caesarī).

15. cohortium : freely, *to the
cohorts.* — cum : causal. — ad . . .
vēnissent : *had marched upon.* —
Trēverōrum : see the map on p. 124.

16. fugae : dat. case ; construe
with similem.

fectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetus sustinērī nōn posset,
litterās Caesarī remīsit, quibus ostendit quantum esset
perīculum docuitque omnēs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiās
Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

5   Caesar, cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum
dēiectus ad duās redierat, omnem tamen commūnis salūtis
spem in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit igitur magnīs itineribus
in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cōgnōscit quae in
Cicerōnis hībernīs gerantur, quantōque in perīculō rēs sit.

LESSON 113

The Besieged learn of Caesar's Approach

10   Itaque cuidam ex equitibus Gallīs Caesar magnīs praemiīs
persuāsit, ut ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferret. Hanc
Graecīs litterīs scrīptam mīsit, nē Gallō interceptō nostra
cōnsilia ab hostibus cōgnōscerentur. Hominī imperāvit ut,
sī hīberna intrāre nōn posset, trāgulam cum epistulā ad
15 āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs abiceret. In epistulā
scrīpsit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter adfore;
Cicerōnem hortātus est ut prīstinam virtūtem retinēret.

1. **fēcisset**: cf. exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.

2. **quibus**: cf. p. 38, l. 16. — **esset**: why subjunctive?

4. **Trēverōrum**: *belonging to the Treveri.* — **suīs**: *his.*

5. **opīniōne**: opīniō, -ōnis, F., *expectation*; cf. the similar phrase, p. 125, l. 5 ff.

6. **redierat**: *i.e. had been reduced.*

7. **venit**: what tense? (note the ĕ). — **magnīs itineribus**: *i.e. forced marches.*

8. **captīvīs**: *i.e.* Gauls whom he had arrested as he marched. — **quae**: neut. interrogative; translate as sing. (quid).

10. **ex**: *of.* — **Gallīs**: with adj. force. The cavalry of the Roman army was recruited largely from foreign nations (cf. the note on legiō, p. 125, l. 14).

11. **epistulam**: epistula, -ae, F., *letter.*

12. **Gallō interceptō**: translate by a conditional clause.

15. **āmentum**: āmentum, -ī, N., *strap.* — **dēligātā**: dēligō, 1, *fasten.*

16. **adfore**: *i.e.* adfutūrum esse.
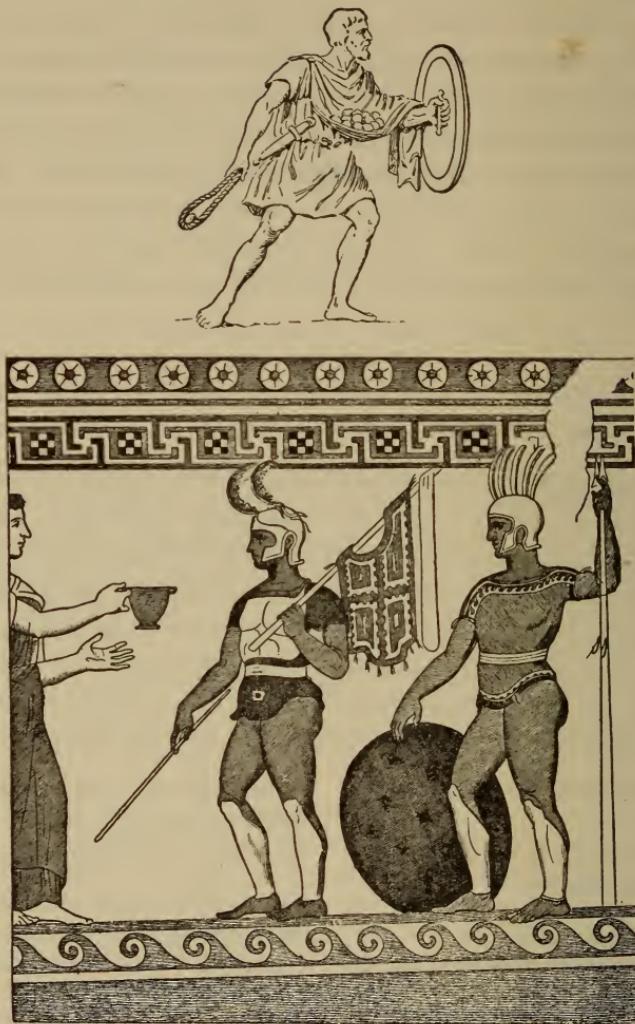
ARMA

The upper illustration is interesting as showing the very primitive equipment of some of the light-armed troops. In the lower picture may be seen on the spears of the warrior the strap (*āmentum*) which was used to assist the hand when the weapons were hurled.

Gallus, cum ad hīberna vēnisset, perīculum veritus, ut erat imperātum, trāgulam cum litterīs mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit, neque ā nostrīs statim animadversa, tertiō diē ā mīlite quōdam cōnspicitur; quī eam sine morā
5 ad Cicerōnem dēfert. Ille, epistulā perlēctā, mīlitēs laetus docet Caesarem iam subsidiō venīre. Tum fūmī incendiō-rum procul cernēbantur; quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

LESSON 114

The Enemy raise the Siege

Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs, obsidiōne statim relictā,
10 ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Quō animadversō, Cicerō Gallum quendam celeriter cum litterīs mittit, in qui-bus scrībit hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque multitūdinem ad Caesarem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte adlātīs, Caesar suōs facit certiōrēs, eōsque ad pu-
15 gnandum animō cōnfīrmat.

Posterō diē, cum lūce prīmā mōvisset castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus esset, trāns vallem ma-

1. **perīculum**: *i.e.* of trying to enter the camp.
2. **litterīs**: *i.e.* **epistulā**. — **cāsū**: *i.e.* forte.
3. **ad . . . adhaesit**: freely, *caught upon.*
6. **tum**: *later*. — **fūmī**: translate as singular.
7. **cernēbantur**: cf. the ren-dering of **vidēbant**, p. 36, l. 7. — **quae rēs**: cf. **quae urbs**, p. 44. l. 13. — **omnem**: *any*. — **dubitātiō-nem**: dubitātiō, -ōnis, F., *doubt.*

9. **rē**: *the situation*. — **per**: freely, *from*; lit. *through.*
10. **ad**: *against*. — **omnibus cō-piīs**: **cum** may be supplied with this abl.
12. **omnem . . . multitūdinem**: sc. **suam**. The whole is obj. of **con-vertisse**.
14. **pugnandum**: gerund.
15. **animō**: lit. *in mind*. — **cōn-fīrmat**: *fortifies.* Render freely.
16. **mōvisset**: subject, **Caesar**.
17. **magnam**: modifying both

gnam et rīvum hostium multitūdinem vīdit.   Erat magnī
perīculī rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum,
quoniam obsidiōne līberātum esse Cicerōnem sciēbat, dē
celeritāte aliquid sibi remittendum exīstimābat: quārē cōn-
5 sēdit, et, quam aequissimō locō poterat, castra mūnīvit.

LESSON 115

They are Outgeneraled by Caesar

Postrīdiē hostium equitātus prīmā lūce ad castra accessit,
proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus commīsit.   Caesar au-
tem suīs imperāvit ut cēderent cōnsultō sēque in castra
reciperent; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō
10 munīrī, portās obstruī, omniaque cum simulātiōne timōris
agī iussit.

Quibus rēbus invītātī, hostēs cōpiās rīvum trādūxērunt
omnīs, aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituērunt; tum Caesar,
omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, eōs

---

vallem and rīvum, and agreeing
with the nearer.

2. rēs: *a matter.* — cōpiīs: sc.
Gallōrum. — tum: *furthermore.*

3. obsidiōne: translate the abl.
" from."

4. aliquid sibi remittendum:
freely, *he should relax somewhat*;
lit. what?

5. quam aequissimō locō po-
terat: *in as favorable a position
as he could.*   This fuller form
helps to show how quam and the
superl. came to mean "as . . . as
possible." — mūnīvit: cf. the part.
mūnītus.

6. castra: sc. Caesaris.

8. cōnsultō: adv.

9. altiōre vāllō: not a new
rampart, but the old built higher.

10. obstruī: obstruō, 3, -strūxī,
-strūctus, *block up*. — simulātiōne
timōris: the purpose of this ma-
neuver is made clear by the follow-
ing sentence.

12. invītātī: invītātus, -a, -um,
part., *invited*; freely, *made bold.*
— rīvum trādūxērunt: *i.e.* dūxē-
runt trāns rīvum; cf. flūmen trā-
ductīs, p. 91, l. 10.

13. omnīs: modifier of cō-
piās.

14. omnibus portīs: for syntax,
cf. fenestrā, p. 76, l. 3.

celeriter in fugam dedit. Longius autem īnsequī veri-
tus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suīs
incolumibus eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervēnit. Turrēs
mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur. Legiōne prōductā,
5 cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem
sine vulnere; quā ex rē iūdicat quantō in perīculō rēs
fuerit. Cicerōne mīlitibusque laudātīs, centuriōnēs tribū-
nōsque singulōs appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem
testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cot-
10 tae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit.

LESSON 116

Arrangements for the Rest of the Winter

Dum haec fīunt, ad Labiēnum incrēdibilī celeritāte dē
victōriā Caesaris fāma dēfertur; quīn etiam, cum ab hīber-
nīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum Labiēnus abesset circiter sexā-
gintā, atque ad Cicerōnem post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar
15 pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem subitō ad portās Labiēnī
castrōrum audītus est eōrum clāmor, quī lēgātō grātulārī

1. **longius**: absol. compar.
2. **intercēdēbant**: intercēdō, 3,
-cessī, -cessum est, *intervene.* —
omnibus suīs incolumibus: abl.
absol.; translate "with."
4. **hostium**: freely, *built by
the enemy.*
5. **nōn decimum**, etc.: order
of lit. translation: nōn quemque
decimum mīlitem esse reliquum.
7. **fuerit**: perf. subjunctive;
why this mood? Note carefully
the force of the tense.
8. **ēgregiam**: pred. adj. (ēgre-
gius, -a, -um, *conspicuous*).

9. **testimōniō**: testimōnium,
-ī, N., *report.* The abl. expresses
means; we would say "from."
10. **certius**: as noun (neut.
sing.); see the Vocab. under
cōgnōscō.
11. **haec**: *this.* — **Labiēnum**:
cf. p. 138, l. 14 ff.
12. **fāma (-ae, F.)**: *report.* —
dēfertur: *i.e.* by natives. — **cum**:
concessive.
15. **ad**: *before.*
16. **eōrum**: *of those.* — **clāmor**:
translate as pl. — **grātulārī**: grā-
tulor, 1, *offer congratulation.*

volēbant, quod hostīs Caesar superāvisset. At Trēverī, quī posterō diē hīberna Labiēnī oppugnāre cōnstituerant, repentīnā rē perterritī noctū domum celeriter sē recēpērunt.

Postrīdiē Caesar cōntiōne habitā mīlitēs cōnfīrmāvit, 5 eōsque docuit dētrīmentum, quod temeritāte lēgātī esset acceptum, aequiōre animō esse ferendum, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum legiōnēs cēterae cōnservātae essent neque hostibus diūtinum gaudium relinquerētur. Fabium cum legiōne remīsit in hīberna; 10 ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam hiemāre cōnstituit: nam cum animī omnium Gallōrum ad bellum incitātī vidērentur, tōtam hiemem sibi apud exercitum manendum arbitrābātur.

4. cōntiōne habitā: *i.e.* in Cicero's camp.

5. temeritāte: translate the abl. "through."—lēgātī: *i.e.* Sabīnī. — esset acceptum: for mood, cf. admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14.

6. aequiōre animō esse ferendum: *i.e. should be taken the more philosophically;* lit. what?

7. immortālium: immortālis, -is, -e, *immortal.* In passages like the present, the use of this adj. is formal and conventional; properly, it contrasts the life of

the gods with the (earthly) life of men. — eōrum: *i.e.* the soldiers addressed.

8. diūtinum: diūtinus, -a, -um, *long-continued.* — gaudium (-ī, N.): *exultation* (cf. gaudeō).

9. Fabium, etc.: see again the map on p. 124.

11. cum: causal.

12. tōtam hiemem: usually this was not necessary, the winter months being normally a season of rest from active field service (see p. 123, l. 3 ff.).

AN AFRICAN CAMPAIGN

LESSON 117

During the civil war which broke out between Caesar and Pompey four or five years after the events above narrated, there was fighting in all parts of the civilized world, and more than once Africa was the battleground.

Caesar lands a Force in Africa

Interim C. Cūriō duās legiōnēs, D equitēs, ex Siciliā in Āfricam trānsportāvit. Ubi eius adventum L. Caesar cum decem longīs nāvibus exspectābat; quī autem, cum classis Cūriōnis in cōnspectum vēnisset, nāvium multitūdinem
5 veritus, appulsā ad proximum lītus trirēme, pedibus Hadrūmētum fūgit: quō nāvēs quoque eius reliquae, fugā ducis cōgnitā, statim sē recēpērunt.

Cūriō Mārcium Rūfum cum classe Uticam praemittit. Ipse eōdem cum exercitū proficīscitur; trīduīque iter prō-
10 gressus, ad flūmen Bagradam pervēnit. Ibi C. Canīnium Rebilum lēgātum legiōnēsque relinquit; ipse cum equitātū antecēdit ad Castra Cornēlia explōranda, quī locus peridō- neus castrīs exīstimābātur.

1. **C. Cūriō**: one of Caesar's generals. — **D.**: the numeral: supply -que or et with this clause.

2. **L. Caesar**: an officer in Pompey's navy.

5. **veritus**: *appalled at.* — **trirēme**: sc. **suā** (trirēmis, -is, F., *galley*). — **pedibus**: we would say "*on* foot"; cf. **manibus genibusque**, p. 59, l. 8. — **Hadrūmētum**: consult the map on p. 146; for

syntax, see the note on p. 79, l. 21.

6. **quō**: the adv. — **fugā**: *defection.*

8. **Uticam**: the base of operations of Pompey's forces in Africa.

9. **proficīscitur**: from Anquillaria.

12. **antecēdit**: antecēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, *push ahead*, lit. *go on ahead.* — **quī locus**: cf. **quae urbs**, p. 44, l. 13. — **peridō-**
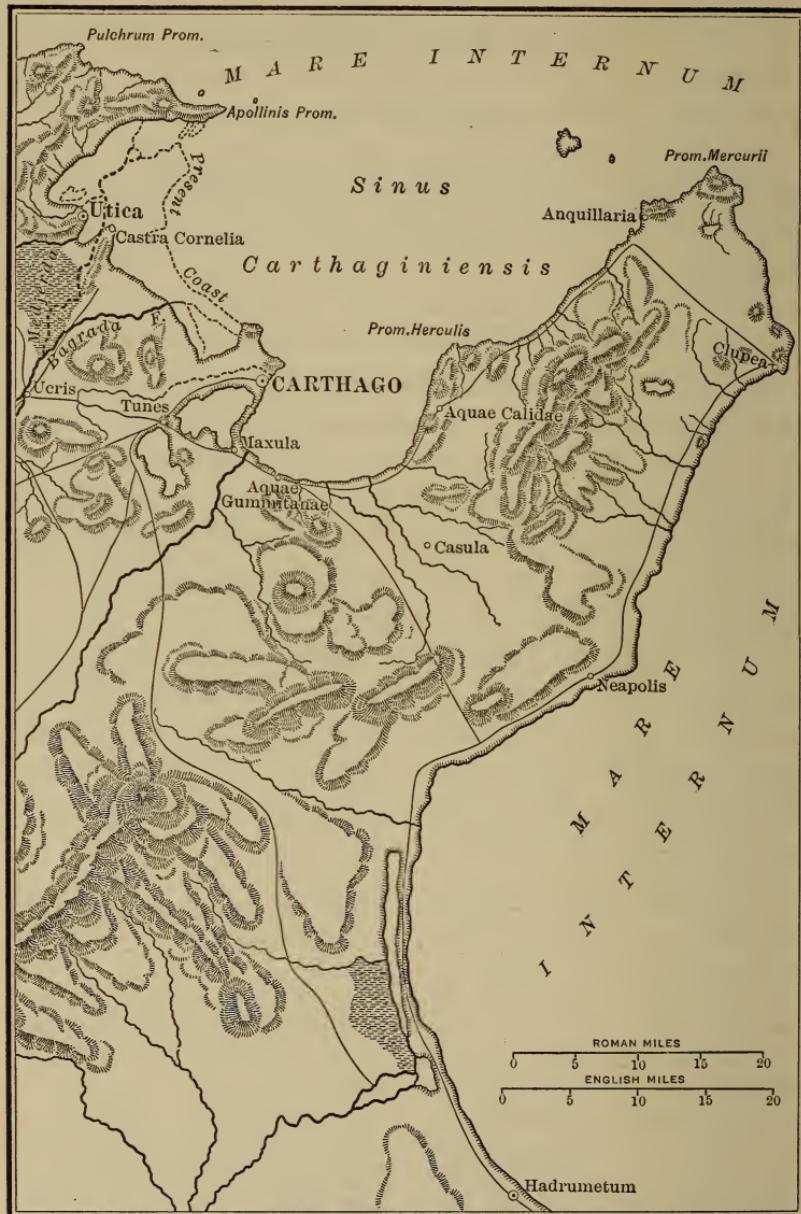
THE SCENE OF CURIO'S CAMPAIGN IN AFRICA.

Hāc explōrātā regiōne, Cūriō Uticae quoque mūnītiōnēs speculātus est; cumque animadvertisset plēnissimīs viīs undique portārī agīque multa, quae repentīnī tumultūs timōre ex agrīs in urbem cōnferēbantur, equitātum mīsit, 5 ut praedā īnspērātā potīrētur. Simul ex urbe ēmissī sunt DC equitēs Numidae, quī agricolīs fugientibus auxiliō essent. Concurrunt equitēs inter sē; neque vērō prīmum impetum nostrōrum Numidae ferre poterant, sed interfectīs circiter CXX reliquī sē in urbem contulērunt.

LESSON 118

Operations about Utica

10 Interim Mārcius nāvēs longās Uticam dēdūxerat; cuius adventū cōgnitō, Cūriō prōnūntiārī iussit onerāriīs, quae in portū ad ancoram stābant numerō circiter CC, sē in hostium locō habitūrum omnēs, quī nōn statim ad Castra Cornēlia nāvīs trādūxissent. Quā prōnūntiātiōne factā, 15 sine morā sublātīs ancorīs omnēs reliquērunt Uticam et, quō imperātum erat, trānsiērunt. Quae rēs omnium rērum cōpiā exercitum nostrum complēvit.

neus (-a, -um): *particularly suit-able*; cf. the note on **perpaucōs**, p. 25, l. 10.

2. **plēnissimīs**: plēnus, -a, -um, *congested.* — **viīs**: translate the abl. "along"; cf. **sēmitā**, p. 103, l. 17.

3. **portārī agīque**: cf. the note on **rapere et agere**, p. 49, l. 8.

4. **timōre**: freely, *in the panic*; strictly, abl. of cause.

5. **īnspērātā**: īnspērātus, -a, -um, *unexpected.*

6. **Numidae**: with adj. force.

7. **neque**: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

10. **Mārcius**: see p. 145, l. 8.

11. **prōnūntiārī**: cf. p. 128, l. 5; note the final vowel.

12. **numerō**: for syntax, cf. **animō**, p. 37, l. 20. — **in hostium locō habitūrum**: *would regard as enemies*; lit. what?

13. **omnēs**: masc.

14. **nāvīs**: *i.e.* the onerāriae of l. 11. — **trādūxissent**: *i.e.* across the harbor (see the map). For mood and tense, cf. **esset perruptus**, p. 107, l. 3. — **prōnūntiātiōne**: prōnūntiātiō, -ōnis, F., *announcement.*

16. **quō**: the adv.

Hīs rēbus gestīs, Cūriō sē in castra ad Bagradam recipit, posterōque diē exercitum Uticam dūcit et prope oppidum castra pōnit. Nōndum opere castrōrum perfectō, equitēs ex statiōne nūntiant magna auxilia equitum peditumque ā
5 rēge Iubā missa Uticam venīre; eōdemque tempore vīs magna pulveris cernēbātur, et temporis pūnctō prīmum agmen erat in cōnspectū. Quā rē novā Cūriō permōtus equitēs suōs praemittit, quī prīmum impetum sustineant; ipse, celeriter ab opere dēductīs legiōnibus, aciem īnstruit.

LESSON 119

Curio gains an Initial Advantage

10 Interim equitēs cum hostibus proelium commīsērunt et, priusquam legiōnēs plānē explicārī possent, tōta auxilia rēgis, quae nūllō ōrdine et sine metū iter faciēbant, in fugam coniecta sunt. Equitēs hostium per lītus in oppidum properāvērunt, peditum autem magnus numerus interfectus est.
15 Proximā nocte centuriōnēs duo ex castrīs Cūriōnis cum manipulāribus suīs duōbus et vīgintī ad Attium Vārum perfugiunt; cui cōnfīrmant tōtīus exercitūs animōs aliēnōs esse

1. **ad Bagradam**: cf. p. 145, l. 10. In connection with in castra, translate "*at* the Bagrada"; cf. ad T. Labiēnum . . . in hīberna, p. 133, l. 3.

3. **opere**: *i.e. construction.*

4. **statiōne**: statiō, -ōnis, F., *outpost.*—auxilia: *auxiliary forces.*

5. **Iubā**: king of Numidia, friendly to Pompey (cf. p. 147, l. 5 ff.).—venīre: *i.e.* appropinquāre ad.—eōdem . . . tempore: *i.e.* simul.

6. **cernēbātur**: cf. cernēbantur, p. 141, l. 7.—temporis pūnctō: *in*

a moment (pūnctum, -ī, N., *point*). — prīmum agmen: *vanguard*; lit. what?

9. **opere**: (*the work of*) construction (cf. l. 3).

11. **legiōnēs**: sc. Cūriōnis.

12. **sine metū**: evidently they had not heard of Curio's arrival in Africa.

13. **oppidum**: *i.e.* Utica.

16. **Attium Vārum**: commander of the Pompeian forces at Utica.

17. **aliēnōs . . . ā**: freely, *disaffected toward.*

ā Cūriōne, multōsque facultāte datā libenter esse trānsitūrōs.
Qua ōrātiōne adductus Vārus posterō diē māne legiōnēs ex
castrīs ēdūcit. Facit idem Cūriō, atque ūnā valle nōn
magnā interpositā suās uterque cōpiās īnstruit.

5   Erat in exercitū Vārī lēgātus quīdam, cui nōtī erant
multī Cūriōnis mīlitēs. Hanc ille nactus appellātiōnis cau-
sam, circumīre aciem Cūriōnis atque omnēs hortārī coepit,
ut Vārum sequerentur; quīn etiam praemium pollicitus est,
sī quī ad eum trānsīre voluissent. Hīs verbīs audītīs, nūllam
10 in partem ab exercitū Cūriōnis fit sīgnificātiō, atque ita suās
uterque cōpiās redūcit.

LESSON 120

He maintains his Army's Loyalty to Caesar

At in castrīs Cūriōnis animī omnium sollicitī erant; quis-
que enim ad id, quod ab aliō audierat, aliquid suī timōris
addēbat.

15   Cōnsiliō convocātō, duae sententiae dictae sunt. Erant
quī castra Vārī statim oppugnanda cēnsērent; alterī autem

1. **facultāte datā**: translate as a conditional clause. — **esse trānsitūrōs**: *i.e. will desert* (to Varus).

3. **castrīs**: built just outside the city walls. — **ēdūcit**: ēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead out.* — **idem**: note the gender.

4. **uterque**: as noun.

6. **appellātiōnis**: appellātiō, -ōnis, F., *accosting*; translate here *accosting* (*them*). — **causam**: freely, *excuse* (*for*).

8. **Vārum sequerentur**: *i.e.* join the army of Varus.

9. **sī quī**: *if any* (noun); cf. the note on **quid**, p. 56, l. 1. —

eum: *i.e.* **Vārum**. — **voluissent**: freely, *were willing*; cf. **esset perruptus**, p. 107, l. 3. — **nūllam in partem**: see the Vocab. under **pars**.

10. **sīgnificātiō** (-ōnis, F.) : *sign.* — **ita**: *i.e.* with the loyalty of Curio's troops still a matter of doubt.

12. **sollicitī**: sollicitus, -a, -um, *unsettled.* — **quisque**: noun.

13. **ad id, quod**: freely, *to what.* — **suī**: cf. **suum**, p. 11, l. 6; for syntax of the gen. phrase, cf. **glōriae**, p. 107, l. 17.

16. **cēnsērent**: cf. the note on **erant quī**, p. 109, l. 5. — **alterī**: *i.e. the other party.*

optimum factū exīstimābant in Castra Cornēlia legiōnēs re-
dūcere, ut maiōre spatiō temporis interpositō mīlitum mentēs
sānārentur, simul ut exercitus, sī proeliō victus esset, in
Siciliam facile trānsportārī posset.   Cūriō tamen " Neutrum
5 cōnsilium," inquit, " probō; neque enim tantī sum animī, ut
castra tam mūnīta temerē oppugnanda cēnseam, neque tantī
timōris, ut spem statim dīmittam, atque omnia prius ex-
perienda arbitror."

Quārē, dīmissō cōnsiliō, cōntiōnem advocat mīlitum;
10 quōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmat, docetque quid sit causae,
cūr sibi Caesarīque fidēlēs sint.   Quā ōrātiōne permōtī mī-
litēs eum etiam dīcentem interpellābant, discēdentem vērō
ex cōntiōne ūniversī cohortantur ut magnō sit animō nēve
dubitet proelium committere et suam fidem virtūtemque
15 experīrī.

---

1. factū: cf. p. 126, l. 17;
omit here in translating.

2. maiōre: absol. compar. —
mentēs: mēns, mentis, F., *feeling*,
lit. *mind*.

3. sānārentur: sānō, 1, *heal*,
pass., *become normal*. — simul: *i.e.*
furthermore.

4. neutrum: neuter,   -tra,
-trum, *neither* (of two).

5. cōnsilium: contrast   the
meaning here and on p. 149, l. 15.
— neque: cf. p. 127, l. 16.

7. prius: *i.e.* before giving up
hope. — experienda: experior, 4,
expertus sum, *try*.

9. cōntiōnem: *assembly*. — ad-
vocat: advocō, 1, *call together*.

10. verbīs: sc. suīs. — quid . . .
causae: *what grounds*; for syntax

of the gen., cf. suī timōris, p. 149,
l. 13.

11. sint: lit. *they should be*;
translate the clause freely.

12. eum: *i.e.*   Cūriōnem. —
etiam dīcentem: translate this and
the following part. by clauses. —
interpellābant: *kept interrupting*
(interpellō, 1). — discēdentem: sc.
eum.

13. cōntiōne: *the meeting*. —
ūniversī: freely, *one and all*. —
magnō . . . animō: for syntax, cf.
the note on p. 135, l. 2. — nēve:
and not to (nē + ve); cf. neque
(in sense = nōn + que).

14. fidem: *loyalty*; cf. fidēlēs,
l. 11.

15. experīrī: *make trial of*;
cf. l. 7.

LESSON 121

The Pompeians suffer a Second Reverse

Quibus rēbus cōnfīrmātus Cūriō cōnstituit, cum prīmum esset data potestās, proeliō rem committere; postrīdiēque mīlitēs prōductōs eōdem locō, quō ante cōnstiterant, in aciē collocāvit. Quō animadversō, Vārus quoque cōpiās prō-
5 dūxit, nē, sī aequō locō darētur occāsiō, dīmicandī facultātem dīmitteret.

Erat vallēs inter duās aciēs, ut suprā dēmōnstrātum est, nōn ita magna, at difficilī et arduō ascēnsū. Hanc uterque sī adversāriōrum cōpiae trānsīre cōnārentur, exspectābat,
10 quō aequiōre locō proelium ipse committeret. Postrēmō Vārī equitēs in vallem dēscendere coepērunt. Ad eōs Cūriō equitātum et duās cohortēs mittit; quōrum prīmum impetum equitēs hostium nōn ferunt, sed admissīs equīs ad suōs re-fugiunt.

15 Quā rē animadversā, legiōnēs sē sequī iubet Cūriō, et omnibus cum cōpiīs in vallem cōnfēstim dēscendit; interim autem hostēs, veritī nē ab equitātū circumvenīrentur, terga vertunt ūniversī, ac summā celeritāte sē in castra recipiunt.

2. **esset data**: cf. exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18. — **proeliō**: dat. case.

3. **eōdem locō**: construe with collocāvit, l. 4. — **quō**: antecedent, locō.

5. **darētur**: *i.e. should present itself*. — **dīmicandī**: gerund.

7. **suprā**: namely, p. 149, l. 3 ff.

8. **ita**: *so very*. — **arduō**: arduus, -a, -um, *steep*. — **ascēnsū**: ascēnsus, -ūs, M., *slope*. — **hanc**: object of trānsīre, l. 9. — **uterque**: *each (commander)*.

9. **sī**: *in the hope that*. — adversāriōrum: adversāriī, -ˀrum, M., *the opposing party*. — **exspectābat**: cf. interpellābant, p. 150, l. 12.

10. **quō**: cf. the note on p. 101, l. 14.

13. **hostium**: *i.e.* Varus' party. — **admissīs**: admissus, -a, -um, part., *let go, i.e. at full speed*.

17. **equitātū**: sc. Cūriōnis (cf. l. 12).

18. **castra**: cf. the note on p. 149, l. 3.

LESSON 122

Narrow Escape of their Commander

Quā in fugā Fabius Paelignus, mīles quīdam ex Cūriōnis
exercitū, agmen fugientium cōnsecūtus, magnā vōce Vārum
ita nōmine appellāvit, ut ūnus esse ex eius mīlitibus et velle
aliquid dīcere vidērētur. Ubi autem Vārus saepius appel-
5 lātus cōnstitit, et quis esset aut quid vellet quaesīvit, tum
Fabius eius umerum apertum gladiō appetiit. Quod ille
perīculum sublātō scūtō vītāvit; Fabius autem ā proximīs
mīlitibus circumventus interficitur.

Interim fugientium multitūdine portae castrōrum com-
10 plētae sunt, atque iter erat ita impedītum, ut plūrēs in eō
locō sine vulnere quam in proeliō aut fugā interīrent;
nōnnūllī vērō erant adeō perterritī, ut prōtinus eōdem cursū
per castra in oppidum ipsum contenderent. At Cūriōnis
mīlitēs, ad proelium ēgressī, sēcum nūllam cōpiam portāve-
15 rant eārum rērum, quae ad oppugnātiōnem castrōrum erant
ūsuī. Itaque Cūriō exercitum tum in castra redūcit.

Cuius discessū vulnerātī ē castrīs hostium in oppidum
redūcuntur; quō quidem tempore multī praetereā per
simulātiōnem vulnerum propter metum eōdem sēsē recipi-

1. **in**: *during*.

2. **fugientium**: sc. hostium.

4. **saepius**: absol. compar.

5. **aut**: cf. the note on p.
128, l. 7.

6. **apertum**: *unprotected, i.e.*
the right.—**ille**: Varus.

7. **scūtō**: scūtum, -ī, N., *shield*.

10. **iter**: *roadway*.

11. **sine vulnere**: *i.e.* wound in-
flicted by the enemy.

12. **adeō**: the adv. — **eōdem
cursū**: *i.e. without stopping*.

13. **castra**: see again the note
on p. 149, l. 3. — **ipsum**: *proper*.

14. **proelium**: *a battle (in the
open)*. — **ēgressī**: sc. ex castrīs;
translate the part. by a relative
clause.

16. **tum**: *for the time being*.

17. **discessū**: abl. of time when;
translate "on."

18. **quidem**: omit in translat-
ing. — **per**: freely, *under*.

19. **eōdem**: adv., *to the same
shelter*.

Scūta

This illustration, taken from the carvings on the column of Trajan (see page 40), shows how Roman soldiers, by locking their shields (*scūta*), formed a solid roof over their heads as they came up under a wall from which the enemy were sending down a shower of missiles.

unt.   Quā rē animadversā exercitūsque timōre cōgnitō, Vārus, būcinātōre tabernāculīsque paucīs in castrīs ad speciem relictīs, tertiā vigiliā reliquum quoque exercitum silentiō in oppidum redūcit.

LESSON 123

King Juba marches to the Relief of Varus

5   Postrīdiē eius diēī Cūriō obsidēre Uticam coepit.   Sed iam ad urbem perveniunt ā rēge Iubā nūntiī, quī illum adesse magnīs cum cōpiīs dīcant oppidānōsque dē dēfēnsiōne urbis hortentur.   Nūntiābantur haec eadem Cūriōnī.   Ille tamen prīmō rēgem nihil contrā sē ausūrum exīstimābat ; 10 sed ubi certior est factus cōpiās Iubae ab Uticā minus quīnque et vīgintī mīlia passuum abesse, relictīs mūnītiōnibus sēsē in Castra Cornēlia recēpit.   Hūc comportāre coepit omnia, quae ad obsidiōnem sustinendam ūsuī erant.

Dum haec fīunt, ex oppidānīs perfugīs audīvit Iubam 15 aliō bellō esse revocātum, et Saburram, eius praefectum, parvīs cum cōpiīs Uticae appropinquāre.   Quō audītō, cōnsilium temerē mūtāvit, proeliōque rem committere cōn-

---

2. **būcinātōre**: būcinātor, -ōris, M., *trumpeter.* — **ad speciem**: *i.e.* to keep up the appearance of occupancy.

5. **eius diēī**: omit in translating.   The gen. depends upon the **diē** which enters into the composition of **postrīdiē**.

6. **Iubā**: see the note on p. 148, l. 5.

8. **haec eadem**: neut. ; translate as singular.

10. **minus**: *less (than)* ; cf. the use of **amplius**, p. 101, l. 3.

12. **Castra Cornēlia**: see again the map on p. 146.

13. **omnia**: *all sorts of things.* — **obsidiōnem**: of the same derivation as the verb **obsidēre**, l. 5.

14. **perfugīs**: with adj. force, *deserting.*

15. **aliō bellō**: abl. of means. Apparently this item of news regarding Juba's movements was deliberately fabricated, the "desertions" from the city having been planned for the express purpose of deceiving Curio.

stituit. Quārē equitātum omnem prīmā nocte ad castra
Saburrae praemittit; quī hostīs necopīnantēs adortus,
magnum eōrum numerum occīdit. Quō factō, ad Cūriōnem
equitēs redeunt captīvōsque ad eum redūcunt.

LESSON 124

The Numidians resort to Strategy

5   Cūriō, cohortibus quīnque castrīs praesidiō relictīs, om-
nibus cum cōpiīs quārtā vigiliā profectus, sex mīlia passuum
iam ipse prōgressus erat. Quī, victōriā equitātūs cōgnitā,
etiam celerius iter fēcit; Iubam enim crēdēbat longē ab-
esse, exiguāsque Saburrae cōpiās facile sē opprimere posse
10 exīstimābat.

Interim autem Iuba (cuius dē discessū falsō erat nūn-
tiātum, quīque iam haud longē aberat), dē nocturnō proeliō
certior factus, duo mīlia equitum eamque peditum partem,
cui maximē cōnfīdēbat, Saburrae subsidiō mittit, ipseque
15 cum reliquīs cōpiīs elephantīsque sexāgintā lēnius subsequi-
tur. Suspicātus brevī Cūriōnem ipsum adfore, Saburra
cōpiās equitum peditumque statim īnstrūxit atque eīs
imperāvit ut simul atque nostrī in cōnspectum vēnissent,
simulātiōne timōris paulātim cēderent.

20   Quō factō, hostēs fugere Cūriō ratus legiōnēs dē collibus

1. **ad**: *i.e. to attack*.
11. **falsō**: adv., lit. *falsely*;
render the clause freely.
12. **quīque**: *i.e.* quī + que. —
nocturnō proeliō: see l. 1 ff.
14. **cōnfīdēbat**: cōnfīdō, 3,
-fīsus sum, with dat., *rely (upon)*.
— **subsidiō**: dat. of service.
15. **elephantīs**: elephantus, -ī,
M., *elephant*.

16. **suspicātus**: translate as a
present. — **ipsum**: as contrasted
with his cavalry, which had already
been in action. — **adfore**: *i.e.* ad-
futūrum esse.
18. **simul atque**: *i.e.* cum prī-
mum. — **vēnissent**: cf. the note on
exspectāssent, p. 104, l. 18.
19. **simulātiōne**: translate the
abl. "with."

in plānitiem dēdūxit; cumque longius esset inde prōgres-
sus, cōnfectō iam labōre exercitū, locō inīquō cōnstitit.
Tum suīs sīgnum subitō dat Saburra aciemque explicat.
Peditātū prīmō ad speciem tantum ūtitur, equitēs in aciem
5 nostram inmittit.

LESSON 125

Curio's Army is Annihilated

Repentīnā rē minimē permōtus Cūrio ōrdinēs circumiit
mīlitēsque hortātus est ut spem omnem in virtūte pōnerent.
Hī prīmō fortissimē dīmicābant; sed hostēs, quī numerō
longē erant superiōrēs, mox aciem nostram circumventam
10 ā tergō adorīrī coepērunt.   Tum Cūrio, ubi perterritīs om-
nibus cohortātiōnēs suās nōn audīrī intellēxit, ūnam salūtis
esse spem reliquam arbitrātus, proximōs collēs capere at-
que eō sīgna ferre iussit.   Sed hōs quoque praeoccupat
missus ā Saburrā equitātus.
15   Tum vērō ad summam dēspērātiōnem nostrī perveniunt,
et Cn. Domitius, praefectus equitum, cum paucīs equitibus
circumsistēns, Cūriōnem ōrat ut fugā petat salūtem, et sē
ab eō nōn discessūrum pollicētur.   At Cūrio numquam sē,

1. **longius** : absol. compar.
— **inde** : *i.e.* from the point where
he had left the hills.

2. **cōnfectō** : construe with
exercitū.

4. **prīmō** : the adv.

8. **dīmicābant** : *kept up the
fight.*

9. **circumventam** : translate as
if **circumvēnērunt eamque**.

10. **ā tergō** : cf. p. 78, l. 18. —
omnibus : noun, forming an abl.
absol. with **perterritīs**.

11. **cohortātiōnēs** : **cohortātiō**,
-**ōnis**, F., *exhortation*.

12. **spem** : *chance*. — **capere** :
make for; as subject, **suōs** may
be supplied.

13. **eō** : the adv. —**sīgna** : see
the notes on pp. 130, l. 1, and 131,
l. 16. — **hōs** : *i.e.* **collēs**.

15. **dēspērātiōnem** : **dēspērātiō**,
-**ōnis**, F., *despair*.

18. **numquam sē**, etc. : the in-
direct discourse depends upon **cōn-
firmat**, p. 157, l. 2.

āmissō exercitū quem ā Caesare accēpisset, in eius cōn-
spectum reditūrum cōnfīrmat, atque ita pugnāns interficitur.

 Ē proeliō equitēs nostrī perpaucī effūgērunt; quibuscum
nōnnūllī, quī equōrum reficiendōrum causā in itinere paulum
5 morātī erant, fugā tōtīus exercitūs procul animadversā, in-
columēs in castra sē contulērunt. Peditēs ad ūnum omnēs
interfectī sunt.

 4. reficiendōrum: reficiō, 3,   6. castra: *i.e.* the camp at
-fēcī, -fectus, *refresh*.   Castra Cornēlia.

SELECTED PASSAGES FROM LATIN PROSE AUTHORS

AN EPISODE FROM THE GALLIC WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō*, VI, 7, 8)

LESSON 126

Though disconcerted for the time being by Caesar's decisive victory over the Nervii (Lesson 115), the Treveri subsequently more than once threatened the winter camp of Labienus (cf. Lessons 112 and 116, and see the map on page 124).

Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī magnīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat, adorīrī parābant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse 5 legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum xv, auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt.

Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque

1. **haec**: *i e.* events mentioned in the narrative from which this extract is taken.

2. **cum**: translate "and." — **ūnā**: *the one.*

4. **viā**: *than a journey*; abl. with the compar. — **vēnisse**: *i.e.* to reënforce Labienus.

5. **missū**: missus, -ūs, M., lit. *sending*; here, *order.* — **cōgnō-**

scunt: cf. **commemorant**, p. 135, l. 6. — **ā**: as adv., *away* (with abl. of degree of difference).

8. **temeritāte**: cf. the adv. **temere.**

9. **eōrum**: *on their part.* — **dīmicandī**: *i.e.* before the Germans should arrive. — **praesidiō . . . relictō**: abl. absol. — **quīnque cohortium**: *(consisting) of five cohorts.*

158

cohortium impedīmentīs relictō, cum xxv cohortibus ma-
gnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur, et mīlle passuum
intermissō spatiō castra commūnit.   Erat inter Labiēnum
atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs.
5 Hoc neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō neque hostēs
trānsitūrōs exīstimābat.   Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē
spēs.   Loquitur in cōnsiliō palam, quoniam Germānī ap-
propinquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās
in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum, et posterō diē prīmā lūce ca-
10 stra mōtūrum.   Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex
magnō Gallōrum equitātūs numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicīs rēbus
favēre nātūra cōgēbat.

LESSON 127

The Enemy are Deceived and become Overconfident

Labiēnus noctū tribūnīs mīlitum prīmīsque ōrdinibus
convocātīs, quid suī sit cōnsilī, prōpōnit et, quō facilius

1. **impedīmentīs**: at this time
Labienus had charge of the heavy
baggage of Caesar's entire army.

2. **hostem**: sing. for pl., as
in English. — **mīlle**: indeclinable
adj., here as genitive.

3. **intermissō**:   *i.e.*   relictō
(namely, between him and the
enemy). — **commūnit**: commūniō,
4, *intrench.*

4. **trānsitū**: trānsitus, -ūs, M.,
passage (cf. trānseō). — **praeruptīs**:
praeruptus, -a, -um, *rugged.*

7. **spēs**:   namely,   for   the
Treveri. — **loquitur**: subject, La-
biēnus. — **cōnsiliō**: as on p. 126,
l. 16. — **quoniam**: *inasmuch as.*

8. **suās . . . fortūnās**: *i.e.*

suam salūtem.— **exercitūsque**: *and
(that) of the army.*

9. **dubium**: *i.e.* perīculum; lit.
what? — **dēvocātūrum**: dēvocō, 1,
bring; lit. *call*. — **castra mōtūrum**:
i.e. he will fall back.

10. **ut**:   *inasmuch as.* — **ex**:
out of.

11. **Gallōrum**: freely, *recruited
from among the Gauls* (cf. the
note on p. 139, l. 10). — **Gallicīs
rēbus**: *the Gallic cause.*

13. **ōrdinibus**: *i.e.* centuriōnibus.

14. **quid suī sit cōnsilī**: *what
his plan involves*; lit. what? (for
cōnsilī, cf. Standisī, p. 16, l. 4).
— **prōpōnit**: *i.e.* ostendit. — **quō**:
see the note on p. 101, l. 14.

hostibus timōris det suspīciōnem, maiōre strepitū et tumultū,
quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō, castra movērī iubet.
Hīs rēbus fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quo-
que per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte
5 castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

Vix agmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcesserat,
cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē, nē spērātam praedam ex
manibus dīmitterent — longum esse, perterritīs Rōmānīs,
Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre, neque suam patī digni-
10 tātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum, praesertim
fugientem atque impedītam, adorīrī nōn audeant — flūmen
trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant.
Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen
ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgre-
15 diēbātur.

1. timōris : namely, on his part.

2. fert : *calls for*.

3. similem : pred. adj. — haec : neut.

4. per : freely, *by*; cf. p. 141, l. 9. — in tantā propinquitāte : freely, *on account of the close proximity* (propinquitās, -ātis, F., *nearness*).

6. agmen novissimum : namely, of Labienus' army. With this phrase cf. prīmum agmen, p. 148, l. 6. — prōcesserat : prōcēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est : *advance*.

7. inter sē : freely, *one another*.

8. longum esse : *it was needless* (lit. *too long*). The indirect discourse is due to the idea of saying implied in cohortātī, l. 7. Do not attempt to translate this paren- thetical matter (between the dashes) until the rest of the sentence is clear.

10. ut : *that*; dependent on patī. — tantīs cōpiīs : see p. 158, l. 1.

11. fugientem atque impedī- tam : modifying manum, l. 10. — flūmen : see p. 159, l. 3 ff.

13. quae : neut., *this*. — fore : supplying here a future infinitive for fīō. — ut : depending on prōgre- diēbātur, l. 14. — omnēs : *them all*. — citrā : prep., *to the near side of*, i.e. *to his side of*.

14. ūsus : *keeping up*. — iti- neris : here, *retreat*. — placidē : adv., *steadily*. — prōgrediēbātur : *continued to move on*.

LESSON 128

They are Decisively Beaten

Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentīs atque in tumulō
quōdam collocātīs, "Habētis," inquit, "mīlitēs, quam petīstis
facultātem; hostem impedītō atque inīquō locō tenētis:
praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem, quam saepenu-
5 merō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec
cōram cernere exīstimāte." Simul signa ad hostem convertī
aciemque dērigī iubet; paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedī-
menta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit.

Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs inmittunt.
10 Illī ubi praeter spem, quōs modo fugere crēdēbant, īnfēstīs
signīs ad sē īre vīdērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuērunt, ac
prīmō concursū in fugam coniectī proximās silvās petīvērunt.
Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus, magnō numerō inter-
fectō, complūribus captīs, paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem
15 recēpit. Nam Germānī, quī auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā
Trēverōrum fugā, sēsē domum recēpērunt.

---

1. **tumulō:** tumulus, -ī, M., *hillock*.

2. **inquit:** subject, Labiēnus. — **mīlitēs:** voc. case. — **quam petīstis facultātem:** *i.e.* eam facultātem quam petīvistis.

4. **nōbīs ducibus:** *i.e.* mē duce (abl. absol.). The use of the first person pl. for the corresponding sing. is very common. — **saepenumerō:** *i.e.* saepe; strictly, numerō is abl. of specification.

5. **imperātōrī:** freely, *before the eyes of your commander in chief* (*i.e.* Caesar). — **haec:** *this action*.

6. **cōram:** adv., *in person.* — **cernere:** *i.e.* vidēre. — **signa . . .**

convertī: a signal to change front.

7. **dērigī:** *i.e.* īnstruī (dērigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus).

8. **ad:** *on.*

10. **praeter:** *i.e. contrary to.* — **spem:** *expectation.* — **quōs:** supply as antecedent, eōs, *those* (subject of īre, l. 11).

11. **ad . . . īre:** freely, *advancing upon.* — **ac:** freely, *but.*

12. **concursū:** concursus, -ūs, M., *clash* (cf. concurrō).

13. **cōnsectātus:** cōnsector, 1, *follow up.*

15. **recēpit:** sc. in dēditiōnem. — **perceptā:** *i.e.* cōgnitā (percipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus).
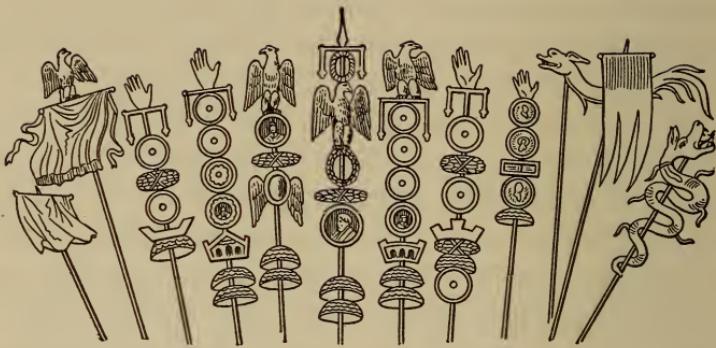
SIGNA

With these standards compare those shown in the illustrations on page 132. Flags (*vēxilla*) were used for giving signals, and to differentiate small bodies of troops. In the matter of inspiring loyalty among the men, their effect was in general very slight as compared with that of the flag in modern armies.

AN EPISODE FROM THE CIVIL WAR

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvīlī*, III, 95–98)

LESSON 129

When, in 49 B.C., Caesar marched some of his troops south into Italy, and thus precipitated the civil war between himself and Pompey (cf. the episode in Lessons 117–125), Pompey was taken by surprise, and retired into Greece. In the decisive battle of Pharsalus, fought there in the following year, Caesar gained the first advantage, driving the Pompeians back to the shelter of their ramparts.

Caesar, Pompēiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsīs, nūllum spatium perterritīs darī oportēre exīstimāns, mīlitēs cohortātus est ut beneficiō Fortūnae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent.   Quī, etsī magnō aestū fatīgātī — nam ad
5 merīdiem rēs erat perducta — tamen ad omnem labōrem animō parātī, imperiō pāruērunt.

Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictae, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarīsque auxiliīs.   Nam quī ex aciē refūgerant mīlitēs,
10 et animō perterritī et lassitūdine cōnfectī, missīs plērīque

---

1. **vāllum**: *i.e.* of their own camp.

2. **spatium**: *respite.* — **perterritīs**: modifying eīs, supplied. — **darī oportēre**: *should be allowed* (oportet, 2, -uit, impersonal verb, lit. *it is fitting*).

4. **aestū**: aestus, -ūs, M., *heat.* — **fatīgātī**: *i.e.* dēfessī (fatīgō, 1).

5. **merīdiem**: here, *midday.* — **rēs**: *engagement.*

6. **animō**: abl. of specification; translate freely.

7. **castra**: namely, of Pompey. — **industriē**: adv., *energetically.*

8. **multō**: construe with ācrius.

9. **-que**: *and* (*other*). — **quī . . . mīlitēs**: *i.e.* eī mīlitēs, quī. — **aciē**: *i.e.* proeliō.

10. **lassitūdine**: lassitūdō, -inis, F., *weariness.* — **missīs**: *discarded* (cf. dīmittō). — **plērīque**: freely,

armīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus, magis dē reliquā fugā quam
dē castrōrum-dēfēnsiōne cōgitābant. Neque vērō diūtius,
quī in vāllō cōnstiterant, multitūdinem tēlōrum sustinēre
potuērunt, sed cōnfectī vulneribus locum relīquērunt,
5 prōtinusque omnēs, ducibus ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnīsque
mīlitum, in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant,
cōnfūgērunt.

Caesar, castrīs potītus, ā mīlitibus contendit nē, in
praedā occupātī, reliquī negōtī gerendī facultātem dīmit-
10 terent. Quā rē impetrātā, montem opere circummūnīre
īnstituit.

<center>LESSON 130</center>

<center>*Unconditional Surrender of the Pompeians*</center>

Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine aquā, diffīsī eī locō,
relictō monte, ūniversī iugīs eius Lārīsam versus sē recipere
coepērunt. Quā rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās dīvīsit,

---

in the majority of cases; the word
agrees with mīlitēs, though in
sense it belongs with the abl.
absol. Be careful to make the
rendering of this sentence idio-
matic throughout.

1. mīlitāribus: mīlitāris, -is,
-e, lit. *military*. sīgna mīlitāria is
the full expression for "stand-
ards"; usually the adj. is omitted.
— dē reliquā fugā: *i.e.* about re-
suming their flight.

2. diūtius: absol. compar.

3. in vāllō: *i.e.* to defend it.

4. locum: (their) posts.

5. ducibus ūsī: lit. *having
(as) leaders*; translate freely.

6. altissimōs: absol. superl.

7. cōnfūgērunt: cōnfugiō, 3,

-fūgī, with in and the acc., *take
refuge (upon)*.

8. contendit: *i.e.* petīvit.

10. montem: *i.e.* the particular
height upon which the Pompeians
had finally assembled.—circummū-
nīre: circummūniō, 4, *girdle*.

11. īnstituit: *i.e.* coepit (īn-
stituō, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus).

12. diffīsī: diffīdō, 3, -fīsus sum,
with dat., *lack confidence (in)*.

13. iugīs: iugum, -ī, N., *ridge;*
translate the abl. "along" (way by
which). — eius: *i.e.* montis. — Lā-
rīsam: a town some miles north,
toward which Pompey had already
fled, making for the sea. — versus:
translate as if ad . . . . versus (cf.
the note on p. 79, l. 21).

partemque legiōnum in castrīs Pompēī remanēre iussit,
partem in sua castra remīsit, IV sēcum legiōnēs dūxit,
commodiōreque itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit, et
prōgressus mīlia passuum VI, aciem īnstrūxit. Quā rē
5 animadversā, Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōnstitērunt.
Hunc montem flūmen subluēbat. Caesar mīlitēs cohortātus,
etsī tōtīus diēī continentī labōre erant cōnfectī noxque iam
suberat, tamen mūnītiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsit, nē noctū
aquārī Pompēiānī possent.

10 Quō perfectō opere, illī dē dēditiōne missīs lēgātīs agere
coepērunt. Paucī ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum hīs con-
iūnxerant, nocte fugā salūtem petīvērunt. Caesar prīmā
lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōnsēderant, ex superiōribus
locīs in plānitiem dēscendere atque arma prōicere iussit.
15 Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne fēcērunt, passīsque palmīs prō-
iectī ad terram flentēs ab eō salūtem petīvērunt, cōnsōlātus
cōnsurgere iussit et pauca apud eōs dē lēnitāte suā locūtus,
quō minōre essent timōre, omnēs cōnservāvit.

1. **Pompēī**: cf. the note on
Standīsī, p. 16, l. 4. — **remanēre**:
remaneō, 2, -mānsī, -mānsum est,
remain.

2. **sua**: note the position.

3. **commodiōre**: *i.e.* than the
route taken by the enemy.

6. **subluēbat**: subluō, 3, ——,
——, *wash the base of.*

7. **continentī**: as adj. (abl.
case), *unbroken.*

8. **suberat**: *i.e.* aderat (sub-
sum, -esse, -fuī). — **sēclūsit**: sē-
clūdō, 3, -clūsī, -clūsus, *shut off.*

9. **aquārī**: aquor, 1, *get water.*

10. **opere**: *i.e.* the mūnītiō of
l. 8. — **dē dēditiōne**: construe with
agere.

11. **senātōriī**: senātōrius, -a,

-um, *senatorial;* the highest order
in the Roman state (cf. the note
on p. 125, l. 9). — **hīs**: *i.e.* †the Pom-
peian forces.

12. **nocte**: *i.e.* noctū.

15. **recūsātiōne**: recūsātiō, -ōnis,
F., *protest* (cf. recūsō). — **palmīs**:
i.e. manibus (palma, -ae, F.) —
prōiectī: freely, *falling forward.*

16. **salūtem**: *i.e.* (*their*) *lives.*
— **cōnsōlātus**: sc. eōs.

17. **cōnsurgere**: *i.e.* surgere
(cōnsurgō, 3, -surrēxī, -surrēctum
est). — **apud eōs**: *in their hearing,*
i.e. to them. — **lēnitāte**: lēnitās,
-ātis, F., *humaneness.*

18. **quō**: note the compar. in
the clause. — **minōre . . . ti-
mōre**: abl. of characteristic.

THE DEATH OF CAESAR

(Suetonius, *Iūlius*, 81, 82)

LESSON 131

As a result of the civil war, Caesar became master of the Roman world. Many did not approve of his absolute power, and a plot was formed to take his life. As he left home for the senate house on the fatal day, some one pushed into his hand a document telling of the conspiracy; but he did not stop to examine it.

Plūribus hostiīs caesīs, cum litāre nōn posset, introiit
cūriam sprētā religiōne Spurinnamque irrīdēns et ut falsum
arguēns, quod sine ūllā suā noxā Īdūs Mārtiae adessent:
quamquam is vēnisse quidem eās dīceret, sed nōn praeter-
5 isse. Assīdentem cōnspīrātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt;
īlicōque Cimber Tillius, quī prīmās partēs suscēperat, quasi

1. plūribus: *i.e.* complūribus.
— hostiīs: hostia, -ae, F., *sacrificial victim.* — caesīs: caedō, 3, cecīdī, caesus, *slay.* — cum: concessive. — litāre: litō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *secure favorable omens;* the condition of the entrails of the slaughtered animals being supposed to portend good fortune or the reverse. — introiit: introeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, *enter.*

2. cūriam: cūria, -ae, F., *senate house.* — sprētā: from spernō. — Spurinnam: a priest who had predicted peril for Caesar on the 15th of March (Īdūs Mārtiae, l. 3).

— irrīdēns (-entis, part.): *deriding.* — ut falsum: *as (a) false (prophet).*

3. arguēns (-entis, part.): *assailing.* — quod: as on p. 55, l. 11. — suā noxā (noxa, -ae, F.): *harm to him* (Caesar).

4. is: *i.e.* Spurinna.

5. assīdentem: sc. Caesarem (assīdō, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, *take one's seat*). — cōnspīrātī (-ōrum, M.): *the conspirators.* — officiī: *of (showing) respect.*

6. īlicō (adv.): *i.e.* statim. — prīmās partēs: *i.e. the leading rôle.*

CAIUS IŪLIUS CAESAR

A Roman of distinguished family, and one of the ablest warriors the world has known.

aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit, renuentīque et gestū in
aliud tempus differentī ab utrōque umerō togam apprehen-
dit; deinde clāmantem, " Ista quidem vīs est," alter ē Ca-
scīs āversum vulnerat, paulum īnfrā iugulum.

5   Caesar Cascae bracchium arreptum graphiō trāiēcit,
cōnātusque prōsilīre aliō vulnere tardātus est; utque
animadvertit undique sē strictīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā ca-
put obvolvit, simul sinistrā manū sinum ad īma crūra
dēdūxit, quō honestius caderet, etiam īnferiōre corporis
10 parte vēlātā.   Atque ita tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus
est, ūnō modo ad prīmum īctum gemitū sine vōce ēditō;
etsī trādidērunt quīdam Mārcō Brūtō inruentī dīxisse, " Καὶ

1. aliquid rogātūrus : *intending
to make some request* ; lit. what ?
— renuentī : sc. Caesarī (renuō, 3,
-nuī, *shake (one's) head*) ; translate
by a clause introduced by "as ";
the lit. meaning of the dat. is "for."
— gestū : gestus, -ūs, M., *gesture.*
    2. differentī : sc. eum, lit. *put-
ting (him) off.* — ab : *at*; cf. the
use of ex in phrases like omnibus
ex partibus. — togam : toga, -ae, F.,
robe. — apprehendit : apprehendō,
3, -prehendī, -prehēnsus, *lay hold of.*
    3. clāmantem : sc. Caesarem.
— ista : for istud (subject of est) ;
cf. the agreement of quod, p. 30,
l. 6. — vīs : *(downright) violence.*
— Cascīs : the two were broth-
ers (nom. Casca).
    4. āversum : *from behind*, lit.
turned away. — īnfrā : prep., *below.*
— iugulum : iugulum, -ī, N., *neck.*
    5. bracchium : bracchium, -ī,
N., *arm.* — graphiō : graphium, -ī,
N., *stylus.* — trāiēcit : trāiciō, 3,
-iēcī, -iectus, *pierce.*

    6. prōsilīre :   prōsiliō, 4, -uī,
leap forward. — tardātus est : tar-
dō, 1, *stop.* — ut : *i.e.* ubi.
    7. strictīs : strictus, -a, -um,
part., *drawn.* — pūgiōnibus : *i.e.*
sīcīs (pūgiō, -ōnis, M.). — togā : cf.
l. 2.
    8. obvolvit : obvolvō, 3, -volvī,
-volūtus, *shroud.* — sinistrā : sini-
ster, -tra, -trum, *left.* — sinum :
sinus, -ūs, M., *fold*; translate here
as pl., *(its) folds.*—ad īma crūra : *i.e.*
to his ankles (crūs, crūris, N., *leg*).
    9. honestius : honestē (adv.),
in seemly fashion.
    10. vēlātā : *i.e.* tēctā (vēlō, 1).
— plāgīs : *i.e.* vulneribus (plāga,
-ae, F.).
    11. ūnō : construe with gemitū.
— modo : *i.e.* tantum. — ad : *at.* —
īctum : īctus, -ūs, M., *blow.* — vōce :
articulation.
    12. inruentī : inruēns, -entis,
part.,   *pressing   forward.* — dī-
xisse : sc. eum (*i.e.* Caesarem). —
Καὶ σὺ τέκνον ; *you too, my boy?*

σὺ τέκνον;" Exanimis, diffugientibus cūnctīs, aliquamdiū
iacuit, dōnec lectīcae impositum, dēpendente bracchiō, trēs
servolī domum rettulērunt.   Nec in tot vulneribus, ut An-
tistius medicus exīstimābat, lētāle ūllum repertum est, nisi
5 quod secundō locō in pectore accēperat.

THE FATE OF HANNIBAL

(Nepos, *Hannibal,* 12, 13)

LESSON 132

The second Punic War, waged between the Romans and Carthaginians
from 218 to 201 B.C., ended in a complete victory for the Romans.
The latter, however, were suspicious that Hannibal, the most famous
general of the Carthaginians, was simply biding his time to renew the
war under more favorable conditions ; and so they desired to arrest and
hold him as a prisoner. By hastening into exile, Hannibal escaped
for some years, and improved the opportunity to stir up a great deal
of trouble for the Romans in the East.

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī Prū-
siae Rōmae apud T. Quīnctium Flāminīnum cōnsulārem

1. exanimis (-is, -e) : *lifeless.*
— diffugientibus : diffugiō, 3, -fūgī,
scatter. — cūnctīs : *i.e.* omnibus, as
noun (cūnctī, -ae, -a).

2. lectīcae : lectīca,   -ae, F.,
litter. — dēpendente :   dēpendēns,
-entis, part., *hanging down.* —
bracchiō : cf. p. 168, l. 5.

3. servolī : servolus, -ī, M.,
young slave ; cf. servus. — rettulē-
runt : sc. eum. — in :   *among.* —
ut : *as.*

4. medicus (-ī, M.) : *physician.*
— lētāle : *i.e.* exitiāle (lētālis, -is,

-e). — nisi quod : *excepting (one)
which.*

5. secundō : *i.e. specially vul-
nerable;* lit. *favorable.* — pectore :
pectus, -oris, N., *chest.*

6. quae : *i.e.* events narrated
in previous chapters. — Asiā : *i.e.*
Asia Minor. — accidit : impersonal
expression. — cāsū : *i.e.* forte. —
Prūsiae (nom. in -a, or -ās) : king
of Bithynia (cf. p. 170, l. 5).   The
gen. may be rendered "from."

7. cōnsulārem : cōnsulāris, -is,
M., *ex-consul.*

cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā, ex eīs
ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē
Flāminīnus senātuī dētulit. Patrēs cōnscrīptī, quī Hanni-
bale vīvō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs exīstimārent,
5 lēgātōs in Bīthȳniam mīsērunt (in eīs Flāminīnum), quī ab
rēge peterent, nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret
sibique dēderet. Hīs Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est. Illud
recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fierī postulārent, quod adversus iūs
hospitiī esset; ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent; locum,
10 ubi esset, facile inventūrōs.

LESSON 133

Death rather than Captivity

Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō, quod eī ā
rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificārat, ut in omnibus

1. **mentiōne**: mentiō, -ōnis, F.,
mention.

2. **dīceret**: in the same con-
struction as cēnārent, l. 1. — **eum**:
Hannibal.

3. **patrēs cōnscrīptī**: *i.e. the
senators* (cōnscrīptus, -a, -um, lit.
enrolled). — **Hannibale vīvō**: abl.
absol.; translate by a clause intro-
duced by "as long as."

4. **exīstimārent**: subjunctive
in a causal relative clause.

5. **in eīs**: cf. p. 38, l. 14.

6. **inimīcissimum suum**: *their
deadly foe.* — **sēcum habēret**: *i.e.
harbor.*

7. **sibique dēderet**: *i.e. eum-
que ut sibi dēderet.* — **hīs**: *i.e.* lēgā-
tīs. — **illud . . . nē**: *this . . . that.*

8. **id**: *a thing;* antecedent of
quod. — **adversus** (prep.): *i.e.*
contrā.

9. **hospitiī**: hospitium, -ī, N.,
hospitality. — **ipsī . . . comprehen-
derent**: sc. eum, *i.e. let them arrest
him themselves.*

10. **inventūrōs**: sc. eōs (sub-
ject). The indirect discourse
depends upon the idea of saying
underlying recūsāvit, l. 8; cf.
longum esse, etc., p. 160, l. 8.

11. **enim**: referring to what is
said in the last clause of Lesson 132.
— **in**: *namely, in.*

12. **rēge**: *i.e.* Prūsiā. — **mūnerī**:
i.e. dōnō, dat. of service (mūnus,
-eris, N.). — **aedificārat**: *i.e.* aedi-
ficāverat.

partibus aedificiī exitūs habēret, scīlicet verēns nē ūsū ve-
nīret, quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānī vēnissent ac
multitūdine domum eius circumdedissent, puer, ab iānuā
prōspiciēns, Hannibalī dīxit plūrīs praeter cōnsuētūdinem
5 armātōs appārēre. Quī imperāvit eī ut omnīs forīs circum-
īret ac properē sibi nūntiāret num eōdem modō undique
obsidērētur. Puer cum celeriter quid vīdisset renūntiāsset,
omnīsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuītō
factum, sed sē petī neque sibi diūtius vītam esse retinen-
10 dam. Quam nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor prīstinā-
rum virtūtum, venēnum, quod semper sēcum habēre
cōnsuērat, sūmpsit. Sīc vir fortissimus, multīs variīsque
perfūnctus labōribus, annō acquiēvit septuāgēsimō.

1. **aedificiī**: aedificium, -ī, N.,
structure. — **verēns**: *i.e.* veritus. —
ūsū venīret: sc. id (subject), *i.e.*
that (thing) would happen.

2. **quod accidit**: *which (actu-
ally) did come to pass* (namely, the
discovery by the Romans of his hid-
ing place). — hūc: cf. p. 154, l. 12.

3. **puer**: *i.e.* servus. — iānuā:
iānua, -ae, F., *door.*

4. **plūrīs**: modifying armātōs,
l. 5. — praeter cōnsuētūdinem:
than usual; lit. *beyond the ordi-
nary.*

5. **appārēre**: *i.e.* in cōnspectū
esse (appāreō, 2, -uī). — quī: *i.e.*
Hannibal. — eī: *i.e.* puerō. — forīs:
i.e. exitūs (cf. l. 1).

6. **properē** (adv.): *i.e.* cele-
riter. — num: conjunction, *whether.*

7. **puer cum**: *i.e.* cum puer.
— renūntiāsset: renūntiō, 1, *re-
port.*

8. **sēnsit**: subject, Hannibal.
— fortuītō (adv.): *i.e.* cāsū.

9. **factum**: sc. esse. — reti-
nendam: render the gerundive by
" could."

10. **quam**: *i.e.* vītam. — nē:
freely, *to avoid* (with part. in
-ing). — arbitriō: arbitrium, -ī, N.,
bidding.

11. **virtūtum**: freely, *career
of valor.*

12. **cōnsuērat**: *i.e.* cōnsuēverat.

13. **perfūnctus**: perfungor, 3,
-fūnctus sum, *experience.* This
verb takes the same construction
as ūtor and potior. — acquiēvit:
acquiēscō, 3, -quiēvī, *rest, i.e. die.*

CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY

(Sallust. *Bellum Catilīnae*, 40, 41, 60)

LESSON 134

In 63 B.C. Marcus Cicero (brother of the Quintus Cicero who subsequently figured in the events described in Lesson 108 ff.) had to deal with a rather alarming conspiracy which aimed to revolutionize the government of Rome. The chief conspirator, Catiline, took the field with an army, while Lentulus, who was secretly in sympathy with him, supervised matters in the city. One day Lentulus noticed there two Gallic envoys who had come to Rome to complain that Roman officials were oppressing their people, and he thereupon conceived the idea of further embarrassing the government by inducing these Gauls to stir up a revolt among their countrymen.

Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, utī lēgātōs Allobrogum requīrat eōsque, sī possit, impellat ad societātem bellī, exīstimāns pūblicē prīvātimque aere aliēnō oppressōs, praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa
5 esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūcī posse.

Umbrēnus, quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērīsque prīncipibus cīvitātium nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque

1. **P.**: *i.e.* Pūbliō. — dat: subject, Lentulus. — utī: *i.e.* ut.

2. Allobrogum: a tribe of southeast Gaul. — requīrat: requīrō, 3, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, *seek out*. — impellat: impellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, *incite*. — societātem: societās, -ātis, F., with gen., *partnership* (*in*).

3. pūblicē prīvātimque: advs., *as a people and as individuals.*

4. oppressōs: modifying eōs (*i.e.* Allobrogēs) supplied. — bellicōsa: bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike.*

5. esset: for mood, cf. the note on admoveantur, p. 61, l. 14; translate as a present. — tāle: tālis, -is, -e, *such a.*

7. cīvitātium: cf. the note on p. 123, l. 11. — nōverat: nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtus: *become acquainted with.*

172
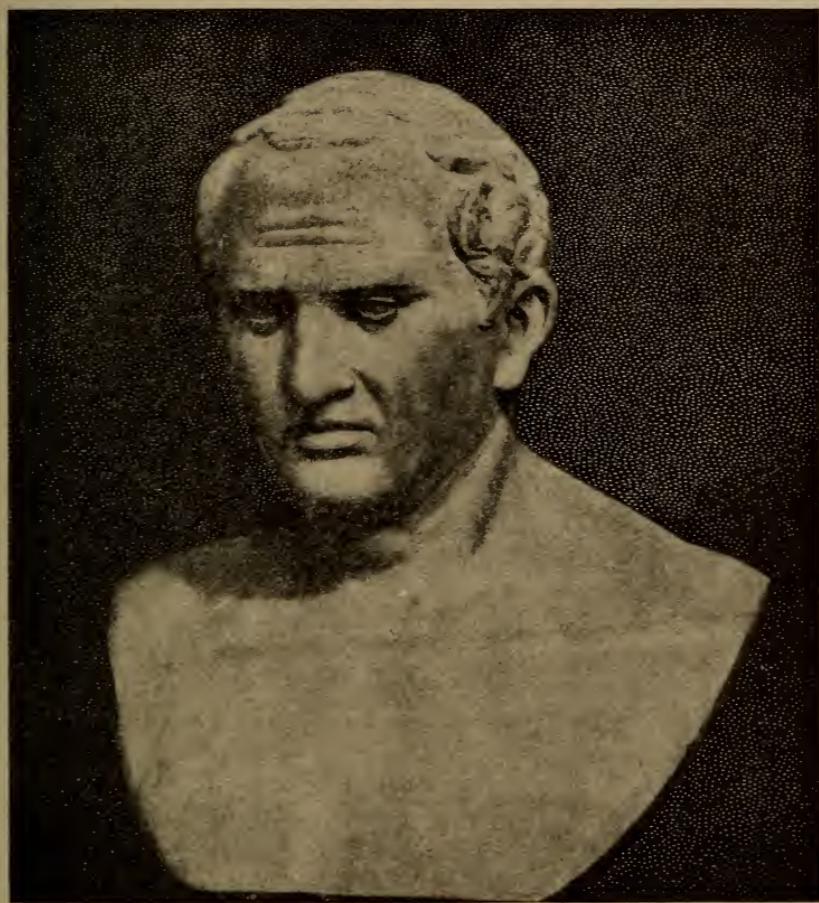
MĀRCUS TULLIUS CICERŌ

The first of his family to reach the consulship, Cicero won some fame as a statesman by suppressing the conspiracy of Catiline ; but his chief and lasting distinction was along literary lines. In oratory he was hardly rivaled in his own generation ; and his writings are a priceless possession.

sine morā, ubi prīmum lēgātōs in forō cōnspēxit, percontā-
tus pauca dē statū cīvitātis et quasi dolēns eius cāsum,
requīrere coepit, quem exitum tantīs malīs spērārent. Post-
quam illōs videt querī dē avāritiā magistrātuum, accūsāre
5 senātum quod in eō auxilī nihil esset, miseriīs suīs reme-
dium mortem exspectāre, "at ego," inquit, "vōbīs, sī modo
virī esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam, quā tanta ista mala
effugiātis."

LESSON 135

The Envoys are Initiated into the Conspiracy

Haec ubi dīxit, Allobrogēs in maximam spem adductī,
10 Umbrēnum ōrāre ut suī miserētur : nihil tam asperum
neque tam difficile esse, quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī
essent, dum ea rēs cīvitātem aere aliēnō līberāret. Ille
eōs in domum D. Brūtī perdūcit, quod forō propinqua erat

1. percontātus : percontor, 1,
ask.

2. statū : status, -ūs, M., with
gen., situation (in). — cīvitātis :
sc. eōrum. — quasi : cf. p. 166, l. 6.
— dolēns : doleō, 2, -uī, be con-
cerned about.

3. requīrere : inquire (cf.
p. 172, l. 2). — exitum : solution,
lit., way out (cf. p. 171, l. 1). —
tantīs malīs : dat. case.

4. magistrātuum : magistrā-
tus, -ūs, M., official. — accūsāre : ac-
cūsō, 1, rail at.

5. quod : cf. the note on p. 62,
l. 13. — eō : i.e. senātū. — miseriīs :
miseriae, -ārum, F., troubles. —
remedium : (as) a solution (reme-
dium, -ī, N.).

7. virī esse : i.e. play the part

of men. — tanta : freely, over-
whelming. — ista : those . . . of
yours.

10. ōrāre : for ōrāvērunt. — suī :
gen. pl. — miserētur : miseror, 2,
miseritus sum, with gen., take pity
(on). — nihil, etc. : the indirect
discourse is due to the idea of
saying underlying ōrāre.

11. neque : translate "or." —
quod nōn . . . factūrī essent : that
they would not undertake it ; a rel-
ative clause of result.

12. dum : provided only. — ea
rēs : it. — aere aliēnō : translate
the abl. "from" or "of." — ille :
Umbrenus.

13. in domum : cf. the note
on p. 16, l. 11. — D. : i.e.
Decimī.

neque aliēna cōnsilī propter Semprōniam : nam tum Brūtus
ab Rōmā aberat. Praetereā Gabīnium arcēssit, quō maior
auctōritās sermōnī inesset. Eō praesente coniūrātiōnem
aperuit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis
5 innoxiōs, quō lēgātīs animus amplior esset. Deinde eōs
pollicitōs operam suam domum dīmittit.

Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre, quidnam cōnsilī
caperent : in alterā parte erat aes aliēnum, studium bellī,
magna mercēs in spē victōriae, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs,
10 tūta cōnsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illīs
volventibus, tandem vīcit fortūna reī pūblicae. Itaque Q.
Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō cīvitās plūrimum ūtēbātur,
rem omnem, utī cōgnōverant, aperiunt. Cicerō, per San-

1. aliēna : with gen., *un-
friendly* (to). — Semprōniam :
wife of Brutus, who was him-
self not a party to the con-
spiracy.

2. quō : note the compar. in
the clause. Umbrenus was a
freedman, hence the need of call-
ing in a conspirator of better so-
cial standing.

3. sermōnī : sermō, -ōnis, M.,
interview.—inesset : īnsum, inesse,
infuī, with dat., lit. *be* (*in*) ; trans-
late the phrase freely. — eō : *i.e.*
Gabīniō.

4. nōminat : nōminō, 1, *name.*
— praetereā : (*and*) *in addition.*

5. innoxiōs : pred. adj. (innox-
ius, -a, -um, *innocent*). — amplior :
amplus, -a, -um, *great* (cf. the
adv. amplius).

6. suam : modifier of operam.
— domum : *i.e.* to their temporary
quarters in Rome.

7. in incertō habuēre (for

habuērunt) : freely, *were undecided.*
— quidnam : *what . . . really,*
-nam being an intensive particle.
— cōnsilī : for syntax, cf. quid . . .
causae, p. 150, l. 10.

8. alterā . . . alterā (l. 9) :
the one . . . the other. — studium
(-ī, N.) : with gen., *liking* (*for*).

9. mercēs (-ēdis, F.) : *induce-
ment.* — opēs : namely, those of
the government (ops, opis, F., *help* ;
pl., *resources*).

10. illīs : *i.e.* Allobrogibus.

11. volventibus : volvō, 3, volvī,
volūtus, *turn over in* (*one's*)
mind ; cf. the note on dēfen-
dente, p. 44, l. 17. — tandem :
adv., *at length.* — reī pūblicae : sc.
Rōmānae.

12. patrōciniō : patrōcinium, -ī,
N., *legal services.* — plūrimum : see
multum.

13. utī (*i.e.* ut) : *as.* — cōgnō-
verant : sc. eam. — Cicerō : see the
note at the head of Lesson 134.

gam cōnsiliō cōgnitō, lēgātīs praecepit, ut studium con-
iūrātiōnis vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, bene
polliceantur, dentque operam utī eōs quam maximē mani-
fēstōs habeant.

LESSON 136

The envoys, pretending that it would be difficult to persuade their
countrymen to revolt unless the matter were put into writing, easily
secured thus from the conspirators evidence sufficient to convict nine
of the ringleaders, five of whom were promptly executed in the public
prison.   Shortly afterward, in the north country, the army of Catiline
(see the note at the head of Lesson 134) was brought to bay by the
government forces, and he chose to try conclusions with a division
which on the day of battle was under the command of a veteran officer
named Petreius.

5   Sed ubi, omnibus rēbus explōrātīs, Petrēius tubā sīgnum
dat, cohortīs paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostium
exercitus.   Postquam eō ventum est, unde [ā] ferentāriīs
proelium committī posset, maximō clāmōre cum īnfēstīs
sīgnīs concurrunt : pīla omittunt, gladiīs rēs geritur.   Ve-

1. praecepit (for praecipit) :
i.e. imperat (praecipiō, 3, -cēpī,
-ceptus). — studium : cf. p. 175, l. 8.

2. cēterōs : *i.e.* the other con-
spirators in Rome.

3. utī : *that*. — maximē : cf.
the note on p. 44, l. 11. — mani-
fēstōs : manifēstus, -a, -um, *obvi-
ously guilty* ; translate the phrase
freely.

5. sed :   *now*. — explōrātīs :
inspected. — tubā : tuba, -ae, F.,
trumpet.   See the second illustra-
tion on p. 60.

6. dat : **if rendered as a past,**

use the pluperfect. — cohortīs : sc.
suās. — incēdere : incēdō, 3, -cessī,
-cessum est, *advance*. — hostium :
i.e. Catiline and his followers.

7. eō . . . unde : *to a point
where* (lit. *whence*). — ferentā-
riīs : ferentāriī, -ōrum, M., *light-
armed troops* (*e.g.* slingers ; cf.
the top illustration on p. 140).

9. omittunt : *make no use of* ;
lit. *omit* (omittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus).
Contrast the regular procedure for
beginning battle, p. 161, l. 9.
—rēs : *the fighting*. — veterānī :
i.e. **of the** government army.

terānī, prīstinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācriter īnstāre,
illī haud timidē resistunt: maximā vī certātur.

Intereā Catilīna cum expedītīs in prīmā aciē versārī,
labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciīs arcēssere,
5 omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem
ferīre: strēnuī mīlitis et bonī imperātōris officia simul ex-
sequēbātur.   Petrēius, ubi videt Catilīnam, contrā ac ratus
erat, magnā vī tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs
hostīs indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resi-
10 stentīs interficit, deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs ad-
greditur.   Mānlius et Faesulānus in prīmīs pugnantēs
cadunt.   Catilīna, postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucīs

---

1. comminus: adv., *at close
quarters.* — īnstāre: īnstō, 1, -stitī,
press the fight.   Here, and several
times below, the pres. infin. re-
places a third person of the perf.
or imperf. indic.

2. illī: *i.e. their opponents.*
— haud timidē: *i.e. boldly* (timidē,
adv., *with fear*). — certātur: *i.e.*
dīmicātur (certō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est).

3. prīmā: *the front of;* cf.
the use of summum, p. 104, l. 4.

4. labōrantibus: part. (sc. eīs),
those hard pressed. — succurrere:
i.e. auxiliō venīre (succurrō, 3,
-currī, -cursum est). — prō: *freely,
to replace.* — sauciīs: *i.e.* vulne-
rātīs (saucius, -a, -um).

5. ferīre: *i.e.* percutere (feriō,
4, —, —). — exsequēbātur:
i.e. praestābat (exsequor, 3, -secūtus
sum); cf. p. 129, l. 9.

7. contrā: adv., lit. *differently.*
— ac: *than,* lit. *as.*   The whole
phrase = praeter spem, p. 161, l. 10.

8. tendere: tendō, 3, tetendī,

tentus, *stretch;* here, *exert (one's
self).* — mediōs: *who occupy the
center.*

9. indūcit: indūcō, 3, -dūxī,
-ductus, lit. *lead (against).* —
atque: connecting the two parti-
ciples. — aliōs alibī: *some in one
place, some in another;* cf. aliī
in aliam, p. 80, l. 5.

10. utrimque: adv., *on either
side.* — lateribus: cf. latera, p. 161,
l. 8, and (for the form of phrase)
omnibus ex partibus, etc. — adgre-
ditur: *i.e.* adorītur (adgredior, 3,
-gressus sum).   Petreius first broke
through the center, and then to the
right and left made a flank attack up-
on the remnants of the enemy's line.

11. Mānlius et Faesulānus:
*Manlius and the citizen of Faesu-
lae* (a town of Etruria), Catiline's
chief lieutenants. — in prīmīs: *i.e.
in the front rank.*

12. fūsās: fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsus,
scatter. — paucīs: *i.e. (but) a
handful.*

relictum videt, memor generis atque prīstinae suae digni-
tātis, in cōnfertissimōs hostīs incurrit, ibique pugnāns
cōnfoditur.

ON THE EASTERN FRONTIER

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs*, XV, 4)

LESSON 137

About ten years after the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline,
Cicero, much against his inclination, was appointed governor of Cilicia
and neighboring districts. Below are given extracts from a letter which
he wrote from the east to a friend at Rome, telling some of his ex-
periences as a provincial officer.

Cum in prōvinciam pr. K. Sext. vēnissem, et propter
5 annī tempus ad exercitum mihi cōnfēstim esse eundum
vidērem, bīduum Lāodicēae fuī, deinde Apamēae quadrī-
duum, trīduum Synnadīs, totidem diēs Philomēliī. Quibus
in oppidīs cum magnī conventūs fuissent, multās cīvitātēs
acerbissimīs tribūtīs et gravissimīs ūsūrīs et falsō aere

1. generis . . . dignitātis: for
his was an ancient and noble
family, and he had himself held
high offices.

2. hostīs: *i.e.* the government
forces. — incurrit: incurrō, 3, -currī,
-cursum est: *plunge (in among*).

4. cum, etc.: translate by a
partic. clause. — pr. K. Sext.: *i.e.*
prīdiē Kalendās Sextīlīs, *the day
before the first of August* (Sextīlis,
-is, -e), namely, *July* 29, as the
calendar was then arranged.

5. cōnfēstim: for the winter
would now soon come on (cf. p. 123,
l. 1 ff.). — eundum: not eundem.

6. bīduum: cf. bīduī, p. 158,
l. 4. — Lāodicēae: see the western
end of the map on p. 179. — fuī: *I
stopped.*

7. Synnadīs: pl. city names
have the same form for loc. and
abl. — totidem: indeclinable adj.,
the same number of. — Philo-
mēliī: for case, cf. domī.

8. conventūs: conventus, -ūs,
M., *circuit court.* — fuissent:
freely, *had been held.*

9. acerbissimīs tribūtīs, etc.:
for syntax, cf. aere aliēnō, p. 174,
l. 12. — ūsūrīs: ūsūra, -ae, F., *rate
of interest.*

ASIA MINOR
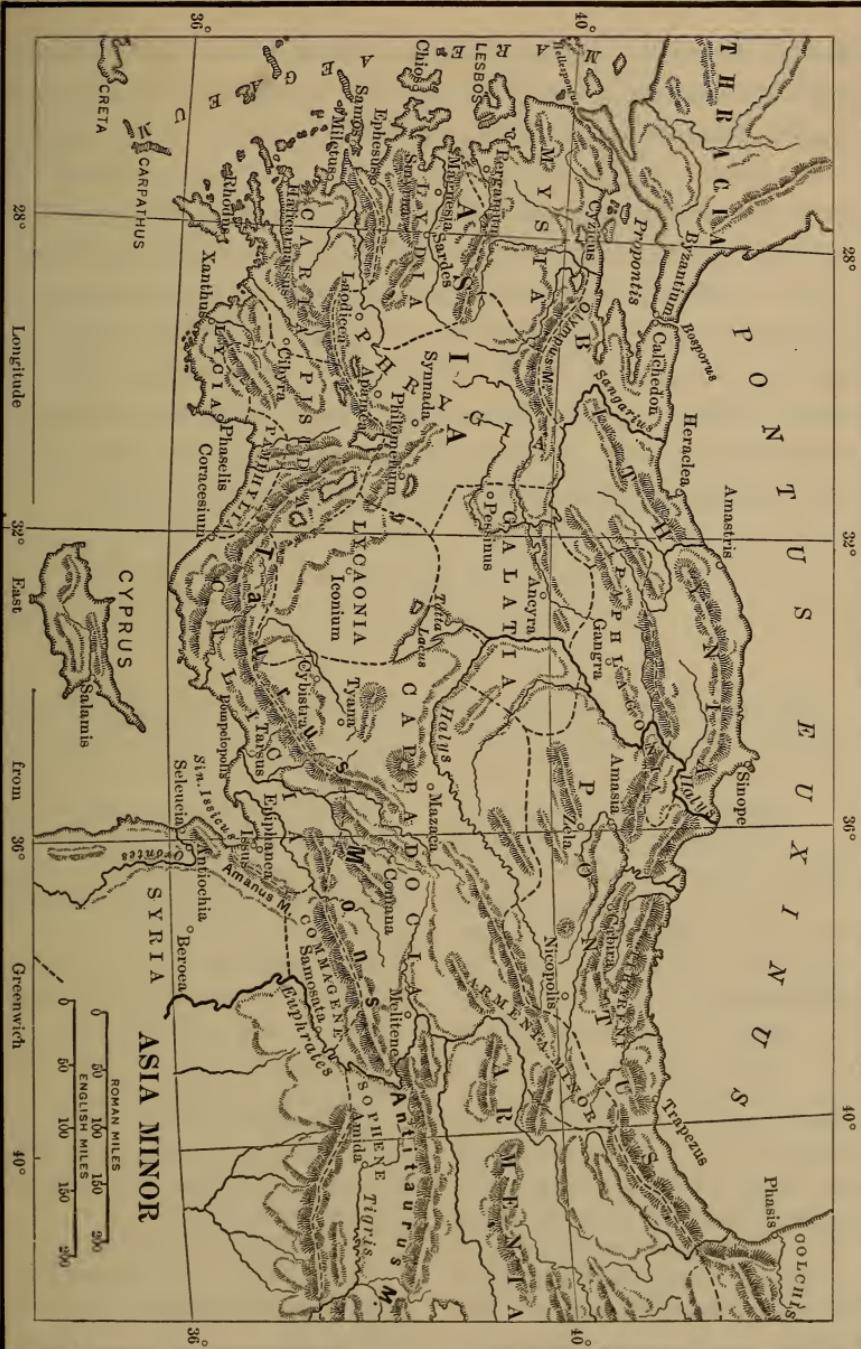
aliēnō līberāvī. Cumque ante adventum meum sēditiōne
quādam exercitus esset dissipātus, quīnque cohortēs sine
lēgātō, sine tribūnō mīlitum, dēnique etiam sine centuriōne
ūllō apud Philomēlium cōnsēdissent, reliquus exercitus
5 esset in Lycāoniā, M. Annēiō lēgātō imperāvī, ut eās
quīnque cohortēs ad reliquum exercitum dūceret, coāc-
tōque in ūnum locum exercitū, castra in Lycāoniā apud
Īconium faceret. Quod cum ab illō dīligenter esset factum,
ego in castra a. d. vii K. Sept. vēnī, cum intereā superiō-
10 ribus diēbus ex senātūs cōnsultō et ēvocātōrum fīrmam
manum et equitātum sānē idōneum et populōrum līberōrum
rēgumque sociōrum auxilia voluntāria comparāvissem.

LESSON 138

A War Scare

Interim, cum exercitū lūstrātō iter in Ciliciam facere
coepissem, K. Sept. lēgātī ā rēge Commāgēnō ad mē

1. cumque: *and inasmuch
as.* — sēditiōne :· sēditiō, -ōnis, F.,
mutiny.

2. quādam: *a sort of.* — esset
dissipātus: dissipō, 1, *disrupt.*
Supply et after this verb, and after
cōnsēdissent, l. 4.

4. apud: *i.e.* ad; so also in l. 7.

8. quod: relative.

9. a.d. vii K. Sept. : *i.e.* ante
diem septimum Kalendās Sep-
tembrēs, *the seventh* (we would
say, *sixth*) *day before the first of
September,* namely, *August* 24, as
the calendar was then arranged.
— cum, etc.: translate by a partic.
phrase. — superiōribus: *the pre-
ceding.*

10. ex: *in accordance with.* —
cōnsultō: cōnsultum, -ī, N., *decree.*
— et . . . et . . . et: *both . . . and
. . . and.* — ēvocātōrum: ēvocātus,
-ī, M., *reënlisted man.*

11. sānē: adv., *quite.* — līberō-
rum: līber, -era, -erum, *independent,*
or *free.* The genitives may be
rendered freely "supplied by"; cf.
Gallōrum, p. 159, l. 11.

12. sociōrum: as adj., *allied.* —
voluntāria: voluntārius, -a, -um,
volunteer. — comparāvissem: com-
parō, 1, *get together.*

13. lūstrātō: lūstrō, 1, *review.*

14. K. Sept. : *i.e.* Kalendīs Sep-
tembribus (abl. of time when). —
Commāgēnō: an adj.

missī, tumultuōsē neque tamen nōn vērē Parthōs in Syriam trānsīsse nūntiāvērunt; quō audītō, vehementer sum commōtus cum dē Syriā tum dē meā prōvinciā, dē reliquā dēnique Asiā.

5 Itaque in Cappadociā extrēmā nōn longē ā Taurō apud oppidum Cybistra castra fēcī, ut et Ciliciam tuērer et Cappadociam tenēns nova fīnitimōrum cōnsilia impedīrem.

Intereā cōgnōvī multōrum litterīs atque nūntiīs magnās Parthōrum cōpiās et Arabum ad oppidum Antiochēam 10 accessisse, magnumque eōrum equitātum, quī in Ciliciam trānsīsset, ab equitum meōrum turmīs et ā cohorte praetōriā, quae erat Epiphanēae praesidiī causā, occīdiōne occīsum. Quārē, cum vidērem ā Cappadociā Parthōrum cōpiās āversās, nōn longē ā fīnibus esse Ciliciae, quam potuī maxi-15 mīs itineribus, ad Amānum exercitum dūxī. Quō ut vēnī,

---

1. **missī**: not **mīsī**. — **tumultuōsē**: adv., *in great alarm.* — **nōn vērē**: freely, *without foundation in fact* (vērē, adv., lit. *truthfully*). — **Parthōs**: two years before, the Romans had suffered crushing defeat at the hands of this warlike people.

3. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also.* — **dē**: *with reference to.* — **meā**: note the position of the word.

4. **Asiā**: as on p. 169, l. 6.

5. **Cappadociā**: see the map on p. 179. — **extrēmā**: extrēmus, -a, -um, lit. *farthest*; translate freely (cf. the rendering of prīmus, summus, etc.) — **apud**: as on p. 180, l. 4.

6. **Cybistra**: in apposition with oppidum; render, however, as if a genitive. — **tuērer**: tueor, 2, ——, *protect.*

7. **tenēns**: *while occupying.* Cicero anticipated that the Parthian invaders would take this more northern route. — **nova . . . cōnsilia**: cf. rēs novās, p. 28, l. 10. — **fīnitimōrum**: translate the gen. "on the part of."

10. **eōrum**: *of theirs.*

11. **turmīs**: cf. p. 161, l. 7. The forces here mentioned Cicero had sent south at a venture (cf. the note on l. 7).

12. **occīdiōne occīsum**: *had been annihilated* (occīdiō, -ōnis, F., *utter destruction*).

14. **quam potuī maximīs**: *i.e. the longest possible*; cf. the note on p. 142, l. 5.

15. **Amānum**: a mountain range near the eastern border of Cilicia. — **ut**: *i.e.* ubi.

hostem ab Antiochēā recessisse, Bibulum Antiochēae esse
cōgnōvī.   Dēiotarum cōnfēstim iam ad mē venientem cum
magnō et firmō equitātū et peditātū et cum omnibus suīs
cōpiīs certiōrem fēcī nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr abesset ā
5 rēgnō, mēque ad eum, sī quid novī forte accidisset, statim
litterās nūntiōsque missūrum esse.

LESSON 139

Mountain Brigands claim the Governor's Attention

Cumque eō animō vēnissem, ut utrīque prōvinciae, sī ita
tempus ferret, subvenīrem, tum id, quod iam ante statue-
ram vehementer interesse utrīusque prōvinciae, pācāre
10 Amānum et perpetuum hostem ex eō monte tollere, agere
perrēxī.   Cumque mē discēdere ab eō monte simulāssem

1. ab: *from the neighborhood
of* (the town name without the
prep. would mean rather " from ";
cf. the note on p. 79, l. 21). —
recessisse : recēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum
est, *fall back*. — Bibulum : the
(Roman) governor of Syria. Sup-
ply -que with this clause.

2. Dēiotarum : a friendly native
king, whose offer of aid Cicero had
been glad to accept. — ad : *i.e. to
join*. — venientem : translate by a
relative clause.

3. et . . . et . . . et : the first
of these conjunctions connects the
two adjs. ; the remaining two may
be rendered *and . . . and in fact*.
— suīs cōpiīs : *his following*.

4. nōn vidērī esse causam, cūr
abesset : *there did not seem to be
(any) occasion for him to absent
himself ;* lit. what?

5. mē : subject of a new main
clause in the indirect discourse. —
sī quid : *if anything*. — novī : as
(neut.) noun. — forte : cf. the note
on p. 85, l. 12.

7. cum : causal.—animō : *pur-
pose*. —utrīque prōvinciae : *i.e.* Cili-
cia and Syria. — ita tempus ferret :
i.e. I should have opportunity.

8. subvenīrem : *i.e.* auxiliō
essem (subveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum
est). — tum : *now*. — id . . . agere
perrēxī (l. 11) : *I proceeded to carry
out a project* (pergō, 3, perrēxī,
perrēctum est, *proceed*).

9. interesse : interest, -esse,
-fuit, with gen., *be to the interest
(of)*. —pācāre : namely, *(the proj-
ect of) reducing to order*.

10. perpetuum hostem : namely,
some troublesome robber hordes.

11. .-que : translate as if itaque.

et aliās partīs Ciliciae petere, abessemque ab Amānō iter
ūnīus diēī et castra apud Epiphanēam fēcissem, a. d. iiii
Īd. Oct., cum advesperāsceret, expedītō exercitū ita noctū
iter fēcī, ut a. d. iii Īd. Oct., cum lūcīsceret, in Amānum
5 ascenderem; distribūtīsque cohortibus et auxiliīs (cum aliīs
Quīntus frāter lēgātus mēcum simul, aliīs C. Pomptīnus
lēgātus, reliquīs M. Annēius et L. Tullius lēgātī praees-
sent), plērōsque necopīnantīs oppressimus : qui occīsī cap-
tīque sunt, interclūsī fugā.   Eranam autem (quae fuit
10 nōn vīcī īnstar sed urbis, quod erat Amānī caput) itemque
Sepyram et Commorim, ācriter et diū repugnantibus, Pomp-
tīnō illam partem Amānī tenente ex antelūcānō tempore
usque ad hōram diēī X, magnā multitūdine hostium occīsā,
cēpimus, castellaque vī capta complūra incendimus.   Hīs

---

2. Epiphanēam: see the map
on p. 179. — **a. d. iiii Īd. Oct.**: *i.e.*
ante diem quārtum Īdūs Octōbrēs,
on the fourth (we would say, *third*)
day before the Ides of October,
namely, *Oct.* 12.

3. expedītō: as adj.; cf. the
noun use, p. 177, l. 3. — **ita**:
i.e. at such speed.

4. a. d. iii Īd. Oct.: *Oct.* 13
(cf. the note on l. 2). — **lūcīsceret**:
lūcīscit, 3, ——, ——, *grow light.*

5. distribūtīs: distribuō, 3,
-uī, -ūtus, *divide up*, or *make a
division of.* — **cum aliīs Quīntus
frāter . . . praeessent**: *my brother
Quintus . . . being in command
of some*, etc. (cf. aliī . . . aliī,
p. 20, l. 15).

6. lēgātus: (*as*) *lieutenant*;
cf. Quintus' similar relation to
Caesar in the Gallic war. — **simul**:
with mēcum.

8. plērōsque: sc. hostēs.

9. -que: we would say "or."
— **interclūsī**: interclūdō, 3, -clūsī,
-clūsus, *cut off.* — **fugā**: trans-
late the abl. "from." — **Eranam**:
(along with the town names of l.
11), object of cēpimus, l. 14.

10. īnstar: *the size* (*of*); cf.
p. 32, l. 5. — **quod**: (*and*) *which*;
for the gender, cf. quod, p. 30, l. 6.
— **item**: adv., *likewise.*

11. repugnantibus: *i.e.* resisten-
tibus (repugnō, 1); abl. absol. with
iīs (*i.e.* incolīs) supplied. The
two following clauses also are abl.
absolutes.

12. tenente: *i.e. keeping to.* —
antelūcānō: antelūcānus, -a, -um,
preceding dawn.

13. X: *i.e.* decimam, ordinal
and cardinal having the same
sign; cf. the dates above.

14. vī capta: *i.e.* expugnāta.

rēbus ita gestīs, castra in rādīcibus Amānī habuimus apud
Ārās Alexandrī quadrīduum, et in reliquiīs Amānī dēlendīs
agrīsque vāstandīs, quae pars eius montis meae prōvinciae
est, id tempus omne cōnsūmpsimus.

LESSON 140

Completion of the Destruction of their Strongholds

5   Cōnfectīs hīs rēbus, ad oppidum Eleutherocilicum Pin-
denissum exercitum addūxī. Quod cum esset altissimō et
mūnītissimō locō, ab iīsque incolerētur, quī nē rēgibus qui-
dem umquam pāruissent, cum et fugitīvōs reciperent, et
Parthōrum adventum ācerrimē exspectārent, ad exīstimā-
10 tiōnem imperī pertinēre arbitrātus sum comprimere eōrum
audāciam, quō facilius etiam cēterōrum animī, quī aliēnī
essent ab imperiō nostrō, frangerentur.

Vāllō et fossā circumdedī, sex castellīs castrīsque maxi-
mīs saepsī, aggere, vīniīs, turribus oppugnāvī, ūsusque tor-

1. rādīcibus: *foothills* (rādīx,
-īcis, F., lit. *root*).

2. reliquiīs: *i.e. the remain-
ing landmarks*; cf. reliquiās, p. 36,
l. 15.

3. vāstandīs: vāstō, 1, *lay
waste*. — quae pars eius montis:
i.e. in eā montis parte, quae. —
meae prōvinciae est: *belongs to*
(lit. *is of*) *my province*.

5. Pindenissum: in apposition
with oppidum. The exact location
of this town is not known.

6. quod cum esset: *since this
was* (*located*).

7. mūnītissimō: transl. the su-
perl. "strongly." — iīs . . . quī:
with subjunctive, *such* (*people*) *as*;

for the position of -que, cf. **ob
eamque causam**, p. 129, l. 5. —
rēgibus: namely, of their own.

8. cum: (*and*) *since*. — fugi-
tīvōs: fugitīvus, -ī, M., *runaway
slave*.

9. exīstimātiōnem: exīstimā-
tiō, -ōnis, F., *prestige*.

10. imperī: (*our*) *government*.
— comprimere: comprimō, 3,
-pressī, -pressus, *put a stop to*.

11. quō: note the compar. in
the clause. — aliēnī . . . ab: *ill
disposed toward*; cf. p. 148, l. 17.

12. imperiō: *rule*.

13. circumdedī: sc. **oppidum**.

14. saepsī: saepiō, 4, saepsī,
saeptus, *surround*. — aggere: ag-

mentīs multīs, multīs sagittāriīs, magnō labōre meō, sine
ūllā molestiā sūmptūve sociōrum, septimō quīnquāgēsimō
diē rem cōnfēcī, ut omnibus partibus urbis disturbātīs aut
incēnsīs, compulsī in potestātem meam pervenīrent.

5   Hīs erant fīnitimī parī scelere et audāciā Tebarānī.   Ab
iīs, Pindenissō captō, obsidēs accēpī ; exercitum in hīberna
dīmīsī ; Quīntum frātrem negōtiō praeposuī, ut in vīcīs aut
captīs aut male pācātīs exercitus collocārētur.

ger, -eris, M., *mound* (of earth or
other material). — vīniīs : vīnia,
-ae, F., *penthouse*. — tormentīs :
tormentum, -ī, N., *catapult*. Cf.
the ballista shown on p. 29.

   1. sagittāriīs : sagittārius, -ī,
M., *bowman*. — meō : *on my part*.

   2. molestiā : molestia, -ae, F.,
inconvenience. — sūmptū : sūmp-
tus, -ūs, M., *expense*. — sociōrum :
to (lit. *of*) *the friendly natives*
(from whom a Roman governor
usually felt at liberty to extort any
service he desired).

   3. ut : introducing a result

clause. — disturbātīs : disturbō, 1,
wreck.

   4. compulsī : freely, *in de-
spair*, lit. *forced (to it)* ; sc. hostēs.

   5. hīs : the people just sub-
dued. — parī : pār, paris, adj.,
equal. — scelere : scelus, -eris, N.,
guilt, lit. *crime ;* the whole abl.
phrase expresses quality. — Te-
barānī : subject of erant.

   7. negōtiō . . . ut . . . ex-
ercitus collocārētur : freely, *the
business of quartering the army ;*
lit. what ?—aut captīs, etc. : trans-
late by a relative clause.

WORD LIST

The following list shows the new words introduced into each successive reading lesson. Aside from numerals, words found in but one lesson are treated in the notes on that lesson, and do not appear here. For proper names, the general vocabulary should be consulted.

The designation (*) indicates that the word so marked occurs in four or more lessons.

English words in italics are derived from, or otherwise related to, the Latin words opposite to which they stand. They may be found useful in helping to recall the meaning of the Latin words as given in the general vocabulary.[1]

---

[1] Many Latin words are formed with the help of a prefix. Though the force of this prefix does not stand out clearly in every case, it is worth while to become familiar with the general meanings of the following : —

ā-, ab- : *away, aside, off.*

ad- : *to, into, near, by, at.*

circum- : *around.*

con- : *with, together* (con- being a form of **cum**). Often denotes completion (*e.g.* cōnficiō [faciō]), or energy of action (*e.g.* contendō).

dē- : *from, down.*

dis- : *from, away, separately.*

ē-, ex- : *forth, out, from, up.* Often denotes success (*e.g.* expugnō), or energy of action (*e.g.* excipiō [capiō]).

in- : *upon, on, in.*

in- : *not,* or *un-.*

inter- : *between.*

ob- : *before, against.*

per- : *through, across.* Often intensive, *very, exceedingly.*

prae- : *before, in advance, over.*

praeter- : *by, past.*

prō- : *before, forth, forward, out, fore-.*

re- : *back, again.*

sub- : *under.*

trāns- : *across, over.*

Some of the above prefixes take different forms according to the first letter of the word with which they are combined. The following alternative forms should in particular be noted : ā-, ab- (abs-) ; ad- (ac-, af-, al-, ap-, ar-, as-, a[s]-, at-) ; con- (col-, com-, co-) ; dis- (dif-, dī-) ; ē-, ex- (ec-, ef-, e[x]-) ; in- (ig-, il-, im-) ; inter- (intel-) ; ob- (oc-, op-) ; re- (red-) ; sub- (sus-, su[s]-) ; trāns- (trā-).

In some words united with these prefixes a vowel is regularly altered, *e.g.* :

a or e becomes i ; as -ficiō (for faciō) and -tineō (for teneō).

ae becomes ī : as -cīdō (for caedō ; cf. caedēs) and -īquus (for aequus in inīquus).

1

ad*

appellō* (-āre), *appella-*
tion

autem*

circum,* *circum*-ference

coepī*

crēdō,* *creed*

cum* (conj.)

cursus*

diū*

dīversus,* *diverse*

ē, ex*

enim*

eō* (verb)

et*

etiam*

exeō,* *exit*

habeō*

homō,* *homi*-cide

ille*

in*

intellegō,* *intelligent*

interdum*

interpōnō*

inveniō,* *inven*-tion

ipse*

ita*

iam*

iuvenis,* *juvenile*

labōrō*

lītus*

longē*

magnus,* *magni*-tude

mare,* *marine*

multus,* *multi*-tude

nāscor,* *nat*-al

nauta,* *nauti*-cal

nāvigō,* *naviga*-tion

nāvis,* *nav*-al

nēmō

neque, nec*

nūllus,* *nulli*-fy

ōlim*

oppidum*

pater,* *pater*-nal

pecūnia,* *pecuniary*

perveniō*

portus*

possum,* *poss*-ibility

posteā,* *post*-pone

prōgredior*

prope* (adv.)

prope* (prep.)

puer,* *puer*-ile

-que*

quī* (relative)

quīdam*

quod* (conj.)

rēx,* *reg*-al

saepe*

secundum* (prep.)

sed*

spērō,* de-*sperate*

suī,* *sui*-cide

sum,* *essence*

suspicor*

tam*

tempus,* *tempor*-al

teneō,* re-*ten*-tive

terra,* *terr*-estrial

timeō,* *tim*-id

trānseō,* *transit*

tum*

usque*

ut, utī*

via,* imper-*vi*-ous

videō,* e-*vident*

volō,* *vol*-untary

2

ad ... versus*

advena* (ad + veniō)

aperiō,* *aper*-ture

audiō,* *audi*-torium

avis, *avi*-ation

bellum,* re-*bell*-ion.

cantus, *chant*

cōgnōscō,* re-*cognize*

cōnsequor,* *consequence*

cōnsilium,* *counsel*

cum* (prep.)

dīcō,* *dic*-tation

diēs,* *di*-urnal

dō,* *do*-nation

faciō,* *fac*-tor

fortiter,* *forti*-tude

gerō,* belli-*gerent*

ibi*

igitur*

īgnōtus,* contrast *noted*

īnsula, *insulate*

interim*

is*

itaque*

iter,* *itiner*-ant

laetus*

libenter*

mōns,* *mount*

morior,* *mori*-bund

nōlō*

nūntius,* e-*nunci*-ate

obtineō, cf. teneō

omnis,* *omni*-potent

paene,* *pen*-insula

parō*

parvus*

paucī,* *pauci*-ty

per,* *per*-forate

perīculum*

petō,* *pet*-ition

postrēmō*

proficīscor*

pulcher*
quaerō,* re-*quire*
quisquam*
redeō* (red + eō)
rēgīna, cf. rēx
rēgnum,* *regn*-ant
rēs,* *rebus*
suus,* cf. suī
tamen*
trēs,* *tri*-nity
ubi* (adv.)
ubi* (conj.)
validus,* *valid*
vereor,* re-*verent*

3

ā, ab*
adeō* (verb), cf. eō
alius,* *ali*-bi
animus,* *anim*-ated
appropinquō*
atque, ac*
bāca
dē*
domus,* *dom*-estic
dux,* *duke*
ēgredior,* *egress*
gaudeō,* *gaudy*
gaza
harēna, *arena*
ignis,* *ignite*
incola*
inde*
īrātus,* *irate*
iaciō,* e-*ject*
māne*
mīlle,* *mile*
moror*
mox*
natō
noctū,* *noct*-urnal

nōn*
numquam*
passus*
post* (adv.), cf. posteā
prīmō,* *prim*-acy
putō,* com-*pute*
quārē*
quoque*
rāmus, *rami*-fy
sentiō,* *senti*-ment
statim*
ūllus,* cf. nūllus
vehementer,* *vehement*

4

amō,* *am*-iable
brevī,* *brevi*-ty
certus*
cīvis,* *civil*
colōnia*
colōnus*
compleō,* *comple*-ment
condō*
coorior*
fēlīciter,* *felici*-ty
ferō,* re-*fer*
fīō,* *fiat*
fluctus, *fluctu*-ate
haud*
incolumis*
iniūria*
interficiō*
iterum,* *iter*-ate
littera*
pars*
praefectus,* *prefect*
properō*
relinquō,* *relinquish*
scrībō,* *scribe*
semel
spēs,* cf. spērō

subitō*
sustineō,* cf. teneō
tempestās,* *tempest*
ūnus,* *uni*-ty
ventus,* *venti*-late

5

adeō (adv.)
amīcus,* *amic*-able
capiō,* *cap*-acity
cōnor*
dōnum,* cf. dō
fīlius,* *fili*-al
forte,* *fort*-uitous
īdem,* *iden*-tical
mīrus, *mir*-acle
nārrō,* *narra*-tion
nōmen,* *nomin*-al
nōtus,* cf. īgnōtus
nunc*
piscis, *Pisces*
quīn* etiam
rapiō,* *rapine*
semper*
senex, *sen*-ility
sōlum,* *sole*-ly
vir,* *vir*-ile

6

adorior *
adversus,* *adverse*
argentum,* *Argentine*
aurum, *auri*-ferous
castra,* *Chester*
celeriter,* *celeri*-ty
cibus*
cōgō,* *cogent*
cōnsūmō,* *consum*-er
dēdūcō,* *deduct*
flūmen*
fortis,* cf. fortiter
frūmentum*

hostis,* *hostile*
inmittō,* cf. mittō (below)
mīles,* *milit*-ary
mittō,* re-*mit*
nam*
occīdō,* (sui)*cide*
pōnō,* post-*pone*
prō,* *pro* (and con,
pugnō,* *pugna*-cious
recipiō,* *receipt*
rīpa,* *ripa*-rian
sagitta,* *Sagittarius*
scapha*
silva,* *silvan*
tēlum*
vehō,* *veh*-icle

7

aqua,* *aqua*-tic
arbor,* *arbor*
arma*
collocō,* cf. locus (below)
frīgus, *frig*-id
fugiō,* *fugi*-tive
humus,* ex-*hume*
īnsidiae,* *insidi*-ous
iaceō,* ad-*jacent*
iubeō*
locus,* *loco*-motive
manus,* *manu*-al
modo*
perterritus,* cf. terreō (below)
prius,* *pri*-ority
procul*
redūcō,* *reduce*
soleō,* ob-*solete*
sonus,* *sono*-rous
terreō,* *terr*-or
veniō,* con-*vene*

8

accipiō,* *accept*
captīvus*
clam*
complūrēs,* cf. *plur*-al
cōnscendō,* (a)*scend*
cōpia,* *copi*-ous
dēmum*
dōnec *
dum*
emō,* red-*emption*
habitō,* *habita*-tion
hīc * (pron.)
idōneus*
miser,* *misery*
nesciō,* contrast *science*
novus,* *nov*-el
quō* (adv.)
reportō,* *report*
sacerdōs,* *sacerdot*-al
sequor,* con-*sequence*
servō,* con-*serve*
suprā*
tractō,* *tract*-able
vēndō,* *vend*-er

9

dūcō,* pro-*duce*
effugiō,* cf. fugiō
frangō,* *frag*-ile
frūstrā,* *frustrate*
longus*
mālō*
paulō*
pīrāta*
poena,* *penal*
praeda,* *preda*-tory
sēdecim
vēlum,* *veil*
vetus, *veter*-an

10

carō,* *carn*-al
certē
corpus,* *corpor*-eal
edō,* *ed*-ible
equus,* *equ*-estrian
famēs,* *fam*-ine
fīlia,* cf. fīlius
impetus,* *impetu*-ous
iuvō,* coad-*ju*-tor
mātrimōnium, *matrimony*
mēnsis*
mentior
obses*
oppidānī,* cf. oppidum
pereō,* cf. eō (verb)
puella*
quamquam*
quondam,* *quondam* (adj.)
trādō,* *tradition*
uxor,* *uxor*-ious

11

cōnspectus,* *conspectus*
deinde*
duo,* *du*-al
explōrō*
ferē*
fretum, *frith* (?)
hīc* (adv.)
lēniter,* *leni*-ty
lūna, *lunar*
nō*

12

altus,* *alti*-tude
āmittō,* cf. mittō
angustus
annus,* *annu*-al

conveniō,* *convene*
excipiō*
hiemō*
magister, *magistr-*ate
negōtior, *negotiate*
(posterus)*
scelerātus
sub,* *sub-*tract

13

agō,* *ag-*itate
ante* (adv.), *anti-*cipate
apud*
clāmor,* *clamor*
cōnstituō,* *constitu-*tion
currō,* in-*cursion*
deus,* *dei-*ty
ēmigrō
ērumpō,* *eruption*
grātia,* *grace*
interdiū
lēgātus,* de-*legate*
līberī*
morbus,* cholera *morbus*
nox,* equi-*nox*
reliquus,* cf. relinquō
saxum*
tūtus, *tute-*lage
undique*
vulnerō,* *vulner-*able

14

acerbus, *acerbi-*ty
ambulō,* per-*ambulate*
asper,* *asperi-*ty
aut*
cadō,* de-*cadence*
commoveō,* *commotion*
dēsum
hiems,* cf. hiemō
inquam*

loquor,* *loqu-*acity
maestus*
-ne
numerus,* *numer-*al
prōpōnō, *propose*
proximus,* *proximi-*ty
rīdeō, *ridi-*culous
sūmō,* re-*sume*
tacitus,* *tacit*
tū*
verbum,* *verb-*al
virtūs,* cf. vir
vōx,* *voc-*al

15

alter,* *alter-*ation
ambō,* *ambi-*guous
arbitror,* *arbitra-*tion
caedēs,* sui-*cide*
cōgitō,* *cogitate*
comes,* con-*comit-*ant
concilium*
contumēlia,* *contumely*
convocō,* *convoca-*tion
crūdēlis
cūrō,* mani-*cure*
facile,* *facili-*ty
incendō,* *incend-*iary
inimīcus,* *inimic-*al
ostendō,* *osten-*tation
recūsō*
sīca*
sīgnum*
simul,* *simul-*taneously
umquam*
vincō,* con-*vince*
vulnus,* cf. vulnerō

16

afficiō*
amplector (com)*plexus*

bene,* *bene-*fit
dīmittō,* cf. mittō
frāter,* *frater-*nal
gravis,* *grave*
polliceor*
religiō*
secūris*
venēnum, *venom*
vērō,* *veri-*ly

17

admoveō*
animadvertō*
ārdēns, *ardent*
audeō,* *aud-*acious
bōs, *bov-*ine
castellum,* *castle*
cōnātus, cf. cōnor
dēfendō*
dēpōnō, *depose*
dēsistō*
extinguō
hōra*
moneō, *moni-*tor
oppugnō,* (ob + pugnō)
prōdō*
salūs,* *salut-*ary
tantum,* *tant-*amount
tēctum, pro-*tect*
vīlla,* *village*
vocō,* in-*voke*

18

aciēs*
adiuvō,* co-*adju-*tor
adsum*
aedēs,* *edi-*fice
ager,* *agri-*culture
auxilium,* *auxili-*ary
caelum,* *cel-*estial
fenestra

fuga,* cf. fugiō
imperātor,* *imperat*-ive
latebrae,* cf. lateō (below)
lateō,* *latent*
postquam,* cf. post (adv.)
prōspiciō, *prospect*
scīlicet*
sīcut*
templum*
tūtō, cf. tūtus

19

ācriter,* *acri*-monious
aestās
dētrīmentum,* *detriment*
exercitus*
expugnō*
gēns,* *gent*-ile
longinquus,* cf. longus
modus,* *mode*
praeoccupō, *preoccupy*
prīdem
prīmus* *prime*
sciō,* *science*
singulī,* *singul*-ar

20

ācer,* cf. ācriter
armātus,* cf. arma
ascīscō
dēnuō
ēripiō
exsiliō,* *exul*-tation
fīnis,* *fin*-al
herba, *herbage*
minus,* *minus*
palūs*
perficiō,* *perfect*

persuādeō*
sedeō, *sedent*-ary
socius*, *soci*-al

21

abscīdō, cf. occīdō
caput,* *capit*-al (adj.)
cōnsōlor, *consola*-tion
dēdō*
īnstruō,* *instruction*
intercipiō*
mora*
pāx,* *pac*-ific
perfugiō
porta,* *portal*
sine,* *sine*-cure
vallēs*

22

ante,* (prep.) *ante*-chamber
audācter,* *audaci*-ty
cēna
cēnō
cōnficiō*
perpaucī, cf. paucī
pēs,* *ped*-al
silentium*
sōpītus,* *sop*-orific
surgō, in-*surgent*
vigilō, *vigil*

23

aes*
aliēnus,* *alien*
clārus,* *clari*-fy
cōmitās, *comity*
cōmiter
grātus*
praemittō,* *premise*
propter*

prōvincia*
solvō,* dis-*solve*
urbs,* *urb*-an
vīvō,* re-*vive*

24

agricola,* cf. ager
assēnsus, *assent*
coerceō, *coercion*
cruciātus,* *cruci*-fixion
iniussū,* cf. iubeō
maneō*
ōrō, ad-*ora*-tion
prīmum,* cf. prīmō
quaestus,* *quest*
superior *

25

adhūc*
ballista
cārus, *chari*-ty
custōdia*
custōdiō*
mūrus, *mur*-al
nūntiō,* cf. nūntius
obsideō,* *obsess*
opus,* *oper*-ate
praedium*

26

ancora*
antequam,* cf. ante (adv.)
cōnsistō*
īgnōminia, *ignominy*
labor*
malus,* *male*-factor
paulātim*
propinquus, *propinqui*-ty
revocō, *revoke*

27

abeō,* cf. eō (verb)
aliquamdiū,* cf. diū
appellō* (-ere)
ars, *art*-ist
condūcō
discō, *disc*-iple
lūdō, col-*lusion*
māter,* *mater*-nal
post,* (prep.) *post*-pone
sexāgintā*
simulō,* *simulate*
tribūnus*

28

arceō
at*
casa*
cōnsīdō,* (sub)*side*
īnstar
lectus*
mōs, *mor*-al
regiō*
rīvus,* de-*riv*-ation
tōtus*
ūndēvīgintī

29

advesperāscit, cf. *vespers*
dēligō*
difficilis*
discēdō,* (re)*cede*
impedīmenta,* *impedi-
ment*
nisi*
patior,* *patient*
perīculōsus, cf. perīcu-
lum
respondeō,* *respond*
sī*
tollō,* ex-*tol*

30

frīgidus, *frigid*
glaciēs,* *glacier*
illūcēscō,* (trans)*lucent*
magis*
mātūrē
molestē*
occupō,* *occupa*-tion
pertinācia, cf. teneō
satis,* *satis*-factory
trāns,* *trans*-it
ūnā,* *uni*-ty

31

condiciō*
expellō,* *expel*
explōrātor*
invītus*
legiō*
nē . . . quidem*
opera,* *opera*-tives
ultrō*
unde*

32

admoneō,* cf. moneō
cēdō,* re-*cede*
centuriō*
cohortor*
compellō, *compulsion*
incommodum,   *incom-
mode*
inrumpō,* cf. ērumpō
lacus*
proelium*
reliquiae, cf. reliquus
statuō,* *statute*
temerē,* *temeri*-ty
ululātus*

33

alibī, cf. alius
dēmittō*
etsī*
īnferō,* *infer*
laudō, *laud*
mātrōna, *matron*
ōtiōsus, *otiose*
tantus,* cf. tantum
victōria *

34

audācia,* cf. audācter
commūnis, *communi*-ty
concēdō*
exigō, *exact* (verb)
iūs,* *jus*-tice
licet, *license*
memoria*
postulō,* *postulate*
repetō, cf. petō
senātus*
sex,* *sex*-tant
videor,* cf. videō

35

celeritās,* cf. celeriter
collis*
contineō, cf. teneō
cotīdiē,* cf. diēs
exstruō, cf. *structure*
intrā,* *intrant*
largior, *larg*-ess
lībertās
meus,*   *meum*   (and
tuum)
mūnītiō,* *munitions*
pūblicus*
quantus,* *quanti*-ty
vāllum*

veterānī, cf. vetus
vīta,* *vital*

36

adferō*
aliquī (aliquis)*
celebrō
facultās*
hīberna,* *hibern*-ate
nancīscor*
nihil,* *nihil*-ist
stīpendium, *stipend*

37

circumveniō,* *circum-vent*
cōnservō,* cf. servō
dēvius, *devious*
ego,* *ego*-tism
ēlūdō,* *elude*
glōrior (vain)*glori*-ous
intempestus*
iste*
pugna,* cf. pugnō
strepitus*
tergum,* *tergi*-versation
vesper, cf. advesperāscit

38

comportō,* cf. reportō
dēditiō, cf. dēdō
dubius, *dubious*
ecfrēnātē
eō* (adv.)
ēveniō, *even*-tuate
ēventus, *event*
pueritia, cf. puer

39

agmen*
circiter,* cf. circum

cruentus
dēficiō,* *deficit*
īnferior
inopia,* contrast *op*-ulent
multō,* cf. multus
necessārius
nix*
nūdus, de-*nude*
quīnque*
sagum
vestīgium, *vestige*

40

classis*
coniungō,* *conjunction*
fallō,* *fall*-ible
merīdiēs,* *meridian*
occāsiō, *occasion*
potestās,* cf. possum
rārus, *rare*
rursus*
servus,* *serv*-ile
spectō,* *specta*-cle

41.

audāx, cf. audācter
causa*
contrā, *contra*-dict
damnō,* con-*demn*
dēleō,* *dele*-terious
impetrō*
invīsus*
mūniō,* cf. mūnītiō
nātūra
nē*
perfidia, *perfidy*
quam*
strēnuus, *strenuous*

42

anteā,* cf. ante (adv.)
exsilium

graviter,* cf. gravis
indīcō,* (e)*dict*
permōtus,* cf. commoveō
saltem

43

aeger*
aegrē
fortūna*
oculus, *ocul*-ist
oppugnātiō,* cf. oppugnō
tabernāculum,* *tabernacle*
varius*

44

contendō,* cf. *tend*
dexter, *dexter*-ous
exspectō,* *expect*
fleō
flōs, *flor*-ist
imperium,* *empire*
inter,* *inter*-sect
lacrima, *lachrym*-ose
multitūdō,* *multitude*
octō,* *oct*-agon
patria,* *patri*-ot
praesidium*
sīc*

45

abhinc*
antīquitus, *antique*
honor
hortor,* cf. cohortor

46

cavus, *cavi*-ty
committō,* *commit*
mulier *

priusquam,* cf. prius
quandō
reperiō*
vīcus,* War-*wick*

47

abripiō, cf. rapiō
dīligentia,* *diligence*
dominus,* *domin*-ate
ēvādō, *evade*
facinus*
fidēlis,* *fideli*-ty
moribundus, cf. morior
quis* (indef.)
stō,* *sta*-tionary
superbia, *superb*
-ve*
vix*

48

barbarus*
expediō,* *expedite*
fīrmō, con-*firm*
incitō, *incite*
intrō,* cf. intrā
praesum*
saltō

49

cēterī*
circumstō, *circumstance*
extrā,* *extra*-ordinary
intervāllum,* *interval*
negōtiātor,* cf. negō-
tior
patefaciō
plānē,* *plain*-ly
porrigō*
tegō,* cf. tēctum
vestīmentum,* *vestment*
vultus

50

adventus,* *advent*
efferō,* *elation*
faveō, *fav*-or

51

absum,* *absent*
arripiō,* cf. rapiō
canō, cf. cantus
memorābilis, *memorable*
nāvigium,* cf. nāvis

52

admīror, *admire*
ēdō,* *edit*
fortitūdō, cf. fortiter
gemitus
sōlus,* cf. sōlum
superō,* in-*super*-able
vestis, cf. vestīmentum

53

carrus, *carr*-iage
crūdēlitās,* cf. crūdēlis
fluō, *flu*-id
hortus, *horti*-culture
impōnō, *impose*
multum,* cf. multō
paulum*
suspēnsus, *suspense*

54

citrō*
cuneus, *cunei*-form
dēferō*
gubernāculum, *guberna*-
torial
moveō,* cf. commoveō
pandō, ex-*pand*

sententia,* cf. sentiō
ulterior,* *ulterior*

55

impediō,* cf. impedī-
menta
liburnica*
occidēns, *occident*
onerāria, *oner*-ous
onustus*
tardē, *tardy*

56

abiciō,* cf. iaciō
inlīdō (col)*lision*
obstinātus, *obstinate*
prōiciō,* cf. iaciō
resistō*
respōnsum, cf. respon-
deō
retineō,* cf. teneō
saevitia
super, *super*-impose
vīgintī*

57

commemorō
dēfīgō (pre)*fix*
necō,* inter-*nec*-ine
prōlābor (re)*lapse*
religō, cf. *liga*-ture
supīnus, *supine*
tenebrae

58

careō
coniciō,* cf. iaciō
exitiālis
fīnitimus*
frequēns, *frequent*

magicus
palam*
probō,* ap *proba*-tion
pulvis, *pulver*-ize

59

adsequor
circuitus, cf. circum
dubitō,* *dubitate*
īnsequor*
quidem*
redintegrō   (dis)*inte-
   grate*
vītō,* ine-*vit*-able

60

clāmō, cf. clāmor
cōnferō,* *conference*
locuplēs

61

accēdō,* *accede*
bonus,* *bonny*
quotiēns, *quotient*

62

errō,* *error*
folium, *foli*-age
quiēscō,* *quiescent*
somnus,* *somno*-lent

63

auris, *aur*-ist
cōnfertus
glōria, *glory*
manipulāris
mors,* cf. morior
opportūnus
ōrdō*
pariō*

tantopere, cf. tantum
ūtor,* *ut*-ensil

64

adulēscēns, *adolescent*
canis, *canine*
dēfessus*
exiguus*
quārtus,* *quarter*

65

aedificō, cf. aedēs
caespes
cōnsuēscō,* (de) *suetude*
cōnsultō
ducentī
ēliciō, *elicit*
excīdō, cf. occīdō
fera, *fero*-cious
frūstum,* *frustum*
sēdēs, cf. sedeō
timor,* cf. timeō
ūsus,* cf. ūtor
vēnor, *ven*-ison
vīcīnus, *vicini*-ty

66

dēnique
dīligenter,* cf. dīligen-
   tia
incendium, cf. incendō
misceō, pro-*misc*-uous
nātiō,* *nation*
praeter,* *preter*-natural
praetervehor, cf. vehō
reor,* *rate* (verb)

67

dīvidō
intus, cf. intrā
mūtō,* per-*muta*-tion

perrumpō, cf. ērumpō
repentīnus*

68

callidus
dēvorō
excitō,* *excite*
lingua, *lingu*-ist
nūper*
praetereō, cf. eō

69

aetās, *et*-ernal
carpō, ex-*cerpt*
prōsper(-erus).
   prosperi-ty
septem

70

accidō,* *accident*
argenteus, cf. argentum
cōnfēstim*
duodecim, *duodecim*-al
gubernātor, cf guberna-
   culum
pōculum
spoliō*
vīs*

71

avāritia, *avarice*
cōnfīrmō,* cf. *affirm*
foris, per-*for*-ate
praemium,* *premium*
queror, *quer*-ulous

72

appetō, cf. petō
dīmicō*
percutiō, *percussion*
umerus

73

absconditus, cf. condō
adhaerēscō, *adhere*
dēterreō, *deter*
dētrūdō,* (in)*trusion*
eōdem*
praestō*
secundus,* cf. secundum

74

incrēdibilis, *incredible*
lūx,* cf. illūcēscō

75

adstō, cf. stō
circumeō,* cf. eō
colloquium,* cf. loquor
colloquor, cf. loquor
īra, cf. īrātus

76

cōnspiciō,* cf. cōnspectus
ēruptiō, cf. ērumpō
obscūrus, *obscuri*-ty
trādūcō, cf. dūcō
vigilia,* cf. vigilō

77

addūcō,* *adduce*
perlegō, cf. *lectern*
quīvīs, cf. volō
venia, *venial*

78

custōs,* cf. custōdiō
decem, *decim*-al
fōns, *fount*
prōcurrō
versor*, con-*versant*

79

carcer, in-*carcer*-ate
efficiō, *effect*
negō, *nega*-tion
potior*
prīnceps, *princip*-al
tolerō, *tolerate*

80

claudō,* se-*clude*
oblīvīscor, *obliv*-ion
omnīnō, cf. omnis
vel

81

amplius, *ample*
suscipiō
tribūtum

82

clādēs
integer, *integer*
praesertim
repente,* cf. repentīnus

83

cōnstantia, *constancy*
exīstimō,* cf. *estimate*
persevērō, *persevere*
quīndecim

84

cāsus,* *casu*-al
dētrahō, *detract*
dolor, *dolor*-ous
pedetemptim
quīnquāgintā
quō* (conj.)

85

ob*

86

ascendō,* *ascent*
dēiciō,* cf. iaciō
tertius,* *terti*-ary

87

aequus*, *equ*-able
prōmunturium

88

dēserō
fidēs, cf. fidēlis
similis*

89

beneficium,* (bene + faciō)
dēversōrium
līgnātiō
referō, *refer*

90

convertō*
fūmus, *fume*
horrendus, *horr*-or
incolō, cf. incola
spernō, *spurn*

91

portō,* *port*-er
spatium,* *spaci*-ous
trānsportō,* *transport*
valētūdō,*valetudin*-arian
vinculum
vīvus, cf. vīvō

92

coniūrātiō
male, cf. malus

93

augeō, *aug*-ment
emptiō, cf. emō

peregrīnus
reprimō, *repress*
trīgintā

94

iudicō,* *judic*-iary
praepōnō, *preposition*
vagor, *vaga*-bond

95

gladius,* *gladi*-ator
imperō,* cf. imperātor
incertus, cf. certus
ingredior, *ingress*
perturbō, *perturb*
quattuor
septuāgintā
suspīciō

96

appōnō (ad + pōnō)
cīvitās,* cf. cīvis
regredior

97

vertō, cf. convertō

98

amīcitia, cf. amīcus

99

concurrō,* *concourse*

100

continēns, *continent*
perfuga, cf. perfugiō
speculor, *specula*-tor

101

eques,* cf. equus
noster *

premō,* cf. reprimō
tot

102

cōnsulō, *consult*
magnopere, cf. magnus
ōrātiō,* *oration*
subsidium,* *subsidy*
ūniversī,* *univers*-al

103

cēnseō
disputō, *disputa*-tion
quis* (interrog.)
uterque*

104

cupidē, *cupidi*-ty
medius,* *medio*-crity
nocturnus, cf. nox and
    noctū
plērīque*
prōnūntiō, *pronounce*

105

cohors*
dēscendō, cf. ascendō
dispōnō, *dispose*
inīquus,* cf. aequus
officium,* *office*
orbis, *orbit*
prōvideō, *provide*
quisque*

106

auctōritās, *authority*
octāvus, *octave*
parcō, *parsi*-mony
rogō, inter-*roga*-tion
trāgula

107

pāreō

108

dēmōnstrō, *demonstra*-
    tion
doceō,* *doc*-tor
equitātus,* cf. eques
intereō, cf. pereō
intermittō, *intermission*
līberō,* cf. lībertās
nōndum
nōnnūllī* (nōn + nūllī)
opprimō,* *oppress*
peditātus,* cf. pēs
perpetuus, *perpetu*-al
subsequor, *subsequent*

109

addō, *add*-ition
cōnsuētūdō,* cf. cōn-
    suēscō
fossa, *foss*-il (adj.)
prīdiē, cf. diēs
ratiō, *ration*-al
turris,* *turr*-et

110

circumdō
comprehendō, *compre*-
    hend
differō (dis + ferō)
populus, *popul*-ar
septimus

111

commodus, cf. incom-
    modum
ūndecimus

112

occurro, *occur*
profectiō, cf. proficīscor
remittō,* *remit*

113

cernō, dis-*cern*
prīstinus, *pristine*

114

obsidiō, cf. obsideō
quoniam

115

decimus, *decim*-al
ēmittō, *emit*
postrīdiē,* cf. prīdiē
prōdūcō, *produce*
simulātiō,* cf. simulō

116

cōntiō
nōnus
temeritās, cf. temerē

117

trīduum, cf. trēs and diēs
tumultus, *tumult*

118

pedes,* cf. pēs and pedi-
tātus

119

explicō, (im)*plicate*
metus

120

cūr

121

refugiō, *refuge*

122

discessus, cf. discēdō
praetereā, cf. praeter
prōtinus
speciēs, *speci*-ous

123

dēfēnsiō, cf. dēfendō
hūc
necopīnāns, cf. *opin*-ion

124

plānitiēs

125

circumsistō. cf. cōnsistō

126

bīduum, cf. trīduum

127

dignitās, *dignity*

128

īnfēstus
latus, *later*-al
pīlum
turma

129

negōtium, cf. negōtior
and ōtiōsus (neg-
= nec, i.e. "*not*")
perdūcō
pertineō, *pertain*

131

āvertō, *avert*
cōnfodiō, cf. fossa
Īdūs
quasi, *quasi* (adj.)

133

exitus, cf. exeō
memor, cf. memoria
septuāgēsimus

134

forum

135

arcēssō
genus, *genus*

136

expedītus, cf. expediō
praetōrius

137

fīrmus, cf. fīrmō
intereā, cf. interim
Kalendae, *calendar*
quadrīduum, *quadr*-en-
nium

139

pācō, cf. pāx

140

quīnquāgēsimus

ENGLISH-LATIN EXERCISES

EXERCISE I

$(1-2)$[1]

ABLATIVE OF TIME WHEN AND WITHIN WHICH — RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE — I-STEMS

MODEL SENTENCES

Caesar aestāte bellum gerēbat, Caesar used to wage war in the summer time.

Quīnque diēbus imperātor captus est, Within five days the general was captured.

RULE. *Time When and Time Within Which are regularly expressed by the ablative case, without a preposition.*

NOTE 1. The ablative of Time When has various translations; thus, in addition to "in" (first) model sentence we may have **diē vīcēsimō**, "*on* the twentieth day," **hōrā decimā**, "*at* the tenth hour," etc.

NOTE 2. The ablative of Time Within Which must be distinguished carefully from the already familiar *accusative* of Extent of Time (*e.g.* **quīnque diēs imperātōrem secūtī sunt**, "*For* five days they followed their commander").

MODEL SENTENCES

Mīles missus est, quī Caesarem monēret, A soldier was sent to warn Caesar (*lit.* who should warn Caesar).

---

[1] These numbers indicate the Reading Lessons to which an Exercise corresponds.

Equōs emimus, quōs mittāmus, We are buying horses to send (*lit.* which we may send).

Sagittās dabō, quibus ursa occīdātur, I shall provide arrows with which to kill the bear (*lit.* with which the bear may be killed).

RULE. *Purpose may be expressed by a relative clause with its verb in the present or imperfect subjunctive.*

NOTE. Observe the similarity between **ut**-clauses of purpose and relative clauses of purpose, noting particularly that, in both, the *tense* of the subjunctive is determined in exactly the same way.

REMARK. In expressions of purpose, the relative is preferred when the governing clause contains a more or less indefinite expression (*e.g.* "a soldier," "arrows," etc.) to serve as antecedent. The relative construction should be written as often as possible, until it is thoroughly familiar.

VOCABULARY[1]

aestās, -ātis, F., *summer, summer time.*

carrus, -ī, M., *wagon.*

certē, adv., *certainly, at any rate.*

dux, ducis, M., *leader, commander, guide.*

fābula, -ae, F., *story.*

hiems, hiemis, F., *winter, winter time.*

Hispānia, -ae, F., *Spain.*

īgnōtus, -a, -um, *unknown.*

Italia, -ae, F., *Italy.*

legō, 3, lēgī, lēctus, *read;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

mōns, montis, M., *mountain.*

moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus, *move.*
    castra movēre, *to break camp.*

tempus, -oris, N., *time, season.*

NOTE. While **imperātor** is a strictly military term, **dux** may be used of a leader of any kind.

[1] In these Exercises a knowledge of the words used in the Primer is, in general, assumed. For words that are forgotten, see the English-Latin Vocabulary at the end of this volume.

I–STEMS

It will be recalled that third declension nouns fall into two classes, (1) Consonant Stems, and (2) I-Stems. The I-Stems include

- *a*) Masculines and feminines in **-is** which have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular (*e.g.* **nāvis**, gen. **nāvis**).

- *b*) Feminines in **-ēs** which have the same number of syllables in the nominative and genitive singular (*e.g.* **vallēs**, gen. **vallis**).

- *c*) Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**.

Furthermore, the *plural* of

- *d*) Masculines and feminines terminating in **-ns** or **-rs**, or consisting of a single syllable ending in either **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant.

NOTE. Memorize the above statement just as it stands; and find, in the Vocabulary of this Exercise, a word which falls under (*d*).

REMARK 1. To become thoroughly familiar with the I-Stem endings, it is necessary to write them frequently, even when optional (*e.g.* **-īs** for the accusative plural of masculines and feminines). And, in this connection, the inflection of I-Stem *adjectives* (*e.g.* **omnis**) must not be forgotten.

REMARK 2. As indicated in the Primer, the ablative singular of masculine and feminine I-Stems varies too much to allow of formulating a general rule. Of the words used in the Primer, **collis, hostis, nūbēs, ovis, piscis,** and **vallēs** have **-e** in the ablative; **avis** has either **-e** or **-ī**; **ignis** and **nāvis** have either **-ī** or **-e**; and **secūris** has **-ī**.

TRANSLATION

1.*   1. The king is sending sailors to discover the hiding place of the enemy.[1]   2. In winter there are no roads by which to take[2] wagons to the city; but at this season of the year horses can very easily make their way over[3] the mountains.   3. Do not think[4] that the king is willing to give us money with[5] which to buy ships.   4. For two years the soldiers had been detained[6] in the town; but on that day[7] the general had ordered the army to break camp so as to march into Italy.

2.*   "Let's go into the tent, Quintus, and read our book," said Marcus.   "Claudia says that in it is a splendid[8] story about three little ships."   "Who was the commander?" asked Quintus.   "Columbus was the commander," replied Marcus.   "He set out from Spain to look for unknown lands, and his little ships were almost broken by the force of the waves.   Some people[9] thought him deluded,[10] but certainly he was a very brave man.   Come,[11] let's read the book."

1. Use the pl., as usual.

2. Turn the phrase into the passive.   The verb **possum** need not be supplied.

3. *make (one's) way over:* **superō**, 1.

4. Note that this phrase expresses Prohibition.

5. Describe two different ways of rendering "with" into Latin.   Which is required here?

6. Use **moror**.

7. Review the gender of the Latin word.

8. Superl. of **pulcher**.

9. *some people:* **quīdem** (pl., as noun).   This use of the masculine of adjectives and pronouns is very common in Latin; *e.g.* **multī**, "many people," **bonī**, "good men," etc.

10. *Lit.,* *thought him to be deluded;* (*be deluded:* **errō**, 1).

11. **age** (imperative sing.).

* These numbers indicate the Reading Lessons to which the Exercises correspond.

EXERCISE II

(3–4)

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE — DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE — FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

MODEL SENTENCE

Paucīs post diēbus ad urbem rediit, He returned to the city a few days later, *or*, after a few days (*lit.* afterward by a few days).

RULE. *Degree of Difference is expressed by the ablative case.*

REMARK. The ablative of Degree of Difference has many applications in Latin, *e.g.* **multō maior,** "much greater" (*lit.* "greater by much"); but for the present the discussion is limited to *time* expressions.

MODEL SENTENCE

Agricolam rēgem fēcērunt, They made a farmer king.

RULE. *Verbs of Making, Appointing, Naming, etc., may take a predicate accusative along with their direct object.*

NOTE. In the corresponding passive construction, the direct object, of course, appears as subject of the verb, and the predicate noun too stands in the nominative ; *e.g.* **Mārcus rēx puerōrum appellātus est,** "Marcus was called king of the boys" (cf. the familiar predicate nominative with forms of the verb **sʌm**).

VOCABULARY

alter, -era, -erum, *the other* (of two).

amō, 1, *love, like.*

appellō, 1, *call, name.*

appropinquō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *draw near, approach ;* construed with the dative, or with **ad** and acc.

Eurōpa, -ae, F., *Europe.*

homō, -inis, C., *man.*

incola, -ae, M., *inhabitant, native.*

incolumis, -is, -e, *safe ;* often rendered by an adverb, *safely.*

interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, *kill.*

labōrō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *work, labor.*

pars, partis, F., *part.*

post, adv., *afterward, after, later.*

sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus, *realize ;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

trāns, prep., with acc., *across.*

Note 1.   Remember that **alter** belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular ; (consult, if necessary, the Note on p. 352). With regard to the inflection of **pars**, see the statement on p. 201.

Note 2.   **Homō** is the general term for " man " in the sense of " individual," or " human being." **Vir**, on the other hand, is a proper designation for a warrior or hero ; or it may be used to contrast " man " with " woman," " child," or the like.

Note 3.   While both **tūtus** and **incolumis** signify " safe," the former properly means " sheltered," and the latter " unharmed " ; *e.g.* locus tūtus, " a safe (sheltered) spot," but **imperātor incolumis est**, " the general is safe (unharmed)."

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

The future active participle of any verb may be formed by changing the ending of the perfect passive participle to -ūrus, *e.g.* amātus, amātūrus, -a, -um ; habitus, habitūrus, -a, -um ; etc. Turning to the Summary of Forms, note particularly that deponents, as well as other verbs, form this participle ; and observe also that **sum** has the form **futūrus**, though (by reason of its meaning) it is a verb that lacks the perfect passive participle.

Remark.   **Fugiō**, too, though lacking the perfect passive participle, yet has the future active form **fugitūrus, -a, -um.**

Used in connection with various forms of the verb **sum**, the future active participle designates an action as *about to take place* at the time indicated by the form of **sum**; *e.g :*

Exercitus castra mōtū-rus EST,	The army *is* about to break camp, The army *is* on the point of break-ing camp, The army *is* ready to break camp, etc.
Exercitūs castra mōtūrī ERANT,	The armies *were* about to break camp, The armies *were* on the point of breaking camp, The armies *were* ready to break camp, etc.

TRANSLATION

3. 1. The king was on the point of sending a part of the other[1] army to[2] capture the unknown commander; but after a few hours he set out across the mountains, and on the fifth day arrived home. 2. The settlers,[3] who were now[4] ready to cross the larger river, made a sailor their[5] leader; and when at the third hour of the day they had brought[6] the wagons by ship[7] to the other bank, they marched quickly to the smaller hill. 3. They are about to send men[8] to give axes to the soldiers whom the general has allowed to break camp. 4. In summer, small towns are often destroyed[9] with fire by the Indians; for then the settlers are working in the fields. 5. The inhabitants of all[10] these cities[11] were called[12] Indians by Columbus.

4. "Sit down[13] in the shade, boys," said Claudia. "Did you read that story about the ships of Columbus?" "We have read two thirds[14] of it,"[15] answered Quintus.

" I like Columbus, but I do not like his sailors, who were very bad men ; for they even[16] wanted to kill their[17] commander." " But," said Marcus, " when they saw[18] berries in the water and realized that the ship was drawing near to some[5] shore,[19] then at any rate they were glad,[20] I guess,[21] and praised[22] their[5] brave leader." " Did Columbus get back[23] to Europe safely ?" asked Quintus. " Columbus returned to Spain safely himself,"[24] replied Claudia ; " but all the settlers he[25] had left on an[26] island, the Indians killed."

1. See the Vocabulary of this Exercise.

2. In choosing the relative, note that "a part" is the antecedent.

3. colōnus.

4. nunc or iam ?

5. Omit.

6. vehō.

7. Use the pl. Name two ways of rendering " by " into Latin ; which is called for here ?

8. Pl. of is.

9. dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētus.

10. Place this modifier after the noun.

11. Note that urbs is a word of one syllable ending in -s preceded by a consonant.

12. What is the gender of the subject ?

13. *sit down :* sedeō.

14. *Lit., two parts.* Cf. note 11 above.

15. *of it :* omit.

16. etiam (adv.). Put immediately before the word meaning " to kill."

17. suus, -a, -um, placed after the noun (like meus, tuus, etc.). Until the function of this reflexive possessive adjective is later explained, the word should not be used at all, except when suggested in a footnote, as here. For the present, avoid also the reflexive pronoun suī apart from its familiar use in indirect discourse.

18. Imperfect or pluperfect tense ?

19. If the accusative is used, remember that the Latin word is neuter.

20. aetus.

21. opīnor, 1. Here parenthetical, as in the English.

22. laudō, 1.

23. *get back :* redeō.

24. *himself :* intensive pronoun (ipse).

25. *i.e. all the settlers* WHOM *he,* etc. In a Latin sentence the relative cannot be suppressed.

26. quīdam.

EXERCISE III

(5–6)

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Using **vocō** as a type, the six infinitives of a Latin verb
are as follows :

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Present	vocāre	vocārī
Perfect	vocāvisse	vocātus (-a, -um) esse
Future	vocātūrus (-a, -um) esse	vocātum īrī

NOTE. The new forms in this list can, for the most part, be
learned very readily ; for the perfect infinitive active is found by
dropping the final -m of **vocāvissem**, the perfect passive is formed
by adding **esse** to **vocātus**, and the future active by adding **esse** to
vocātūrus. The future passive infinitive is a peculiar and little-
used formation ; its first element is the accusative of a verbal noun
of the same derivation as the perfect passive participle.

Of the three infinitives of deponent verbs, the future needs
to be made a subject of special study. In Exercise II it was
pointed out that deponents have a future *active* participle ;
and it now remains to note that, utilizing this participle, they
make a future infinitive that is *active* (not passive) in form.
Thus, the three infinitives of **moror** are : present, **morārī** ;
perfect, **morātus (-a, -um) esse** ; but future, **morātūrus (-a,
-um) esse**.

With the verbs here cited as models, form all the infin-
itives of **habeō**, **mittō**, **rapiō**, and **audiō** ; also of **polliceor**,
proficīscor, **patior**, and **adorior**. Aside from **fīō**, irregular
verbs call for little attention in this connection.

RULE. *In Indirect Discourse the various tenses of the in-
finitive designate action as present, past, or future FROM THE
POINT OF VIEW of the subject of the governing verb of saying,
thinking, hearing, etc.*

Thus, to choose the tense of the infinitive correctly in indirect discourse, only one thing is necessary ; namely, to put one's self in the position of the person who says, thinks, or hears, and thus discover whether he regards something as *in progress* (present infinitive), or as already *accomplished* (perfect infinitive), or as *yet to be* (future infinitive).

MODEL SENTENCES

Colōnus dīcit, The settler *says*

(1) **nautam vocāre**, that the sailor *is* calling.

(2) **nautam vocāvisse**, that the sailor *has* called.

(3) **nautam vocātūrum esse**, that the sailor *will* call (*is going to* call, etc.).

Colōnus dīxit, The settler *said*

(1) **nautās vocārī**, that the sailors *were being* called.

(2) **nautās vocātōs esse**, that the sailors *had been* called.

(3) **nautās vocātum īrī**, that the sailors *would be* called.

REMARK.   Note that in the perfect passive and the future active infinitives the participles agree with the accusative subject ; whereas the verbal *noun* of the future infinitive passive suffers no change.

It is only when the governing verb of saying, thinking, hearing, etc. is in a *past* tense that there is likely to be any difficulty in determining how the subject of that verb views the action of the indirect discourse.   If doubt arises in such a case, recast the sentence in the Latin form, *e.g.* :

The soldier *said*

(1) that the sailors were on the way =
the sailors *to be* on the way (IN PROGRESS).

(2) that they had met the general =
them *to have met* the general (ACCOMPLISHED).

(3) that they would arrive tired out =
them *to be going to arrive* tired out (YET TO BE).

REMARK. Observe sentence (2) with special care, noting how the English is obliged to use the *pluperfect* tense (" had met ") in order to show clearly that the meeting is *past* from the point of view of the soldier; and remember that it is only when the person who speaks, thinks, hears, etc. so regards an action that the *perfect* infinitive is to be used. If this fact is firmly fixed in the mind, there will be little danger of confusing the types of sentence illustrated by (1) and (2).

NOTE. The *present* infinitive found with verbs like volō (*e.g.* volō īre, " I want to go ") is known as the Complementary Infinitive, because it " fills out " a phrase. The complementary infinitive, on occasion, may have a subject accusative (*e.g.* iubeō tē īre, " I order you to go ").

As contrasted with this, the infinitive in indirect discourse should *always* have a subject accusative, and *any one* of the three tenses may be called for. Hence, to write correctly, it is absolutely essential to know whether a given verb governs the complementary infinitive or whether it is construed with indirect discourse.

Including words used in the Primer, the following verbs governing the complementary infinitive have already been introduced: coepī, cōgō, cōnor, iubeō, mālō, nōlō, parō, patior, possum, and volō. Those governing indirect discourse are: audiō, cōgnōscō, dīcō, doceō, legō, polliceor, putō, and sentiō. In case of doubt, consult the List of Verb Constructions at the end of the book.

VOCABULARY

alius, -a, -ud, *another;* pl., *other.*

ante, adv., *before, earlier;* often accompanied by an abl. of Degree of Difference.

Cabot, -otis, M., *Cabot.*

crēdō, 3, crēdidī, crēditus, *believe, think;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

Faber, -brī, M., *Smith.*

modo, adv., *just now.*

nārrō, 1, *narrate, tell* (with

dat. of the person spoken
to); may be construed
with indirect discourse.

nāvigō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est,
sail.

nēmō, defective noun (dat.
nēminī; acc. nēminem), M.,
nobody, no one. The gen.

and abl. are supplied by
nūllīus and nūllō.

nōmen, -inis, N., *name.*

novus, -a, -um, *new.*

pōns, pontis, M., *bridge.*

spērō, 1, *hope ;* may be con-
strued with indirect dis-
course.

NOTE. For the declension of alius consult, if necessary, the
Note on p. 352. Then, turning back to the Vocabulary of Exer-
cise II, compare the meaning of this word with that of alter.
Above all, do not confuse either alter or alius with the *plural*
cēterī, -ae, -a.

REMARK. The plural aliī, as contrasted with cēterī, signifies
" (some) other " : *i.e.* aliī mīlitēs, " (some) other soldiers " ; but
cēterī mīlitēs, " (all) the other soldiers."

TRANSLATION

5. 1. I was on the point of saying that I[1] had seen
him a few days before.   2. Did you think that they would
make Marcus teacher of the boys?   3. At that time there
was nobody to send[2] with[3] us to the other river ; but a
man named[4] Smith told[5] us that there were bridges not
far away.   4. We hope that the inhabitants of the moun-
tains are good people,[6] and[7] that they[8] will not[7] kill with
their[9] axes the settlers, who with the greatest bravery[10]
are ready to cross the river without the army.   5. After
marching[11] a few miles, the soldiers[12] left a part of the
wagons in a safer hiding place, which the settlers said had
been discovered many years before by the wife of the
commander.

6. "Did you say that you liked Columbus, boys?" asked Claudia. "Do you want me to tell you another story about him?" "I said that I liked Columbus," answered Marcus; "but to-day we prefer to hear the[13] story you[14] were just now reading." "I was reading about a man who was called[15] Cabot," said Claudia. "He sailed with his[9] son across the sea to unknown shores, hoping[16] that he would thus reach[17] Asia. A new part of America at any rate was discovered by him; but he[18] believed that he had seen the coast of Asia. Don't tear[19] the book, Quintus; to-morrow I will tell you another story."

1. Do not forget that, in indirect discourse, the subject must be expressed.

2. Turn into the passive (cf. the second group of model sentences in Exercise I).

3. The preposition **cum** is postpositive with the following pronouns: **ego** and **tū** (personal), **quī** (relative), and **suī** (third person reflexive).

4. *Lit., by name.*

5. Use **dīcō** (with dat.).

6. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I; and remember that a predicate noun stands in the same case as the subject.

7. *and . . . not:* **nec.**

8. The subject of the indirect discourse need not be repeated by inserting a pronoun at this point.

9. Omit.

10. *Lit., most bravely.*

11. Translate by a **cum**-clause, taking care to select the proper tense of the subjunctive.

12. As the **cum**-clause and the main clause have a common subject (**mīlitēs**), that subject should be placed first in the sentence.

13. is.

14. Express the subject. See also footnote 25 on Exercise II.

15. Not **vocō**.

16. Use again a **cum**-clause; for Latin employs very sparingly the nominative of the present participle. Here **cum** would mean, literally, "since."

17. **perveniō ad.**

18. **ille.** The noun use of this word is common.

19. **discerpō, 3, -cerpsī, -cerptus.**

EXERCISE IV
(7–9)
DUM WITH THE PRESENT INDICATIVE
MODEL SENTENCE

Dum haec fīunt, hostēs subitō castra adortī sunt, While this was happening, the enemy suddenly attacked the camp.

RULE.   **Dum** ("*while*") *is used with the PRESENT indicative to describe a PAST action that was in progress when something else took place.*

NOTE.   It will be observed that **dum** with the present indicative performs almost the same function as does **cum** with the imperfect subjunctive.   But there is a slight difference which must be noted ; *e.g. :*

Cum in hortō essem, laetus eram, "While I was in the garden, I was happy."

Dum haec domī fīunt, Caesar oppidum hostium cēpit,   "While this was happening at home, Caesar took a town of the enemy."

In the first of the above sentences, the **cum**-clause indicates, not *time* merely, but *circumstance* as well, *i.e.* it implies that being in the garden was the *cause* of the speaker's pleasant frame of mind ; in the other sentence, the **dum**-clause shows that the two events there mentioned were contemporaneous, but does not necessarily hint at any other connection between them.   Watch carefully for opportunities to use the **dum**-construction.

VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, N., *arms.*

dum, conj., *while.*

ē, ex, prep., with abl., *of.*

Gallī, -ōrum, M., *Frenchmen.*

maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum est, *remain, stay.*

semper, adv., *always.*

soleō, 2, solitus sum, *lit., be accustomed ;* may be construed with the complementary infinitive.

NOTE 1. **Ē, ex** in the sense of "of" is found with numerals (particularly **ūnus, duo,** and **trēs**), and with the pronoun **quīdam**; *e.g.* **ūnus ē puerīs,** "one of the boys"; **quīdam ē mīlitibus,** "(a certain) one of the soldiers."

NOTE 2. For **soleō** the translation "be accustomed" is rather formal; but it gives the key to all other renderings of the word; *e.g.* **īre solēbat,** "he *usually* went," "it *was his custom* to go," "he *used* to go," etc. In learning the principal parts of this verb, observe that it is a semi-deponent; *i.e.* its meaning is active throughout, but in the perfect tenses only passive forms are found. The full list of such semi-deponents is: **audeō, fīdō, gaudeō,** and **soleō.**

TRANSLATION

7. 1. Let us hope that one of the soldiers will take the other[1] boy to his[2] mother. 2. While this[3] was being said to the general, the braver settlers were on the point of breaking down[4] the bridge with huge rocks. 3. Come, boys, into the fields. Don't think that I am going to allow you to dally[5] at home. 4. A few hours afterward horses were given to one of the sailors to[6] take home. 5. Had you realized that there was no one to call the boys?

8. 1. In those days[7] the settlers usually took[8] their[2] arms with them[9] into the fields; for they were always in fear of[10] an attack from[11] bitter[12] enemies. They[13] certainly were brave men.[14] Their[2] leader was named[15] Smith. 2. Marcus says that America was discovered by Columbus; but many people[14] think that another[1] man[2] discovered it many years before. 3. I believe that the king's son used to make one of the settlers leader against[16] the Indians.

9. "I have come to tell you[17] another story, Marcus," said Claudia. "Is your brother at home to-day?"

"Quintus has gone to the shore to see a great ship that
has been broken [18] by the waves," replied Marcus; "but *I* [19]
want to hear the story.   About whom have you been
reading?"[20]   "I was just now reading about a man
named Smith,"[21] said Claudia.   "He sailed often from
Europe to America, and once was captured by French-
men, who compelled him to remain with them [9] many days;
however,[22] he at length [23] reached [24] home safely.   But
look![25] I think I see Quintus coming."

1. Cf. the latter part of the
Note on p. 210.

2. Omit.

3. Neut. pl. of hīc.

4. *break down:* frangō.

5. moror.

6. See the second group of
model sentences in Exercise I.

7. Pl. of tempus.

8. ferō.

9. sēcum.

10. *be in fear of:* timeō.

11. *Lit., of.*

12. ācer.

13. ille; cf. footnote 18 on Ex-
ercise III.

14. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I.

15. Imperfect tense.

16. contrā, prep., with acc.

17. How many persons has
the speaker in mind?

18. *a . . . ship that has been*

broken: lit., a . . . ship broken
(perf. pass. partic.).

19. When the subject is em-
phasized, as here, the pronoun
must be written in the Latin sen-
tence.

20. Perfect tense.

21. *named Smith: lit., Smith
by name.*   The word for "Smith"
should be in the same case as that
for "man."   An amplifying or
explanatory noun may thus stand
"in apposition" with any of the
cases; but examples of the nom-
inative are, of course, most fre-
quent (*e.g.* "Ferdinand, King of
Spain").

22. Be careful of the order of
words.

23. *at length: i.e. at last.*

24. Use redeō.

25. aspiciō, 3, aspēxī, aspectus.

EXERCISE V

(10–12)

THE GERUND—DATIVE OF POSSESSION

Unlike the gerundive, which is an *adjective*, the gerund is a (verbal) *noun*, and is found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular ; *e.g.*:

> Gen.   voc**andī**
> Dat.   voc**andō**
> Acc.   voc**andum**
> Abl.   voc**andō**

With **vocō** as a model, construct the gerund of one regular verb of each conjugation. Deponents form their gerund in the usual way. Among the irregular verbs, note that the gerund of **eō** is **eundī**, **eundō**, etc., and that **fīō** has no gerund forms.

MODEL SENTENCE

Pugnandō urbem cēpērunt, By fighting they got possession of the city.

NOTE. For the present, the discussion is limited to the ablative case of the gerund. In the model sentence, observe how **pugnandō** expresses Means, just as the ablative of any other noun might do.

REMARK. An English word like " fighting " may be either a verbal noun or a present participle. In dealing with such forms, therefore, care must be taken to determine whether they are nouns or participles before attempting to translate them into Latin.

MODEL SENTENCE

Colōnī fīliō equus pulcher est, The settler's son has a fine horse.

Rule. *The fact of possession may be indicated by the use of the dative case in connection with a form of the verb* **sum.**

Remark. This method of indicating possession should be employed in preference to the use of **habeō** until it is thoroughly familiar.

VOCABULARY

adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *bring, carry* (to).

atque, ac, conj., *and.*

Britannia, -ae, F., *England.*

Caesar, -aris, M., *Caesar.*

cibus, -ī, M., *food.*

cōpiae, -ārum, F., *troops, forces.*

ēvādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est, *escape.*

Hudsō, -ōnis, M., *Hudson.*

morior, 3, mortuus sum (future partic. **moritūrus, -a, -um**), *die.*

Novum (-ī) Eborācum, -ī, N., *New York* (city).

scapha, -ae, F., *skiff, open boat.*

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write ;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

ubi, relative adv., *where.*

Note 1. Of the forms **atque** and **ac,** the former should be used when the following word begins with a vowel or *h.*

Note 2. The relative use of **ubi** may be seen in a sentence like **hīc est locus, ubi ursae latent,** "This is the place where (*i.e.* in which) the bears hide."

TRANSLATION

10. 1. Did you think that all the Indians would escape by running? 2. The king has many children, but I be-

lieve that he has found no one to teach[1] them.   3. The natives called the island Cuba, and that[2] name has remained these many years.   4. While[3] the horses were being taken[4] across the river on[5] a ship, two of the soldiers quickly seized[6] an open boat, and another[7] brought the arms.   5. Either[8] at that time or[8] a few days earlier, the troops of our general, much disturbed by this happening,[9] were on the point of attacking the town.

11. 1. Don't fear the smaller waves.   2. We had axes and daggers;[10] but[11] while the Indians were crossing the hill, we were marching to the river, that there might be some one[12] there to guard the longer bridge.   3. The boys were busy[13] reading and writing;[14] but one of the girls told us a story about a man named Caesar,[15] who once sailed to England and captured a part of that island. 4. In the winter time Caesar used to stay in camp,[16] but in summer he always would[17] march many miles across mountains and rivers to attack the towns of the enemy.[18]

12. "I hope that Claudia will come to-day," said Quintus to Marcus. "For I was not at home yesterday, and so I did not hear the story about the man named Smith."[19] "*I*[20] have heard a new story," replied Marcus. "My father told me that a man called Hudson[15] set out from Europe, and that the island, where New York now is, was discovered by him. A[21] little later Hudson came again[22] to America, and there found a great unknown[23] sea ; but when the sailors[24] realized[25] that they had used up nearly[26] all the food, they deserted[27] their[28] commander, and many people believe that he died in a skiff on the open[29] sea."[30]

1. Usually an infinitive has no effect upon the tense of the subjunctive in a clause dependent upon it. But the perfect infinitive restricts the subjunctive in such clauses to the imperfect and plu-

perfect. Express purpose here by means of a relative clause.

2. is.

3. dum.

4. vehō.

5. *Lit.*, *by*.

6. capiō.

7. Cf. the latter part of the Note on p. 210.

8. *either . . . or:* aut . . . aut.

9. *i.e. circumstance,* or *thing.*

10. sīca, -ae, F.

11. In connection with the conjunctions cum and dum, autem is preferred to sed; *e.g.* cum autem, dum autem, etc.

12. Use the pl. of is.

13. occupātus, -a, -um.

14. *i.e. with reading and writing.*

15. Cf. footnote 21 on Exercise IV.

16. Use the idiom: sē castrīs tenēre.

17. Translate by the choice of tense.

18. Pl., as usual.

19. *i.e. who was called Smith.* Use the imperfect tense (and cf. footnote 15 on Exercise III).

20. Cf. footnote 19 on Exercise IV.

21. Not indirect discourse.

22. *came again: i.e. returned.*

23. Place this second modifier after the noun.

24. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

25. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise II.

26. *i.e. almost.*

27. relinquō.

28. Omit.

29. apertus, -a, -um.

30. Be careful of the spelling.

EXERCISE VI

(13–15)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES I TO V — SEQUENCE OF TENSES

VOCABULARY

arbitror, 1, *think, suppose;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

cum, causal conj., *since, as.*

Cūriō, -ōnis, M., *Curio.*

incendō, 3, -cendī, -cēnsus, *burn, set on fire, fire.*

lēgātus, -ī, M., *captain.*

mēnsis, -is (abl. -e), M., *month.*

nescio, 4, **-scīvī**, *not know;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

Nova (-ae) Britannia, -ae, F., *New England.*

Prissilla, -ae, F., *Priscilla.*

quamquam, conj., *although, though.*

Standisius, -sī, M., *Standish.*

tamen, adv. and conj., *still, yet, nevertheless.*

NOTE 1. When **cum** develops the full causal sense "since," "as," it is no longer restricted to the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, but may be followed by *any* tense of that mood.

NOTE 2. On the genitive (and vocative) form **Standísī**, see Notes 1 and 2 on pp. 345–346. The other cases of the name, of course, proceed regularly (**Standisiō, Standisium,** etc.).

NOTE 3. **Tamen** should not be placed first in a *sentence;* but it often stands first in its *clause,* when balancing a word like **quam-quam** in a preceding clause; *e.g.* **Agricola, quamquam īrātus est, tamen fīlium vocāre nōn vult,** "Although the farmer is angry, still he is not willing to call his son." In no case should **tamen** be placed later than second in its sentence or clause.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Of the constructions already familiar, the purpose clause most clearly illustrates a fundamental law running through all Latin sentence-structure, namely, that the tense of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses is influenced by the tense of the verb of the governing clause. This fundamental principle is known as the Law of Sequence of Tenses. It may be summarized as follows :

RULE. *In dependent subjunctive clauses, the present or perfect tense is required when the verb of the governing clause is a Present, Future, or Future Perfect (Primary Sequence); the imperfect or pluperfect is required when the verb of the governing clause is an Imperfect, Perfect, or Pluperfect (Secondary Sequence).*

NOTE. With rare exceptions, the above rule holds good whatever the mood of the governing verb may be (for we often have, for example, subjunctive dependent upon subjunctive). It is the *tense* of the governing verb that is the decisive thing.

The following table illustrates the Law of Sequence of Tenses as applied to clauses introduced by **cum** in the causal sense :

Primary	**Cum virī vocent**, Since the men are calling, **Cum virī vocāverint**, Since the men have called,	**ego vocāre nōlō**, I do not care to call.
Secondary	**Cum virī vocārent**, Since the men were calling, **Cum virī vocāvissent**, Since the men had called,	**ego vocāre nōluī**, I did not care to call.

NOTE 1. While the general principle illustrated above accounts equally well for the *tense* of the subjunctive in **cum**-clauses and in purpose clauses, it is well to note here, at the very outset, that the force of the present and imperfect subjunctive in purpose clauses is somewhat peculiar. In **cum**-clauses (see above) the present and imperfect subjunctive denote action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb; but, since a purpose is something *looked forward to* (*e.g.* **vēnit, ut emeret**, " He came that he *might buy* "), the present and imperfect subjunctive in purpose clauses necessarily have to do with action that is *future* from the point of view of the governing verb.

NOTE 2. The perfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive (not employed in purpose clauses) designate an action as *antecedent* to that of the governing verb ; see the second and fourth of the sentences in the table above. If the forms of the perfect subjunctive are not thoroughly familiar, they should be reviewed at this point.

TRANSLATION

13. 1. Since this skiff is usually left[1] on the shore, let's call a sailor to[2] take us to the island. 2. I can[3] see one of our sailors ; but I think that the other skiff has already[4] crossed the river. 3. While[5] the forces of the enemy were firing the town, some[6] settlers were bringing food in[7] wagons to the fort. 4. By lying[8] on the ground, the sailors thought that they would deceive[9] the enemy. 5. Although no farmer had[10] a horse, do you yet believe that the Indians will not capture[11] their wives?

14. 1. A few days before, the same soldiers were on the point of crossing the mountains ; but do not imagine[12] that the army wanted to desert its[13] leader. 2. Although a man named Curio had been appointed[14] commander, still at that time there was no one to provide[15] grain for the army[16] which had escaped across the river. 3. Since you have made a boy your[3] guide,[17] guard your horses well.[18] *We* prefer another leader. 4. On all sides the Indians, who had arms, now came together more readily to attack the fort.

15. "Come into the garden," said Marcus ; "to-day *I* will tell you a story." "Good,"[19] said Claudia and Quintus ; "let's hear it.[3]" "Once," said Marcus, "there was a very brave captain named Standish. He had sailed from Europe to New England along with a few settlers, and[20] during the following[21] winter his wife died. A few months later he thought that he was going to marry[22] a[6] pretty[23] girl, but she[24] preferred another man."[3] "What was the girl's name?"[25] inquired Quintus. "I don't know," answered Marcus. "Do *you*,[26] Claudia?" "I think that her[27] name was Priscilla," replied Claudia.

1. *is . . . left :* do not mistake the tense.

2. Relative clause.

3. Omit.

4. **iam.**

5. **dum.**

6. **quīdam.**

7. *Lit., by.*

8. Cf. Exercise V.

9. **ēlūdō,** 3, **-lūsī, -lūsus.**

10. Not **habeō.**

11. The future active infinitive is often written without **esse.**

12. **putō.**

13. **suus, -a, -um** ; cf. footnote 17 on Exercise II.

14. Pass. of **faciō.**

15. **dō.**

16. Dative case.

17. **dux.**

18. **dīligenter.**

19. **optimē** (adv.).

20. Use **atque (ac)** occasionally, in order to become familiar with this conjunction.

21. **proximus, -a, -um.**   Note that this phrase does *not* express Extent of Time.

22. **in mātrimōnium dūcō.**

23. Place this second modifier after the noun.

24. **ille** ; cf. footnote 18 on Exercise III.

25. *Lit., by what* (**quī**) *name was the girl called ?*   Interrogative words, when possible, should be placed first in the sentence.

26. *i.e. do* YOU *know* (**sciō,** 4, **scīvī, scītus**).   The particle **-ne** may be attached to a pronoun.

27. Recast the clause, and use a dative of possession.

EXERCISE VII

(16–18)

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

MODEL SENTENCES

Colōnīs interfectīs, Indī vīllās statim incendērunt, After killing the settlers (the settlers having been killed), the Indians at once fired the farmhouses.

Vēnātōre duce mīlitēs flūmen trānsiērunt, With a hunter as guide (a hunter [being] guide), the soldiers crossed the river.

The above sentences illustrate the two most important varieties of the ablative absolute construction.   The first

type, consisting of a noun and the perfect passive participle, is already very familiar ; in the other, two nouns in the ablative case are simply placed side by side, without any verbal form to connect them.

REMARK 1. In ablative absolutes of the first type, the *present* participle is occasionally used, with or without an object ; *e.g.* **Indīs urbem incendentibus, nāvēs ad lītus appropinquābant,** " As the Indians were firing the town, the ships were approaching the shore." And an occasional variant on the second type is afforded by ablative absolutes made up of a noun and an *adjective ; e.g.* **Nautīs incolumibus nāvēs rediērunt,** " With sailors unharmed (the sailors [being] safe) the ships returned."

REMARK 2. Since the literal renderings of the ablative absolute are so crude, it is almost always necessary to represent this construction in some other way in English ; see the examples above.

VOCABULARY

audeō, 2, **ausus sum,** *dare, venture ;* may be construed with the complementary infinitive.

auxilium, -lī, N., *aid, help.*

bōs, bovis, M. and F., *ox, cow ;* pl. M., *cattle.* See the Summary of Forms, p. 348.

Castor, -oris, M., *Castor.*

cōnscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus, *climb, scale, board* (a ship).

longinquus, -a, -um, *distant.*

nūntiō, 1, *announce ;* with dat., *inform, tell.* May be construed with indirect discourse.

oppidānī, -ōrum, M., *townspeople.*

Pollūx, -ūcis, M., *Pollux.*

Rōmānus, -ī, M., *a Roman ;* pl., *the Romans.*

sīs, *please ;* pl., **sultis.**

tēlum, -ī, N., *weapon.* **tēlum** (tēla) **mittere,** *to shoot, to fire.*

vincō, 3, **vīcī, victus,** *win ;* with acc., *overcome, subdue, defeat, beat.*

NOTE 1.   Observe that **audeō** is a semi-deponent (cf. the latter part of Note 2 on p. 213.

NOTE 2.   On the declension of **auxilium**, see Note 2 on p. 219.

NOTE 3.   **Sīs** and **sultis** are short for **sī vīs** and **sī vultis** (*lit.* " if you will ").

TRANSLATION

16. 1. With Marcus for teacher, the boys are usually tired with play,[1] and[2] not with reading or writing.   2. Since the son of one settler had promised that he would send better horses, we stopped[3] a few hours in the shade, and sent two of the boys into the town.   3. While[4] the cattle were crossing the field, the sailors whom you saw on the ship were hiding along[5] the shore, and[6] did not[6] dare to shoot at[7] the soldiers.   4. The hunters who were on the point of boarding the ship had a bear and four monkeys.   5. Are there more waves to-day ?

17. 1. After throwing[8] the food into the water, Marcus escaped into the tent, and the other[9] boy ran home. 2. With Caesar for general, I hope that we shall overcome the enemy.[10]   3. We did not know that the captain had died a few months before.   4. Although we hear that arms are usually brought by the settlers from all[11] parts of the mountains, still we do not dare at this time to set out with the cattle.   5. Send forces[12] to guard[13] the wives and children of all the settlers.   6. Have you heard about these more important[14] matters?[15]

18. " Tell me a story to-day about the Romans,[16] please," said Quintus to Claudia. " We were just now reading about Castor and Pollux," said Claudia. " The Romans think that these gods once rushed[17] suddenly into the fight,[18] and that by their aid the enemy were beaten. Some[19]

say too[20] that a few hours later the same gods met a[19] Roman on a distant road, and bade him announce[21] to his[22] townspeople that the Romans had won." "I don't believe that[23] story," remarked Quintus. "What do *you* think of it,[24] Marcus?"

1. *Lit., with playing.*

2. Omit.

3. **moror.**

4. **dum.**

5. **per.**

6. *and . . . not :* **neque.**

7. **in.**

8. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise III ; or use an abl. absol.

9. Cf. the latter part of the Note on p. 210.

10. Pl. ; and cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.

11. Place this modifier before the preposition.

12. See the Vocabulary of Exercise V.

13. Use a relative clause.

14. *important :* **magnus.** Put this second modifier after the noun ; and place the whole prepositional phrase first in the sentence, omitting -ne.

15. *i.e.   circumstances,   or things.*

16. *about the Romans :* put first in the sentence.

17. **currō.**

18. **pugna.**

19. **quīdam.**

20. **etiam** (adv.) ; place before the verb of saying.

21. *i.e. ordered him to announce.*

22. **suus, -a, -um ;** cf. again footnote 17 on Exercise II.

23. **hīc.**

24. *of it : i.e. about it.*

EXERCISE VIII

(19–21)

ABLATIVE OF MANNER — REVIEW OF THE GERUNDIVE

MODEL SENTENCES

Maximā celeritāte hostēs fūgērunt, The enemy fled at top speed (with the greatest swiftness).

Omnibus modīs montem capere cōnātī sunt, They strove by every means (in every way) to take the mountain.

RULE.   *Manner may be expressed by a noun in the ablative case with an adjective modifier.*

THE GERUNDIVE

Remember that, in distinction from the gerund (verbal noun), the gerundive is an *adjective*, *e.g.* **vocandus, -a, -um, habendus, -a, -um**, etc.; also that, in connection with forms of the verb **sum**, the gerundive indicates that a thing *must, ought, should,* or *needs to* be done, *e.g.*:

Mulier vocanda est, The woman must be called.

Putō mulierem vocandam esse, I think that the woman ought to be called.

Caesar sequendus est, Caesar should be followed.

Note particularly the last of the above examples, observing that the gerundive of a deponent has the regular *passive* force. For the verb **eō**, see the Summary of Forms, p. 374; and note that **fīō** has no gerundive.

REMARK. Deponent verbs have peculiarities that demand very careful study. It has already been pointed out that for their future infinitive they choose the *active* form (*e.g.* **secūtūrus esse**); and to this is now added the interesting observation that their gerundive is *passive* in meaning as well as in form.

VOCABULARY

celeritās, -ātis, F., *speed, swiftness*.

cēnō, I, -āvī, (-ātus), *dine*.

dēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus, *surrender* (something); construed in the same way as the verb **dō**.

Hispānī, -ōrum, M., *the Spaniards*.

modus, -ī, M., *way, means, fashion*.

nē . . . quidem, adverbial phrase, *not even*.

Pompēius, -ēī, M., *Pompey*.

prōgredior, 3, -gressus sum, *advance*.

quondam, adv., *formerly, once*.

senātus, -ūs, M., *senate*.

Sertōrius, -rī, M., *Sertorius*.

virtūs, -ūtis, F., *bravery, valor, courage*.

NOTE 1. The phrase **nē . . . quidem** is always divided, the word or words to be emphasized standing between the two parts, *e.g.* **nē Caesar quidem hoc facere potest,** "Not even Caesar can do this."

NOTE 2. On the declension of **Pompēius** and **Sertōrius,** cf. Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

TRANSLATION

19. 1. Do not advance to the river, soldiers; for the camp needs to be guarded in every way.[1] 2. After calling[2] the settlers, the general appointed[3] a sailor to be[4] the guide of the hunters, and sent them to give aid[5] to the soldiers, who were now weary with fighting.[6] 3. A way[7] must be made by the sword; for the guide is now informing[8] the general that the enemy have captured our ships. 4. Since we have in no way been able to take that town, let us break camp, seize the cattle, and[9] destroy[10] the ships with fire. 5. Did he say this[11] to the brother of any[12] praetor[13] in the senate yesterday? Did he think that my father ought to be warned?

20. 1. I think that the townspeople, who have[14] weapons, should be seized; but[15] since our commander hopes that in a few days they will surrender their[16] leader to us, I suppose that we shall not kill them. 2. While our forces were fighting with great bravery, one of the Indians set out to burn some[17] distant farmhouses. 3. We are about to send a sailor to board the vessel and get[18] the boy whom you heard had escaped from the fort. 4. Have they learned the cause[19] of all[20] these things? 5. All those[16] who had dared to advance into the valleys were overcome by our men,[21] and within a few days we shall attack the towns.

21. *Sertorius*

A [17] leader named [22] Sertorius, who had crossed over to [23] Spain, was loved by the Spaniards most devotedly.[24]   For many years the Romans tried to capture him,[25] but not even Pompey could subdue his armies.   But [15] when the war had been waged for a long time, the Romans won in an inglorious [26] fashion.   For one day,[27] as [28] he was dining, Sertorius [29] was assassinated [30] by one [31] of his own [32] captains.

1. *every way :* use the pl.

2. Cf. footnotes 11 and 12 on Exercise III.

3. **faciō.**

4. *to be :* omit.

5. *Lit., to bring* (**ferō**) *aid.* This idiom governs the dative case.

6. See Exercise V.

7. *i.e. road.*

8. *Lit., is . . . announcing to.*

9. **-que.**

10. **dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētus.**

11. Neut. pl. of **hīc.**

12. **ūllus.**

13. **praetor, -ōris,** M.

14. Not **habeō.**

15. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise V.

16. Omit.

17. **quīdam.**

18. **petō.**

19. **causa, -ae,** F.

20. Place this modifier after the noun.

21. **nostrī, -ōrum,** M. (cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I).

22. Translate in two ways.

23. **trānseō in.**

24. *most devotedly :* **ūnicē** (adv.).

25. Use a relative, placing it first in the sentence.

26. **haud illūstris, -is, -e.** Place after the noun, and be careful of the spelling.

27. **ōlim.**

28. **cum.**

29. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

30. *i.e. was killed.*

31. **quīdam** (cf. Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise IV).

32. *his own :* **suus, -a, -um,** placed *before* the noun, thus marking the emphasis.

EXERCISE IX

(22–24)

THE INDIRECT OBJECT WITH CERTAIN VERBS

It is a fact already familiar that, in addition to an accusative, verbs of giving, saying, and the like may govern also a dative of the indirect object; *e.g.* **canem puerō dat,** " He is giving a dog to the boy."

Somewhat different, however, is another important class of verbs, which, while lacking a direct object, yet govern a dative of the indirect object. It happens, unfortunately, that verbs of this latter class are generally most conveniently represented in English by expressions that suggest the use of a direct object or of some other substitute for the dative which the Latin words require; and it therefore becomes necessary to memorize a selected list of these Latin verbs, and to fix firmly in mind the fact that they govern the dative case.

RULE. **Crēdō, faveō, fīdō, īgnōscō, imperō, invideō, īrāscor, minor, noceō, opitulor, parcō, pāreō, persuādeō, placeō, resistō, serviō,** *and* **suscēnseō** *govern a dative of the indirect object.*

NOTE. Taking these verbs in the above order, they may be rendered conventionally : " trust,* favor, confide, pardon, command, envy, be angry, threaten, injure, aid, spare, obey, persuade, please, resist, serve, be offended." As intimated above, hardly any of these renderings suggest an indirect object, the reason being (at least in great part) that they are not exact equivalents for the Latin verbs ; thus, **noceō,** which is commonly translated " injure," really signifies " be injurious," " work injury," or the like — meanings which obviously call for the dative case. For the

* When **crēdō** means " believe (a thing)," it takes a direct object.

present, only the Latin verbs should be memorized. The English meanings are best taken up as the verbs are introduced into the Exercise Vocabularies.

REMARK. For the class of verbs here under discussion, the passive construction (including the gerundive` is peculiar, and should not be attempted until it has been explained in a later Exercise.

VOCABULARY

Cicerō, -ōnis, M., *Cicero.*
cōmitās, -ātis, F., *kindliness.*
cōnsul, -ulis, M., *consul.*
nō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *swim.*
persuādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est, *persuade ;* governs the dative case, often along with a purpose clause introduced by ut or nē.
proelium, -ī, N., *battle.*
quod, conj., *because.*
summus, -a, -um, *greatest.*
ter, adv., *three times.*

NOTE 1. **Persuādeō** strictly means something like "make (it) agreeable," hence its construction with the dative case.

NOTE 2. Strictly, **summus** is the superlative of **superior, -ior, -ius,** "higher," "superior."

TRANSLATION

22. 1. Did you dare[1] to persuade them to set out at this time of day ? 2. We thought that the children ought to be addressed[2] with the greatest kindliness. 3. With Cicero for consul, the Romans will in every way give aid[3] to those most wretched[4] settlers. 4. Since the enemy were trying to escape by running away, we sent men[5] to all parts of the city to warn the soldiers. 5. They think that not even the son of this man[6] can persuade the senate. 6. Although nobody believes that the valor of our forces was great, still only a few of[7] the enemy escaped from the battle.

23. 1. Not even Curio was able to persuade the other[8] regiment not to advance against[9] the fort. 2. Formerly the farmers used to guard their[10] cattle with weapons at night; but now they do not fear fierce attacks of the enemy. 3. After[11] the general had dined, he was surrendered to the soldiers whom the enemy had sent. 4. While[12] *you* were returning with all[13] speed from the ship, *we* were persuading the hunters to bring weapons. 5. I did not know that one of the generals had[14] a son.

24. *A Wreck* *

Formerly ships used frequently to be broken on[15] the rocks, because there were no lights[16] to warn the sailors. Once when a great ship had been carried[17] by the winds[18] against a[19] reef,[20] and men[21] were being swept overboard[22] by the waves, a certain man,[21] mounted on[23] a very fine[24] horse, rushed[25] into the water with a rope,[26] which with the greatest difficulty[27] he carried to the ship. A few sailors seized the rope, and the powerful horse very readily swam with them[28] to the shore. This[29] was done three times. But then the brave animal[30] suddenly fell to the ground, and a little later died.

1. The particle -ne divides even a verbal phrase; *e.g.* occīsusne est ?

2. appellō.

3. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise VIII.

4. Place this second modifier after the noun.

5. Pl. of is.

6. In this phrase " this " is the emphatic word.

7. *only a few of :* paucī. Place after the noun.

8. Be careful to choose the right word.

9. ad.

10. Omit.

11. Use cum; and cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

12. Do not forget to use dum, as occasion offers.

* It is not expected that the headings of stories will be translated.

13. *Lit., the greatest.* Translate "greatest" in two ways.

14. Is this *past* or *present* from the point of view of the subject of the governing verb ? Choose the tense of the infinitive accordingly.

15. ·in (with acc.).

16. lūmen, -inis, N.

17. adferō.

18. ventus, -ī, M.

19. quīdam.

20. saxum longum.

21. vir or homō ?

22. *sweep overboard:* in mare prōiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus.

23. *Lit., carried* (vehō) *by.*

24. *fine:* pulcher.

25. *Lit., ran.*

26. fūnis, -is, M.

27. labor, -ōris, M.

28. *Lit., by swimming carried* (vehō) *them.*

29. Use a relative.

30. *Lit., horse.*

EXERCISE X

(25–27)

NEGATIVE CONNECTIVE

MODEL SENTENCES

Indī mīsērunt tēla, nec fūgērunt, The Indians fired, and did not run.

Nauta ad lītus fūgit, nec quisquam eum vīdit, The sailor sped to the shore, and no one saw him.

Vēnī, neque umquam redībō, I have come, and shall never return.

RULE. *When two connected phrases are coördinate and the second contains a negative, the negative element should be united, if possible, with the conjunction.*

REMARK. Clauses are called coördinate when they are of equal rank ; *e.g.* "I came *and* I saw" (as contrasted with "I came *that* I might see.").

Applying the rule to the model sentences above, observe that Latin makes the following combinations :

for   "*and* not "   "nor " (**nec**)
for   "*and* no one "   "nor any one " (**nec quisquam**)
for   "*and* never "   "nor ever " (**neque umquam**)

NOTE.   Of the forms **neque** and **nec**, the former should be used
when the following word begins with a vowel or *h*.

VOCABULARY

Carthāgō, -inis, F., *Carthage*.
Hamilcar, -aris, M., *Hamil-
car*.
Hannibal, -alis, M., *Hanni-
bal*.
iterum, adv., *again*.
loquor, 3, **locūtus sum**, *talk;*
construed with **cum** and
the ablative.

opperior, 4, **oppertus sum**, *wait
for*.
quisquam, ——, **quidquam**,
any one, anything; used
mostly in negative clauses.
See the Summary of
Forms, p. 358.
umquam, adv., *ever;* used
mostly in negative clauses.

TRANSLATION

25. I. The other sailors have not come, and we do not
think that they should be waited for.   2. Do you think
that you saw the settler following[1] the Indians?   3. Try,[2]
soldiers, by running and fighting to make a way by which
to take[3] the horses to the fort.   4. The man says that the
kings of these cities[4] are already[5] in the tent, and that[6]
nobody is going to talk with them.   5. They are trying
to persuade the general not to wait for larger forces, and
they never will persuade him.

26. I. Three times, by his[7] kindliness, Cicero has very
easily persuaded one of the men to talk.   2. Follow
quickly, Marcus, and, with me for leader, try to scale[8] this
mountain.   3. While the settlers were swimming to the
other bank, *we* could in no way reach the hill, and did
not see the Indians advancing.   4. Since the consul had

escaped a few days later, not even his[9] wife thought that the enemy should be attacked.[10]   5. Upon[11] that fort many assaults were made very fiercely by the enemy.

27. *Hannibal*

A great[12] general, named Hamilcar, had a small son who was called Hannibal.   For a few years Hannibal lived in Africa; but his[9] father was always waging war,[13] and the boy could not see[14] him often.   One time,[15] when Hamilcar was about to cross over to[16] Spain, Hannibal wanted to sail with him.[17]   This[18] Hamilcar allowed, but he made[19] his[9] son promise that he[20] never would love the Romans; for he feared[21] that nation, and thought[21] that it would at some time[22] again send armies into Africa to attack[23] Carthage.

1. Review, at this point, the participles of deponent verbs. (In this connection it may prove helpful to write a complete synopsis of the deponent verb, as thus far studied.)

2. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

3. Turn into the passive; and, here and elsewhere, bear in mind the fact that the Latin infinitive is not to be used to express *purpose*.

4. For the spelling, see the statement on p. 201.

5. **iam**.

6. Note that this and the preceding clause are coördinate.

7. **suus, -a, -um**.

8. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VII.

9. Omit.

10. In indirect discourse the gerundive is frequently written without **esse**.

11. **in** (with acc.).

12. **summus**.

13. Use the pl.

14. *Lit., meet*.

15. *i.e. once*.

16. Cf. footnote 23 on Exercise VIII.

17. *with him :* **ūnā** (adv.).

18. Cf. footnote 29 on Exercise IX.

19. *i.e. compelled*.

20. Namely, Hannibal.

21. Imperfect tense.

22. *at some time :* **aliquandō** (adv.).

23. In translating this phrase, bear in mind the first statement in footnote 1 on Exercise V.

EXERCISE XI

(28–30)

DATIVE OF AGENCY — THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

MODEL SENTENCE

Oppidānī mihi monendī sunt, I must warn the townspeople (*lit.* the townspeople must be warned by me).

RULE.   *With the gerundive and a form of the verb* **sum**, *Agency is expressed by the dative case.*

NOTE.   When this construction occurs in indirect discourse, and the agent is the same as the third person subject of a governing verb of saying, thinking, etc., the reflexive pronoun must be used, *e.g.* **Nauta putat oppidānōs sibi monendōs esse,** " The sailor thinks that he ought to warn the townspeople."

REMARK.   From this point on, special care must be taken to keep clear and distinct the three following constructions : (1) the ablative of Means, (2) the dative of Agency, and (3) the regular Agency construction (namely, the ablative with **ā, ab**).

MODEL SENTENCE

Per silvam ad castra adorienda veniēbant, They were coming through the woods to attack the camp.

RULE.   *Purpose may be expressed by a phrase made up of* **ad** *and the accusative, with a gerundive modifier.*

NOTE.   This method of expressing purpose is suited to sentences in which the verb of the governing clause expresses *motion* (cf. the model sentence).

REMARK 1. Observe carefully that, in this construction, the gerundive is still an *adjective*. Thus, in the model sentence, **ad** governs **castra**, which, in turn, is modified by **adorienda**.

REMARK 2. Note, too, that when used in a prepositional phrase expressing purpose, the gerundive so far lacks its customary force of " should," " ought," etc., that such a rendering would make very poor sense.

REMARK 3. Verbs of the class described in Exercise IX (*e.g.* **persuādeō**) are almost wholly defective in the gerundive, and cannot be used in purpose clauses of the above type.

VOCABULARY

bis, adv., *twice.*
idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable ;* may be construed with the dative case.

nātus, -a, -um, partic., *lit., having been born.*
tōtus, -a, -um, *entire, whole.*

NOTE 1. Most of the uses of the dative thus far illustrated call for the rendering " to " ; but " for " is a translation frequently required by the dative with **idōneus**.

NOTE 2. With an accusative of Extent of Time, the participle **nātus** states a person's age : *e.g.* **mulier vīgintī annōs nāta**, " A woman twenty years old," or " twenty years of age."

NOTE 3. Remember that **tōtus** belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular ; consult, if necessary, the Note on p. 352.

TRANSLATION

28. 1. Three times a place suitable for a bridge has been found by the inhabitants of the cities ;[1] but to-day their leaders must again interview[2] Caesar. 2. The men said that sailors had twice been sent to the bridges[3] to wait for[4] the commander. 3. I have refused to talk with

the brother of that man, and the leaders of the entire
nation will not be able to persuade me.[5]   4. Since they
are unwilling to send from the ship these men,[6] who have
better arms, let *us* ourselves[7] advance with greater speed,
and announce to the general that the worse leaders need to
be guarded still[8] longer by the townspeople.

29. 1. One of the sailors promised that he would go to
the shore to look for[9] a suitable skiff.   2. While this[10] was
being done, the soldiers, with us for leaders, advanced to
the hill to announce that all the enemy had escaped by
swimming.[11]   3. Although the whole city must be guarded
by the soldiers, still we have[4] food and water, and no one
fears the armies of the enemy.   4. A few months before,
because not even then were there forces to follow the skiffs,
the general had been unwilling to advance into the great
forest.

30. *A Popular Commander*

" I see a soldier coming," said Marcus.   " Don't run to
hide in the garden, Quintus ; I hope that he will tell us a
story."   Then to the soldier : " Who are you, pray ?[12]
Have you fought in many battles ?[13]   Tell us a story,
please."[14]   " When I was eighteen years old," said the
soldier, " I ran away from this town to the army ; for I
loved[15] the general.   Even[8] in winter he[16] would[17] lie on
the ground at night, and he never ordered his men[18] to do[19]
what[20] he was unwilling to do himself.[21]   One night[22] the
fire caught[23] his cloak ;[24] but we[25] could never persuade
him to lie in a tent."

1. Be careful of the spelling.
2. *Lit., meet.*
3. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.
4. Translate in two ways.

5. *persuade   me :   lit.,   per-
suade me to talk.*   Be careful to
render the English infinitive cor-
rectly (consult, if necessary, the

List of Verb Constructions, p. 382.)

6. Cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I.

7. What kind of pronoun is this? Do not confuse it with the *third* person *reflexive* (Latin **suī**).

8. **etiam** (adv.).

9. **petō**. Translate the phrase in two ways.

10. Neut. pl. of **hīc**.

11. Name the part of the verb for which this calls.

12. *Lit., I beg* (**obsecrō, 1**).

13. See the Vocabulary of Exercise IX. Put this phrase first in the sentence, allowing the word for " many " to precede the preposition.

14. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VII.

15. Imperfect tense.

16. **ille** : cf. footnote 18 on Exercise III.

17. Translate by the choice of tense.

18. *his men:* **suī, -ōrum, M.** Cf. the similar use of **nostrī** (and see also footnote 9 on Exercise I).

19. *to do:* omit.

20. *what: i.e. that which* (**id quod**).

21. Intensive pronoun.

22. *one night: lit., once, at night.*

23. **comprehendō, 3, -prehendī, -prehēnsus.**

24. **sagum, -ī, N.**

25. The pronoun may be expressed, if **autem** is the conjunction chosen.

EXERCISE XII

(31–33)

ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

MODEL SENTENCE

Hostēs celeritāte nostrōs vincēbant, The enemy excelled our men in speed (*lit.* in respect to speed).

RULE. *That in respect to which anything is or is done may be indicated by a noun in the ablative case.*

VOCABULARY

aciēs, -ēī, F., *battle line, line.*

dōnec, conj., *until.*

dōnum, -ī, N., *gift.*

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est, *go out.*

īnferior, -ior, -ius, *inferior.*

mīlle, indecl. adj., *a thousand;* pl. (noun) **mīlia, -ium,** N., *thousand(s).*

numerus, -ī, M., *number, numbers.*

parcō, 3, pepercī (future partic. **parsūrus**), *spare.* See the Rule in Exercise IX.

recipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, *take back.* **sē recipere,** *to withdraw, to fall back, to retire.*

rīdeō, 2, rīsī (**rīsus**), *smile, laugh.*

superior, -ior, -ius, *superior.*

NOTE 1. The plural **mīlia,** being a noun, is construed with the genitive; *e.g.* **sex mīlia nautārum,** "six thousand sailors" (*lit.* "six thousands of sailors"). Because the English idiom is so different, this construction needs to be noted with special care.

NOTE 2. In English we may say either "superior in *number*" or "superior in *numbers*"; but only the singular of **numerus** should be used in rendering such phrases into Latin.

NOTE 3. Fundamentally, **parcō** signifies something like "be merciful," hence its construction with the dative case.

NOTE 4. In the idiom sē recipere, the pronoun varies, of course, with the person and number of the verb ; *e.g.* mē recipiō, tē recipis, sē recipit, nōs recipimus, etc.

<div align="center">TRANSLATION</div>

31. 1. We hope that you spared no part of the senate. 2. Though we are inferior in numbers, let us march with all [1] speed to give help [2] to the forces of the other [3] general. 3. Since the Indians are on the point of attacking the town, please [4] send a boy at once into the fields to tell [5] the farmers that the horses must be taken by them [6] to a distant place in [7] the woods. 4. A girl nine years of age named [8] Claudia, unwilling [9] to be outdone [10] in bravery by the men, [11] ran to the shore, and did not return home until she learned that all the skiffs were [12] safe. 5. Do not go [13] to look for horses.

32. 1. By larger gifts I think that we shall persuade the Indians not to [14] withdraw to those mountains which you see. 2. After burning the ships, [15] the enemy fled, although they were superior in number. 3. They appointed [16] him leader of the hunters, and on the third day sent two thousand soldiers to intimidate [17] the enemy. 4. We must burn the city, although yesterday one of the enemies' generals twice tried to persuade us to spare the women and the smaller children.

<div align="center">

33. *Veterans Displeased*

</div>

" The same soldier is sitting by [18] the road to-day," said Quintus. " Let's go out; perhaps he will tell us another story." When the soldier [19] saw the boys coming, he smiled and said, [20] " How are you, [21] boys ? I suppose that you want to hear a new story. Very well. [22] In our [23] army was a regiment of very brave men. [11] Once, when our forces [24] had fought fiercely for five hours, the general

ordered the whole line to fall back to the hills.[25]   When
this [26] was heard [27] by the soldiers of that regiment, they
said to their [23] captain, 'We do not know how to fall back.[28]
We came to fight, not to [29] run away.'   'But,' said the
captain sadly,[30] 'we are ordered [31] to retreat.' [32]   And so
those brave [33] men were forced to withdraw under protest [34]
from the field of battle.'' [35]

1. *Lit.*, *the greatest*.

2. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise
VIII.

3. Be careful to choose the
right word.

4. Use the plural form (see
the Vocabulary of Exercise VII),
and do not place first in the
clause.

5. *i.e. announce* (*to*).

6. Reflexive pronoun (**suī**).

7. *Lit.*, *into*.

8. Translate in two ways.

9. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise
III.

10. *outdo :* **vincō**.

11. **homō** or **vir** ?

12. Cf. footnote 14 on Exercise
IX.

13. *i.e. set out*.

14. *not to :* introducing what
kind of clause ?

15. Use a (passive) participial
phrase.

16. *i.e. made*.

17. *i.e. to frighten.*   Translate
this phrase in three ways.

18. Use **in** (and abl.).

19. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise
III.

20. Be careful to place the
verb of "saying" properly.

21. *How are you* (pl.) *?*   **Quid
agitis ?**

22. *Very well :* **licet** (*lit.* "it is
permitted ").

23. Omit.

24. *Lit.*, *our* (*men*).

25. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.

26. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise
VIII.

27. Be careful to choose the
right tense.

28. *how to fall back : lit., to
fall back ;* an idiomatic use of
the infinitive.

29. *not to : i.e.* (*we did*) *not*
(*come*) *to*, etc.   Do not translate
the words in parentheses, but ren-
der the remainder just as would be
done if the whole were expressed.

30. Use an adj.

31. *we are ordered :* present
tense.

32. **cēdō, 3, cessī, cessum est.**

33. Place this second modifier
after the noun.

34. *under protest :* **invītus, -a,
-um.**

35. *field of battle : lit., battle.*

EXERCISE XIII

(34–36)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES VII TO XII

VOCABULARY

Americānus, -a, -um, *American.* As noun, **Americānī, -ōrum,** M., *the Americans.*

Britannī, -ōrum, M., *the British, the English.*

circiter, adv., with numerals, *about.*

classis, -is (abl. -e), F., *fleet.*

Iacsō, -ōnis, M., *Jackson.*

Lovīsiāna, -ae, F., *Louisiana.*

quaerō, 3, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *look for, seek, find.*

superō, 1, *surpass, excel, overcome, conquer.*

vāllum, -ī, N., *rampart.*

vulnerō, 1, *wound.*

TRANSLATION

34. 1. The Indians think that they can surpass us in running; but we[1] are sending settlers in every direction[2] to find men[3] to beat them.[4] 2. Since you have to bring[5] gifts to that town and nobody[6] wants them, we are going to look for some[7] Indians to whom they may be given. 3. Although with the greatest kindliness the generals of those armies spared entire cities, still I do not think that the commanders[8] of the fleets will withdraw to the other bank of the river. 4. With a king for guide, the whole army was ordered to advance to the hills, so that the soldiers of all the nations might there be arranged[9] in battle line.

35. 1. With a huge ax, a boy ten years of age killed a bear which had come from the woods to look for sheep.[10] 2. The sailors laugh, although the soldiers surpass them[11] in swimming. 3. When Caesar[12] found[13] that the enemy were inferior in number, he was willing to spare all their forces. 4. You[14] will not need to fear the Indians, and no one will attempt to frighten you. 5. Not even Cicero

surpassed me in kindliness, until our [15] best general was
wounded.

36. *The Battle of New Orleans*

Once an American general named Jackson had taken
an army into Louisiana to wage war there with the British.
Suddenly it was announced [16] to him that a fleet of the
enemy had come, and that soldiers were disembarking. [17]
Hearing this, [18] Jackson at once built [19] a long rampart, as [20]
the enemy's forces were superior in number. Though the
British [12] charged [21] three or four times [22] with heroic [23] brav-
ery against [24] this rampart, they were finally [25] forced to
withdraw baffled [26] to their [7] camp. In [27] the battle they had
lost about three thousand [28] soldiers; but of [29] the Americans
only [30] eight were killed [31] and thirteen wounded.

1. Express the subject, if
autem is the conjunction chosen.

2. *in every direction: lit.,
into all parts.*

3. Pl. of is.

4. **ille.**

5. *have to bring:* gerundive
of ferō.

6. *and nobody:* see Exercise X.

7. Omit.

8. **praefectus, -ī, M.**

9. **collocō.**

10. **ovis, -is, F.**

11. **ipse.**

12. Cf. footnote 12 on Exer-
cise III.

13. *i.e. learned.*

14. Singular.

15. Place the possessive adj.,
as usual, after the noun.

16. Impersonal expressions are
neuter.

17. ē nāvibus ēgredior (3,
-gressus sum).

18. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise
VIII.   Make the phrase passive.

19. **exstruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus.**

20. *as: i.e. since.*

21. *Lit., made an attack.*

22. *or four times:* **quaterve**
(*i.e.* **quater + ve**).

23. *Lit., the greatest.*

24. **in.**

25. *i.e. at last.*

26. *baffled:* rē īnfectā (*lit.,
the thing unaccomplished*).

27. Express the preposition.

28. Cf. Note 1 on the Vocabu-
lary of Exercise XII.

29. **ex.**

30. **tantum** (adv.). Place after
the numeral.

31. Express **sunt** at the end of
the sentence only.

EXERCISE XIV

(37–39)

THE DATIVE OF INTEREST

MODEL SENTENCES

Rēs mihi bene ēveniet, The matter will turn out well for me.

Tibi omnia bona sunt, For you everything is good.

RULE. *The person whose interest is concerned may be indicated by a noun or pronoun in the dative case.*

REMARK. Observe that, while the dative of the indirect object is fundamentally the " to " dative, the dative of interest is a " for " dative (cf. the force of the case with **idōneus**).

VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, F., *boldness, daring.*

bene, melius, optimē, adv., *well, better, best.*

clam, adv., *quietly, unobserved.*

dīligentia, -ae, F., *care, diligence.*

ēveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est, *turn out.*

Fabius, -bī, M., *Fabius.*

lūmen, -inis, N., *light, torch.*

male, peius, pessimē, adv., *badly, worse, worst.*

multō, adv., *much;* used mostly with comparatives.

opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, *crush.*

Poenī, -ōrum, M., *the Carthaginians.*

videor, 2, vīsus sum, *seem, appear;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

NOTE 1. On the declension of **Fabius,** see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

NOTE 2. When used with a comparative, **multō** normally precedes ; *e.g.* **multō maior, multō melior**, etc.

NOTE 3. Because of the meaning of **videor**, the indirect discourse dependent upon it cannot have a subject accusative, and a predicate noun, adjective, or participle in this indirect discourse therefore stands in the same case as the subject of **videor** itself ; *e.g.* **Dux esse vidētur**, " He seems to be the leader ; " **Rōmānī victī esse videntur**, " The Romans appear to have been beaten ; " etc.

TRANSLATION

37. 1. Although the enemy are much superior in ships, still we have[1] about ten thousand brave soldiers, and war has never turned out badly for our commonwealth.[2] 2. The Indians seem to come to burn[1] farmhouses, and[3] not to[4] steal cattle. 3. Do you realize that the town was set on fire by a girl fourteen years of age? 4. You must guard this camp with greater care ; for[5] the other general has a much higher rampart.

38. 1. I think that the battle will turn out well for the senate ; for Pompey seems to have persuaded the sailors to break down[6] a part of the bridges. 2. After killing[7] the settlers in the fields, the Indians with the greatest boldness twice attacked that fort, believing[8] that, by burning[9] and killing,[9] they had intimidated the soldiers also. 3. Although a few days before their forces had been much smaller, they were then on the point of boarding the fleet and crossing the sea to crush the enemy.

39. *Hannibal's Stratagem*

When Hannibal[10] had crossed the mountains and advanced into Italy, he defeated the Romans in[11] many battles. On one occasion[12] a[13] general named[1] Fabius

met him on the march;[14] and since the Carthaginians were hemmed in[15] by mountains, the Romans thought that they would very easily crush the forces of the enemy on the following[16] day. But during the night[17] Hannibal let loose[18] into the fields some[3] cattle with torches fastened to their heads.[19] Seeing[7] the lights, the Romans were alarmed, and nobody dared to investigate.[20] Meanwhile Hannibal's army was quietly withdrawing to a location more[21] suitable for a camp.

1. Translate in two ways.

2. rēs (reī) pūblica, -ae, F.

3. Omit.

4. *not to:* cf. footnote 29 on Exercise XII.

5. Do not put **autem, enim,** or **vērō** later than second in a sentence, even though it be necessary to divide a phrase in order to maintain this order of words.

6. **frangō :** cf. footnote 1 on Exercise V.

7. Use a passive participial phrase.

8. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.

9. Name the part of the verb here called for.

10. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

11. *Lit., by.*

12. *on one occasion: i.e. once.*

13. **quīdam.**

14. *on the march:* **in itinere.**

15. *hem in:* **claudō,** 3, **clausī, clausus.**

16. (**posterus**), -a, -um.

17. *during the night:* use an adverb.

18. **ēmittō,** 3, **-mīsī, -missus.**

19. *Lit., to* (**ad**) *the heads of which torches had been fastened* (**dēligō,** 1). Remember that a relative stands first in its clause.

20. *investigate: lit., seek the explanation* (**causa,** -ae, F.) *of the thing.*

21. **magis** (adv.).

EXERCISE XV

(40–42)

LOCATIVE CASE — THE GERUNDIVE IN PURPOSE
CLAUSES (*continued*)

In with the ablative is already familiar as the regular
method of expressing Place Where. City names, how-
ever, do not follow this rule, but use, instead of **in** and the
ablative, a special case form (Locative) which requires no
preposition. City names that are singulars of the first or
second declensions have regularly, in the locative, the same
form as in the genitive singular.

MODEL SENTENCE

Saratōgae et Eborācī Novī erant exercitūs hostium, Armies
of the enemy were at (in) Saratoga and New York.

REMARK 1. But a noun in **-ium** makes its locative in **-iī**.
Thus **Londīnium** has the genitive **Londīnī,** but locative **Londīniī.**

REMARK 2. For all other city names than singulars of the first
and second declensions, the locative is regularly identical in form
with the *ablative* case; *e.g.* **Athēnīs,** "at Athens" (**Athēnae,
-ārum, F.**), **Carthāgine,** "at Carthage" (**Carthāgō, -inis, F.**).

Besides city names, three common nouns also form loc-
atives; namely, **domī,** "at home," **humī,** "on the ground,"
and **rūrī,** "in the country."

RULE. *The names of cities, and the common nouns*
domus, humus, *and* **rūs** *designate Place Where by means
of the Locative case.*

MODEL SENTENCE

Ibi morantur castellōrum adoriendōrum causā, They are
waiting there to attack the forts, *lit.* with (*i.e.* for) the pur-
pose of attacking the forts.

RULE. *Purpose may be expressed by the ablative* causā, PRECEDED *by a genitive phrase made up of a noun with gerundive modifier.*

REMARK 1. Do not fail to note that **causā** must stand *last* in the purpose clause.

REMARK 2. Verbs of the class described in Exercise IX (*e.g.* **persuādeō**) are almost wholly defective in the gerundive, and cannot be used in purpose clauses of this type.

REMARK 3. For the expression of purpose by means of gerundive phrases, **ad** with the accusative and **causā** with the genitive are practically equivalent forms. But while **ad** with the accusative attaches itself most naturally to verbs of motion (cf. Exercise XI), the rule for the use of **causā** with the genitive is without any such limitation.

VOCABULARY

audāx, audācis, *bold ;* (compar. **audācior** ; superl. **audācissimus**).

causa, -ae, F., *purpose.*

Londīnium, -nī, N., *London.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, F., *fortification.*

speculor, 1, *spy upon, view.*

rūs, rūris, N., *country* (in distinction from " city ").

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome.*

NOTE 1. **Audāx** belongs to the class known as " adjectives of one termination," *i.e.* it is a third declension adjective with the same form for all genders in the nominative singular. See the Summary of Forms, p. 350.

NOTE 2. Though **rūs** is not an I-Stem, it has, along with **rūre,** the form **rūrī.** And as this latter is seldom found except in the sense " *in* the country," to it is assigned the name " locative," as already indicated above. **Rūre,** on the other hand, is restricted closely to the conventional ablative uses.

TRANSLATION

40. 1. In the summer *we* live in the country, but[1] our grandfather prefers to remain the whole year in London. 2. I hope that the war will turn out well for the entire nation. 3. Meanwhile the inhabitants of all parts of the mountain were going to the shore to look for[2] skiffs. 4. While[3] our soldiers[4] were lying on the ground in the woods, the general of the enemy led his[5] forces very quickly through the valley, hoping[6] that, by hurrying, he would be able[7] to cross all the hills[8] unobserved. 5. Since the king's fleet excelled in swiftness, our general had to[9] take that town at once; and so we spared neither[10] ourselves[11] nor[10] our[5] brave horses, until we came to the bridge.

41. 1. Why do you always prefer[12] to remain at Rome and not to go to the shore to see the ships? 2. Let us hurry to the hill; for[1] I can[5] see the two lines,[13] and the enemy seem to surpass our men in valor. 3. With a dog for guide, the boldest hunters ventured to go[14] farther into the forest to hunt for bears; but Marcus says that matters[15] turned out badly for them,[16] and that one of the men[17] was killed by Indians. 4. The settlers now advanced with much greater boldness, thinking[6] that they saw[18] lights in the town. 5. Did you say that the hunters' skiffs had twice been filled with the waves?

42. *The Spy*

Once our commander persuaded one of his[19] captains to cross the river, to spy upon the fortifications of the Indians. Although the man[20] thought that the enemy would perhaps capture and condemn[21] him[22] to death,[21]

still he was very ready[23] to go.[24]　By night he hid[25] in the woods, and in the daytime[26] he would climb the highest trees, to view the enemy's rampart; and when at last he had found out[27] the things which[28] the commander wished to learn, he again crossed the river, and returned safely[29] to the army.

1. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.

2. Translate in three ways.

3. Do not forget to use **dum**, as occasion offers.

4. *Lit., our (men)*.

5. Omit.

6. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.

7. The present infinitive of **possum** is frequently made to do duty for the lacking future infinitive.

8. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.

9. Gerundive.

10. *neither . . . nor:* **nec . . . neque (nec).**

11. **nōs ipsī.**

12. Reserve the verb of "preferring" for the last place in the sentence.

13. *i.e. battle lines* (Vocabulary of Exercise XII).

14. *Lit., to advance.*

15. *Lit., the thing.*

16. **ille.**

17. Pl. of **is.**

18. Be careful to choose the right tense.

19. **suus, -a, -um.**

20. **ille** (and cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III).

21. *condemn . . . to death:* **capitis damnō,** 1.

22. Reflexive pronoun (**suī**).

23. Use a form of **libenter.**

24. *Lit., to set out.*

25. Before choosing the tense, note the wording of the following clause.

26. *in the daytime:* **interdiū** (adv.).

27. **inveniō.**

28. *the things which:* **ea . . . quae** (neut.).

29. See the Vocabulary of Exercise II.

EXERCISE XVI

(43–45)

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

MODEL SENTENCE

Timōre nautārum nāvēs omnēs frāctae sunt, Because of the panic of the sailors, all the ships were wrecked.

RULE. *Cause may be expressed by a noun in the ablative case.*

VOCABULARY

abhinc, adv., *ago.*

adventus, -ūs, M., *approach, arrival.*

aeger, -gra, -grum, *ill, sick.*

Antōnius, -nī, M., *Antonius.*

Catilīna, -ae, M., *Catiline.*

Cornivallis, -is (abl. -e), M., *Cornwallis.*

fit ut, with subjunctive, *it happens that.*

hortor, I, *urge ;* governs the acc., often along with an **ut** or **nē**-clause of purpose.

nūntius, -ī, M., *messenger.*

Petrēius, -ēī, M., *Petreius.*

simulō, I, *pretend ;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

timor, -ōris, M., *fear, panic.*

undique, adv., *from every side, from all sides (quarters); on every hand (side).*

Vasingtō, -ōnis, M., *Washington.*

NOTE 1. **Abhinc,** "ago," unlike **ante,** "before," regularly stands *first* in its phrase. Moreover, it differs from **ante** in two other particulars : first, that it is associated with an accusative of Extent of Time (*not* an ablative of Degree of Difference) ; and, second, that it reckons backward from *present* time (whereas **ante** reckons backward from a point in the *past*). Thus, **abhinc multōs**

annōs, "many years ago," but **tribus ante diēbus,** "three days earlier."

NOTE 2. For the declension of **Antōnius** and **Petrēius,** see again Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

NOTE 3. The phrase **fit ut** may, of course, exhibit any tense (or mood) ; *e.g.* **fīet ut, factum est ut,** etc.

TRANSLATION

43. 1. Because of his[1] kindliness Cicero was loved by all the best[2] Romans. 2. I must crush the enemy at once ; then we shall have continued[3] peace. 3. Our general is at New York for the purpose of meeting his[4] captains. He will urge them to be bolder in spirit,[5] and they[4] never will desert[6] him. 4. It thus happened that matters[7] twice turned out well for the other[8] general on the sea ;[9] and I think that he will soon send messengers to summon[10] the soldiers who are now living in the country.

44. 1. Ten days ago a girl about six years old hurried into our camp to notify[11] the commander of[12] the approach of the women. 2. The women and children are terrified because of the boldness of the enemy, and there is no one at Rome to allay[13] their[14] fear. 3. It will soon happen that horses will be brought from every side into that Indian's camp, so that the enemy may not[15] steal them. 4. A few months later our leader began to establish[16] more camps ; for the enemy then seemed to be on the point of[17] sending larger armies by ship[18] from Spain.

45. *Convenient Illness*

When Cornwallis[19] was forced to surrender[20] himself and his all[21] to Washington, he was not ill; but by pre-

tending it,[4] he was able to remain in his[4] tent, and did not himself[22] meet the generals by whom his army had been beaten. And many years before, the consul Antonius, sent from the city to crush Catiline, and[4] not wishing[23] to be seen[24] fighting[25] against[26] a man[27] who had formerly been his friend,[28] on the day of battle gave it out[29] that he was lame,[30] and allowed his[4] lieutenant[31] Petreius to lead the line against[32] the enemy, who, upon a small hill, had found a place suitable for a camp.

1. suus, -a, -um.

2. Place this second modifier after the noun.

3. diūtinus, -a, -um.

4. Omit.

5. animus, -ī, M. Use the singular.

6. *i.e. leave.*

7. Sing. of rēs.

8. Be careful to choose the right word.

9. *on the sea :* place early in the clause, and be careful of the spelling.

10. ēvocō, 1. Translate the phrase in three ways.

11. moneō.

12. *i.e. about.*

13. levō, 1.

14. Masc.

15. *so that . . . not :* introducing what kind of clause ?

16. cōnstituō, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus.

17. See Exercise II.

18. Use the pl.

19. Cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III.

20. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.

21. *himself and his all :* sē suaque omnia.

22. Intensive pronoun.

23. Use nōlō (and cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III).

24. *to be seen :* lit., *himself* (sē) *to be seen* (cōnspiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectus).

25. Be careful to handle correctly predicate nouns, adjectives, and participles.

26. cum.

27. *a man :* is.

28. *his friend :* lit., *friendly* (amīcus, -a, -um) *to him* (ipse).

29. *i.e. pretended.*

30. *Lit., ill with respect to the feet* (pēs. pedis, M., "foot"); for construction, see Exercise XII.

31. lēgātus.

32. in.

EXERCISE XVII

(46–48)

THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE

Conditional sentences of the commonest type state the conditions under which something *is*, *was*, or *will be* true. Such conditional sentences are known as Simple.

MODEL SENTENCES

Sī nūntius pervēnit, mīlitem statim vocābō, If the messenger has come, I will call the soldier at once.

Sī Caesar in castrīs est, impetūs hostium vōbīs· nōn timendī sunt, If Caesar is in the camp, you need not fear the assaults of the enemy.

RULE. *Simple Conditional Sentences, both in the condition and the conclusion, use any tense of the indicative required by the sense.*

Different from the above are those conditional sentences which tell what *would be* true, if something *should* take place. This type of conditional sentence is known as Vague Future.

MODEL SENTENCE

Sī hostēs flūmen trānseant, Caesar statim sē recipiat, If the enemy *should* cross the river, Caesar *would* at once fall back.

RULE. *Vague Future Conditional Sentences have the present (or perfect) subjunctive in the condition, and the present subjunctive in the conclusion.*

REMARK 1. Though the difference between the above types of conditional sentence is very marked and obvious, it is of the utmost importance, here, at the outset, to fix that difference firmly in the mind. Otherwise, mistakes will insidiously creep in.

REMARK 2. Since "would" and "should" are put to so many different uses in English, it may, perhaps, require a little care to keep clear and distinct (1) the "would" and "should" of vague future conditional sentences; (2) the "would" which is merely a mark of customary past action ; and (3) the "should" which calls for the Latin gerundive.

<div style="text-align:center">VOCABULARY</div>

glōrior, 1, *boast;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

hūc, adv., *hither, here.*

quī (quis), qua, quod (quid), indefinite pronoun : adj., *any, some;* noun (the forms in parentheses), *any one, anybody, some one, somebody ; anything, something.* See the Summary of Forms, p. 358.

sī, conj., *if.*

NOTE. **Hūc** is used with verbs of motion only. But it is frequently the required translation for English "here," since this latter word is so often used loosely for "hither" (*e.g.* "Come *here !* ").

In memorizing the forms of indefinite **quī**, note that its declension is just like that of interrogative **quī**, excepting for the form **qua** (fem. sing. and neut. pl.). Indefinite **quī** is used chiefly in combination with the conjunctions **sī, nē, nisi** ("unless"), and **num** ("whether"), being there a regular substitute for the corresponding forms of **aliquī**; *e.g.*:

    sī { **quis**, if any one, if some one.
             quid, if anything, if something.
             qua nāvis, if any ship, if some ship.

    nē { **quis**, so that no one (*lit.* lest any one).
             quid, so that nothing (*lit.* lest anything).
             qua nāvis, so that no ship (*lit.* lest any ship).

NOTE 1. Study with special care the above examples with **nē**, observing how English negative purpose clauses may need to be recast in order to suggest the Latin form, introduced by the proper conjunction; *e.g.* " so that no one " = " lest any one " (**nē quis**), " so that nothing " = " lest anything " (**nē quid**), etc.

NOTE 2. When indefinite **quī** is used in combination with a conjunction, it should be placed next after that conjunction, without intervening word or words; see again the examples.

TRANSLATION

46. 1. If I should seem to be ill, they would think that we had remained the whole day in London.[1] 2. Don't sit on the ground, children ; we did not come here to gather[2] flowers. 3. Because of the heat[3] the stream is dry ;[4] and the natives are burning the crops,[5] so that no one may find food. 4. If anything turns out[6] well for us, not even the Romans will excel our men in boldness.

47. 1. If the general has been killed, you must send a messenger at once to urge Caesar not to appoint[7] Curio leader. 2. If the enemy should pretend to[8] be on the point of burning the city, we should still try to persuade our general to remain in camp, and should not venture to go out ourselves.[9] 3. At the time of Caesar's arrival,[10] it happened[11] that the boldest hunters were advancing[12] very bravely through the woods to attack the smallest of the fortifications.[13] 4. Spy upon[14] the larger camp with the greatest care; for when the assault is made,[15] the two lines will come together[16] near that rampart.

48. *A Youthful Warrior*

" The boys are always boasting about the stories they[17] hear," said Marcella to the girls. " If anybody comes[18] from town to-day, perhaps *we* shall hear something to boast about."[19] " I see my grandmother coming," re-

marked Julia. Then to her[20] grandmother: "Tell us a story, please." "Once," said her grandmother, "when a[21] battle line was advancing to make an assault upon[22] the enemy, suddenly one of the soldiers spied[23] a little baby[24] lying on the ground; and, although bullets[25] were flying[26] in every direction,[27] the line halted,[28] and the captain ordered the man[29] to carry the boy to his own[30] tent. Four days later, when the distracted[31] mother came across[32] the fields looking for her[20] baby, the boy was found safe[33] among the soldiers."

1. See Remark 1 on p. 247.

2. carpō, 3, carpsī, carptus. What part of speech is the gerundive?

3. aestus, -ūs, M. Use the pl., and do not confuse the ablative of *cause* with the *purpose* construction involving causā.

4. āridus, -a, -um.

5. Pl. of frūmentum.

6. *turns out: i.e. shall turn out.* English is often far from precise in the wording of conditions.

7. *i.e. make.*

8. What construction with the verb of "pretending"?

9. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XI.

10. This whole phrase may be translated by an abl. of Time When (two words only).

11. *Lit., it happened by chance (by chance: forte, adv.).*

12. What mood is required?

13. *Lit., the smallest fortification.*

14. Note the deponent verb.

15. Indicative mood. For the tense, cf. footnote 6 above.

16. *come together:* use the idiom inter sē (acc.) concurrere (concurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est).

17. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise II.

18. Cf. footnote 6 above.

19. *Lit., things* (ea, neut.) *about which to boast:* cf. the second group of Model Sentences in Exercise I.

20. Omit.

21. quīdam.

22. in (with what case?).

23. *i.e. saw.*

24. *baby:* īnfāns, -fantis, M.

25. tēlum.

26. Passive of mittō.

27. *i.e. on all sides.*

28. cōnsistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum est.

29. Use mīles.

30. *his own:* gen. of ipse. Place next after the preposition.

31. *Lit., thoroughly frightened.*

32. per.

33. Cf. Note 3 on p. 204.

EXERCISE XVIII

(49–51)

THE CONSTRUCTION WITH VERBS OF FEARING

Clauses dependent upon verbs of fearing look, at first sight, very much like purpose clauses; but they differ from them in important particulars. In the following models, note especially the force of **ut** and **nē**.

MODEL SENTENCES

Timēmus ut videant, We are afraid that they ARE NOT looking.

Timēbam nē quis venīret, I was afraid that some one WAS coming.

RULE. *Verbs of Fearing are construed with subjunctive clauses introduced by* **nē** (" that ") *and* **ut** (" that not ").

All tenses of the subjunctive are found in clauses dependent upon verbs of fearing, the choice being determined by the Law of Sequence as laid down in Exercise VI. Used in this construction, the present and imperfect subjunctive may refer either to action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb, or to action *future* from the point of view of that verb; *e.g.:*

Timeō nē glōriētur $\begin{cases} \text{I am afraid that he } is \text{ boasting.} \\ \text{I am afraid that he } will \text{ boast.} \end{cases}$

Timēbam nē glōriārētur $\begin{cases} \text{I was afraid that he } was \text{ boasting.} \\ \text{I was afraid that he } would \text{ boast.} \end{cases}$

NOTE. Observe that, in the phrases where the present and imperfect subjunctive designate action *contemporaneous* with that of the governing verb, the force of these tenses is the same as in causal **cum**-clauses; but when they refer to action that is *future* from the point of view of the governing verb, the tense force is like that seen in purpose clauses (cf. Note 1 on p. 220).

certus, -a, -um, *certain.* (**ali-quem**) **certiōrem facere,** *to inform* (a person); may be construed with indirect discourse.

cohors, -rtis, F., *company* (of soldiers).

cōnstituō, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus, *decide, determine;* may be construed with the complementary infinitive.

Faber, -brī, M., *Carpenter.*

NOTE 1. For the idiom (**aliquem**) **certiōrem facere** (*lit.* "to make a person more certain"), cf. the double accusative construction of Exercise II. The comparative **certior,** of course, takes any form called for by the context, *e.g.* **imperātor mīlitēs certiōrēs faciet,** "The commander will inform the soldiers," and the passive is formed in the regular way, *e.g.* **Caesar certior fit,** "Caesar is informed."

NOTE 2. On the declension of **cohors,** see the statement on p. 201.

49. 1. Did you fear that the general's son had not been informed? 2. Because of the diligence of these companies, at New York everything[1] is safe, and we do not need to march to the coast ourselves to guard the ships.[2] 3. If you should persuade Caesar to spare the whole nation, we should fear that the other captains would blame[3] you. 4. At Rome they will guard the streets with the greatest diligence, so that nothing[4] be lost; but the fear[5] of the consuls and the senate is extreme.[6] 5. If any one meets[7] him on the road,[8] he will surely[9] be informed.

50. 1. In diligence we perhaps seem to be much inferior; but do not fear that matters will very long[10] turn out badly for us. 2. If, by boasting, you are able[7] to frighten the

enemy, inform[11] the general at once, and hurry hither[12] to
meet the soldiers.   3. Since the captains[13] have been in-
formed[14] about the attack of the Indians, and are afraid
that the fleet has not arrived, they will at once destroy[15]
the bridge with fire and fall back[16] to the hills.

51. *Ten to One*

Many years ago[17] a certain captain named Carpenter
decided to try to take and burn a town into which the
farmers from all sides[5] were bringing supplies[18] to aid the
enemy.   He had with him[19] only[20] about twenty men;[21]
but they[22] marched boldly[23] a few miles through the woods,
and suddenly attacked a company of the enemy, which was
guarding the town.   Carpenter had divided[24] his men,[25] and
had ordered them[26] all to pretend that they were officers,[27]
and to shout out[28] commands[29] as[30] they made the attack.
The enemy of course[31] thought that many companies were
pressing forward[32] through the woods, and fled at full
speed.[33]   After burning[34] the town, Carpenter[13] returned
to camp with but two men wounded.[35]

1. Neut. pl. of **omnis**.

2. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 201.
Translate the phrase in three ways.

3. **culpō**, 1.

4. See Note 1 on p. 256.

5. See the Vocabulary of
Exercise XVI.

6. **summus**.

7. Cf. footnote 6 on Exer-
cise XVII.

8. Cf. footnote 14 on Exer-
cise XIV.

9. **sine dubiō** (*lit.* "without
doubt ").

10. *very long:* compar. of **diū**.

11. Do not forget the irregular
imperative forms: **dīc, dūc, fac,**
and **fer**.

12. Place next after the word
for "and."

13. Be careful of the order of
words.

14. What verb determines the
tense in this and the following
coördinate clause ?

15. **cōnsūmō**.

16. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise XII.

17. See Note 1 on the Vocabu-
lary of Exercise XVI.

18. **commeātus, -ūs**, M. Use the singular.

19. **sēcum.**

20. **tantum** (adv.). Place after the numeral.

21. **mīles.**

22. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII, using **autem** as the conjunction.

23. **audācter.**

24. **dīvidō, 3, -vīsī, -vīsus.**

25. *his men:* **suī, -ōrum**, M.

26. Omit.

27. **lēgātus.** Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise XVI.

28. *shout out:* **clārē** (adv.) **prōnūntiō, 1.**

29. **mandātum, -ī**, N.

30. **cum.**

31. *of course:* **scīlicet.**

32. **prōcurrō, 3, -cucurrī** or **-currī, -cursum est.**

33. *i.e. with the greatest speed.*

34. Use a **cum**-clause.

35. *Lit., two (men) only* (**tantum**) *having been wounded.*

EXERCISE XIX

(52–54)

GENITIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC

MODEL SENTENCE

Caesar est summae virtūtis vir, Caesar is a man of the greatest courage.

RULE. *A noun in the genitive case, with a modifier, may be used to designate a quality or characteristic of a person or thing.*

REMARK. Observe that a genitive, to be used in this construction, must be accompanied by a modifier.

VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, M., *spirit, mind.*

Cāius, -āī, M., *Gaius,* a boy's or man's name.

cīvis, -is (abl. -e), C. (pl. M.), *citizen, countryman.*

clāmō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *cry out, shout.*

dolor, -ōris, M., *pain, suffering.*

fortitūdō, -inis, F., *fortitude.*

Marius, -rī, M., *Marius.*

medicus, -ī, M., *doctor.*

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only.*

NOTE 1.   By exception, the letter **c** has the sound of **g** in the proper names ˉCāius and **Cnaeus**.   On the declension of **Cāius**, cf. Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.   In connection with a family name, a first name is usually abbreviated ;   *e.g.* **C. Caesar,** "Gaius Caesar," **M. Crassus,** "Marcus Crassus," etc.

NOTE 2.   Remember that **sōlus** belongs to a group of adjectives peculiar in the genitive and dative singular (cf. the Note on p. 352).

TRANSLATION

52. 1. If you were afraid that this[1] was turning out well for me alone, why did you not send men[2] of greater boldness to help the others ?[3]   2. If any one should find a sword with which to kill[4] the king's brother, we should be informed at once by the Indians.   3. Although Cicero[5] is himself[6] a man of the greatest kindliness, still he used to fear that some one[7] would kill the consuls.   4. Three thousand[8] baskets were given to the Indians by the settlers, so that they would not steal the hunters' horses.   5. In London the fear of those days[9] still[10] makes[11] the citizens[12] uneasy.[11]

53. 1. Do you think that the general has sent more companies into the valley, or[13] are you afraid that he[14] has fallen back to the mountains ?   2. Because of the arrival of Caesar's ships, the soldiers feared that the sailors had not escaped.   3. While[15] at Rome and in the country many people[16] were hoping that[17] our men would win, the enemy, who were much superior in numbers,[18] suddenly boarded their[19] fleet, and sailed to the island.   4. We fear that, by talking[20] and urging, the townspeople have very easily persuaded the general not to set out[21] with the Indian for guide.

54. *Power of the Will*

The Romans thought that men[2] should bear pain bravely, and they were never willing to cry out, though

their sufferings were very severe[22] at times.[23]   In those
days[24] the doctors used to strap[25] a man[2] down,[25] if they
were about to operate,[26] so that the patient[27] might not
hinder[28] them.[29]   But when Gaius Marius,[5] a general of
great[30] fortitude, needed[31] to be operated upon,[26] he refused
to be strapped down,[25] wishing[32] thus to teach his[33] country-
men that[34] the body[35] can be controlled[36] by the mind.

1. Neut. of **hīc**.

2. **homō** or **vir** ?

3. **cēterī**.

4. Turn into the passive.
What sort of relative clause is
this?

5. Be careful about the order
of words.

6. Intensive pronoun.

7. Cf. the statement follow-
ing the Vocabulary of Exercise
XVII; and, for the tense force
in this clause, see the Note on
p. 258.

8. Adj. or noun in Latin?

9. Review again the gender
of **diēs**.

10. **adhūc**.

11. *makes . . . uneasy :* **sol-
licitō**, 1.

12. See Remark 1 on p. 201.

13. **an**. As this is itself an in-
terrogative word, do not add **-ne**.

14. **ille**.

15. Do not forget to use **dum**,
as occasion offers.

16. Cf. footnote 9 on Exer-
cise I.

17. Be careful to write the
correct construction.

18. Cf. Note 2 on the Vocabu-
lary of Exercise XII.

19. Omit.

20. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise X.

21. See the Note on the Rule
in Exercise VI.

22. *severe :* **magnus**.

23. *at times :* **interdum**.

24. Pl. of **tempus**.

25. *strap . . . down :* **religō**, 1.

26. *operate, operate upon :*
secō, 1, **secuī, sectus**.

27. *the patient :* use **ille** simply,
placing it after the other pronoun
in the clause.

28. **impediō**, 4, -**īvī, -ītus**.

29. Reflexive pronoun (**suī**).

30. *Lit., the greatest.* Trans-
late " greatest " in two ways.

31. Gerundive.

32. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise
III.

33. **suus, -a, -um**.

34. Consult, if necessary, the
List of Verb Constructions, p. 382.

35. **corpus, -oris**, N.

36. **vincō**.

EXERCISE XX

(55-57)

DATIVE OF SERVICE

MODEL SENTENCES

Caesar nautās subsidiō vēnātōribus mīsit, Caesar sent the sailors to reënforce the hunters (*lit.* for a reënforcement for the hunters).

Cohors mulieribus līberīsque praesidiō fuit, The company served as a protection for the women and children (*lit.* was for a protection for the women and children).

RULE. *The dative singular of various abstract nouns is used to designate that for which a thing serves, or for which it is intended to serve.*

REMARK. The Dative of Service is generally used in connection with a dative of interest; cf. the Model Sentences above. Occasionally it is accompanied by a dative of the indirect object, and sometimes it stands alone.

VOCABULARY

arcēssō, 3, **arcēssīvī, arcēssītus,** *summon, call.*

captīvus, -ī, M., *prisoner.*

cōnservō, 1, *save.*

cūrō, 1, *care for* (*e.g.* the wounded).

noceō, 2, **-uī** (future partic. **nocitūrus**), *injure, harm.* See the Rule in Exercise IX, with the Note.

praesidium, -ī, N., *protection.*

sīc, adv., *thus, in this way.*

subsidium, -ī, N., *reënforcement.*

NOTE. The verb **cūrō** governs the accusative, the " for " of the English rendering being a part of the definition of the verb, and not the sign of the dative case.

55. 1. If any one should send two companies as a reën-
forcement for us, not even the fiercest assault[1] of the
enemy would alarm us. 2. Be men[2] of the greatest forti-
tude; do not fear that the enemy will prevail.[3] 3. If the
soldiers cry out[4] because of pain, we shall not send doctors
to[5] care for them. 4. Since they were afraid that we were
weak[6] in spirit, they called all the sailors to help[7] us.
5. We thought that they were burning the cities in order
to injure[8] the senate.

56. 1. Though you fear that men[2] of very little cour-
age[9] have been sent with us, still do not think that the
enemy will be able[10] by an assault to injure any[11] company.
2. Let *us* protect[12] the children of the leaders, and urge
the other men not to stay at home to guard the horses.
3. Thus it happened that, by shouting, a boy ten years of
age twice saved[13] that town. 4. If they[14] were informed
a few days later about these matters and the arrival of
the fleets, they are now in the valley and we need not fear
an attack from them.[15]

57. *Luckless Prisoners*

" I see a soldier sitting alone in the shade, Quintus,"
said Gaius. " Let's ask[16] him to tell us a story." Seeing
them,[17] the soldier smiled and said, " Do you want to hear
a story? Once I was in an army which was waging war
with the Indians, and I heard much[18] about their cruelty.[19]
One of the soldiers informed me that they[20] would[21] put[22]
prisoners upon[23] the backs of wild[24] horses and bind[25] them[26]
fast,[25] and (that they would)[26] let loose[27] the horses into the
woods, so that nobody[28] might find the wretched[29] men[2]
and care for them. In[30] this way very many of[31] our citi-

zens whom the Indians captured, have been killed.   Do
you[32] not[33] think that they died in a frightful[34] manner ? "[35]

1. The emphatic word of this phrase is " fiercest."

2. **homō** or **vir** ?

3. Either **superō** or **vincō**.

4. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

5. Translate in two ways.

6. **dēmissus, -a, -um**. Model the phrase on **numerō superior**, etc.

7. Use **auxilium** (with the verb **sum**), thus illustrating the new principle in the day's grammar lesson.

8. Cf. Remark 2 on p. 248.

9. See the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.

10. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XV.

11. **ūllus**.

12. Use **praesidium** (with the verb **sum**).

13. What mood is required ?

14. **ille**. Be careful of the word order (cf. footnote 12 on Exercise III).

15. *Lit., of them.*

16. *Lit., urge.*

17. *Lit., whom when he had seen* (cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII).

18. Neut. pl. of **multī**.

19. **crūdēlitās, -ātis**, F.

20. **ille**.

21. Use **soleō**, putting this verb early in the clause.

22. **pōnō, 3, posuī, positus**.

23. **in**, with the abl. ; cf. the construction with **collocō**.

24. **ferus, -a, -um**.

25. *bind . . . fast :* **artē** (adv.) **religō, 1**.

26. Omit.

27. **ēmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus**.

28. What kind of clause ?

29. Use the superl.

30. Not continuing the indirect discourse begun in the preceding sentence.

31. *very many of :* superl. of **multī**.   Put the other modifier after the noun, as is usual with possessive adjectives.

32. How many persons are addressed ?

33. Introduce the question by **nōnne** (*i.e.* **nōn** + **ne**), this combination presupposing the answer " yes."

34. **horrendus, -a, -um**.

35. *i.e. way.*   Use the pl.

EXERCISE XXI

(58–60)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XIV TO XX — DEPENDENT CLAUSES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

MODEL SENTENCES

Arbitror vēnātōrēs, quibus pecūnia sit, ad oppida itūrōs, I think that the hunters who have money will go to the towns.

Nōnne putābās mīlitēs, quōs imperātor arcēssīvisset, oppidum custōdīre? Did you not think that the soldiers whom the general had summoned were guarding the town?

RULE. *The subjunctive mood should be used in all dependent clauses in indirect discourse.*

NOTE. The tense of the subjunctive in these dependent clauses is usually determined (under the regular rule for sequence) by the tense of the verb of saying, thinking, hearing, etc., which governs the indirect discourse; but clauses dependent upon a *perfect* infinitive are limited to the imperfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive (cf. footnote 1 on Exercise V).

VOCABULARY

auctōritās, -ātis, F., *authority, influence.*

cīvitās, -ātis, F., *state.*

expugnō, 1, *take by storm.*

occupō, 1, *occupy.*

profectō, adv., *surely, certainly.*

vulnerātī, -ōrum, M., *the wounded.*

NOTE. Contrast **certē,** "certainly" ("at any rate"), with **profectō,** "certainly" ("beyond a doubt").

58. 1. If men of great influence are a protection[1] to the state, why do you fear that[2] we shall not[2] prevail? 2. Because of Cicero's authority, I believe that the companies we left[3] at Rome are safe. 3. To save[4] the leaders of the states, who will not be willing[5] to die thus? 4. If something[6] should be given to the other sailor, and nothing[7] should fall out to his disadvantage,[8] he would soon be able to return home to care for his[9] sick children. 5. I suppose that they have never felt[10] the violence of the waves.

59. 1. We think that those[11] who surpass us in influence fear that we have tried to injure them.[12] 2. If with sword and[13] ax we can be a help[14] to the consul, we will by no means delay[15] in the country. 3. We feared that at London some one had ventured to interview[16] the captain; for he is a man of the mildest[17] temper.[18] 4. If, after burning the city,[19] they have stopped[15] to care for the wounded, surely no one will ever say that they hurried home for[20] fear of the enemy. 5. Did the leader's son tell[21] the consuls the number of days?

60. *The Dispatch-Bearer*

"A few days ago,"[22] said the soldier, "our general persuaded a bold messenger to attempt to carry some[9] powder[23] to a fort which the enemy had hemmed in[24] on all sides with strong[25] fortifications. Though the man[26] was lame,[27] he thought that his[9] father had a horse which could[28] carry him[12] safely through the country[29] which the enemy had occupied.[28] He therefore set out at night; and when his[9] horse was killed by a bullet,[30] he found another, and thus in[31] a few hours came to the bank of a

large river.   Here,[32] his[9] second[33] horse having been killed, he seized a skiff, and floated[34] many miles down the stream,[35] and finally in safety[36] brought the powder[23] into the fort, which the enemy were now[37] on the point of taking by storm."

1. Not nominative.

2. *that . . . not:* note the kind of verb upon which this clause depends.

3. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise II.

4. What kind of clause ?

5. *not be willing: i.e. be unwilling.*

6. Cf. the statement following the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.

7. *and nothing:* see Exercise X.

8. *Lit., should turn out badly for him.*

9. Omit.

10. sentiō.

11. Pl. of is.

12. Reflexive pronoun (suī).

13. -que.

14. Cf. footnote 7 on Exercise XX.

15. moror.

16. *Lit., meet.*

17. *mild :* mītis, -is, -e.

18. *Lit., spirit.*

19. Use a passive participial phrase.

20. *i.e. because of.* Put this

phrase first in the indirect discourse.

21. dīcō (with dat. of the person spoken to).

22. Be careful about the word order (Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI).

23. pulvis, -eris, M.

24. claudō, 3, clausī, clausus.

25. *Lit., very great.*

26. Use ille.

27. pedibus captus, -a, -um ; (pedibus, Abl. of Specification, from pēs, pedis, M., " foot ").

28. Be careful of the mood.

29. Use the pl. of locus, recalling the peculiarity of its declension.

30. tēlum.

31. *i.e. within.*

32. *Lit., where* (rel. adv., beginning a new sentence. Cf. the similar use of quī when it replaces a demonstrative pronoun).

33. alter.

34. nō, 1.

35. *down the stream:* secundō flūmine.

36. *in safety: i.e. safely.*

37. nunc or iam ?

EXERCISE XXII

(61–63)

THE ABLATIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS

MODEL SENTENCE

Hōc tēlō mīles profectō nōn ūtētur, This weapon the soldier surely will not use.

RULE. **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** *and* **vēscor** *govern the ablative case.*

REMARK. This list should be memorized as it stands, though not all of the verbs are to be used immediately. As the English renderings are taken up, it will be found that they give little or no clue to the Latin construction. Only constant vigilance, therefore, will insure against error in connection with the use of verbs of this class.

VOCABULARY

exspectō, 1, *wait for.*
Gallus, -ī, M., *a Gaul;* pl., *the Gauls.*
ratus, -a, -um, partic., *thinking;* construed with indirect discourse.

redūcō, 3, **-dūxī, -ductus,** *bring back, carry back, withdraw (e.g.* troops).
ūtor, 3, **ūsus sum,** *use.*

NOTE. **Ratus** belongs to a small group of deponent perfect participles used loosely with the force of presents. The rather frequent occurrence of these participles is doubtless one of the reasons why the nominative forms of *present* participles are employed so infrequently in Latin (cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III).

TRANSLATION

61. 1. If Pompey should use his[1] authority to save[2] the state, all the citizens would say that he is the one man[3] who does not fear[4] Caesar.   2. If any one fears[5] that the companies will not be brought back safely, let us seek leaders of greater courage.   3. If my sons have been a help to the state, I hope that our soldiers will use .my horses also.   4. Because of their[6] love[7] of battle, the boldest Gauls were unwilling to wait for the wounded, but[8] hurried across the mountains to occupy the territory[9] of other[10] nations.   5. The cavalry[11] of this one state will not be able to injure our armies.

62. 1. We must burn that forest, so that nobody may find there a spot suitable for an ambuscade.[12]   2. Men of the greatest fortitude are often inferior in influence because they live in the country, and no one is informed[13] of[14] their courage.   3. They[15] said that they had persuaded those hunters to come who had used up all their food.   4. In the consulship of Cicero and Antonius,[16] while forces were being gathered[17] into the camps, many were anxious[18] that citizens be enrolled[19] at Rome to protect the senate.[20]

63. *An Inspiring Leader*

"Are you not going to[21] tell us a story to-day?" said Gaius to the soldier. "We promise that we will not bother you[22] to-morrow." "Many years ago," said the soldier, "our army was marching through a long valley, where a few days before all the crops[23] had been burned. Our general, therefore,[24] thinking that the enemy would not follow, left his[6] army, and proceeded[25] a few miles to a

small town not far distant.[26] But during the night[27] a very fierce attack was suddenly made upon our men, who were obliged to retreat[28] in haste.[29] The general, hearing the sound[30] of battle, rode back[31] at top speed. Seeing him,[32] the panic-stricken[33] soldiers took heart again,[34] and soon put the enemy to flight."

1. suus, -a, -um.

2. Translate without using ut or quī.

3. *the one man :* sōlus.

4. Note that this is a dependent clause in indirect discourse.

5. Choose mood and tense without regard for the form of the other clause of the sentence.

6. Omit.

7. amor, -ōris, M.

8. *Lit., and.*

9. ager.

10. Do not confuse cēterī and aliī (see the Remark on the Vocabulary of Exercise III).

11. *i.e. horsemen.*

12. īnsidiae, -ārum, F.

13. *is informed :* present tense.

14. *i.e. about.*

15. Order for translation : *those* (is) *hunters, who had used up all their* (suus, -a, -um) *food, they said that they had persuaded to come.*

16. *Lit., Cicero and Antonius* (being) *consuls.*

17. Pass. of cōgō.

18. volō.

19. cōnscrībō, 3, -scrīpsī, -scrīp-

tus. Use the construction regularly found with volō.

20. More literally: *to be a protection for the senate.*

21. See Exercise II ; and, for the form of the question, cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.

22. *Lit., be troublesome* (molestus, -a, -um) *to you.*

23. Pl. of frūmentum.

24. itaque (placed first in the sentence, as usual).

25. *i.e. advanced.*

26. *not far distant :* haud longinquus. Place this phrase after the noun.

27. *during the night :* use an adverb.

28. *i.e. were forced to fall back.*

29. *i.e. quickly.*

30. sonus, -ī, M. Turn the phrase into the passive.

31. Pass. of revehō, 3, -vēxī, -vectus.

32. Use a relative, turning the phrase into the passive.

33 *i.e. thoroughly frightened.*

34. animum resūmō, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus (sing. object retained with pl. verb).

EXERCISE XXIII

(64–66)

RESULT CLAUSES

MODEL SENTENCES

Iter tam longum est, ut līberī dēfessī esse soleant, The journey is so long that the children are usually tired.

Carrus tam magnus erat, ut equī duo eum dūcere nōn possent, The wagon was so large that two horses could not draw it.

RULE. *Result may be expressed by an* **ut**-*clause with its verb in the present or imperfect subjunctive.*

NOTE. So far as form is concerned, the most important difference between result clauses and subjunctive purpose clauses is that negative *purpose* requires the special introductory particle **nē**, whereas negative *result* is marked in the ordinary way by **nōn** (cf. the second of the Model Sentences above).

REMARK. Some Roman writers employ, in result clauses, the *perfect* subjunctive also. This, however, is a special and difficult use, not to be attempted at the present stage of the work. Hence the omission of that tense from the rule above given.

VOCABULARY

animadvertō, 3, -vertī, -versus, *notice ;* may be construed with indirect discourse.

cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī (-suētus). Perfect tense with force of present, *be accustomed*. May be construed with the complementary infinitive.

fleō, 2, **flēvī, flētum est,** *weep, cry*.

iuvenis, -is, M., *young man, youth*.

tam, adv., *so*. Used with adjectives and adverbs.

ūsus, -ūs, M., *use*. **ūsuī esse,** *to be useful, to be used*.

Note 1. For the rendering of **cōnsuēvī** given above, see the Note on **soleō** in Exercise IV. As the perfect **cōnsuēvī** has the force of a *present*, the pluperfect **cōnsuēveram** necessarily represents any and all *past* tenses.

Note 2. **Iuvenis**, like **canis**, is not an I-Stem.

Note 3. As **ūtor** (" use ") is deponent, special devices are needed to translate the passive " be used " into Latin. The phrase **ūsuī esse** provides one such device.

TRANSLATION

64. 1. Do not fear that the prisoners are using our wagons; for the cattle are so frightened that they cannot be brought from the fields. 2. Did you think that men[1] who wanted[2] to harm you had sent this messenger to wait for us at London? 3. If by delaying or sending they should try to help[3] us, *we* should surely[4] appear mean-spirited,[5] if we did not[6] inform the consuls. 4. Because of the aid of the inhabitants of these mountains, the Romans were so secure[7] that they ventured to send a part of their[8] army to the banks of the other river to look for grain.

65. 1. We were accustomed to use all the cattle to carry grain, so that no one would be able to claim[9] that he had[10] no food. 2. For drawing[11] the wagons, the cattle were so very useful[12] that we did not think that we needed to call for[13] horses. 3. If you think that men of little influence should not be sent, I fear that we shall not find many to send.[14] 4. Thinking[15] that they have come here[16] to care for the wounded, they will go at once to the tents, and[17] will say nothing[17] to us.

66. *A Resourceful Mother*

Once some settlers suddenly noticed that a ship of war[18] was rapidly approaching[19] the shore. Seeing this,[20] they

were so terrified that they did not attempt to hinder [21] the
soldiers when they landed [22] from the ship, but fled in
haste to the woods and mountains.   One of the women,
however,[23] decided [24] to remain at home, and saved her [8]
son in an original [25] way; for, when the enemy arrived at
the farmhouse, she was weeping, and led the soldiers to a
bier,[26] on which the son was lying.   Thinking that the
young man was dead, the enemy [27] withdrew at once to [28]
the road, and [29] did not [29] attempt to injure any one [29] with
their [30] weapons.

1. Pl. of **is**.

2. Note that this is a de-
pendent clause in indirect dis-
course.

3. Use **auxilium**.

4. See the Note on the Vo-
cabulary of Exercise XXI.

5. *Lit.*, *(to be) of ungrateful*
(**ingrātus, -a, -um**) *mind* (sing. of
animus).

6. *i.e. if we should not.*

7. **sēcūrus, -a, -um.**

8. Omit.

9. **dīcō.**

10. Translate in two ways.
(Whenever, in indirect discourse,
there is a reference back to the
third person subject of a governing
verb, the reflexive (**suī**) must be
used, whatever the case called for;
cf. the first Note on p. 235.)

11. **dūcō.** Use a construction
introduced by **ad**.

12. *very useful:* employ **ūsus**,
modified by **magnus**.

13. Gerundive of **arcēssō**.

14. What kind of clause ?

15. Translate in two ways (not
present partic.).

16. See the Note on the Vo-
cabulary of Exercise XVII.

17. See Exercise X.

18. **nāvis longa.**

19. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise II.

20. Cf. footnote 32 on Exer-
cise XXII.

21. **prohibeō, 2, -uī, -itus.**

22. Use **ēgredior, 3, -gressus
sum** (imperf. tense).

23. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise
XIV.

24. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise XVIII.

25. **novus.**

26. **feretrum, -ī, n.**

27. Place first in the sentence.

28. **in.**

29. *and . . . not . . . any one:*
i.e. and . . . no one (acc.).

30. **suus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE XXIV

(67–69)

TOWN NAMES

It has already been shown that town names, and the common nouns **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**, do not conform to the regular rule for Place Where, but use a special case-form (locative) to express this relation. With the exception of **humus**, these same groups of words follow a special rule also for Place TO Which and Place FROM Which.

MODEL SENTENCES

Rōmam ībit, He will go to Rome.

Rūs properāvimus, We hurried to the country.

RULE. *Place TO Which is expressed by the accusative case of town names, and of* **domus** *and* **rūs**, *WITHOUT a preposition.*

MODEL SENTENCES

Cūr tum Rōmā profectus est? Why did he set out from Rome at that time?

Domō iam exībāmus, We were just starting out from home.

RULE. *Place FROM Which is expressed by the ablative case of town names, and of* **domus** *and* **rūs**, *WITHOUT a preposition.*

NOTE. At this point, the declension of **rūs** should be reviewed carefully (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XV, with Note 2).

VOCABULARY

arripiō, 3, **-ripuī**, **-reptus**, *seize*.

cotīdiē, adv., *daily, every day*.

dēfendō, 3, **-fendī**, **-fēnsus**, *defend, protect*.

expellō, 3, **-pulī**, **-pulsus**, *drive out, drive* (from).

tantum, adv., *only, merely*.

verbum, **-ī**, N., *word*.

NOTE 1. The adverb **tantum** usually follows the word or phrase which it modifies.

Note 2. As contrasted with **capiō, arripiō** implies haste or violence of action (cf. **rapiō**).

67. 1. I thought that those who were about to set out so readily from home were men[1] so brave[2] that they could not be frightened even[3] by Hannibal himself.[4] 2. If twenty thousand Gauls should come to Rome to support[5] the senate, we should have no place in which to quarter them.[6] 3. Youths of the greatest courage, driven from the country because of the harshness[7] of their[1] fathers, are flocking[8] to London from all quarters.[9] 4. Use[10] only the smallest plates, so that no one will fear that the food will fail.[11]

68. 1. The horses were used[12] to carry[13] the weapons. 2. Do not cry, children; your father will soon return from New York. 3. Since the soldiers who are now at Rome are on the point of setting out for[14] Spain, let us hurry to Rome ourselves to protect the city. 4. Do you notice that the men[15] who boast most[16] are often so deficient[17] in courage that they run away from the field of battle[18] with the greatest readiness[19] and injure no one unless[20] it be[21] by words? 5. Thinking that he[22] alone ought to look after[23] the sick, Curio was accustomed to send doctors to the camp daily with the greatest diligence.

69. *A Young Hero*

"We promised," said Marcus to Gaius, "that we would not ask[24] the soldier to tell us a story yesterday; but if[25] we meet[26] him to-day, let's try to persuade him to talk with us." "I think that I see him now," replied Gaius. "Good[27] soldier, are you not[28] going to tell us a story to-day?" Hearing this,[29] the soldier smiled and said, "I once saw a boy about ten years old do[30] a deed[31] of great daring. After our men had fought very bravely for five hours, the

line had fallen back to the camp, leaving[32] the wounded on the ground. No one dared[33] to help the poor fellows;[34] but this boy, of[35] whom I am speaking,[36] seized a pail[37] and carried water to the men who were dying, though meanwhile bullets were flying[38] on every hand."

1. Omit.

2. See Remark 1 on p. 201.

3. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VIII.

4. Intensive pronoun. In arranging the phrase, this word may be separated from its noun.

5. Use **subsidium** (with the verb **veniō**).

6. *Lit.*, *we should not have where* (**ubi**) *to quarter* (**collocō**) *them.* **Ubi** is here the relative adverb, and its clause should be written as if a relative pronoun were the introductory word. What does the clause express?

7. **saevitia, -ae, f.**

8. **conveniō.**

9. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.

10. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

11. **dēficiō, 3, -fēcī (-fectus).**

12. See Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII.

13. *i.e. for* (**ad**) *carrying.*

14. **ad.**

15. Pl. of **is.**

16. **maximē.**

17. **īnferior.**

18. *field of battle :* **proelium.**

19. Use the proper form of **libenter.**

20. **nisi** (conj., used as adv.).

21. *it be :* omit.

22. Cf. the second part of footnote 10 on Exercise XXIII.

23. *i.e. care for.*

24. *Lit.*, *urge.* Review, if necessary, the infinitives of deponent verbs.

25. *but if :* **sīn autem.**

26. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII, and footnote 5 on Exercise XXII.

27. Use the superl. Be careful about the case, and also about the position of the phrase in the sentence.

28. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.

29. Cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXII.

30. *Lit.*, *to do* (indirect discourse).

31. **facinus, -oris, n.**

32. Use a passive participial construction, and do not put the phrase last in the sentence.

33. Imperfect tense.

34. **homō** ; or **ille** simply. Put first in the sentence.

35. *i.e. about.*

36. **dīcō.**

37. **vās, vāsis, n.**

38. Pass. of **mittō.**

EXERCISE XXV
(70–72)
THE GERUND IN PURPOSE CLAUSES

Verbs capable of taking a *direct* object are called Transitive; all others are Intransitive. In Exercises XI and XV it has been shown how the gerundive of *transitive* verbs is used in phrases governed by **ad** and **causā** to express purpose. Intransitive verbs, on the other hand, are all practically defective in the gerundive, and cannot be employed in these constructions; but the *gerund* of intransitives is freely used in very similar phrases.

MODEL SENTENCES

Colōnōs ex agrīs ad pugnandum vocāte, Summon the settlers from the fields to fight (*lit.* for fighting).

Pugnandī causā manēbimus, We shall remain to fight, *lit.* with (*i.e.* for) the purpose of fighting.

RULE. *In purpose clauses involving* **ad** *or* **causā,** *a transitive verb takes the* GERUNDIVE *form; whereas it is the* GERUND *of intransitive verbs that is required in all such phrases.*

NOTE. Intransitive verbs are of two types: (1) those which are incapable of taking an object of any kind, and (2) those which are construed with some other case than the accusative. Intransitives of this latter type use even the gerund very sparingly in purpose expressions (*e.g.* **vēnī ad senātuī persuādendum,** "I have come to persuade the senate"); generally they incline to some other device (*e.g.* an **ut**-clause).

REMARK. In such a sentence as "We have come to buy," the verb "buy" chances to be used without an expressed object. When thus used "absolutely," even a transitive verb is necessarily rendered by the gerund rather than the gerundive in purpose expressions (*e.g.* **emendī causā**); for the phrase contains no noun for a gerundive to modify.

VOCABULARY

Atlanticus, -a, -um, *Atlantic*.

etiam, adv., *even*.

indīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictus, *de-clare*. bellum indīcere, with dat., *to declare war (upon)*.

interdum, adv., *at times, sometimes, from time to time*.

nāvigium, -ī, N., *vessel*.

pondus, ponderis, N., *weight*.

sollertia, -ae, F., *skill*.

NOTE. Unlike quoque, the adverb etiam usually *precedes* the word or phrase emphasized.

TRANSLATION

70. I. If *they*[1] have come to Rome to play[2] and not to fight,[2] let *us*[3] by deed[4] and word[5] demonstrate to all men[6] that there are still[7] Romans who are willing[8] to use their[9] swords to defend the state. 2. Though these weapons are not useful to the soldiers of the whole regiment, still we must find wagons in which[10] to carry them. 3. The Indians had come daily from their homes[11] to assist, so that the settlers did not fear[12] that they[1] would ever desert[13] to the armies of the enemy. 4. Seizing stones of great weight, the bravest settlers, with Gaius for leader, at once hurried to the farthest[14] part of the bridges.[15]

71. I. If because of fear the hunters should not come to help[16] us, many would think that this[17] had injured our cause.[18] 2. "We shall come from New York to observe[19] only, and not to work," said the soldiers; "for we think that in your army there are many who can use these tools[20] with greater skill." 3. While[21] the young men were in New York and nobody was watching,[22] the boy, by running, twice escaped to the river. 4. Since you do not seem to be inferior in skill, we shall urge the general to allow you to remain at Rome.

72. *Americans on the Sea*

Many years ago[23] the British used[24] to board American vessels that were crossing the Atlantic ocean, and carried back[25] with them[26] to their own[27] ships seamen whom they thought to be British.   We fear that sometimes men were seized who were really[28] American citizens ; but in those days[29] the English were superior upon the water,[30] and the Americans were obliged to submit.[31]   But, a few years later, war was declared upon the British ; and the Americans, who previously[32] had had a very small fleet, now built[33] more vessels, and often overcame the enemy even upon the sea.

1. ille.

2. Use the causā construction, expressing causā but once (at the end), and omitting " and."

3. Supply autem with the pronoun.

4. rēs.

5. Use the pl.

6. *demonstrate to all men: lit., teach all* (cf. footnote 9 on Exercise I).

7. adhūc.

8. What mood?

9. suus, -a, -um.

10. *Lit., by which.* Cf. the second group of Model Sentences in Exercise I.

11. *Lit., from home* (sing.).

12. What tenses are used in result clauses ?

13. trānseō.

14. extrēmus, -a, -um.

15. Be careful of the spelling.

16. Use auxilium (with veniō).

17. Neut. of hīc.

18. Pl. of rēs.

19. *Lit., see.* Use ad or causā, omitting the following " and." For causā, cf. footnote 2 above.

20. ferramentum, -ī, N.

21. Use dum, as occasion offers.

22. speculor.

23. Be careful of the word order.

24. Translate in two ways.

25. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXII. Use the imperfect tense here and in the following clause.

26. sēcum.

27. *their own :* suus, -a, -um ; cf. footnote 32 on Exercise VIII.

28. rē vērā, *i.e.* " in actual fact " (vērus, -a, -um, " actual ").

29. Pl. of tempus.

30. *i.e. upon the sea.* Be careful of the spelling.

31. *Lit., to put up with it* (id patior).

32. anteā.

33. *Lit., made.*

EXERCISE XXVI

(73–75)

THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

When a transitive verb is turned into the passive, its direct object becomes the subject of the sentence (*e.g.* **nāvem fēcērunt**, "They built a ship"; but **nāvis facta est**, "A ship was built"). Intransitive verbs, however, being incapable of taking a direct object, can form only an IMPERSONAL passive.

MODEL SENTENCES

Ācriter pugnātur {
The fight waxes hot.
They (we, you, etc.) fight fiercely.
Lit., *It* is fought fiercely.

Ad montēs perventum est {
The mountains were reached.
He (they, we, etc.) arrived at the mountains.
Lit., *It* was come to the mountains.

Statim nōbīs pugnandum est {
We must fight at once.
Lit., *It* must be fought by us at once.

NOTE. Attention has already been called to the fact that the gerundive of intransitive verbs is practically defective. The reason for this state of affairs now appears : for, being a part of the passive system, the gerundive of an intransitive verb is limited to the impersonal use, and hence can have but a single form (namely, the neuter singular in **-um**, nominative and accusative), used only as in the third of the Model Sentences.

REMARK. The above statements apply equally to *all* intransitives. But for the present the discussion is limited to verbs which, in the active, are incapable of governing any case whatsoever (cf. the

first part of the Note in Exercise XXV). Intransitives capable
of governing cases other than the accusative are reserved for later
consideration.

VOCABULARY

Cloelia, -ae, f., *Cloelia.*

complūrēs, -ēs, -a, *several.*
   See the Summary of
   Forms, p. 350, Note.

custōs, -ōdis, m., *guard.*

obses, -idis, c., *hostage.*

vēnor, 1, *hunt.*

TRANSLATION

73. 1. At London [1] you must work with great diligence,
so that no one will inform your father that he [2] must hurry
from the country to watch [3] you. 2. If we should use our
horses from time to time, our skill would become greater.
3. If you have been sent here [4] to loiter,[5] go [6] at once into
the garden; I think that you will find there some [7] children
who like [8] to play the greater part of the day. 4. I feared
that they had not found lighter [9] wagons to be used [10] for
carrying the wives and daughters of the consuls.

74. 1. When they had come [11] to the shore to summon
the hunter, the water was so high because of the tide [12]
that the sailors could not save him. 2. Since I have not
even at home a place to sit,[13] I have to [14] go daily many
miles into the woods to hunt. 3. They said that they
had just [15] come from London, and that they [7] had never [16]
seen a finer [17] town. 4. While one of the sailors was
spying upon the vessel, the others sat down [18] under the
trees to write.

75. *A Distinguished Roman Maid*

Long [19] years ago, when war had been declared by king
Porsinna upon the Romans, the enemy advanced suddenly

upon [20] Rome, and invested [21] the city with siege works.[22] To induce [23] the king to withdraw [24] his [7] army, the Romans were obliged to give hostages, among [25] them several girls.[26] One of these,[27] Cloelia by name, outwitted [28] the guards a few days later, and led [29] the other maidens to the river; and, although the weapons of the enemy were now flying [30] on every hand, the girls swam to the other bank [31] in safety,[32] and quickly hurried home to their [33] relatives.[34]

1. Be careful of the spelling.

2. Reflexive pronoun (suī).

3. What part of speech is the gerundive?

4. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVII.

5. moror.

6. abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.

7. Omit.

8. volō. What mood?

9. *lighter: lit., of less weight.*

10. See Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII. Introduce the following clause by ad.

11. Use the passive, and employ ad or causā for the following purpose clause.

12. aestus, -ūs, M.

13. *have . . . a place to sit: lit., have where to sit* (cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XXIV).

14. Gerundive. Be careful of the spelling.

15. modo.

16. *never:* note that "and" precedes.

17. pulcher.

18. sedeō.

19. *Lit., many.*

20. *upon Rome: lit., to Rome.*

21. circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus.

22. *i.e. fortifications.*

23. *i.e. persuade;* cf. the latter part of the Note in Exercise XXV.

24. What is the difference between redūcō, "withdraw," and sē recipere, "withdraw"?

25. *among:* in, with abl.

26. *several girls:* in the same case as the word for "hostages."

27. *Lit., of whom one.* Keep this order of words in the Latin rendering.

28. fallō, 3, fefellī, falsus.

29. dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

30. Passive of mittō.

31. *Lit., by swimming reached the other bank.* Be careful to choose the right word for "the other."

32. *i.e. safely.*

33. suus, -a, -um.

34. propinquī, -ōrum, M.

EXERCISE XXVII

(76–78)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXI TO XXVI

VOCABULARY

aquor, I, *get water.*

brevī, adv., *soon, shortly.*

hiemō, I, -āvī, -ātum est, *winter* (*i.e. pass the winter*).

tantus, -a, -um, *such great* (*large*), *so great* (*large*), *such.*

TRANSLATION

76. I. We go to the country[1] in summer to hunt. 2. When they had sailed[2] to the island, the settlers promptly[3] drove out the forces of the enemy. 3. We must smile, although I have been informed that these most wicked[4] ambassadors[5] will endeavor in every way[6] to injure our countrymen.[7] 4. The soldiers were using such large weapons that they soon became[8] tired with (the) fighting. 5. Do you think that the men[9] who are on the point of coming to help[10] the other general will prove to be[11] more courageous?[12]

77. I. If Curio should linger among[13] the mountains to wait for[14] hostages from[15] the cities, should you not[16] fear that the enemy would make a sudden[17] attack upon our armies? 2. When the fight had thus raged[18] more fiercely for two hours, soldiers were sent into the woods to get water.[19] 3. If they have gone home to winter because of the cold,[20] I hope that the plan[21] will turn out well for them ; but *I* shall stay in London. 4. Since the Indians have twice come across the hills with intent to[22] injure, you certainly[23] must not withdraw[24] the guards to New York.

78. *A Modern Amazon*

A [25] woman, whose husband [26] had gone [27] to war, one day noticed several soldiers of [28] the enemy's army approaching [29] her [30] farmhouse.   Finding [31] that she had been left at home alone, the men stole her [30] chickens, and tormented her [32] in every way.[6]   But while they were preparing dinner, the woman quietly [33] seized their guns,[34] and put them [30] in [35] a safe [36] place; then, suddenly coming back into the farmhouse, she informed the men that they [37] were prisoners.   One [38] of the soldiers, who attempted to arrest [39] her, she promptly shot dead,[40] and compelled the others to march to a camp not far distant,[41] where they were turned over [42] to the commander.

1. See Exercise XXIV.

2. Use the passive.

3. *i.e. at once.*

4. *i.e. bad.* Place this second modifier after the noun.

5. **lēgātus.**

6. Use the pl.

7. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIX.

8. *Lit., were.*

9. Pl. of **is.**

10. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise XXV. What determines the mood here?

11. *will prove to be: i.e. will be.*

12. *more courageous: lit., of greater courage.*

13. **in.**

14. Use **causā.**

15. *Lit., of.*

16. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XX.

17. **repentīnus, -a, -um.**

18. *the fight had . . . raged:* passive of **pugnō,** with **ācriter.**

19. Translate in three ways.

20. **frīgus, -oris,** N. Use the pl., and place early in the sentence.

21. *Lit., thing.*

22. Use **causā.**

23. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.

24. Cf. footnote 24 on Exercise XXVI. ·

25. **quīdam.**

26. **vir.**

27. *Lit., had set out.*

28. **ex.**

29. *Lit., to be approaching* (indirect discourse).

30. Omit.

31. **cōgnōscō;** and cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III. For "the

men " of the following clause use simply the relative **quī**, placing it, as usual, first in the sentence (cf., too, footnote 12 on Exercise III).

32. *tormented her : lit., were troublesome* (**molestus, -a, -um**) *to her*. Put the pronoun before the adj.

33. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIV.

34. **tēlum**.

35. **in**, with abl.

36. Cf. Note 3 on the Vocabulary of Exercise II.

37. Reflexive pronoun (**suī**).

38. What case ?

39. **capiō**.

40. *shoot dead :* **interficiō**, with the proper form of **tēlum**.

41. Cf. footnote 26 on Exercise XXII. Punctuate the clause with a semicolon (cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXI).

42. Pass. of **trādō**, 3, **-didī, -ditus** (with dat.).

EXERCISE XXVIII

(79–81)

THE SUPINE

The supine consists of the accusative and ablative singular of a verbal noun of the same derivation as the perfect passive participle ; *e.g. :*

	ACCUSATIVE	ABLATIVE
vocō :	vocā**tum**	vocā**tū**
habeō :	habi**tum**	habi**tū**
mittō :	mis**sum**	mis**sū**
rapiō :	rap**tum**	rap**tū**
audiō :	audī**tum**	audī**tū**

Deponents, as well as other verbs, form a supine ; and in the case of all verbs, whether regular or irregular, there is found the same fixed relation between the forms of the supine and those of the perfect passive participle. Hence, to write the supine of a verb, it is necessary only to know the principal parts.

MODEL SENTENCE

Lēgātī vēnērunt pacem petītum, The envoys have come to sue for peace.

RULE. *In dependence upon a verb of motion, the supine in* -**um** *may be used to express Purpose.*

NOTE. In regard to the supine in -**um** in this use, observe carefully (1) that it depends upon a verb of *motion*, (2) that it requires no preposition, and (3) that it may itself govern an accusative. In order to become at once familiar with this new method of expressing purpose, watch for the opportunities to use it afforded by verbs of motion.

MODEL SENTENCE

Hoc optimum factū arbitror, I think this best to do (*lit.* best as regards doing).

RULE. *The supine in* -**ū** *is used with a few adjectives as an Ablative of Specification.*

REMARK. The supine in -**um** is common enough ; but the use of the supine in -**ū** is very limited.

In connection with this Exercise, by way of review, write out all the participles, verbal nouns, and infinitives of some one deponent verb.

VOCABULARY

abeō, -**īre**, -**iī**, -**itum est**, *depart, go away.*

adhūc, adv., *up to this time, still, yet.*

cōpia, -**ae**, F., *supply, abundance.*

Mediterrāneus, -**a**, -**um**, *Mediterranean.*

pīrāta, -**ae**, M., *pirate.*

potior, 4, -**ītus sum**, *get possession of.* See the Rule in Exercise XXII.

79. 1. If the farmers[1] should come here to buy grain, they would realize that we have the largest supply of everything.[2] 2. Wonderful[3] to say,[4] we shortly got possession of the town, though the townspeople had been informed that we had decided to spare no one. 3. Since some of the[5] hunters had gone into the valley to get water, we persuaded the leaders not to close[6] the gates. 4. When the fight had lasted[7] for a very long time, so many settlers had been killed that we were obliged to fall back.[8]

80. 1. We hear that in the country there are people[9] who have never seen a town. I hope that they will some day[10] come to New York. 2. Though he is surpassed in skill by his[11] brother, will you not allow him to go with us through the hills to hunt? 3. The son who helped[12] us was called Marcus; did you learn the name of the other? 4. We were marching through the valleys to[13] get possession of the fort, and up to this time had seen no one;[14] but now we had to rush[15] through a stream[16] which the enemy had filled with skiffs.

81. *Turning the Tables*

When Caesar[1] was still a young man, he was once sailing[17] on the Mediterranean Sea in a ship[17] which was captured by pirates. At once he[18] sent messengers to Rome to bring money with which to ransom[19] him. Meanwhile, being obliged[20] to remain[21] many days among the pirates, he used to declare[22] to them,[23] laughing, that they would soon pay the penalty.[24] They,[25] of course,[26] thought[27] that the man[28] was joking,[29] and, when the money was paid,[30] allowed him to depart unharmed.[31] He,[18] however, at once

summoned a fleet,[32] captured the pirates very easily, and ordered [33] them all killed.[33]

1. Be careful of the word order.

2. *i.e. all things.*

3. **mīrābilis, -is, -e.** Use the neut. sing. nominative.

4. Cf. the second Model Sentence of this Exercise.

5. *some of the:* **quīdam** (pl.).

6. **claudō, 3, clausī, clausus.**

7. *the fight had lasted:* passive of **pugnō.**

8. Cf. Note 4 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

9. Pl. of **homō** (masc.).

10. *some day:* **aliquandō** (adv.).

11. Omit.

12. Use **auxilium.**

13. **ut.**

14. Note that " and " precedes.

15. **currō.**

16. **flūmen.**

17. *he was . . . sailing . . . in a ship:* lit., *he was being carried* (**vehō**) *by a ship.*

18. **ille.**

19. **redimō, 3, -ēmī, -emptus.** Turn the phrase into the passive. What kind of relative clause is this?

20. Use a **cum**-clause, and place the word for " meanwhile " within this phrase.

21. **moror.**

22. **dīcō.**

23. *to them:* omit.

24. **poenās dō.**

25. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise VIII.

26. *of course:* **scīlicet.**

27. Imperfect tense.

28. **homō.**

29. **lūdō.**

30. **solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus.** Make this a participial phrase.

31. *i.e. safe.*

32. Use a (passive) participial phrase.

33. *ordered . . . killed:* i.e. *ordered . . . to be killed.*

EXERCISE XXIX

(82–84)

SUMMARY OF PURPOSE CONSTRUCTIONS — USE OF Quō

MODEL SENTENCES

(**ut and nē**) (1) **Iuvenēs mihi trādidērunt, nē mātrēs flērent,** They handed over the young men to me, so that their mothers would not weep.

(Relative) (2) **Mīlitēs mittāmus, quī līberōs redūcant,** Let us send
soldiers to bring back the children.

(Gerundive) (3) **Lēgātī ad pācem petendam vēnērunt,** Ambassadors
have come to sue for peace.

(4) **Pācis petendae causā rēx Rōmae est,** The king is
at Rome for the purpose of suing for peace.

(Gerund) (5) **Colōnī in silvam ad vēnandum iērunt,** The settlers
have gone into the forest to hunt.

(6) **Germānī vēnandī causā in silvīs habitant,** With a
view to hunting, the Germans dwell in the forests.

(Supine) (7) **Nautae in silvam aquātum iērunt,** Sailors have
gone into the forest to get water.

———

(quō) (8) **Ad collem properāte, quō facilius auxilium nostrīs
ferātur,** Hasten to the hill, so that assistance
may be given more easily to our men.

RULE. *Purpose clauses containing the comparative of
an adjective or adverb are introduced by* **quō** *rather than
by* **ut.**

NOTE. In purpose clauses of this last type, the comparative
regularly stands next to **quō,** as in the Model Sentence.

In regard to the use of the above forms for the expres-
sion of purpose, the following points must be kept clearly
in mind:

1. Negative purpose requires **nē.**

2. **Quō** replaces **ut** when there is a comparative in the
purpose clause.

3. A relative pronoun is apt to be chosen when the gov-
erning clause contains a more or less indefinite expression
to serve as antecedent.

4. The supine in -**um** can be construed with verbs of motion only. Furthermore, it is with verbs of this class that **ad** with the gerund or gerundive is mostly found.

REMARK. Remember that, in purpose clauses involving **ad** or **causā**, transitive verbs take the *gerundive* form, whereas intransitives are restricted to the *gerund* in all such phrases (cf. Exercise XXV).

VOCABULARY

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., *sight.*   **iam,** adv., *already.*

contendō, 3, **-tendī (-tentus),**   **quō,** conj., *so that, in order*
 proceed, start.   *that, in order to, so as to.*

TRANSLATION

82. 1. Send men of greater courage from New York to reënforce[1] our army.   2. Did you think that the consuls' children had gone away to our gardens to play?[2] 3. The farmers and the hunters must labor with the greatest diligence, so that we may have a larger supply of food; then we shall very quickly get possession of more towns of the enemy.   4. Noticing this,[3] we realized that the pirates would obstruct[4] the bridges,[5] so that no one should use[6] the wagons.   5. We were in the country to see and to hear.

83. 1. The river was so deep[7] that the cattle could not cross; and so they were led into a smaller valley, that they might be cared for more easily.   2. I fear that we are not likely to go[8] to the country; but we do usually[9] go away from Rome at this season of the year.   3. If you thought that the men[10] who were in London were able to help[11] me only,[12] why did you not summon others[13] to bring back the hostages?   4. Since you were shouting through[14] fear, we did not care[15] to come ourselves, and did not send any one[16] else.[17]

84. *An Unsuccessful Undertaking*

Once when our army was about to break camp, several settlers decided to attempt to bring in [18] from the fields a supply of grain which had been left near a [19] farmhouse. Although the wagons were heavy,[20] the men arrived at the place without accident;[21] and, after a few hours, having gotten possession of [22] the grain, they started in good spirits [23] to return. But when our camp was already in sight, suddenly five soldiers sprang out [24] from the woods, and shot [25] their horses; then,[26] quickly setting fire to [27] the grain, they led away [28] the unfortunate [29] prisoners to a distant town.

1. Use **subsidium**.

2. Translate in four ways.

3. Use a relative, turning the phrase into the passive.

4. **claudō, 3, clausī, clausus**.

5. Cf. again Remark I on p. 201.

6. See the first sentence of footnote I on Exercise V.

7. **altus**.

8. *Lit., are not about to go.*

9. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII, with Note I. Place first in the clause (because of the emphatic "do" of the English expression).

10. Pl. of **is**.

11. Use **auxilium**.

12. **sōlus**.

13. **cēterī** or **aliī** ?

14. *i.e. because of.*

15. *not care:* **nōlō**.

16. *and . . . not . . . any one:* combine into a phrase.

17. **alius**.

18. **reportō, 1**.

19. **quīdam**.

20. *Lit., of great weight.*

21. *without accident : i.e. safely.*

22. Note that this calls for a deponent verb.

23. *in good spirits:* **laetus**.

24. *i.e. burst forth.*

25. *Lit., killed with weapons.*

26. *then: lit., this* (use rel.) *having been done.*

27. *set fire to:* **ignem admoveō (2, -mōvī, -mōtus)**, with dat. Turn the phrase into the passive.

28. **dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus**.

29. *Lit., wretched.*

EXERCISE XXX

(85–87)

ABLATIVE OF WAY BY WHICH

MODEL SENTENCES

Fenestrā puer ēvāsit, The boy escaped by way of a
window.

Viā lātā Rōmam contendērunt, Along a broad road they
proceeded to Rome.

RULE. *Way by Which is expressed by the ablative case,
without a preposition.*

REMARK. Way by Which may perhaps be regarded as a variety
of Means.

VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*   **lātus, -a, -um,** *broad.*

Arnoldius, -dī, M., *Arnold.*   **sēmita, -ae,** F., *footpath,*

fenestra, -ae, F., *window.*   *path.*

NOTE. On the declension of **Arnoldius,** see Note *2* on the
Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

TRANSLATION

85. 1. Let us find a broader road, so that the soldiers
may march more easily to New York. Do you not think
this best to do?[1] 2. After hurrying[2] a few miles along a
very narrow footpath, the settlers suddenly came in[3] sight
of the town where the enemy's armies had encamped[4] for
the winter.[5] 3. I hear that the men[6] who have just come[7]
from Rome say that the city people[8] have[9] smaller win-
dows. 4. Be not lacking[10] in courage,[11] though at times[12]
the enemy seem to be so numerous[13] that they could[14] not
be beaten by ten thousand[15] men.[16]

86. 1. If any one should declare war upon our state, the commanders [17] of the fleets would shortly proceed to Rome.   2. Escape by way of that gate, men; [16] for I fear that the enemy have gotten possession of nearly [18] the whole [19] camp.   3. We were in the hills to get [20] berries so that the captain might have better [21] food.   4. Let us spare even [12] the children; for they will be useful to the generals' wives.   5. Since this path is narrow, the men of the other company must retreat [22] by another road.

87. *A Desperate Venture*

Once an officer named Arnold, a man of the greatest daring, led a small army over [23] the mountains into Canada, hoping [24] to capture there a large town which was held [25] by the British.   Quietly he crossed the river at night; but when the soldiers had climbed the hill along rough [26] foot-paths, the enemy were found to be so superior in number that every one [27] believed that the town could not be taken by storm; [28] the Americans, however, decided to make the attempt.[29]   In the battle Arnold was himself [30] wounded,[31] and the army driven back.[32]   But two years later, when a fierce fight was in progress [33] at Saratoga, this same [34] commander again met [35] the enemy on the battlefield,[36] and there won [37] a great victory.[38]

1. Supine.

2. Use the passive (in a **cum**-clause).

3. *i.e. into.*

4. **castra pōnō, 3, posuī, positus.**

5. Use **hiemō** (gerund).

6. Pl. of **is**.

7. What mood?

8. **oppidānī.**

9. *Lit., use.*

10. *be lacking:* **dēficiō, 3, -fēcī (-fectus).**

11. **animus.**

12. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXV.

13. *i.e. so many.*

14. Observe the Law of Sequence carefully.

15. What part of speech is the Latin word?

16. **mīles.**

17. **praefectus, -ī,** M.

18. **ferē.**

19. Remember that the word for "camp" is plural.

20. Use **causā.** Gerund or gerundive?

21. See the Note on p. 291.

22. **cēdō, 3, cessī, cessum est.**

23. **trāns.**

24. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III. What construction with the verb of "hoping"?

25. Indicative, by exception to the rule.

26. **asper, -era, -erum.**

27. Pl. of **omnis.**

28. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.

29. *make the attempt:* **cōnor.** Place first in the sentence, not forgetting what is said in footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.

30. Intensive pronoun.

31. Use a participial phrase, omitting the following "and."

32. **pellō, 3, pepulī, pulsus.**

33. *a fierce fight was in progress:* **pugnō** (pass.), with **ācriter.**

34. *this same:* **īdem.**

35. **congredior, 3, -gressus sum,** with **cum** and abl. Use the perfect participle simply, omitting **est** and the conjunction (*lit.,* "*having met . . . , won,*" etc.).

36. *on the battlefield: lit.,* in *battle line* (Vocabulary of Exercise XII).

37. **potior.**

38. **victōria, -ae,** F.

EXERCISE XXXI

(88–90)

PARTITIVE GENITIVE — RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

MODEL SENTENCES

Partem mīlitum arcēssīvit, He summoned a part of the soldiers.

Alterō in exercitū plūs erat virtūtis, In the other army there was more courage (*lit.* more of courage).

RULE. *A word designating A PART may be modified by a genitive designating THE WHOLE (Partitive Genitive).*

REMARK. It is very easy to apply this rule to such a phrase as **pars mīlitum,** because the English expression so closely parallels the Latin. But examples like **satis audāciae, plūs timōris,** etc., demand special study; for the idiomatic English renderings, "enough boldness," "more fear," etc., do not at all illuminate the *noun and dependent genitive* of the Latin construction.

MODEL SENTENCES

Sunt quī putent sē nōn satis pecūniae habēre, There are people who think that they have not enough money.

Sī erant, quōs Cūriō timēret, If there were any whom Curio feared.

Nēmō erit quem audiātis, There will be no one whom you will heed.

RULE. *The subjunctive is used in relative clauses dependent upon such general expressions of Existence and Non-existence as* **sunt** *and* **nēmō est** (*Subjunctive of Characteristic*).

NOTE. Observe that, when used as a general expression of existence, **sunt** requires no expressed subject; whereas, in the corresponding English phrases, the indefinite subject cannot thus be suppressed: *e.g.* **sunt quī** signifies "there are *men* who," "there are *some* who," "there are *those* who," etc.

REMARK. It is because the relative clause, in expressions of this type, is felt to "characterize" the subject of **sunt, est,** etc., that the name Relative Clause of Characteristic has been devised.

VOCABULARY

mora, -ae, F., *delay.*

parum, adv., used as indecl. noun, *too little.*

plūs, plūris, N., *more.*

satis, adv., used as indecl. noun, *sufficient, enough, plenty.*

similis, -is, -e, *like, similar;* may be construed with either the dative or the genitive.

strepitus, -ūs, M., *noise, confusion.*

NOTE 1. An indeclinable noun (or adverb so employed) can be used only as a nominative or accusative singular. The gender is always neuter.

NOTE 2. For the declension of **plūs**, see the Summary of Forms, p. 350. Note how (as a *noun*) it corresponds to the already familiar plural adjective, **plūrēs, -ēs, -a.**

NOTE 3. **Similis,** with five other adjectives (namely, **dissimilis, facilis, difficilis, gracilis,** and **humilis**) makes its superlative in -**limus** (*i.e.* **simillimus**). When comparing something to a *person,* this adjective is preferably construed with the genitive.

TRANSLATION

88. 1. There was no one who thought that you would have too little grain. 2. If they should come by way of the other gate, you would need to hurry more swiftly to protect[1] the captain's tent. 3. If you hear[2] any noise,[3] shout at once ; there will be men[4] who will dare, with Curio for leader, to come along this narrow road. 4. Caesar made a braver man captain, so that the regiment would have more boldness.

89. 1. Though you have come to hunt merely,[5] you are very like one of my brothers, and I shall not reprove[6] you. 2. Did he fear that I could not find sufficient words to use[7] in behalf of[8] the kings of these nations ? 3. If there are any whom[9] the enemy have so[10] terrified that they cannot[11] fight, send them all to Rome without delay. 4. Try[12] to get possession of that fort at once, captain ; for larger forces are already[13] marching from Rome. 5. For the greater part of the day let us sit in the shade of the trees to watch.

90. *A Chip of the Old Block*

" Once," said the soldier to the generals' children, " there[4] came into our camp a boy about eleven years old, who

told[14] the captain that his[4] father had been captured by the
enemy, and that he too wanted to become a soldier.   Hear-
ing this,[15] the captain laughed, but the boy refused to leave.[16]
So,[17] securing[18] weapons, the lad[19] marched with the sol-
diers ; and when an attack was made[20] upon a certain fort,
he hid under a tree, and began to fire at[21] the enemy.
In this[22] way he wounded so many men[4] that several sol-
diers noticed it,[23] and one of them tried[24] to kill him with
an ax.   But the boy fought the whole day, and returned to
camp in safety, carrying the arms[25] which he had taken
from[26] the enemy.''

1. Use **praesidium** (in an ut-
clause).

2. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise
XVII.

3. *any noise: lit., anything
of noise.* See the Vocabulary of
Exercise XVII.

4. Omit.

5. *to hunt merely :* cf. Note
1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise
XXIV.   Do not forget to use the
supine, when occasion offers.

6. **castīgō**, 1.

7. Relative clause.

8. *in behalf of :* **prō**, prep., with
the abl.

9. Cf. the second group of
Model Sentences in this Exer-
cise.

10. **adeō** (adv.).

11. See the Note on the Rule
in Exercise VI.

12. Note that this calls for a
deponent verb.

13. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise XXIX.

14. **dīcō** (with dat.).

15. Use a relative, turning the
phrase into the passive.

16. *i.e. go away.*

17. *i.e. and so.*

18. *Lit., having gotten posses-
sion of.* Note that this calls for
a deponent verb.

19. Use **ille**.

20. Use a participial phrase.

21. **tēla mittō in**.

22. *Lit., which* (rel.).

23. *it : lit., the thing.*

24. This clause, too, is a part
of the construction introduced by
" that."

25. *carrying the arms: lit.,
with the arms.*

26. **ab**.

EXERCISE XXXII

(91–93)

NUMERALS

In connection with this Exercise, learn the cardinal and ordinal numerals from 21 to 100 inclusive (see Summary of Forms, p. 353), giving special attention to those which are formed by subtraction, *e.g.* **duodētrīgintā**, "twenty-eight" (*lit.* "two from thirty").

VOCABULARY

accēdō, 3, -**cessī**, -**cessum est**, *approach*, *come up ;* construed with **ad** and the acc. **propius accēdere**, *to come nearer*.

minus, adv. (comparative),

used as indecl. noun, *less*.

nihil, indecl. noun, N.; *nothing*.

prope, adv., *near*.

venēnum, -**ī**, N., *poison*.

Note. On the syntax of **minus** and **nihil**, see Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXI.

TRANSLATION

91. 1. I had wanted to bring[1] more[2] grass; but until now[3] they have sent only twenty horses.   2. When they had wintered[4] in New York for four years, the twenty-third and forty-sixth regiments[5] were suddenly summoned to London.   3. Though there will be some who will want[6] to go[7] by way of the third gate, we must guard that also, so that the regiments of the whole army will be safer.[8] 4. Let's go into the garden to work.   Do you use baskets to cover[9] the flowers ?   5. We then shall have seen[10] the very[11] soldiers who reënforced[12] your line.

92. 1. If there are men[13] whom you are willing to send, summon at once the inhabitants of two cities; for I fear that the sailors will attempt to destroy[14] the bridges with fire. 2. If we should find sixty like[15] Curio, there would be less[16] fear in our army. 3. We urged the general not to buy more grain, so that we might travel with greater speed. 4. Since they have tried to injure the hunters' cattle thus, we shall set out from the camp by another path to get water.

93. *Catching a Tartar*

Many years ago,[17] some pirates, who had captured a ship on the Mediterranean Sea, proceeded[18] without delay into the cabin[19] to look for food. There,[20] however, they met the captain's[21] wife, a woman of the greatest determination,[22] who said that she had[23] no[24] food to give[25] them, but that there was plenty of poison in the chest[26] which[27] she would be glad to[28] present.

The enraged pirates next[29] tried to get possession of a very beautiful flag;[30] but the woman placed[31] it[32] in a box[26] and sat upon it,[33] saying[34] that she would kill the man[35] who came nearer.[36] Realizing that they could accomplish[37] nothing, the pirates[38] shortly withdrew from the cabin, and did not again[39] trouble[40] the captain's[21] wife.

1. vehō.

2. What part of speech is the Latin word for "more" (sing.)?

3. *until now: i.e. up to this time*.

4. Use the passive.

5. Pl., though both the modifying expressions are singular.

6. Review, if necessary, the grammar lesson of Exercise XXXI.

7. abeō.

8. tūtus. Be careful about the word order.

9. tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus. Use a phrase introduced by ad.

10. Future perfect tense.

11. *the very:* is ipse.

12. Use subsidium, with veniō.

13. Omit.

14. cōnsūmō.

15. Agreeing with the word for "men," which is understood with "sixty."

16. See the Vocabulary of this Exercise.

17. See Note 1 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.

18. contendō.

19. camera, -ae, F.

20. *Lit., where* (cf. footnote 32 on Exercise XXI).

21. praefectus, -ī, M.

22. fortitūdō.

23. Translate in two ways, keeping in mind footnote 10 on Exercise XXIII.

24. Use nihil.

25. trādō, 3, -didī, -ditus (with dat.). Make this a relative clause.

26. cista, -ae, F.

27. *Lit., and it* (*i.e.* the poison).

28. Use libenter.

29. tum.

30. vēxillum, -ī, N.

31. pōnō, 3, posuī, positus (with in and abl.).

32. Use a relative.

33. *i.e.* the box. Use the ablative case.

34. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III.

35. *the man :* is.

36. Pluperfect subjunctive (*lit., who should have come nearer*). What determines the mood here?

37. *Lit., that they were accomplishing* (efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus).

38. Be careful about the word order.

39. Use posteā.

40. Use molestus, -a, -um, with dat. (*i.e. were not troublesome to*).

EXERCISE XXXIII

(94–96)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXVIII TO XXXII

VOCABULARY

comes, -itis, c., *companion.*

imperō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *give orders;* governs either the dative or a purpose clause introduced by ut or nē, or both.

Plīnius, -nī, M., *Pliny.*

portus, -ūs, M., *bay.*

solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus, *loose.* nāvem (-ēs) solvere, *to set sail.*

Vesuvius, -vī, M., *Vesuvius.*

Note 1. Observe that the construction with **imperō** is quite like that with **persuādeō**. On the other hand, its construction must be contrasted very sharply with that of **iubeō**, particularly as **imperō** and **iubeō** are so similar in meaning. If, in translating into Latin, **imperō** is used always (and only) as the rendering for "give orders," there will be little danger either of missing the dative with that verb (cf. the Rule in Exercise IX), or of becoming confused concerning the familiar construction with **iubeō**.

Note 2. On the declension of **Plīnius** and **Vesuvius**, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

TRANSLATION

94. 1. Why are you giving orders to them not to set out from home ? 2. If you have gotten possession of seventy or eighty or ninety baskets, go[1] at once to fetch[2] the wagons. 3. Although the general fears that you will not spare the senate, the king has twice given orders that no one[3] injure the senators.[4] 4. Since there is no one who has less courage than[5] strength,[6] we shall all proceed to the country, and never return to Rome. 5. Through[7] doors[8] and windows the bolder pirates flee, and perhaps in[9] a few hours, by hastening, they will have escaped[10] into the mountains.

95. 1. Poison is perhaps useful to pirates[11] for (the business of)[12] murdering;[13] but good men should shun[14] it. 2. The others are about to go a journey[15] of several days into the woods to fight; but *we* shall remain at London to meet our[12] brothers. 3. Because of the confusion, the men[16] could not hear the captain, who was giving orders to a part of the line not to fall back. 4. While[17] one of the sailors was finding plenty of grain and all[12] too little money, the others seized the horses. 5. Come nearer, please, so that I may see better.

96. *A Time of Peril*

Pliny says that one day, when he [18] was [19] yet [20] a young man, his [12] mother suddenly noticed in the sky a black cloud of great extent.[21] Pliny's uncle [22] at that time [23] was commander [24] of a fleet; and [25] when he [25] was informed that the cloud was rising [26] from Vesuvius,[27] he boarded a ship without delay, and set out for the other shore of the bay [28] to save the farmers. When, however, he was ready to return from there,[29] he could not set sail because of adverse winds,[30] and never afterward [31] saw his relatives.[32] For he died a few hours later on the shore, although his [12] companions escaped. Meanwhile, at home, Pliny and his mother were afraid [33] that even [34] they [35] would be killed; for the wind carried the ashes [36] many miles across the bay.

1. *Lit.*, *set out*.

2. addūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

3. *that no one:* introducing what kind of clause?

4. senātor, -ōris, M.

5. quam (adv.).

6. Pl. of vīs, in the same case as the word for " courage."

7. *i.e. by way of*.

8. porta.

9. *i.e. within*.

10. See footnote 10 on Exercise XXXII.

11. *to pirates:* put first in the sentence.

12. Omit.

13. *i.e. killing*.

14. vītō, 1.

15. Note that Extent of Space may be expressed by a single word.

16. mīles.

17. Do not forget to use dum, as occasion offers.

18. Use ipse.

19. On what verb does the " when " clause depend?

20. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXVIII.

21. lātitūdō, -inis, F.

22. avunculus, -ī, M.

23. *at that time: i.e. then*.

24. praefectus, -ī, M.

25. *and . . . he:* use quī.

26. orior, 4, ortus sum.

27. *from Vesuvius:* put first in the indirect discourse.

28. Put the gen. next after the preposition, and the adjective after the other noun.

29. *from there:* inde.

30. ventus (-ī, M.) adversus (-a, -um). Put first in the clause.

31. **posteā.**

32. *his relatives :* **suī, -ōrum,**
M.

33. Imperfect tense.

34. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise XXV.

35. Use **ipse** (masc.).

36. **cinis, -eris,** M. Use the sing.

EXERCISE XXXIV

(97–99)

NUMERALS (*continued*) — HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

In connection with this Exercise, learn how to form the
cardinal and ordinal numerals from 101 to 1000 inclusive
(see the Summary of Forms, p. 354).

MODEL SENTENCE

In silvā nē maneāmus, Let us not remain in the forest.

RULE. *The negative of the Hortatory Subjunctive is* **nē.**

VOCABULARY

Aurēlius, -a, -um, *Aurelian.*

dubitō, 1, **-āvī, -ātum est,**
hesitate ; may be con-
strued with the comple-
mentary infinitive.

piscor, 1, *fish.*

praedium, -ī, N., *plantation.*

servus, -ī, M., *slave.*

TRANSLATION

97. 1. Let's not set sail without our[1] companions and the
other part of the army. Have you not been informed that
six hundred[2] Indians have already boldly[3] crossed the bay ?
2. If there is no one who prefers, by daring,[4] to have plenty
of food, I think that we ought all to go[5] home at once; for
an army of little courage[6] can[7] never conquer an enemy
so[8] superior in number. 3. Though eighteen companies
had been sent from Rome by Caesar along the Aurelian

way, we were on the point of summoning other[9] forces also, so that our men would fight more willingly.[10]   4. There was a rush[11] to the stream to save the boy.

98. 1. Since four hundred and ten men[12] have already been killed[13] or wounded, let us not hesitate any[1] longer to retire.[14]   2. This bench is so long that it cannot be filled by twelve baskets.   3. If there are[7] some who think that we ought to remain in New York to work, please say[15] that we have gone to the country to fish.   4. Let's not use the wagons at this time;[16] for as yet[17] the horses have had[18] no[19] grain.   5. Don't hesitate to go soon to the assistance[20] of the other line; for meanwhile no one will have aided it.

99. *Spartacus*

In Italy slaves would often run away[21] from the plantations; and[22] whoever[23] were caught, were killed by their[1] masters.[24]   Once several gladiators,[25] who had been quartered[26] at Capua, under the leadership of a slave[27] named Spartacus determined[28] to be free;[29] and when they had fled secretly[30] from Capua to Mt.[31] Vesuvius, many other[32] slaves ventured[4] to run away[21] from home to join[33] them. Thus[34] in a few months Spartacus became leader of an army so large that the Romans were thoroughly aroused.[35] At times there was very fierce fighting;[36] but finally the slaves were so decisively[37] beaten by Crassus that the peasants[38] no longer[39] needed to fear that farmhouses would be burned[40] at night, and that their[1] cattle and horses would be stolen by the enemy.

1. Omit.

2. Do not forget that the Latin words for " hundreds " (excepting **centum**) are declinable.

3. **audācter.**

4. **audeō.**

5. Be careful of the spelling.

6. **animus.**

7. Future tense.

8. tantō (adv.).

9. See the Remark on p. 210.

10. *i.e. more readily.* Note that this stands in a purpose clause.

11. Use concurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est. Render the following purpose clause in three ways (not ut).

12. mīles.

13. Express the form of sum with the second participle only.

14. See Note 4 on p. 240.

15. If the sing. is used, be careful of the spelling. Place before the word for "please."

16. *i.e. now.*

17. *i.e. up to this time.*

18. *i.e. have eaten.*

19. Use nihil.

20. Use auxilium (with the verb eō).

21. aufugiō, 3, -fūgī.

22. Use autem.

23. Use the relative simply.

24. dominus, -ī, M.

25. gladiātor, -ōris, M.

26. collocō (with locative case).

27. Recast the phrase so as to use the noun dux (expressing thus the idea of "leadership").

28. *i.e. decided.*

29. *to be free:* use the idiom sē līberāre (līberō, 1), *lit.* "to set one's self free."

30. clam.

31. Neither abbreviated nor written with a capital in Latin.

32. cēterī or aliī? Place the other modifier after the noun.

33. *to join:* use the idiom sē coniungere (coniungō, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus), with cum and abl. (*lit.* "to join one's self with").

34. *Lit., in which* (rel.) *way.*

35. *thoroughly aroused:* permōtus, -a, -um.

36. Use pugnō, with the superl. of ācriter.

37. *so decisively:* tantā clāde (*lit.* "with such disaster").

38. colōnus.

39. *no longer: lit., not longer.*

40. Use a participial phrase, omitting the following "and that."

EXERCISE XXXV

(100–102)

SUMMARY OF GERUND AND GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTIONS

Various uses of the gerund and gerundive have been treated in preceding Exercises. Each of these special uses, with others, finds a place in the schemes which follow.

THE GERUND

As already shown, the gerund is a verbal *noun*, found only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. All these forms of the gerund are used in regular noun constructions; but the dative is so seldom found that it is excluded from the present discussion.

MODEL SENTENCES

GENITIVE

facultās aquandī, The opportunity of getting water.
aquandī causā, For the purpose of getting water.

ACCUSATIVE

ad aquandum, For getting water (To get water).

ABLATIVE

pugnandō ēvādunt, They escape by fighting.
pugnandō superant, They excel in fighting.
dē pugnandō nihil audīvī, I have heard nothing about fighting.

NOTE 1. In the first group of models above, **facultās aquandī** has been rendered very literally. More idiomatic translations are: " opportunity *for* getting water," and " opportunity *to* get water." In turning such phrases back into Latin, the only security against error is to have firmly fixed in mind the fact that **facultās** and nouns of similar meaning govern a *genitive* construction.

NOTE 2. The accusative of the gerund is used only with a preposition, mostly **ad**.

NOTE 3. In the last group of Model Sentences, observe how the first two ablatives express Means and Specification. The prepositions used with this case of the gerund are **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, and **in**.

THE GERUNDIVE

The gerundive is an *adjective*, and has two main uses:

1. IN CONNECTION WITH the verb **sum**, the gerundive indicates that a thing ought, needs, must, or should be done. Intransitive verbs (impersonal in the passive) find here the sole use for their single gerundive form, namely, the nominative and accusative neuter in -**um**, *e.g.* **pugnandum est, persuādendum esse**, etc.

2. APART FROM the verb **sum** (expressed or implied), the gerundive of transitive verbs commonly lacks the notion "should," "ought," etc., being used with great frequency in phrases which, in meaning and form, very closely parallel the gerund constructions made by intransitive verbs (or by verbs used absolutely; cf. the Remark in Exercise XXV). In these gerundive uses, too, the dative figures so little that it is not included in the present discussion.

MODEL SENTENCES

GENITIVE

facultās aquae petendae, The opportunity of getting water.
aquae petendae causā, For the purpose of getting water.

ACCUSATIVE

ad aquam petendam, For getting water (To get water).

ABLATIVE

dolōre ferendō dēfessī sumus, We are worn out with bearing pain.

dolōre ferendō nōs superant, They excel us in bearing pain.

dē dolōre ferendō librum scrīpsit, He wrote a book on bearing pain.

REMARK. Working through the above examples one by one, note how the gerundive is everywhere simply an adjective modifier taking the form determined for it by the noun standing in the genitive, accusative, or ablative case. And always keep in mind the fact that only *transitive* verbs possess the gerundive forms necessary for the construction of such phrases.

NOTE. The same prepositions used with the ablative of the gerund are found also with ablative gerundive phrases.

VOCABULARY

Brundisium, -sī, N., the name of a town in Italy.

explōrātor, -ōris, M., *scout.*

facultās, -ātis, F., *opportunity, chance.*

forte, adv., *by chance.*

perfuga, -ae, M., *deserter.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many, so numerous.*

vereor, 2, **veritus sum,** *fear.* Perf. partic., **veritus, -a, -um,** used with the force of a present, *fearing.*

NOTE I. For the locative of **Brundisium,** see Remark 1 on p. 247.

NOTE 2. On the force of **veritus,** see the Note on **ratus,** p. 270. Do not forget to employ with **veritus,** and other forms of **vereor,** the construction called for by verbs of Fearing.

NOTE 3. Observe that **tot** provides a short and convenient substitute for **tam multī.**

TRANSLATION

100. I. Let us not send the horsemen to bring back the deserters; for they [1] are now busied [2] with caring for their [3] horses. 2. In a few hours you will have had an opportunity to sit in the shade, captain; but now, though you have been wounded with so many arrows, we must not hesitate to give orders to the whole army to proceed [4] at once to London. 3 If there is [5] a chance to look for slaves, not

even the horsemen will surpass us in speed.[6] 4. If we should inform the general that five hundred and fifty men, who were lately[7] with us, are now hurrying to the camp of the enemy's armies, he would say that there are not enough horsemen in Brundisium[8] to capture[9] so many deserters.

101. 1. Since wagons can travel[10] along this narrow way very easily, we need not find some other[11] method[12] of bringing[13] the grain. 2. If we proceed[5] from the plantation several miles through the valleys, there will be a chance to hunt and fish. 3. There are some people whom[14] we hear are trying to get possession of the money, so that they may have[15] more[16] slaves. 4. Thus it happened[17] that they were talking about building[18] ships. But we already have ten, and I think that the townspeople have been informed of the situation[19] and (that they)[3] will send eight other vessels to reënforce us.

102. *The Scout's Escape*

"Many years ago,"[16] said the soldier to the consul's sons, "a[20] scout set out from New York to join[21] our army; and,[22] as[23] he[22] was a man of the greatest daring, he was sent a few days later across the river, and remained[24] several hours in the enemy's camp. When he was ready to return, he quietly withdrew to the woods during the night,[25] but could not find the skiff which he had left on the river. While he was thus at a loss,[26] suddenly he heard the barking[27] of a dog, and fearing[28] that he would be caught by the enemy, he at once advanced silently[29] into the water, and there[30] by chance found another skiff. The dog, which had now come to the bank, swam after[31] the skiff, and seized it with his[32] teeth.[33] But the scout killed the animal[34] with his[3] dagger,[35] and returned shortly in safety to our camp."

1. Express the subject.

2. **occupātus, -a, -um.**

3. Omit.

4. *i.e. advance.*

5. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

6. Use **properō.**

7. **modo.**

8. Be careful of the spelling.

9. *i.e. for* (**ad**) *capturing.*

10. Pass. of **dūcō.**

11. *some other* : **alius.**

12. **ratiō, -ōnis, F.**

13. **vehō.**

14. Model this phrase on **sunt quī** ("there are some people *who*").

15. If a dat. is used, the reflexive (**suī**) is the pronoun required.

16. Be careful about the word order.

17. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.

18. *i.e. making.*

19. *Lit., about the* (**hīc**) *matter*. Do not place last in the clause.

20. **quīdam.**

21. Cf. footnote 33 on Exercise XXXIV.

22. *and . . . he* : use **quī.**

23. *i.e. since.*

24. *and remained* : *lit., where he remained*. Punctuate the preceding clause with a semicolon.

25. *during the night*: use an adv.

26. *be at a loss :* **haereō**, 2, **haesī.**

27. **lātrātus, -ūs, M.**

28. Translate in two ways.

29. *Lit., without noise* (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXI).

30. *and there: lit., where ;* cf. footnote 24 above.

31. *Lit., by swimming followed.*

32. **suus, -a, -um.**

33. **dēns, dentis, M.**

34. *Lit., the dog.* Make this clause a (passive) participial phrase.

35. **sīca, -ae, F.**

EXERCISE XXXVI

(103–105)

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

Just as a STATEMENT may either be reported verbatim (Direct Discourse) or quoted indirectly (Indirect Discourse), so a QUESTION may be reported either in the direct or in an indirect form, *e.g. :*

Direct form : " *Why are you waiting ?* " asked Marcus.

Indirect form : Marcus wanted to know *why they were waiting*.

In the above, note that, even in the indirect form, the interrogative word "why" is still retained — a fact that shows instantly that we are dealing with a quoted *question*, and not with a quoted *statement*. Consequently, even though some verbs (*e.g.* "to know") are capable, on occasion, of governing either construction, still the absence or presence of an interrogative in a given clause shows at once whether or not that clause is an indirect *question*.

MODEL SENTENCES

Caesar audīre vult Caesar wants to know	quid lēgātus faciat. what the captain is doing. cūr lēgātus abierit. why the captain has gone.
Caesar mē rogābat Caesar was asking me	ubi lēgātus esset. where the captain was. quis lēgātum vīdisset. who had seen the captain.

RULE. *The verb of an Indirect Question stands in the subjunctive mood.*

NOTE. Observe that Indirect Questions employ all tenses of the subjunctive, and with the same force as seen in causal **cum**-clauses (Exercise VI). Watch with special care for cases where the Law of Sequence calls for the use of the *perfect* subjunctive.

VOCABULARY

centuriō, -ōnis, M., *centurion.*
inīquus, -a, -um, *unfavorable.*
quisque, quaeque, quidque, adj. and noun, *each, each man.* See the Summary of Forms, p. 358.

quō, interrog. and rel. adv., *whither, where.* As rel. adv. beginning a new sentence, *there.*
rogō, I, *ask, inquire.*

Note.   **Quō** is found only with verbs of motion.   Hence it is
only when " where " is used loosely for " whither " that it can be
rendered by **quō**; and, conversely, whenever " where " *does* stand
for " whither," it *must* be rendered by **quō**; for **ubi** cannot be
used with verbs of motion.   Cf. the Note on **hūc**, p. 255.

In the same way, " there " as a rendering for relative **quō** at the
beginning of a new sentence is loose for " thither."   And even
" thither," thus used, is not a real translation of **quō** itself, but
rather of the demonstrative adverb (**eō**) for which **quō** stands; for
just as Latin, in beginning a new sentence, is prone to substitute a
relative pronoun for a demonstrative (*e.g.* **quod cum fēcisset**, " when
he had done *this* "), in like manner a relative adverb is often sub-
stituted for a demonstrative adverb.

TRANSLATION

103.   1.   Do not inquire why they[1] have gone to their
seats.[2]   I fear that *you* too will soon have opportunity to
sit.   2.   If by chance the hunter should come from the
country, Quintus, and inquire where I am, please ask[3]
him what he wants.   3.   On that day I asked the captain
where the prisoners were, and he[4] replied[5] that he had
killed all the men,[6] sparing[7] only[8] the consul's son.
4.   Because of the drought,[9] we have at the present time[10]
too little food; but I hope that shortly there will be an
opportunity to[11] look for grain.

104.   1.   Did you learn why a rush had been made[12] to
the gates to escape?[13]   2.   Let us not think[14] at this time
of[14] making[15] war; yet[16] each man should get a supply of[17]
arms.   3.   If there are any whom the king has ordered
to fight on[18] ground so unfavorable, we shall go very gladly
to their assistance,[19] in order that the confidence[20] of the
enemy may be less.   4.   The deserters were so many[21]
that we gave orders to the captains not to try to find out
where they[1] had gone.[22]

105. *An Example of Good Discipline*

When our soldiers had sailed across the bay, and had landed [23] from the ship, the enemy, who were not [24] much superior in number, suddenly made a fierce attack upon the companies. The centurions, fearing that they [25] would have to fight on [18] unfavorable ground, nevertheless [16] gave orders to their men [26] to try to gain [27] a small hill not far away,[28] and to form in a circle [29] there. When this [30] was done, the enemy repeatedly [31] attacked every part [32] of our line in vain ; [33] for [34] each of our soldiers had made up his mind [35] either [36] to die [37] there or [36] to be saved along with all the rest.[38] So it happened that the horsemen, who were coming in haste [39] over the mountain by rough [40] roads to reënforce the companies, suddenly attacked the enemy in the rear,[41] and soon put them to flight [42] with great loss.[43]

1. **ille.**

2. *to their seats: lit., to take a seat* (**sedeō**).

3. For variety, use the verb **quaerō**, which, in the sense " inquire," governs **ex** with abl. of the person. Put this part of the clause before the word for " please."

4. Express the subject.

5. **dīcō.**

6. **homō** or **vir** ?

7. *sparing: lit., and (that he) had spared.*

8. Do not use an adv.

9. **siccitās, -ātis, F.**

10. *i.e. now.*

11. See Note 1 on p. 308.

12. Use **concurrō** (3, -currī, -cursum est). How many interrogative clauses are there in this sentence ?

13. Not an **ut**-clause.

14. *think . . . of:* **cōgitō,** 1, with **dē** and the abl.

15. **īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus.**

16. See Note 3 on p. 219.

17. *get a supply of :* **parō,** 1.

18. With the ablatives **locō** and **locīs** the prep. **in** is often omitted.

19. What case of **auxilium** ?

20. **fīdūcia, -ae, F.**

21. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXV.

22. *Lit., had proceeded.* In wording this clause, note the presence of the verb of motion.

23. Use **ēgredior,** 3, -gressus sum.

24. **haud.**

25. Reflexive pronoun (**suī**).

26. suī, -ōrum, M.

27. capiō.

28. haud longinquus.

29. in orbem (orbis, -is, M.) cōnsistō (3, -stitī, -stitum est).

30. Use a relative, making this a participial phrase.

31. identidem (adv.).

32. *i.e. all parts.*

33. *in vain:* frūstrā.

34. Cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV.

35. *i.e. had decided.*

36. *either . . . or:* aut . . . aut.

37. Be careful of the spelling.

38. *the rest:* omit.

39. *i.e. quickly.*

40. asper, -era, -erum.

41. *in the rear:* ā tergō.

42. Note that this clause too is a part of the construction introduced by "that."

43. *Lit., a great loss* (dētrīmentum, -ī, N.) *having been sustained* (accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus). Do not place last in the sentence.

EXERCISE XXXVII

(106–108)

THE THIRD PERSON REFLEXIVES

A reflexive pronoun or reflexive possessive adjective is one that "refers back" to the subject of a clause or sentence. For the third person, these reflexives are respectively suī and suus, -a, -um.

Rēx sē interfēcit, The king killed himself.
Rēx fīlium suum interfēcit, The king killed his son.

RULE. *The third person reflexive pronoun and possessive adjective normally "refer back" to the subject of the clause in which they stand.*

In some types of *subordinate* clause, however, these same reflexive forms must be used even when the reference is to the subject of the *governing* clause. The subordinate constructions exhibiting this special use are chiefly these:

1) Indirect Discourse
2) Indirect Question
3) Complementary Infinitive Clause
4) Purpose Clause
5) Clause dependent upon Verbs of Fearing

The following examples illustrate this use either of **suī** or **suus** in clauses of each of the above types:

MODEL SENTENCES

1) **Colōnī dīcunt nautās sibi nocuisse,** The settlers say that the sailors have injured them (the settlers).

2) **Colōnī rogant cūr equī carrōs suōs nōn secūtī sint,** The settlers are asking why the horses have not followed their (the settlers') wagons.

3) **Colōnī nautās sē sequī iubent,** The settlers order the sailors to follow them (the settlers).

4) **Colōnī nautās hortātī sunt, ut līberōs suōs adiuvārent,** The settlers urged the sailors to help their (the settlers') children.

5) **Colōnī timent ut nautae sēcum proficīscantur,** The settlers are afraid that the sailors will not set out with them (the settlers).

The correct use of the third person reflexives is almost entirely a matter of memory; for the wording of an English sentence often gives no help.   Thus we may say "The king killed his son," whether we are talking about *the king*'s son, or about the son *of some one else*.   But in rendering such a sentence into Latin, we are forced to a decision: if the reference is to the king's son, the reflexive adjective is the only modifier possible (**Rēx fīlium suum interfēcit**); but if the son of some one else is referred to, the genitive of the personal pronoun is required (**Rēx eius fīlium interfēcit**).

Note. Though, for the third person, Latin is much better supplied than English with special reflexive forms, there are numerous distinctions which even Latin cannot make. Thus, when third person reflexives stand in subordinate clauses of the types illustrated above, there is sometimes a possible ambiguity. In the sentence **Colōnī dīcunt nautās sibi nocuisse, sibi** might conceivably refer either to **nautās** (the subject of its own clause), thus illustrating the general rule ; or it might refer to **Colōnī** (the subject of the governing clause), thereby illustrating the special use. In cases of this sort, the context usually makes clear the meaning of the speaker or writer.

Remark 1. In this connection, it must not be forgotten that the English forms " himself," " herself," etc., are not by any means always used as reflexive. Very often they are *intensive* merely, *i.e.* they simply emphasize a noun or pronoun (Latin **ipse**). Thus, **Rēx sē interfēcit**, " The king killed *himself*," but **Rēx ipse vēnit**, " The king *himself* came."

Remark 2. For the first and second persons, Latin has no special reflexive forms. Consequently all cases of **ego** and **tū**, excepting the nominative, are forced into service as reflexives (*e.g.* **Ego mē terreō**, " I frighten myself ") ; so also all forms of the possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster,** and **vester.**

VOCABULARY

aquila, -ae, F., *eagle.*

dīmittō, 3, **-mīsī, -missus,** *let slip, miss.*

impedīmenta, -ōrum, N., *baggage.*

portō, 1, *carry, take.*

sciō, 4, **scīvī, scītus,** *know ;*
may be construed with indirect discourse (or indirect question).

sīgnum, -ī, N., *standard.*

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their ; hers, theirs.*

vēxillum, -ī, N., *flag.*

Note. It has already been indicated that (like other possessive adjectives) **suus, -a, -um** *follows* the noun it modifies, unless

there is a contrast that makes it emphatic. Thus, **Agricola equōs suōs dūcit**, "The farmer is leading his horses," but **Agricola suōs equōs dūcit**, "The farmer is leading *his own* (as contrasted with some one else's) horses."

REMARK. In this connection, do not fail to note that **suus, -a, -um** fully covers the ownership idea, and that, therefore, the genitive of the reflexive pronoun **suī** (like the genitive of **ego** and **tū**) must not be used to designate the person to whom something belongs.

TRANSLATION

106. 1. By promising and urging, Caesar is helping himself and the soldiers of his entire army. 2. I hope that the Gauls will persuade the general not to injure them. Do you know where he[1] has gone? 3. If you hear[2] anything about summoning[3] the hostages, inform[4] me at once. 4. Did they inquire why Caesar, a man of great influence, was trying to get possession of their small town? 5. Let us not miss this opportunity of helping our[5] citizens; for, fearing that the settlers will not give them food, they are now[6] on the point of falling back. 6. Caesar will not have allowed the enemy to escape[7] from his sight.

107. 1. If the farmer's sons should have an opportunity to fight, they would kill many with their[8] great swords. 2. Though there is no one who hopes that we shall start from Rome very[5] soon, still there are some who are asking why the general has not sent[9] their baggage to Capua. 3. Though the deserters are fighting on[10] unfavorable ground, each company must shout twice, so that the enemy's fear will be greater. 4. Though they already had plenty of food, they were hurrying to the country, so as not to miss this opportunity to fish.

108. *A Unique Standard*

In American armies the soldiers usually[11] carry a flag as[12] the standard. But one[13] regiment always took with it[14] into battle an eagle; which, not at all[15] terrified by the shots[16] fired[17] on every hand, would fly[18] above[19] the enemy, and[5] then come back to a pole,[20] which a soldier was carrying. The enemy tried in every way[21] either to kill or to capture this eagle;[22] for they believed that, if it were lost,[23] the courage of the soldiers would be less. But this[24] they could never accomplish;[25] and[26] even after[27] the war was finished,[28] grateful[29] citizens for many years cared for the bird.

1. **ille.**

2. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

3. Review, if necessary, the grammar lesson of Exercise XXXV.

4. Cf. footnote 11 on Exercise XVIII. In this particular sentence, do not place the verb last.

5. Omit.

6. **nunc** or **iam**?

7. **recēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est.**

8. See the Note on the Vocabulary of this Exercise.

9. Cf. again the Note on the Rule in Exercise VI.

10. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise XXXVI.

11. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII, with Note 1.

12. **prō,** prep., with abl.

13. **quīdam.**

14. Cf. footnote 3 on Exercise III.

15. *not at all:* **minimē.**

16. **tēlum.**

17. Partic. of **mittō.**

18. **volitō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.** What tense?

19. **super,** prep., with acc.

20. **contus, -ī,** M. Keep the prepositional phrase last in the clause.

21. Use the pl.

22. *this eagle:* put first in the sentence.

23. Use an abl. absol. (*lit., it having been lost*).

24. Use a relative.

25. **efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.**

26. **atque.**

27. Use a cum-clause.

28. **conficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.**

29. **grātus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE XXXVIII

(109–111)

ABLATIVE OF QUALITY OR CHARACTERISTIC

MODEL SENTENCE

Caesar erat īnsīgnī virtūte vir, Caesar was a man of noteworthy bravery.

RULE. *A noun in the ablative case, with a modifier, may be used to designate a quality or characteristic of a person or thing.*

NOTE. It is often impossible to detect any difference in meaning between the genitive and the ablative of quality. But if the modifier is **pār, ācer,** or any adjective with nominative in -is (as **similis**), the ablative should always be written in preference to the genitive. Thus, while we may say either **maximae virtūtis vir** or **maximā virtūte vir,** the choice of case is at once limited if **īnsīgnis** is selected as the modifier, as in the Model Sentence above.

VOCABULARY

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, F., *practice.*
Germānī, -ōrum, M., *the Germans.*
īnsīgnis, -is, -e, *noteworthy.*

pār, gen. **paris,** *equal.*
pellō, 3, **pepulī, pulsus,** *drive, repulse, drive back.*

NOTE. Observe that **pār** is an adjective of one termination (like **audāx** ; see Summary of Forms, p. 350). Note carefully that adjectives of one termination (as most adjectives of the third declension) have only the -ī ending in the ablative singular.

TRANSLATION

109. 1. Though Cicero has like influence,[1] Caesar has given orders to Curio not to make him his[2] lieutenant.

2. Caesar did not[3] ask what you had said to his captain, nor[3] where you were on the point of going.   3. Through[4] practice in[5] hunting the Germans became[6] strong, and I do not think that many[7] nations have been found equally courageous.[8]   4. He says that the practice of carrying an eagle among[9] the standards often helped[10] the armies of those states.   5. Let us not believe that the men[11] who are now on the point of departing[12] from London are deserters.

110. 1. If there are any[13] who are inquiring why we do not spare their slaves, say that six hundred of their citizens[14] burned all our baggage and flags. 2. Many men of equal boldness set out from Capua to guard the roads, so that nothing[15] might harm their commander. 3. While the battle was raging[16] at New York, the sailors got possession of another island.   4. Within a few days we shall have enough ships to send to protect[17] that town. 5. Though the wagons will have been sent by a much shorter[18] road, why need we hurry to London at such[19] speed?   6. Were not the sailors willing to be sent to the aid of[20] another line?

111. *A Brief Campaign*

When our general had arrived there,[21] he encamped[22] without delay not far from[23] the river.   Seeing this,[24] the enemy for several days remained in the forest;[25] but on the ninth day, in order to find out[26] more definitely[27] what our army was doing,[28] three scouts crossed the river to investigate.[29]   So great,[19] however, was the watchfulness[30] of the soldiers that the men[31] were at once captured by our cavalry.   A few days later the enemy led all their forces across the river, and located[32] them[13] on[32] a hill suitable

for a camp.   But during the night our men occupied a
higher [33] hill, and in the morning [34] drove the terrified
enemy into the river.

1. *Lit., is of like (i.e. similar)
influence.*

2. *i.e.* Curio's.

3. *not . . . nor :* use **nec . . .
nec,** placing the verb of "asking"
before the first of these conjunc-
tions.

4. *i.e. by.*

5. *Lit., of.*

6. Customary past action.

7. Place next after the nega-
tive.

8. *Lit., of equal courage.*

9. **inter :** prep., with acc.

10. Use **subsidium.**

11. Pl. of **is.**

12. *i.e. of setting out.*

13. Omit.

14. *i.e. six hundred citizens of
theirs* (gen. of **ipse**).

15. What'kind of clause ?

16. Use **pugnō,** with **ācriter.**

17. Use **praesidium** (with
mittō). Make the whole a relative
clause.

18. *short :* **brevis, -is, -e.** Place
the modifying phrase after the
noun.

19. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise XXVII.

20. Not gen.

21. *Lit., whither* (see the Vo-
cabulary of Exercise XXXVI).
Put first in the sentence.

22. **castra pōnō** (3, **posuī, posi-
tus**).

23. *not far from :* **haud procul ā.**

24. *Lit., which* (rel.) *thing*
(**rēs**) *having been noticed.*

25. Use the idiom **sē silvīs
tenēre.** Cf. the similar phrase in
footnote 16 on Exercise V.

26. **cōgnōscō.**

27. Use **certius.**

28. **agō, 3, ēgī, āctus.**

29. **speculor.**

30. **dīligentia.**

31. Use **ille.**

32. *locate on :* **collocō,** with **in**
and abl.

33. To relieve the monotony
of the clause endings, detach
this adjective from its noun, and
put it last in the clause.

34. *in the morning :* **māne**
(adv.).

EXERCISE XXXIX

(112–114)

I–STEMS AND U–STEMS

I-STEMS		U-STEM
turris, F., *tower*	**animal**, N., *animal*	**cornū**, N., *horn*

SINGULAR

Nom.	turr**is**	animal	cornū
Gen.	turr**is**	animā**lis**	cornū**s**
Dat.	turr**ī**	animā**lī**	cornū
Acc.	turr**im**, -**em**	animal	cornū
Abl.	turr**ī**, -**e**	animā**lī**	cornū

PLURAL

Nom.	turr**ēs**	animā**lia**	cornua
Gen.	turr**ium**	animā**lium**	cornu**um**
Dat.	turr**ibus**	animā**libus**	corn**ibus**
Acc.	turr**īs**, -**ēs**	animā**lia**	cornua
Abl.	turr**ibus**	animā**libus**	corn**ibus**

NOTE 1. The noteworthy thing about the declension of the I-Stem **turris**, is, of course, its accusative singular in -**im**. Very few common nouns have this ending; but I-Stem names of cities and rivers in -**is** regularly form the accusative thus.

Neuter I-Stems with nominative in -**e** follow the declension of **mare**; the others (with nominative in -**al** and -**ar**; see the statement in Exercise I) conform to the inflection of **animal** above.

NOTE 2. The declension of masculine and feminine U-Stems (*e.g.* **exercitus**) has already been fully treated. How neuters of this class are inflected is illustrated above in the declension of **cornū**.

cornū, -ūs, N., *horn; wing* (of army).

dexter, -tra, -trum, *right* (as contrasted with " left ").

num, conj.; introducing indirect questions, *whether*.

studium, -ī, N., *liking, enthusiasm*.

TRANSLATION

112. 1. Though they were men of noteworthy influence, they nevertheless hesitated [1] to lead their forces thither,[2] fearing [3] that Curio had stationed the fifth regiment on the right wing of our line. 2. The practice of killing animals with the ax [4] must be checked [5] by the consuls and the senate. 3. With equal enthusiasm the Gauls advanced silently [6] to attack the higher tower.[4] 4. If they should see the eagle, would they not desire [7] to know [8] where we are going, and [9] why we are not marching to their camp? 5. I think that they carried an eagle into that town in order that the inhabitants of the mountains might not dare to injure them there.

113. 1. If Caesar orders [10] all the soldiers to follow him, let us not tarry to [3] look for the slave. 2. In numbers [11] the armies are equal, but ours is much superior in courage.[12] 3. Do you know what is taking place [13] on the right wing? *I* think that the tower has been taken [14] and the enemy repulsed. 4. Do not ask them [15] why they left their baggage and standards in the tower. 5. Even now Gaius seems to have too little enthusiasm [16] about these matters.[17] 6. The general of greatest influence could [18] not persuade a single [19] soldier of these companies to fight on [20] ground so unfavorable.

114. *The Carrier Pigeon*

"Some nations use birds in a curious[21] way in warfare,"[22] said the soldier to Marcus and Quintus. "Once in Europe, when there had been a fierce battle, and the townspeople had been forced to fall back to their camp with one of the captains very badly[23] wounded, the leader wished to find out whether the king was on the point of coming to reënforce him.[24] So[25] he wrote a letter,[26] and fastened[27] it to[27] the foot[28] of a pigeon,[29] which had been given to him[24] by the king. Set free[30] at night, the bird returned home with all[31] speed; and the king, thus informed of[32] the battle, at once sent several companies to the relief of his citizens."

1. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIV.

2. eō (adv.).

3. Translate in more than one way.

4. Be careful of the spelling.

5. prohibeō, 2, -uī, -itus.

6. *i.e. without noise.*

7. *i.e. want.*

8. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

9. *Lit., or.*

10. Cf. footnote 6 on Exercise XVII.

11. See Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise XII.

12. Put early in the clause.

13. *i.e. what is being done.*

14. Write the form of **sum** with the second participle only.

15. If **quaerō** is used, cf. footnote 3 on Exercise XXXVI.

16. *Lit., too little enthusiasm seems to be in Gaius.*

17. *about these matters:* put early in the sentence.

18. Present indicative; an idiomatic use.

19. ūnus.

20. Cf. footnote 18 on Exercise XXXVI.

21. īnsolitus, -a, -um.

22. *i.e. in war.*

23. *badly:* graviter. Render this phrase by a participial clause.

24. is or suī ?

25. *i.e. and so.*

26. litterae, -ārum, F.

27. *fastened . . . to:* dēligō, 1, with ad and acc.

28. **pēs, pedis,** M.

29. **columba.** Place last in the phrase, thus avoiding an awkward separation from the relative of the modifying clause.

30. **ēmittō,** 3, **-mīsī, -missus.** Not abl. absol.

31. *Lit., the greatest.*

32. *i.e. about.*

EXERCISE XL

(115–117)

REVIEW OF EXERCISES XXXIII TO XXXIX

VOCABULARY

cōnsilium, -lī, N., *plan, design.*

ēgredior, 3, **-gressus sum,** *go out, march out;* with **ex** and abl., *leave.*

NOTE. On the declension of **cōnsilium,** see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

TRANSLATION

115. 1. Since we know that the animal has horns, the women ought to run[1] at once to the gate, and[2] you alone ought to stay. 2. Though a similar plan of flight[3] has been adopted[4] at times by leaders of equal bravery, do you think that *our*[5] commander will allow[6] *his*[5] companies to fall back from New York? 3. Through[7] practice in[8] hurling fire, the Gauls were able very easily to ignite[9] our tower with their missiles.[10] 4. In[11] undertaking[12] wars, the Gauls do not (stop to)[2] consider[13] whether they are able to overcome the enemy ; for their nation is very enthusiastic[14] for[15] fighting.[16]

116. 1. With Caesar for general, I shall not fear even[17] the assaults of the armies of the greatest leaders. 2. Let us

not be afraid. For there are men[2] to whom the captains have given orders to announce[18] that there are enough soldiers in Brundisium; and *I* know that seven hundred others are now coming along the other road to aid us. 3. Because of the confusion of the streets, all men[2] very enthusiastic[14] for[15] writing will soon have been forced to flee to the country. 4. I feared that the enemy had placed horsemen on the right wing, so that you would cross the river with less[19] speed. 5. Twenty-eight[20] men have been sent from the tower into the woods to hide, and nobody as yet has noticed them.

117. *A Cautious Lieutenant* (*Part I*)

While this[21] was happening, one of Caesar's lieutenants, Sabinus by name, arrived at a town which the enemy had gotten possession of a few days before. When the Romans came in[22] sight, the Gauls closed[23] the gates without delay; and Sabinus, fearing that he had not sufficient forces to attack[24] the town, sought a place suitable for a camp, and there remained several days. Meanwhile, seeing[25] that no opportunity for fighting was offered[26] them by the Romans, the enemy marched out from the town daily, and finally would advance with such[27] boldness as to[28] come up[29] almost to the very[30] rampart of the camp.

1. Cf. footnote 14 on Exercise XXXIX.

2. Omit.

3. Use **fugiō**, and reverse the order of the modifiers of the word for "plan."

4. **capiō**.

5. Cf. the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

6. Review again, if necessary, the infinitives of deponent verbs.

7. *i.e. because of*.

8. *Lit.*, *of*.

9. **incendō**.

10. **tēlum**.

11. Express the preposition .

12. **faciō**. Gerund or gerundive ?

13. *i.e. question* (quaerō).

14. *very enthusiastic: lit., of the greatest liking* (Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIX).

15. *Lit., of.* Cf. the genitive construction with **facultās**.

16. *Lit., war.*

17. Note that " not " precedes.

18. Observe carefully the Law of Sequence.

19. Be careful about the order of words.

20. Numeral how formed?

21. **haec** (neut.).

22. *i.e. into.*

23. **claudō, 3, clausī, clausus.**

24. *i.e. for* (**ad**) *attacking.*

25. Cf. footnote 16 on Exercise III, and be careful about the word order.

26. *i.e. was being offered* (**dō**).

27. *i.e. such great* (Vocabulary of Exercise XXVII).

28. Introducing a clause of result.

29. *i.e. approach* (Vocabulary of Exercise XXXII).

30. **ipse.**

EXERCISE XLI

(118–120)

INSTRUMENTALITY OR INTERMEDIATE AGENCY

MODEL SENTENCES

Per mē hoc factum est, Through my help this was accomplished.

Dē pugnā Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior factus est, Through (the medium of) scouts Caesar learned of the battle.

RULE. *The person through whose instrumentality a thing comes to pass may be designated by an accusative governed by the preposition* **per.**

NOTE. The instrumentality construction is suited to describe the activity of agents who *contribute* to an end, or who are working under the direction of some one else. Thus, in the first of the Model Sentences, the speaker represents himself as helping toward the result referred to ; and, in the second, the scouts appear as subordinates acting under another's orders.

VOCABULARY

ēmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, *send out*.

Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul*.

intellegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus, *understand ;* may be construed with indirect discourse (or indirect question).

pedes, -itis, M., *foot soldier ;* pl., *infantry*.

suī, -ōrum, M., *his men, their men*.

NOTE. **Suī, -ōrum,** is, of course, simply the possessive adjective employed as a noun, and its use, therefore, is limited by the rules that govern the usage of the third person reflexives generally (see Exercise XXXVII).

TRANSLATION

118. 1. With the help of slaves, the women and children are being taken by wagon[1] to a safe place in[2] the forest ; for the settlers fear that the cavalry of the enemy have already repulsed our men, and that[3] their[4] infantry are now burning the tower. 2. As[5] a leader of noteworthy[6] boldness is on the right wing, Caesar does not understand why no prisoners are being sent to him.[7] 3. If they should adopt the plan of guarding the roads, we should be obliged to retire across the mountains into Gaul to winter.[8] 4. Through the medium of prisoners the general hopes that he will be able[9] to persuade the enemy not to kill the wives and children of the consuls. 5. Only Caesar's scouts[10] will be able to tell[11] us where the companies were hastening.

119. 1. Let us not go out from the tower ; for I think that the enemy are merely[12] pretending to be afraid,[13] in order that they may more easily have an opportunity to[14] attack the companies. 2. He will send men[15] from Rome to Capua to bring back his slaves ; for he had given orders

to them [16] not to leave [17] that city.   3. Follow me at once to
the gate, soldiers; for a very fierce fight is in progress
there.   4. I promise that you shall have sufficient money;
for I [18] shall then be either [19] at Rome or [19] in the country.
5. If there are men [3] through whose help [20] a messenger
can be brought [21] to the right wing, not even [22] the cavalry
of the enemy will be able to injure our line.

120. *A Cautious Lieutenant* (*Part II*)

Sabinus was reluctant [23] to fight against [24] so large [25] an
army on unfavorable ground.   Consequently [26] he for some
time [27] kept within [28] his [3] camp, [28] hoping that the Gauls would
think that the Romans feared them.   Finally, through the
help of a [29] Gaul who pretended [30] that he was a deserter,
the enemy were informed that Sabinus would soon break
camp, so as to fall back and go to the relief [31] of Caesar.
Hearing [32] this, and fearing that Sabinus might slip away [33]
unobserved, [34] the Gauls at once advanced [35] with great speed
toward [36] his camp.   But when they arrived there [37] tired
out [38] with running, Sabinus by two gates suddenly sent out
all his men, [39] who made so fierce an attack that very few
of [40] the enemy escaped unscathed [41] from the battlefield [42]
into the town.

1 . Use the pl.

2 . *Lit*., *into*.

3 . Omit.

4 . *i.e.* the enemy's.

5 . *i.e. since*.

6. See the Vocabulary of Ex-
ercise XXXVIII.

7 . *i.e.* Caesar.

8. *to winter* : not an **ut**-clause.

9. Cf. footnote 7 on Exer-
cise XV.

10. *Lit., the scouts of Caesar
only* (gen. of **sōlus**).

11. **dīcō** (with dat.).   Be care-
ful of the tense in the following
clause.

12. See Note 1 on the Vocabu-
lary of Exercise XXIV.

13 . *i.e. that they are afraid*.

14. See Note 1 on p. 308.

15 . Pl. of **is**.

16 . *i.e.* the slaves.   Use **ille**.

17. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XL.

18. Express the subject.

19. *either . . . or :* cf. footnote 36 on Exercise XXXVI.

20. *i.e. through whom.*

21. dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

22. Be careful about the word order.

23. *Lit., was hesitating.*

24. *Lit., with.*

25. *so large :* translate by a single word.

26. *Lit., and so.*

27. *for some time :* (absolute) compar. of diū.

28. Use the idiom sē castrīs tenēre. Cf. footnote 25 on Exercise XXXVIII.

29. quīdam.

30. Imperfect tense.

31. Use a dative construction.

32. If a pass. partic. is used, omit the following "and."

33. effugiō, 3, -fūgī.

34. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XIV.

35. contendō.

36. ad.

37. *Lit., whither* (see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVI). Put first in the sentence (and cf. footnote 5 on Exercise XIV).

38. *tired out : i.e. tired.*

39. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon.

40. *very few of :* perpaucī, -ae, -a. Place after the noun.

41. *i.e. in safety.*

42. *Lit., battle.*

EXERCISE XLII

(121–123)

INDIRECT OBJECT WITH THE IMPERSONAL PASSIVE

It has previously been pointed out that intransitive verbs are of two types, namely (1) those which are incapable of governing any case whatsoever, and (2) those which are construed with some case other than the accusative ; and, further, it has been shown that *all* intransitive verbs are necessarily restricted, in the passive, to an *impersonal* use (cf. Exercise XXVI).

The passive of intransitives of the first type is already familiar (*e.g.* pugnātur, pugnātum est, etc.). On the next page is illustrated the corresponding passive of certain intransitives of the other type.

MODEL SENTENCES

Mihi persuādētur $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{I am persuaded.}\\ \textit{Lit., It} \text{ is persuaded to me.}\end{array}\right.$

Omnibus parcendum est $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text{All must be spared.}\\ \text{Mercy must be shown to all.}\\ \textit{Lit., It} \text{ must be spared to all.}\end{array}\right.$

RULE. *Intransitive verbs which govern the dative retain this case with their impersonal passive forms.*

NOTE. The chief difficulty encountered in applying this Rule is that our rather loose renderings, "persuade," "spare," and the like (Exercise IX) incline us to forget that **persuādeō, parcō**, etc., are *intransitive* verbs, and, therefore, necessarily *impersonal* in the passive. To avoid error here, constant vigilance will be required.

REMARK. When the impersonal passive takes the gerundive form (as in the second of the Model Sentences), it is conceivable that ambiguity might sometimes arise, the reader or hearer being left in doubt whether the accompanying dative is one of *agency* (Exercise XI), or whether it is an *indirect object*. As a matter of fact, however, the context usually makes the meaning clear.

VOCABULARY

circumveniō, 4, **-vēnī, -ventus,** *surround*.

discessus, -ūs, M., *departure*.

īgnōscō, 3, **īgnōvī, īgnōtum est,** *pardon, forgive.* See the Rule in Exercise IX.

mūrus, -ī, M., *wall*.

Petrōnius, -nī, M., *Petronius*.

salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety*. **salūtī esse,** with a second dative, *to save*.

sinister, -tra, -trum, *left* (as contrasted with "right").

TRANSLATION

121. 1. On[1] the departure of the leaders, Caesar was persuaded by his captains to pardon the whole army.

2. Though this matter has turned out very badly for the companies on[2] the right wing, not even by words must the king be injured.   3. If through the help of the Indians we should be able to find a road by which to reach that tower, the enemy would not understand how[3] we had come up[4] to their camp.   4. Though he[5] is equally enthusiastic,[6] there are some who prefer Cicero.   5. We were afraid that you would not be spared; for Caesar knew[7] that you led[8] the four hundred horsemen who had driven back the left wing.

122.   1. They will use horses, so that the enemy may not capture their children.   2. Forgive the boys; for, though they have gone into the woods to fish, at New York I shall soon have given them an opportunity to work.   3. Do not urge Caesar not to send the infantry to Capua.   4. Let us not change[9] our[10] design of waging war; for a very skillful[11] leader will soon be sent from London to help[12] us.   5. Do you know whether the dog and the horse are brave animals?   6. Did the right wings of the two armies advance?

123. *A Heroic End*

Once, when Caesar was trying to take[13] a certain city, a very brave centurion clambered up[14] the wall; and[15] another, named Petronius, rushed forward[16] with three men to the very[17] gate,[18] where, however, he was surrounded[19] by the enemy and seriously[20] wounded.   Seeing[21] that he must die, Petronius shouted[22] to his men, " Though I cannot myself escape, I will at any rate[23] save[12] you."[24]   So saying,[25] he made a fierce attack upon the enemy, and having killed two[26] with his[10] sword, drove the others back a little.[27]   The opportunity for escape[28]

being offered,[29] the soldiers quickly withdrew to our line; but Petronius, though he had saved his men, himself[30] fell fighting before[31] the gate.

1. What case expresses this time relation?

2. *Lit.*, *of.*

3. *i.e. by what means* (sing.).

4. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXII, and observe carefully the Law of Sequence.

5. ille.

6. *Lit.*, *of equal enthusiasm.*

7. Imperfect tense.

8. *i.e. had led.*

9. mūtō, 1.

10. Omit.

11. *very skillful: lit., of the greatest skill.*

12. Use a dative construction.

13. expugnō.

14. cōnscendō.

15. atque.

16. prōcurrō, 3, -cucurrī or -currī, -cursum est.

17. ipse.

18. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon.

19. Express est at the end of the sentence only.

20. graviter.

21. *i.e. realizing.* Begin the sentence with quī, omitting " Petronius " of the following clause.

22. inquam (see Summary of Forms, p. 382).

23. certē.

24. *you:* put first in the clause, with the adv. second.

25. *Lit., which* (pl.) *when he had said.*

26. Use a passive participial construction.

27. paulum (adv.).

28. effugiō, 3, -fūgī.

29. dō.

30. Cf. Remark 1 on p. 318.

31. ad.

EXERCISE XLIII

(124–126)

THE ABLATIVE WITH COMPARATIVES

MODEL SENTENCES

Turris arbore altior est, The tower is higher than the tree.

Turrim colle altiōrem habēmus, We have a tower higher than a hill.

RULE. *When two things are compared as greater or less in degree, and the first is designated by a nominative or accusative, the other may be designated by an ablative.*

VOCABULARY

Custer, -trī, M., *Custer.*

ingenium, -nī, N., *wits, insight, mind.*

manus, -ūs, F., *band* (of soldiers).

NOTE 1. On the declension of **ingenium**, see Note 2 on the Vocabulary of Exercise VI.

NOTE 2. As nearly all nouns in -**us** of the fourth declension are masculine, observe with special care that **manus** is an exception to the rule.

TRANSLATION

124. 1. This route[1] is longer than that; but it is my custom[2] to travel always by the broader road. 2. I think that, because of his[3] liking for[4] hunting, the consul's son will remain in the country some[5] months; for in the forests there is a great abundance[6] of all sorts of[7] animals. 3. Through the medium of their[3] children they will be pardoned;[8] for you know that Pompey has been persuaded to spare all who are willing[9] to send their[3] children to him.[10] 4. Since there is no one who understands that water is more powerful than fire, let us not waste[11] time longer here.[12] 5. Will Curio have been informed where the cavalry have gone and[13] why the enemy are not attacking his left wing?

125. 1. Gaius is a boy of keen[14] wits; but Marcus is better than he.[15] 2. Twice the leaders of the infantry have given orders to their men[16] to advance to attack this

tower.   3. With great enthusiasm men[17] are now trying to mount the wall, so as to have a better[18] chance to wound the centurions with arrows.   4. With reference to peace[19] more ambassadors[20] have already come; for at home their[21] citizens have no[22] food, though *we* have an abundant[23] supply of all things.   5. I shall go to Rome or to Capua to meet Caesar; for I know that his courage only[24] is greater than mine.[25]   6. If all should be persuaded to use their wits, surely[26] some one[27] would save[28] us.

126. *Custer's Last Fight*

Many years ago several regiments set out to drive[29] some Indians from their homes,[30] and a[17] cavalry officer[31] named Custer was sent ahead[32] to attack the enemy. A part of his forces he[15] ordered to advance by another route,[33] so that he might make an assault upon the Indians from both sides[34] simultaneously.[35] Thus it happened[36] that when he came suddenly in sight of the enemy's camp, he had with him[37] only about three hundred men. Catching sight of[38] the little band, the Indians, who were about two thousand in number, at once burst forth from their[3] camp and made a fierce attack. Our men meanwhile had dismounted,[39] and their[3] horses, frightened by the uproar,[40] now ran away. The cavalrymen kept up the fight[41] bravely until their[3] ammunition[42] was gone,[43] and then they were all slain to a man[44] by the exultant[45] enemy.

---

1. iter.

2. Translate by a verb (cf. the Vocabulary of Exercise XXIII, with Note 1).

3. Omit.

4. *Lit.*, *of*. For the governing noun, see the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXIX.

5. *i.e. several.*

6. *i.e. supply.*

7. *all sorts of:* **omnis.**

8. Observe that this calls for an intransitive verb.

9. Note that this clause is a part of the indirect discourse, and observe the Law of Sequence carefully.

10. Reflexive pronoun.

11. **terō, 3, trīvī, trītus.**

12. **hīc** (adv.).

13. *Lit., or.*

14. **ācer.**

15. **ille.**

16. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XLI.

17. **quīdam.**

18. *Lit., greater.*

19. *Lit., with reference to* (**dē**) *suing for* (**petō**) *peace.*

20. **lēgātus.**

21. Reflexive or not?

22. Use **nihil.**

23. *Lit., very great.*

24. *Lit., the courage* (**fortitūdō**) *of him only* (gen. of **sōlus**).

25. Place before the comparative.

26. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI.

27. **aliquis.**

28. Use a dative construction.

29. **expellō.**

30. *from their homes: lit., from home* (sing.).

31. *Lit., officer* (**praefectus, -ī,** M.) *of cavalry.*

32. **praemittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.**

33. *Lit., road.*

34. *from both sides:* **utrimque** (adv.).

35. **simul.**

36. Consult, if necessary, the Vocabulary of Exercise XVI.

37. Cf. footnote 3 on Exercise III.

38. *i.e. noticing.*

39. **dēsiliō, 4, -siluī.**

40. *i.e. noise.*

41. **pugnō** (imperfect tense).

42. *Lit., weapons.*

43. *be gone:* **dēficiō, 3, -fēcī** (-fectus); use here the perfect tense. Punctuate this clause with a semicolon, omitting the following "and."

44. *Lit., to* (**ad**) *one* (*man*).

45. **gestiēns, -entis** (partic., used as adj.).

EXERCISE XLIV

(127–128)

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Two classes of conditional sentences have already been treated, namely, Simple and Vague Future. There still remains a third class, known as Contrary to Fact — a type

of conditional sentence peculiar in that it carries with it
the implication that the suppositions made are *false*.   Thus
we say in English :

"If the boys *were* here" (implying that they *are not*
present).

"If the boys *had been* here" (implying that they *were
not* present).

Observe that the first of the above illustrations has to
do with what *is* not, and the second with what *was* not —
a distinction which is marked by the terms *Present* Con-
trary to Fact and *Past* Contrary to Fact.

MODEL SENTENCES

Sī nōbīs plūs pecūniae esset, non rūrī essēmus, If we had
more money, we should not be in the country.

Sī plūs pecūniae Caesarī dedisset, certiōrēs factī essētis,
If he had given more money to Caesar, you would have
been informed.

**Sī Caesar tum Rōmam vēnisset, nunc nōbīs satis pecūniae
esset,** If Caesar had come to Rome at that time, we should
now have plenty of money.

In the last of these Model Sentences, note that the
conditioning clause is *Past* Contrary to Fact, while the con-
clusion is *Present* Contrary to Fact — a very frequent com-
bination.

RULE.   *Present Contrary to Fact Conditional Sentences
require the imperfect subjunctive, Past Contrary to Fact the
pluperfect subjunctive.*

VOCABULARY

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., *sally, sortie.*   **spēs, -eī,** F., *hope.*
regiō, -ōnis, F., *region.*

127. 1. If Caesar had been at Capua, he would have
given orders to the soldiers of the left wing not to spare
the slaves.   2. If this tree were taller than the other, its
shadow[1] would be longer.   3. If, on his departure, Caesar
had said that the townspeople must be pardoned,[2] they[3]
would now be safe.   4. If through your help I should find
a scout of equal daring, the general would send him very
quickly to the tower.   5. If you had remained at home,
and your[4] brother had not been sent from Rome into the
country,[5] Curio would be urging me not to remain[6] in the
city.   6. Gaius is informed[7] that by many things this ani-
mal is very easily injured.   7. Do not pardon these com-
panies which refused to cross the river.

128.   *A Successful Maneuver*

When the fight had now gone on[8] for six hours at[9] the
fortifications, our men would certainly[10] have been de-
feated, if[11] two centurions, men of keen insight,[12] had not[11]
run to Balbus, saying that a sudden[13] sortie ought to be
made at once.   Hearing this, and thinking that that[14] was
the sole[15] hope of escape,[16] the commander gave orders to
his men that, when the signal[17] was given, they should
rush forth by all the gates, and make a very fierce assault
upon the enemy.   And so, when the signal was heard, the
soldiers made a sudden sortie, and[18] gave the enemy no[18]
opportunity to realize[19] what was taking place,[20] but on
every side surrounded and killed[21] the inhabitants of that
region, who had come together with the greatest enthusiasm
from all the nearest[22] mountains, hoping to get possession
of[23] our camp.

1. umbra.

2. Note that this calls for an intransitive verb.

3. ille.

4. How many persons are addressed?

5. *into the country*: translate in the same way as " *to* the country."

6. Observe the Law of Sequence carefully.

7. Present tense.

8. Use pugnō.

9. ad.

10. certē or profectō? (cf. the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXI).

11. *if . . . not*: nisi (conj.).

12. See the Vocabulary of Exercise XLIII.

13. repentīnus, -a, -um.

14. The gender is determined by the predicate noun.

15. *i.e. the only.*

16. effugiō, 3, -fūgī.

17. sīgnum. Make this a participial clause.

18. *and . . . no: lit., nor . . . any* (ūllus).

19. cōgnōscō.

20. *Lit., what* (quid) *was being done.*

21. These verbs may be placed before their object, so as to bring the latter nearer to the relative clause dependent upon it.

22. proximus, -a, -um. In this phrase, the word for " all " may precede the preposition.

23. *i.e. hoping that they would get possession of.*

EXERCISE XLV

(129–130)

THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE

Taking **vocō** as a model, the forms of the future imperative are as follows:

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
2d person	vocātō	vocātōte	vocātor	
3d person	vocātō	vocantō	vocātor	vocantor

Turning to the Summary of Forms, learn the future imperative of all other verbs, regular and irregular, noting

that everywhere there is found the same close analogy between the forms of the third person of the present indicative and the corresponding forms of the future imperative.

MODEL SENTENCES

ītō,　{ Thou shalt go.
　　　{ He shall go.

sequitor,　{ Thou shalt follow.
　　　　{ He shall follow.

amantor,　They shall be loved.

NOTE. The future imperative is somewhat formal and old-fashioned; hence the rather stilted style of some of the above renderings.

VOCABULARY

absum, -esse, āfuī (future partic. **āfutūrus**), *be away, be distant*.

Aegyptus, -ī, F., *Egypt*.

Alexandrēa, -ae, F., *Alexandria*, the name of a city of Egypt.

Pēlūsium, -sī, N., the name of a city of Egypt.

Pharsālus, -ī, F., the name of a city of Greece.

Ptolomaeus, -ī, M., *Ptolemy*.

respondeō, 2, -spondī, -spōnsum est, *reply; answer* (with dat. of the person spoken to): may be construed with indirect discourse.

TRANSLATION

129. 1. Thou shalt be king of the Gauls. 2. Each band shall come to assist. 3. Ye shall bring to the king gifts greater than these. 4. There shall be peace; for the envoys[1] have persuaded the king to spare the consuls. 5. They[2] shall be killed; but we have given orders that[3]

the children be not[3] injured. 6. Hear ye, and announce
what[4] must be done; for the king's messengers will not
easily be persuaded. 7. They shall conduct[5] the envoys[1]
to the river. 8. Ye shall warn those[6] who live in the
valleys. 9. There shall be safety and hope. 10. Thou
shalt give ear[7] and spare. 11. Ye shall go by the long-
est road. If this[8] had always been done, we should now
have no war. 12. Thou shalt ever[9] try to make peace.

130. *Pompey's Fate*

After Pompey had been defeated at Pharsalus, he fled
by ship[10] to Pelusium. There[11] he found[12] that Ptolemy,
king[13] of Egypt, was not far[14] away with an army. He
therefore sent messengers to urge the king to allow him[15]
to go[16] to Alexandria for shelter.[16] But as[17] Ptolemy was
a boy in years,[18] friends[19] of his[20] father were helping him
in the management of business;[21] and they,[22] fearing[23]
that Pompey might[24] attempt to get possession of all[25]
Egypt, answered the messengers graciously,[26] but sent
back[27] with them two soldiers to kill Pompey. On the
arrival of these,[8] the defeated general was persuaded to
embark upon[28] a small ship to go[29] to the king; whereupon[30]
he was promptly[31] murdered by the soldiers. Had he
chosen[32] to remain upon his own[33] ship, perhaps he would
have fought with Caesar again a few months later.

1. *i.e. ambassadors.*
2. **ille.**
3. *that . . . not:* not a result
clause.
4. **quid.**
5. **dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.**
6. Pl. of **is.**
7. **audiō.**

8. Use a relative, placing it
properly in the sentence.
9. *i.e. always.*
10. Use the pl.
11. *Lit., where.*
12. *Lit., was informed.*
13. Be careful to write the cor-
rect case.

14. *not far :* **haud longē**. Place next to the verb.

15. Reflexive pronoun.

16. *go . . . for shelter :* **refugiō, 3, -fūgī.**

17. *i.e. since.*

18. *Lit., in age* (**aetās, -ātis, F.**). For syntax and word order, cf. such phrases as **numerō superior.**

19. **amīcus, -ī, M.**

20. Omit.

21. *Lit., in managing business* (**rēs gerō**). Express the preposition.

22. *and they :* use **quī.**

23. If translated by a **cum-**clause, what determines the tense here?

24. Not **possum.**

25. *Lit., entire.* Note the gender of the word modified.

26. **cōmiter** (adv.).

27. **remittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.**

28. *i.e. board.*

29. **perveniō.**

30. **quō factō** (abl. absol.).

31. *Lit., without delay.*

32. *i.e. if he had preferred.* Make a relative the subject of this sentence.

33. See the Note on the Vocabulary of Exercise XXXVII.

SUMMARY OF FORMS

NOUNS

The First or Ā–Declension

mēnsa, f.

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	mēnsa	mēnsae
Gen.	mēnsae	mēnsārum
Dat.	mēnsae	mēnsīs
Acc.	mēnsam	mēnsās
Abl.	mēnsā	mēnsīs

The Second or O–Declension

hortus, M.	puer, M.	ager, M.	vir, M.	mālum, N.

Singular

	hortus	puer	ager	vir	mālum
Nom.	hortus	puer	ager	vir	mālum
Gen.	hortī	puerī	agrī	virī	mālī
Dat.	hortō	puerō	agrō	virō	mālō
Acc.	hortum	puerum	agrum	virum	mālum
Abl.	hortō	puerō	agrō	virō	mālō

Plural

	hortī	puerī	agrī	virī	māla
Nom.	hortī	puerī	agrī	virī	māla
Gen.	hortōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	mālōrum
Dat.	hortīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	mālīs
Acc.	hortōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	māla
Abl.	hortīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	mālīs

NOTE 1. Masculines in -us have, in the singular, a special vocative form, as **Mārce**, **coque**, etc. By exception, **fīlius** and proper names in -ius are shortened in this case, *e.g.* **fīlī**, **Standi'sī**, etc.

NOTE 2. As in the vocative singular, **fīlius** is shortened also in the genitive singular to **fīlī**. This same shortening occurs in the

genitive singular of all proper names in -ius and -ium, and of a few common nouns in -ium, *e.g.* Pompēī, Londīnī, ingénī, etc. ; but the *locative* is not thus abbreviated (*e.g.* Londīniī, " at London ").

Note 3. **Humus, -ī,** F., forms the locative **humī,** "on the ground."

The Third Declension

Consonant Stems

flōs, M.	arbor, F.	lītus, N.
SINGULAR		
Nom. flōs	arbor	lītus
Gen. flōris	arboris	lītoris
Dat. flōrī	arborī	lītorī
Acc. flōrem	arborem	lītus
Abl. flōre	arbore	lītore
PLURAL		
Nom. flōrēs	arborēs	lītora
Gen. flōrum	arborum	lītorum
Dat. flōribus	arboribus	lītoribus
Acc. flōrēs	arborēs	lītora
Abl. flōribus	arboribus	lītoribus

Note. **Rūs, rūris,** N., has the locative **rūrī,** " in the country."

I-Stems

ignis, M.	turris, F.	vallēs, F.	mare, N.	animal, N.
SINGULAR				
Nom. ignis	turris	vallēs	mare	animal
Gen. ignis	turris	vallis	maris	animālis
Dat. ignī	turrī	vallī	marī	animālī
Acc. ignem	turrim turrem	vallem	mare	animal
Abl. ignī igne	turrī turre	valle	marī	animālī

PLURAL

Nom.	ignēs	turrēs	vallēs	maria	animālia
Gen.	ignium	turrium	vallium	——	animālium
Dat.	ignibus	turribus	vallibus	——	animālibus
Acc.	ignīs	turrīs	vallīs	maria	animālia
	ignēs	turrēs	vallēs		
Abl.	ignibus	turribus	vallibus	——	animālibus

THE FOURTH OR U-DECLENSION

exercitus, M.   cornū, N.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
Dat.	exercituī	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

NOTE. The few feminines of this declension follow the inflection of exercitus.

THE FIFTH OR Ē-DECLENSION

diēs, M. (and F.)   rēs, F.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

NOTE 1. In the genitive and dative singular of nouns of this class, the characteristic ē is retained only when preceded by a vowel, as in diēī (contrast rĕī and spĕī).

NOTE 2. Diēs is always masculine in the plural, and usually so in the singular.

Irregular Nouns

	deus, M.	bōs, M. and F.	domus, F.	vīs, F.
			Singular	
Nom.	deus	bōs	domus	vīs
Gen.	deī	bovis	domūs	—
Dat.	deō	bovī	domuī	—
			domō	
Acc.	deum	bovem	domum	vim
Abl.	deō	bove	domō	vī
			domū	
			Plural	
Nom.	deī	bovēs	domūs	vīrēs
	diī			
	dī			
Gen.	deōrum	bovum	domuum	vīrium
	deum	boum	domōrum	
Dat.	deīs	būbus	domibus	vīribus
	diīs	bōbus		
	dīs			
Acc.	deōs	bovēs	domōs	vīrīs
			domūs	vīrēs
Abl.	deīs	būbus	domibus	vīribus
	diīs	bōbus		
	dīs			

Note. **Domus** forms the locative **domī**, " at home."

ADJECTIVES

bonus, -a, -um

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

miser, -era, -erum

Nom.	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
Gen.	miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
Dat.	miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Acc.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
Abl.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

piger, -gra, -grum

Nom.	piger	pigra	pigrum	pigrī	pigrae	pigra
Gen.	pigrī	pigrae	pigrī	pigrōrum	pigrārum	pigrōrum
Dat.	pigrō	pigrae	pigrō	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs
Acc.	pigrum	pigram	pigrum	pigrōs	pigrās	pigra
Abl.	pigrō	pigrā	pigrō	pigrīs	pigrīs	pigrīs

Consonant Stems

The Present Participle

vocāns

Nom.	vocāns	vocāns	vocāns	vocantēs	vocantēs	vocantia
Gen.	vocantis	vocantis	vocantis	vocantium	vocantium	vocantium
Dat.	vocantī	vocantī	vocantī	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus
Acc.	vocantem	vocantem	vocāns	vocantēs vocantīs	vocantēs vocantīs	vocantia
Abl.	vocante	vocante	vocante	vocantibus	vocantibus	vocantibus

The Comparative

altior, -ior, -ius

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	altior	altior	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc.	altiōrem	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus	altiōribus

plūs

Nom.	——	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium	plūrium
Dat.	——	——	——	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	——	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūrēs	plūra
				plūrīs	plūrīs	
Abl.	——	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus	plūribus

REMARK. The few singular forms of **plūs** are restricted to noun use.

NOTE. **Complūrēs** is declined in the same way as the plural of **plūs**, excepting that the nominative and accusative neuter are sometimes written **complūria**.

Mixed Stems

(One Termination)

audāx

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	audāx	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācēs	audācia
Gen.	audācis	audācis	audācis	audācium	audācium	audācium
Dat.	audācī	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus
Acc.	audācem	audācem	audāx	audācīs	audācīs	audācia
				audācēs	audācēs	
Abl.	audācī	audācī	audācī	audācibus	audācibus	audācibus

I–Stems

(*Two Terminations*)

fortis (-is), -e

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	fortis	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	fortem	forte	fortīs	fortīs	fortia
				fortēs	fortēs	
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus	fortibus

(*Three Terminations*)

ācer, ācris, ācre

Nom.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs	ācrīs	ācria
				ācrēs	ācrēs	
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

REGULAR			IRREGULAR		
Posit.	*Compar.*	*Superl.*	*Posit.*	*Compar.*	*Superl.*
altus	altior	altissimus	bonus	melior	optimus
amāns	amantior	amantissimus	(īnferus)	īnferior	īnfimus
					īmus
audāx	audācior	audācissimus	magnus	maior	maximus
fortis	fortior	fortissimus	malus	peior	pessimus
ācer	ācrior	ācerrimus	multus	plūs (*noun*)	plūrimus
miser	miserior	miserrimus	parvus	minor	minimus
similis	similior	simillimus	——	superior	suprēmus
					summus

NOTE 1. Whether an adjective in -er retains the e in the comparative or not, is indicated by the genitive of the positive; thus, gen. miserī, compar. miserior, but gen. ācris, compar. ācrior.

NOTE 2. Adjectives with superlative in -limus are: similis, dissimilis, facilis, difficilis, gracilis, and humilis.

NOTE 3. Both adjectives and adverbs may be compared by prefixing the adverbs magis and maximē to the positive. This is the only method of comparison possible for adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel (*e.g.* idōneus, magis idōneus, maximē idōneus).

THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

REGULAR			IRREGULAR		
Posit.	*Compar.*	*Superl.*	*Posit.*	*Compar.*	*Superl.*
longē	longius	longissimē	diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
tūtō	tūtius	tūtissimē	libenter	libentius	libentissimē
audācter	audācius	audācissimē	——	magis	maximē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē	mātūrē	mātūrius	mātūrrimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē			mātūrissimē
celeriter	celerius	celerrimē	——	minus	minimē
facile	facilius	facillimē	prope	propius	proximē

NUMERALS

ūnus, -a, -um

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
Gen.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

NOTE. Eight other adjectives exhibit, in the genitive and dative singular, the same irregularity as ūnus. They are: alius, alter (gen. alterĭus); ūllus, nūllus; uter (-tra, -trum), neuter (-tra, -trum); sōlus, and tōtus. Of these eight, alius has additional

peculiarities : its neuter singular, nominative and accusative, is **aliud** ; and in the genitive singular it borrows **alterĭus** from **alter**.

<div align="center">

duo, duae, duo   **trēs, trēs, tria**

</div>

| | PLURAL | | | PLURAL | | |
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
Dat.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
Acc.	duo	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
	duōs			trīs	trīs	
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

NOTE. The declension of **ambō** follows that of **duo**, excepting that the final vowel of the form **ambō** is everywhere long.

<div align="center">

LIST OF NUMERALS

</div>

	CARDINAL	ORDINAL
1.	ūnus	prīmus
2.	duo	secundus or alter
3.	trēs	tertius
4.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	sex	sextus
7.	septem	septimus
8.	octō	octāvus
9.	novem	nōnus
10.	decem	decimus
11.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus

21.	vīgintī ūnus	vīcēsimus prīmus
	ūnus et vīgintī	ūnus et vīcēsimus
22.	vīgintī duo	vīcēsimus secundus
	duo et vīgintī	alter et vīcēsimus
28.	duodētrīgintā	duodētrīcēsimus
29.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētrīcēsimus
30.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
99.	ūndēcentum	ūndēcentēsimus
100.	centum	centēsimus
101.	centum ūnus	centēsimus prīmus
	centum et ūnus	centēsimus et prīmus
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus
400.	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus
500.	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsimus
600.	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentēsimus
700.	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus
800.	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus
900.	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus
1000.	mīlle (pl. mīlia, -ium, N.)	mīllēsimus

NOTE.   Observe that, from 18 to 90, the two numerals preceding each of the tens are formed by subtraction, *e.g.* duodētrīgintā, "twenty-eight" (*lit.* "two from thirty"), ūndēquadrāgintā, "thirty-nine" (*lit.* "one from forty"), etc.   Note too that, from 21 to 98, in numerals represented by combinations (*e.g.* trīgintā duo or duo et trīgintā), the conjunction et is used whenever the smaller numeral is put first (*cf.* English "two *and* thirty").

PRONOUNS

Personal

First Person			Second Person	
ego			**tū**	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs
Gen.	meī	nostrum	tuī	vestrum
		nostrī		vestrī
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

Third Person	Third Person Reflexive
is, ea, id	**suī** (gen.)

Singular

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	is	ea	id	——
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	suī
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	sibi
Acc.	eum	eam	id	sē
				sēsē
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	sē
				sēsē

Plural

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*All Genders*
Nom.	eī, iī, ī	eae	ea	——
				suī
Gen.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	sibi
Dat.	eīs, iīs, īs	eīs, iīs, īs	eīs, iīs, īs	sē
Acc.	eōs	eās	ea	sēsē
Abl.	eīs, iīs, īs	eīs, iīs, īs	eīs, iīs, īs	sē
				sēsē

NOTE 1. The oblique cases of **ego** and **tū** serve as the reflexive of the first and second persons.

NOTE 2. The personal pronoun **is, ea, id** is used also as an adjective meaning " this," or " that."

DEMONSTRATIVE

hīc, haec, hoc   **ille, illa, illud**

SINGULAR

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	hīc	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	illīus	illīus	illīus
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
Gen.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
Acc.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
Abl.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

NOTE. The demonstrative pronoun **iste, ista, istud** is declined in the same way as **ille**.

INTENSIVE   OF IDENTITY

ipse, ipsa, ipsum   **īdem, eadem, idem**

SINGULAR

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	īdem	eadem	idem
Gen.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	eīdem iīdem īdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem
Acc.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem

INTERROGATIVE

quī (quis), quae, quod (quid)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī quis	quae	quod quid	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod quid	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

NOTE.   This pronoun may be used either as an adjective or as a noun.   In the noun use, **quis** replaces **quī** (singular), **quid** replaces **quod,** and the feminine is lacking throughout.

RELATIVE

quī, quae, quod

The forms of this pronoun are identical with the forms of the interrogative pronoun given just above, excepting that **quis** and **quid** are lacking.

quī (quis), qua, quod (quid)

| | SINGULAR | | | PLURAL | | |
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quī quis	qua	quod quid	quī	quae	qua
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod quid	quōs	quās	qua
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

NOTE. This pronoun may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, **quis** replaces **quī** (singular), **quid** replaces **quod,** and the feminine is lacking throughout.

aliquī (aliquis), aliqua, aliquod (aliquid)

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	aliquī aliquis	aliqua	aliquod aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
Gen.	alicuius	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
Dat.	alicui	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Acc.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquod aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Abl.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

NOTE. The adjective and noun use of this pronoun follows the same rule as that for indefinite **quī (quis)** immediately preceding.

quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque)

Except that it has but one form in the nominative singular masculine, this pronoun is inflected exactly as *interrogative* **quī (quis)**. When it is used as a noun, the feminine is lacking throughout, and **quidque** (spelled also **quicque**) replaces **quodque.**

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam   quisquam, ——, quicquam
    (quiddam)

<div align="center">SINGULAR</div>

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam quiddam	quisquam	quicquam
Gen.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
Dat.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam	cuiquam	cuiquam
Acc.	quendam	quandam	quoddam quiddam	quemquam	quicquam
Abl.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam	quōquam	quōquam

<div align="center">PLURAL</div>

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
Nom.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam	No plural
Gen.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam	
Dat.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	
Acc.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam	
Abl.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam	

NOTE 1. The pronoun **quīdam** may be used either as an adjective or as a noun. In the noun use, **quiddam** replaces **quoddam**.

NOTE 2. **Quisquam** is seldom used excepting as a noun. The neuter form **quicquam** represents another spelling of **quidquam**.

<div align="center">INDEFINITE RELATIVE</div>

<div align="center">

quīcumquc, quaecumque, quodcumque

whoever,   whatever,   whatsoever

</div>

The declension of this pronoun is the same as that of the relative **quī**, *i.e.* it has no **quis** or **quid** forms.

REGULAR VERBS

THE FIRST OR Ā–CONJUGATION

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	vocō	vocem	vocor	vocer
	vocās	vocēs	vocāris	vocēris
			vocāre	vocēre
	vocat	vocet	vocātur	vocētur
	vocāmus	vocēmus	vocāmur	vocēmur
	vocātis	vocētis	vocāminī	vocēminī
	vocant	vocent	vocantur	vocentur
Im-perfect	vocābam	vocārem	vocābar	vocārer
	vocābās	vocārēs	vocābāris	vocārēris
			vocābāre	vocārēre
	vocābat	vocāret	vocābātur	vocārētur
	vocābāmus	vocārēmus	vocābāmur	vocārēmur
	vocābātis	vocārētis	vocābāminī	vocārēminī
	vocābant	vocārent	vocābantur	vocārentur
Future	vocābō		vocābor	
	vocābis		vocāberis	
			vocābere	
	vocābit		vocābitur	
	vocābimus		vocābimur	
	vocābitis		vocābiminī	
	vocābunt		vocābuntur	
Perfect	vocāvī	vocāverim	vocātus sum	vocātus sim
	vocāvistī	vocāverīs	vocātus es	vocātus sīs
	vocāvit	vocāverit	vocātus est	vocātus sit
	vocāvimus	vocāverīmus	vocātī sumus	vocātī sīmus
	vocāvistis	vocāverītis	vocātī estis	vocātī sītis
	vocāvērunt	vocāverint	vocātī sunt	vocātī sint
	vocāvēre			

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pluperfect	vocāveram	vocāvissem	vocātus eram	vocātus essem
	vocāverās	vocāvissēs	vocātus erās	vocātus essēs
	vocāverat	vocāvisset	vocātus erat	vocātus esset
	vocāverāmus	vocāvissēmus	vocātī erāmus	vocātī essēmus
	vocāverātis	vocāvissētis	vocātī erātis	vocātī essētis
	vocāverant	vocāvissent	vocātī erant	vocātī essent
Future Perfect	vocāverō		vocātus erō	
	vocāveris		vocātus eris	
	vocāverit		vocātus erit	
	vocāverimus		vocātī erimus	
	vocāveritis		vocātī eritis	
	vocāverint		vocātī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	vocā	vocāte	vocāre	vocāminī
Future	vocātō	vocātōte	vocātor	
	vocātō	vocantō	vocātor	vocantor

PARTICIPLE

Present	vocāns	
Perfect		vocātus, -a, -um
Future	vocātūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	vocāre	vocārī
Perfect	vocāvisse	vocātus esse
Future	vocātūrus esse	vocātum īrī

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	vocandī	vocandus, -a, -um
Dat.	vocandō	
Acc.	vocandum	
Abl.	vocandō	

SUPINE

vocātum, vocātū

THE SECOND OR Ē-CONJUGATION

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

| | ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	habeō	habeam	habeor	habear
	habēs	habeās	habēris	habeāris
			habēre	habeāre
	habet	habeat	habētur	habeātur
	habēmus .	habeāmus	habēmur	habeāmur
	habētis	habeātis	habēminī	habeāminī
	habent	habeant	habentur	habeantur
Im-perfect	habēbam	habērem	habēbar	habērer
	habēbās	habērēs	habēbāris	habērēris
			habēbāre	habērēre
	habēbat	habēret	habēbātur	habērētur
	habēbāmus	habērēmus	habēbāmur	habērēmur
	habēbātis	habērētis	habēbāminī	habērēminī
	habēbant	habērent	habēbantur	habērentur
Future	habēbō		habēbor	
	habēbis		habēberis	
			habēbere	
	habēbit		habēbitur	
	habēbimus		habēbimur	
	habēbitis		habēbiminī	
	habēbunt		habēbuntur	
Perfect	habuī	habuerim	habitus sum	habitus sim
	habuistī	habuerīs	habitus es	habitus sīs
	habuit	habuerit	habitus est	habitus sit
	habuimus	habuerīmus	habitī sumus	habitī sīmus
	habuistis	habuerītis	habitī estis	habitī sītis
	habuērunt	habuerint	habitī sunt	habitī sint
	habuēre			

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pluperfect	habueram	habuissem	habitus eram	habitus essem
	habuerās	habuissēs	habitus erās	habitus essēs
	habuerat	habuisset	habitus erat	habitus esset
	habuerāmus	habuissēmus	habitī erāmus	habitī essēmus
	habuerātis	habuissētis	habitī erātis	habitī essētis
	habuerant	habuissent	habitī erant	habitī essent
Future Perfect	habuerō		habitus erō	
	habueris		habitus eris	
	habuerit		habitus erit	
	habuerimus		habitī erimus	
	habueritis		habitī eritis	
	habuerint		habitī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	habē	habēte	habēre	habēminī
Future	habētô	habētōte	habētor	
	habētō	habentō	habētor	habentor

PARTICIPLE

Present	habēns	
Perfect		habitus, -a, -um
Future	habitūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	habēre	habērī
Perfect	habuisse	habitus esse
Future	habitūrus esse	habitum īrī

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	habendī	habendus, -a, -um
Dat.	habendō	
Acc.	habendum	
Abl.	habendō	

SUPINE

habitum, habitū

THE THIRD OR Ĕ–CONJUGATION

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus

		ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
		INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present		mittō	mittam	mittor	mittar
		mittis	mittās	mitteris	mittāris
				mittere	mittāre
		mittit	mittat	mittitur	mittātur
		mittimus	mittāmus	mittimur	mittāmur
		mittitis	mittātis	mittiminī	mittāminī
		mittunt	mittant	mittuntur	mittantur
Im-perfect		mittēbam	mitterem	mittēbar	mitterer
		mittēbās	mitterēs	mittēbāris	mitterēris
				mittēbāre	mitterēre
		mittēbat	mitteret	mittēbātur	mitterētur
		mittēbāmus	mitterēmus	mittēbāmur	mitterēmur
		mittēbātis	mitterētis	mittēbāminī	mitterēminī
		mittēbant	mitterent	mittēbantur	mitterentur
Future		mittam		mittar	
		mittēs		mittēris	
				mittēre	
		mittet		mittētur	
		mittēmus		mittēmur	
		mittētis		mittēminī	
		mittent		mittentur	
Perfect		mīsī	mīserim	missus sum	missus sim
		mīsistī	mīserīs	missus es	missus sīs
		mīsit	mīserit	missus est	missus sit
		mīsimus	mīserīmus	missī sumus	missī sīmus
		mīsistis	mīserītis	missī estis	missī sītis
		mīsērunt	mīserint	missī sunt	missī sint
		mīsēre			

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Plu-perfect	mīseram	mīsissem	missus eram	missus essem
	mīserās	mīsissēs	missus erās	missus essēs
	mīserat	mīsisset	missus erat	missus esset
	mīserāmus	mīsissēmus	missī erāmus	missī essēmus
	mīserātis	mīsissētis	missī erātis	missī essētis
	mīserant	mīsissent	missī erant	missī essent
Future Perfect	mīserō		missus erō	
	mīseris		missus eris	
	mīserit		missus erit	
	mīserimus		missī erimus	
	mīseritis		missī eritis	
	mīserint		missī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	mitte	mittite	mittere	mittiminī
Future	mittitō	mittitōte	mittitor	
	mittitō	mittuntō	mittitor	mittuntor

PARTICIPLE

Present	mittēns	
Perfect		missus, -a, -um
Future	missūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	mittere	mittī
Perfect	mīsisse	missus esse
Future	missūrus esse	missum īrī

GERUND / GERUNDIVE

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	mittendī	mittendus, -a, -um
Dat.	mittendō	
Acc.	mittendum	
Abl.	mittendō	

SUPINE

missum, missū

The Third or Ĕ–Conjugation (-iō Verbs)

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	rapiō	rapiam	rapior	rapiar
	rapis	rapiās	raperis	rapiāris
			rapere	rapiāre
	rapit	rapiat	rapitur	rapiātur
	rapimus	rapiāmus	rapimur	rapiāmur
	rapitis	rapiātis	rapiminī	rapiāminī
	rapiunt	rapiant	rapiuntur	rapiantur
Imperfect	rapiēbam	raperem	rapiēbar	raperer
	rapiēbās	raperēs	rapiēbāris	raperēris
			rapiēbāre	raperēre
	rapiēbat	raperet	rapiēbātur	raperētur
	rapiēbāmus	raperēmus	rapiēbāmur	raperēmur
	rapiēbātis	raperētis	rapiēbāminī	raperēminī
	rapiēbant	raperent	rapiēbantur	raperentur
Future	rapiam		rapiar	
	rapiēs		rapiēris	
			rapiēre	
	rapiet		rapiētur	
	rapiēmus		rapiēmur	
	rapiētis		rapiēminī	
	rapient		rapientur	
Perfect	rapuī	rapuerim	raptus sum	raptus sim
	rapuistī	rapuerīs	raptus es	raptus sīs
	rapuit	rapuerit	raptus est	raptus sit
	rapuimus	rapuerīmus	raptī sumus	raptī sīmus
	rapuistis	rapuerītis	raptī estis	raptī sītis
	rapuērunt	rapuerint	raptī sunt	raptī sint
	rapuēre			

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pluperfect	rapueram	rapuissem	raptus eram	raptus essem
	rapuerās	rapuissēs	raptus erās	raptus essēs
	rapuerat	rapuisset	raptus erat	raptus esset
	rapuerāmus	rapuissēmus	raptī erāmus	raptī essēmus
	rapuerātis	rapuissētis	raptī erātis	raptī essētis
	rapuerant	rapuissent	raptī erant	raptī essent
Future Perfect	rapuerō		raptus erō	
	rapueris		raptus eris	
	rapuerit		raptus erit	
	rapuerimus		raptī erimus	
	rapueritis		raptī eritis	
	rapuerint		raptī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	rape	rapite	rapere	rapiminī
Future	rapitō	rapitōte	rapitor	
	rapitō	rapiuntō	rapitor	rapiuntor

PARTICIPLE

Present	rapiēns	
Perfect		raptus, -a, -um
Future	raptūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	rapere	rapī
Perfect	rapuisse	raptus esse
Future	raptūrus esse	raptum īrī

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	rapiendī	rapiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	rapiendō	
Acc.	rapiendum	
Abl.	rapiendō	

SUPINE

raptum, raptū

The Fourth or Ī-Conjugation

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	audiō	audiam	audior	audiar
	audīs	audiās	audīris	audiāris
			audīre	audiāre
	audit	audiat	audītur	audiātur
	audīmus	audiāmus	audīmur	audiāmur
	audītis	audiātis	audīminī	audiāminī
	audiunt	audiant	audiuntur	audiantur
Im-perfect	audiēbam	audīrem	audiēbar	audīrer
	audiēbās	audīrēs	audiēbāris	audīrēris
			audiēbāre	audīrēre
	audiēbat	audīret	audiēbātur	audīrētur
	audiēbāmus	audīrēmus	audiēbāmur	audīrēmur
	audiēbātis	audīrētis	audiēbāminī	audīrēminī
	audiēbant	audīrent	audiēbantur	audīrentur
Future	audiam		audiar	
	audiēs		audiēris	
			audiēre	
	audiet		audiētur	
	audiēmus		audiēmur	
	audiētis		audiēminī	
	audient		audientur	
Perfect	audīvī	audīverim	audītus sum	audītus sim
	audīvistī	audīverīs	audītus es	audītus sīs
	audīvit	audīverit	audītus est	audītus sit
	audīvimus	audīverīmus	audītī sumus	audītī sīmus
	audīvistis	audīverītis	audītī estis	audītī sītis
	audīvērunt	audīverint	audītī sunt	audītī sint
	audīvēre			

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Pluperfect	audīveram	audīvissem	audītus eram	audītus essem
	audīverās	audīvissēs	audītus erās	audītus essēs
	audīverat	audīvisset	audītus erat	audītus esset
	audīverāmus	audīvissēmus	audītī erāmus	audītī essēmus
	audīverātis	audīvissētis	audītī erātis	audītī essētis
	audīverant	audīvissent	audītī erant	audītī essent
Future Perfect	audīverō		audītus erō	
	audīveris		audītus eris	
	audīverit		audītus erit	
	audīverimus		audītī erimus	
	audīveritis		audītī eritis	
	audīverint		audītī erunt	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	audī	audīte	audīre	audīminī
Future	audītō	audītōte	audītor	
	audītō	audiuntō	audītor	audiuntor

PARTICIPLE

Present	audiēns
Perfect	audītus, -a, -um
Future	audītūrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVE

Present	audīre	audīrī
Perfect	audīvisse	audītus esse
Future	audītūrus esse	audītum īrī

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	audiendī	audiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	audiendō	
Acc.	audiendum	
Abl.	audiendō	

SUPINE

audītum, audītū

DEPONENTS

As a verb of each conjugation has already been given in full, the corresponding deponents are here presented largely in synopsis.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2" align="center">I</th><th colspan="2" align="center">II</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2" align="center">moror, morārī
morātus sum</th><th colspan="2" align="center">polliceor, pollicērī
pollicitus sum</th></tr>
<tr><th></th><th>INDICATIVE</th><th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th><th>INDICATIVE</th><th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th></tr>
<tr><td>Present</td><td>moror</td><td>morer</td><td>polliceor</td><td>pollicear</td></tr>
<tr><td>Imperf.</td><td>morābar</td><td>morārer</td><td>pollicēbar</td><td>pollicērer</td></tr>
<tr><td>Future</td><td>morābor</td><td></td><td>pollicēbor</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Perfect</td><td>morātus sum</td><td>morātus sim</td><td>pollicitus sum</td><td>pollicitus sim</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pluperf.</td><td>morātus eram</td><td>morātus essem</td><td>pollicitus eram</td><td>pollicitus essem</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fut. Perf.</td><td>morātus erō</td><td></td><td>pollicitus erō</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

IMPERATIVE

<table>
<tr><th></th><th>SINGULAR</th><th>PLURAL</th><th>SINGULAR</th><th>PLURAL</th></tr>
<tr><td>Present</td><td>morāre</td><td>morāminī</td><td>pollicēre</td><td>pollicēminī</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Future {</td><td>morātor</td><td></td><td>pollicētor</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>morātor</td><td>morantor</td><td>pollicētor</td><td>pollicentor</td></tr>
</table>

PARTICIPLE

<table>
<tr><td>Present</td><td>morāns</td><td>pollicēns</td></tr>
<tr><td>Perfect</td><td>morātus, -a, -um</td><td>pollicitus, -a, -um</td></tr>
<tr><td>Future</td><td>morātūrus, -a, -um</td><td>pollicitūrus, -a, -um</td></tr>
</table>

INFINITIVE

<table>
<tr><td>Present</td><td>morārī</td><td>pollicērī</td></tr>
<tr><td>Perfect</td><td>morātus esse</td><td>pollicitus esse</td></tr>
<tr><td>Future</td><td>morātūrus esse</td><td>pollicitūrus esse</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>GERUND</th><th>GERUNDIVE</th><th>GERUND</th><th>GERUNDIVE</th></tr>
<tr><td>Gen.</td><td>morandī</td><td>morand(us, -a), -um</td><td>pollicendī</td><td>pollicendus, -a, -um</td></tr>
<tr><td>Dat.</td><td>morandō</td><td></td><td>pollicendō</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Acc.</td><td>morandum</td><td></td><td>pollicendum</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Abl.</td><td>morandō</td><td></td><td>pollicendō</td><td></td></tr>
</table>

SUPINE

        morātum, morātū   pollicitum, pollicitū

III

IIIa

proficīscor, proficīscī
profectus sum

patior, patī
passus sum

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	proficīscor	proficīscar	patior	patiar
Imperf.	proficīscēbar	proficīscerer	patiēbar	paterer
Future	proficīscar		patiar	
Perfect	profectus sum	profectus sim	passus sum	passus sim
Pluperf.	profectus eram	profectus essem	passus eram	passus essem
Fut. Perf.	profectus erō		passus erō	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	proficīscere	proficīsciminī	patere	patiminī
Future	⎧ proficīscitor		patitor	
	⎩ proficīscitor	proficīscuntor	patitor	patiuntor

PARTICIPLE

Present	proficīscēns	patiēns
Perfect	profectus, -a, -um	passus, -a, -um
Future	profectūrus, -a, -um	passūrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVE

Present	proficīscī	patī
Perfect	profectus esse	passus esse
Future	profectūrus esse	passūrus esse

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	proficīscendī	proficīscend[us, -a],	patiendī	patiendus, -a, -um
Dat.	proficīscendō	-um	patiendō	
Acc.	proficīscendum		patiendum	
Abl.	proficīscendō		patiendō	

SUPINE

profectum, profectū	passum, passū

IV

adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum [1]

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	adorior	adoriar
Imperfect	adoriēbar	adorīrer
Future	adoriar	
Perfect	adortus sum	adortus sim
Pluperfect	adortus eram	adortus essem
Future Perfect	adortus erō	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	adorīre	adorīminī
Future	{ adorītor	
	adorītor	adoriuntor

PARTICIPLE

Present	adoriēns
Perfect	adortus, -a, -um
Future	adortūrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVE

Present	adorīrī
Perfect	adortus esse
Future	adortūrus esse

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	adoriendī	adoriendus, -a, -um
Dat.	adoriendō	
Acc.	adoriendum	
Abl	adoriendō	

SUPINE

adortum, adortū

SEMI–DEPONENTS

audeō, 2, ausus sum, *dare, venture.*   gaudeō, 2, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice.*
fīdō, 3, fīsus sum, *trust.*   soleō, 2, solitus sum, *be accustomed.*

[1] On the analogy of audiō, it might be expected that the perfect participle of deponents of the fourth conjugation would end in -ītus; but the commonest deponents of this conjugation take a different form in the perfect passive participle.

IRREGULAR VERBS

sum, esse, fuī		possum, posse, potuī	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

sum	sim	possum	possim
es	sīs	potes	possīs
est	sit	potest	possit
sumus	sīmus	possumus	possīmus
estis	sītis	potestis	possītis
sunt	sint	possunt	possint

Imperfect

eram	essem (forem)	poteram	possem
erās	essēs (forēs)	poterās	possēs
erat	esset (foret)	poterat	posset
erāmus	essēmus	poterāmus	possēmus
erātis	essētis	poterātis	possētis
erant	essent (forent)	poterant	possent

Future

erō		poterō	
eris		poteris	
erit		poterit	
erimus		poterimus	
eritis		poteritis	
erunt		poterunt	

Perfect tenses regular.   Perfect tenses regular.

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	es	este
Future	estō	estōte
	estō	suntō

PARTICIPLE

Future	futūrus, -a, -um

INFINITIVE

Present	esse	posse
Perfect	fuisse	potuisse
Future	futūrus esse, fore	

NOTE. Of the compounds of **sum**, **prōsum** ("avail") exhibits no peculiarities, excepting that, before a vowel, **prō-** everywhere becomes **prōd-**, *e.g.* **prōdesse**, **prōdessem**, etc. **Praesum**, another compound, has the present participle **praesēns**, **praesentis**, though **sum** itself lacks the corresponding form.

eō, īre, iī, itum est   volō, velle, voluī

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	eō	eam	volō	velim
	īs	eās	vīs	velīs
	it	eat	vult	velit
	īmus	eāmus	volumus	velīmus
	ītis	eātis	vultis	velītis
	eunt	eant	volunt	velint
Imperfect	ībam	īrem	volēbam	vellem
	ībās	īrēs	volēbās	vellēs
	ībat	īret	volēbat	vellet
	ībāmus	īrēmus	volēbāmus	vellēmus
	ībātis	īrētis	volēbātis	vellētis
	ībant	īrent	volēbant	vellent
Future	ībo		volam	
	ībis		volēs	
	ībit		volet	
	ībimus		volēmus	
	ībitis		volētis	
	ībunt		volent	

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	iī	ierim, etc.	voluī, etc.	voluerim, etc.
	īstī			
	iit			
Perfect				
	iimus			
	īstis			
	iērunt			
	iēre			
Pluperf.	ieram, etc.	īssem, etc.	volueram, etc.	voluissem, etc.
Fut. Perf.	ierō, etc.		voluerō, etc.	

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	ī	īte
Future	ītō	ītōte
	ītō	euntō

PARTICIPLE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	iēns, gen. euntis	volēns
Perfect	it(us, -a), -um	
Future	itūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	īre	velle
Perfect	īsse	voluisse
Future	itūrus esse	

	GERUND	GERUNDIVE
Gen.	eundī	eund(us, -a), -um
Dat.	eundō	
Acc.	eundum	
Abl.	eundō	

mālō, mālle, māluī nōlō, nōlle, nōluī

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	mālō	mālim	nōlō	nōlim
	māvīs	mālīs	nōn vīs	nōlīs
	māvult	mālit	nōn vult	nōlit
	mālumus	mālīmus	nōlumus	nōlīmus
	māvultis	mālītis	nōn vultis	nōlītis
	mālunt	mālint	nōlunt	nōlint
Imperfect	mālēbam	māllem	nōlēbam	nōllem
	mālēbās	māllēs	nōlēbās	nōllēs
	mālēbat	māllet	nōlēbat	nōllet
	mālēbāmus	māllēmus	nōlēbāmus	nōllēmus
	mālēbātis	māllētis	nōlēbātis	nōllētis
	mālēbant	māllent	nōlēbant	nōllent
Future	[mālam]		[nōlam]	
	mālēs		nōlēs	
	mālet		nōlet	
	mālēmus		nōlēmus	
	mālētis		nōlētis	
	mālent		nōlent	

Perfect tenses regular. Perfect tenses regular.

IMPERATIVE

		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present		nōlī	nōlīte
Future		nōlītō	nōlītōte
		nōlītō	nōluntō

PARTICIPLE

Present		nōlēns

INFINITIVE

Present	mālle	nōlle
Perfect	māluisse	nōluisse

dō, dare, dedī, datus

This verb deviates from the first conjugation principally in that the **a** of its stem is regularly short in situations where the first conjugation requires **ā**. The only exceptions are found in the forms **dās**, **dā**, and **dāns**.

| | ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	dō	dem	——	——
	dās	dēs	daris	dēris
			dare	dēre
Present	dat	det	datur	dētur
	damus	dēmus	damur	——
	datis	dētis	daminī	dēminī
	dant	dent	dantur	dentur
	dabam	darem	dabar	darer
	dabās	darēs	dabāris	darēris
			dabāre	darēre
Imperfect	dabat	daret	dabātur	darētur
	dabāmus	darēmus	dabāmur	darēmur
	dabātis	darētis	dabāminī	darēminī
	dabant	darent	dabantur	darentur
	dabō		dabor	
	dabis		daberis	
			dabere	
Future	dabit		dabitur	
	dabimus		dabimur	
	dabitis		dabiminī	
	dabunt		dabuntur	

Perfect tenses regular (excepting for the ă of **datus**).

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	dā	date	dare	damini
Future	datō	datōte	dator	
	datō	dantō	dator	dantor

PARTICIPLE

Present	dāns	
Perfect		datus, -a, -um
Future	datūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	dare	darī
Perfect	dedisse	datus esse
Future	datūrus esse	datum īrī

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	dandī	dandus, -a, -um
Dat.	dandō	
Acc.	dandum	
Abl.	dandō	

SUPINE

datum, datū

edō, ēsse (edere), ēdī, ēsus

The peculiarities of **edō** are due to the fact that its regular forms are often contracted (as the infinitive above). Otherwise the verb conforms to the third conjugation, and only so much of it is here given as is needed to display the contracted forms.

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	edō	edam	edor	edar
	ēs	edās	ederis	edāris
	edis		edere	edāre
	ēst	edat	ēstur	edātur
	edit		editur	
	edimus	edāmus	edimur	edāmur
	ēstis	edātis	ediminī	edāminī
	editis			
	edunt	edant	eduntur	edantur

| | ACTIVE | | PASSIVE | |
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
	edēbam	ēssem	edēbar	ederer
		ederem		
	edēbās	ēssēs	edēbāris	ederēris
		ederēs	edēbāre	ederēre
	edēbat	ēsset	edēbātur	ēssētur
Im-perfect		ederet		ederētur
	edēbāmus	ēssēmus	edēbāmur	ederēmur
		ederēmus		
	edēbātis	ederētis	edēbāminī	ederēminī
	edēbant	ēssent	edēbantur	ederentur
		ederent		

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	ēs (ede)	ēste (edite)	edere	ediminī
Future	ēstō (editō)	ēstōte (editōte)	editor	
	ēstō (editō)	eduntō	editor	eduntor

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris
			ferre	ferāre
Present	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
	ferēbās	ferrēs	ferēbāris	ferrēris
			ferēbāre	ferrēre
Im-perfect	ferēbat	ferret	ferēbātur	ferrētur
	ferēbāmus	ferrēmus	ferēbāmur	ferrēmur
	ferēbātis	ferrētis	ferēbāminī	ferrēminī
	ferēbant	ferrent	ferēbantur	ferrentur

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
INDICATIVE	INDICATIVE

	feram	ferar
	ferēs	ferēris
		ferēre
Future	feret	ferētur
	ferēmus	ferēmur
	ferētis	ferēminī
	ferent	ferentur

Perfect tenses regular.

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
Future	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntǝr

PARTICIPLE

Present	ferēns	
Perfect		lātus, -a, -um
Future	lātūrus, -a, -um	

INFINITIVE

Present	ferre	ferrī
Perfect	tulisse	lātus esse
Future	lātūrus esse	lātum īrī

GERUND		GERUNDIVE
Gen.	ferendī	ferendus, -a, -um
Dat.	ferendō	
Acc.	ferendum	
Abl.	ferendō	

SUPINE

lātum, lātū

fīō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Present	fīō	fīam
	fīs	fīās
	fit	fīat
	[fīmus]	fīāmus
	[fītis]	fīātis
	fīunt	fīant
Im-perfect	fīēbam	fierem
	fīēbās	fierēs
	fīēbat	fieret
	fīēbāmus	fierēmus
	fīēbātis	fierētis
	fīēbant	fierent
Future	fīam	
	fīēs	
	fīet	
	fīēmus	
	fīētis	
	fīent	

Perfect tenses identical with those of the passive of **faciō**.

IMPERATIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Present	fī	fīte

PARTICIPLE

Perfect	factus, -a, -um

INFINITIVE

Present	fierī
Perfect	factus esse
Future	[factum īrī] futūrus esse, fore

inquam

INDICATIVE

	Present			Future	
	inquam			——	
	inquis			inquiēs	
	inquit			inquiet	
	——			——	
	——			——	
	inquiunt			——	

NOTE. The forms of **inquam** here given are the only ones in common use. The present indicative is employed freely with the force of the perfect, *e.g.* **inquam**, "*said* I," **inquit**, "*said* he," etc.

LIST OF VERB CONSTRUCTIONS

The ambiguity of English "that" and "to" tends to obscure the difference between complementary infinitive, indirect discourse, and purpose clause. The following summary, therefore, may be found helpful as showing the construction required by various verbs needed for the translation of the English-Latin Exercises.

GOVERNING THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

audeō	cōnsuēscō	parō
coepī	dubitō	patior
cōgō	iubeō	possum
cōnor	mālō	soleō
cōnstituō	nōlō	volō

GOVERNING INDIRECT DISCOURSE

animadvertō	faciō (certiōrem, *etc.*)	putō
arbitror	glōrior	ratus
audiō	intellegō	respondeō
cōgnōscō	nārrō	sciō
crēdō	nesciō	sentiō
dīcō	nūntiō	simulō
doceō	polliceor	spērō
		videor

GOVERNING A PURPOSE CLAUSE

hortor	imperō	persuādeō

In this connection it must not be forgotten that **nē** and **ut** have a special force with verbs of fearing; furthermore, that **fit** ("it happens") is construed with **ut** and the subjunctive (substantive clause).

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses following a definition indicate the Lesson in which that particular meaning is found.)

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, by, at the hands of : from ; from the vicinity of ; from among (106) ; of, from (72, 81, 129). See also **aliēnus, pars, petō, repetō,** and **tergum.**

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est, go away, go, depart, leave.

abhinc, *adv.*, ago.

abiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, throw aside, throw overboard ; throw (56) ; shoot (113).

abripiō, 3, -ripuī, -reptus, tear away, carry away ; pull up, tear up.

abscīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus, cut off.

absconditus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, hidden.

absum, -esse, āfuī, be away, be distant (remote), be absent.

ac, see **atque.**

accēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, approach, draw near ; come, advance (138) ; *with* **ad** *and acc.*, approach (115). *Used impersonally*, be added (106).

accidō, 3, -cidī, befall, happen, turn out, develop.

accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, receive, greet ; learn (80) ; sustain, suffer (loss, indignity, etc.).

ācer, -cris, -cre, fierce, spirited, energetic, vigorous ; sharp, shrill, piercing, penetrating.

acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, bitter ; galling (137), outrageous (57).

aciēs, -ēī, *f.*, line of battle, battle line, battle array, line, ranks ; regular engagement (36, 40). **ex aciē,** from the field ; **in prīmā aciē,** in the forefront of the fight.

ācriter, *adv.*, fiercely, furiously ; energetically, vigorously ; with spirit, with vigor ; relentlessly (41) ; eagerly, with eagerness (140).

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, for ; toward, to the neighborhood of, before (52) ; against, upon, on ; at, on, near, in the neighborhood of, before : until, till, up to. *Often used with the gerundive or gerund to express purpose.* See also **accēdō, appellō** (-ere), **eō** (verb), **perfugiō, pertineō, perveniō, speciēs, ūnus,** and **usque.**

ad . . . versus, toward, in the direction of, for. *With acc. of town name, shortened to* **versus** (130).

addō, 3, -didī, -ditus, add ; make mention in addition.

addūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead on, bring on, bring ; influence (119), rouse (135).

adeō, *adv.*, to such a degree, so.

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, visit, touch at (70) ; meet (135) ; run into, fall into (37).

adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring, transport, bear ; carry, take, deliver (letter) : *with dat.*, inspire (in) (36).

Pass., come; *with* ad *and* acc., come to, reach (63, 76, 90).

adhaerēscō, 3, -haesī, -haesum est, stick; ground (of a boat).

adhūc, *adv.*, up to this time, still, yet, hitherto.

adiuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus, help, aid, assist, support.

admīror, 1, view with admiration, be filled with admiration for.

admoneō, 2, -monuī, -monitus, remind.

admoveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move up (84); ignēs (-em) admovēre, *with* dat., set (apply) fire (to).

adorior, 4, -ortus sum, attack, assail; make an assault (86).

adsequor, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up with, overtake.

adstō, 1, -stitī, stand by, be in attendance.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, be present, be (close) at hand, be in attendance; be on the field (128); be come (100, 131); be there (113); be upon (one) (99); be back (again) (22); come up (124).

Aduātucī, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

adulēscēns, -entis, *adj.*, young. *As masc. noun*, (a) youth.

advena, -ae, *c.*, stranger, newcomer.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival, coming; presence (63); inroad (140).

adversus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, contrary. See also flūmen.

advesperāscit, 3, -vesperāvit (*impersonal verb*), grow dark, begin to grow dark.

aedēs, -is, *f.*; *pl.*, house, home.

aedificō, 1, build, build up.

aeger, -gra, -grum, sick, ill. *As noun*, aegrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the sick.

aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty.

aequus, -a, -um, favorable, suitable, good (121): *of mental states*, pleasant, resigned, undaunted, composed. haud aequus, no pleasant.

aes (aeris, *n.*) aliēnum (-ī), debt.

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer.

aetās, -ātis, *f.*, lifetime, life; age, period (74).

Āfer, -fra, -frum, negro. *As noun*, Āfrī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Africans.

afficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, attack; treat, overwhelm (26). *Pass.*, be filled (84).

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, Africa.

Āfricānus, -a, -um, African, of Africa.

ager, -grī, *m.*, field; country (45); territory (75).

agmen, -inis, *n.*, (marching) column, (marching) line. prīmum agmen, vanguard; novissimum agmen, rear guard.

agō, 3, ēgī, āctus, drive, drive off (43, 117); do; treat, make overtures; carry out (project), keep (watch), pass (time), give, render (thanks), wear out (life). inter sē agere, talk to one another; vītam agere, live.

agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer, planter, rustic.

Alexander, -drī, *m.*, the name of (1) an Indian chief, brother of King Philip; (2) a king of Macedon.

alibī, *adv.*, elsewhere, in other places, in other quarters, at other points. See also alius.

aliēnus, -a, -um, another's, of another

(133); inclined away. *With ab and abl.*, unfriendly (to), averse (to); *with gen.*, unfriendly (to). See also **aes**.

aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for some time, for a time; for a considerable period (74.)

aliquī (aliquis), aliqua, aliquod (aliquid), *adj.*, some, any; *noun*, some one, any one, something, anything. *Pl.*, any.

alius, alia, aliud, other, another. *As noun*, some one else, some other, another (120); anything else (91); *pl.*, others (86). **alius super alium**, one on top of another; **aliī . . . aliī**, some . . . others (17, 139); **aliī alibī**, some in one place, some in another (136); **aliī in aliam**, some into one . . . some into another (67); **neque alius**, and no other (45).

Allobrogēs, -um, *m.*, the name of a people of southeast Gaul.

alter, -era, -erum, the other, a second, another, one (of two). *As noun*, the other, one (of two), the one (of two); *pl.*, the other party (120). **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.

altus, -a, -um, tall, high, lofty, elevated; deep (85). *As noun*, **altum, -ī**, *n.*, the deep (sea), the ocean (12).

Amānus, -ī, *m.*, the name of a mountain range of eastern Cilicia.

Ambiorīx, -īgis, *m.*, the name of a Gallic chieftain.

ambō, -ae, -ō (*declined as* **duo**, *except for the* **ō**), both.

ambulō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, walk, stroll; roam (65); crawl (50).

America, -ae, *f.*, America.

Americānus, -a, -um, American, of America. *As noun*, **Americānus, -ī**, *m.*, (an) American; *pl.*, the Americans.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship, confidence.

amīcus, -a, -um, friendly. *As noun*, **amīcus, -ī**, *m.*, friend; *pl.*, **Amīcī, -ōrum**, *m.*, the Friends.

āmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, lose.

amō, 1, love, like, fancy, cherish; be in love with (48). *Pass.*, be beloved (63). *Partic.*, **amāns, -antis**, *with gen.*, loyal (to).

amplector, 3, -plexus sum, embrace, accept.

amplius, *adv., compar.*, further, more.

ancora, -ae, *f.*, anchor.

angustus, -a, -um, narrow.

animadvertō, 3, -vertī, -versus, notice, note, perceive, observe, catch sight of, witness, see; discover, find out.

animus, -ī, *m.*, mind, spirit, soul, heart; manner, fashion, spirit: frame of mind; purpose; courage (56, 120), confidence (135). *Pl.*, courage, feeling (119), insubordinate spirit (140). See also **dēmittō** and **habeō**.

Annēius, -ēī, *m.*, (Marcus) Annēius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

annus, -ī, *m.*, year.

ante, *adv.*, before, earlier, previously. See also **iam** and **paulō**.

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before; in front of, ahead of.

anteā, *adv.*, before, previously.

antequam, *conj.*, before.

Antiochēa, -ae, *f.*, Antioch, a city of Syria.

antīquitus, *adv.*, in ancient times, in early times.

Antistius, -tī, *m.*, the name of a Roman physician.

Antōnius, -nī, *m.*, Anthony (Wayne), an officer in the Revolutionary War.

Apaméa, -ae, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

aperiō, 4, aperuī, apertus, disclose; explain (2). *Partic. as adj.*, apertus, -a, -um, open, unprotected.

appellō, 1, call, name, address by name; call upon, call (122). *Pass.*, be known as.

appellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, bring, steer, row. ad lītus appellere, beach, run aground upon the shore.

appetō, 3, -petīvī *or* -petiī, -petītus, attack, aim a thrust at.

appōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, set on, bring on, serve (food).

appropinquō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, approach, draw near; be close at hand (47).

apud, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the country of, with; near, at; at (in) the house of; in the presence of.

aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.

Arabēs, -um, *m.*, the Arabs.

Ārae (-ārum, *f.*) Alexandrī, the name of an ancient camp site in Cilicia (*lit.* the Altars of Alexander).

arbitror, 1, think, believe, judge.

arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.

arceō, 2, -uī, keep out, ward off, keep back, keep off.

arcēssō, 3, -īvī, -ītus, call in; call up (136).

Ardeātēs, -ium, *m.*, the people of Ardea (an ancient town about 20 miles south of Rome).

ārdēns, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, blazing.

argenteus, -a, -um, of silver, silver.

argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver, silver plate.

arma, -ōrum, *n.*, arms, weapons.

armātus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, armed, in arms, arms in hand (20); arms and all (88). *Pl., as noun*, armātī, -ōrum, *m.*, armed men, warriors, braves.

Arnoldius, -dī, *m.*, (Benedict) Arnold, an officer in the Revolutionary War.

Arpinēius, -ēī, *m.*, (Gaius) Arpineius, a Roman soldier (102).

arripiō, 3, -ripuī, -reptus, catch up, seize; rescue (106).

ars, artis, *f.*, business, profession. ars magica, black art, magic.

ascendō, 3, ascendī, ascēnsus, ascend, clamber up, scale; *with* in *and acc.*, make the ascent of (139).

ascīscō, 3, ascīvī, ascītus, win over; adopt (67).

Asia, -ae, *f.*, (1) Asia; (2) Asia Minor (132, 138).

Asiāticus, -a, -um, Asiatic, of Asia.

asper, -era, -erum, rough; severe (101); troublesome (135).

assēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, approval.

at, *conj.*, but, whereas, still, however.

Atlanticus, -a, -um, Atlantic.

atque, ac, *conj.*, and. See also simul.

Atrebatēs, -um, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

Attius, -tī, *m.*, (Publius) Attius (Varus), one of Pompey's generals.

auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*, influence, dignity, impressiveness.

audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness, daring, temerity, hardihood; insubordination, lawlessness (140); (act of) daring (88).

audācter, *adv.*, boldly, with boldness.

audāx, -ācis, *adj.*, bold, daring, audacious; of daring (99).

audeō, 2, ausus sum, dare, venture.

audiō, 4, **-īvī**, **-ītus**, hear, learn; listen, listen to, heed, give ear to.

augeō, 2, **auxī**, **auctus**; *pass.*, increase, grow (93); grow brighter (126).

auris, **-is**, *f.*, ear.

aurum, **-ī**, *n.*, gold.

ausus, **-a**, **-um**, see **audeō**.

aut, *conj.*, or; *sometimes represented in English by* "and." **aut ... aut**, either ... or.

autem, *conj.*, however, but, whereas; moreover, and.

auxilium, **-lī**, *n.*, aid, help, assistance, reënforcement, relief, protection. *Pl.*, auxiliary forces, supplementary force (detachments), allied force, allies, assistants, reënforcements, help. **auxiliō esse**, *with a second dat.*, (*freely*) help, benefit, support, protect, rescue. See also **ferō** and **veniō**.

avāritia, **-ae**, *f.*, greed, covetousness.

āvertō, 3, **-vertī**, **-versus**; *pass.*, turn (one's self) aside. *Partic. as adj.*, **āversus**, **-a**, **-um**, turned away (131).

avis, **-is**, *f.*, bird.

bāca, **-ae**, *f.*, berry.

Bagrada, **-ae**, *m.*, the name of a river of northern Africa.

ballista, **-ae**, *f.*; *pl.*, artillery.

Balventius, **-tī**, *m.*, (Titus) Balventius, a Roman standard bearer (106).

barbarus, **-a**, **-um**, barbarian. *As noun*, **barbarī**, **-ōrum**, *m.*, savages.

Batāvī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, the Dutch.

Bēcō, **-ōnis**, *m.*, (Nathaniel) Bacon, a hero of colonial times.

Bellovacī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

bellum, **-ī**, *n.*, war, warfare; fighting (116). See also **gerō**.

Bēnbrigius, **-gī**, *m.*, (William) Bainbridge, an American naval officer.

bene, *adv.*, well, successfully, satisfactorily. See also **gerō**, **habeō**, and **polliceor**.

beneficium, **-cī**, *n.*, act of kindness, kindness, favor.

Bibulus, **-ī**, *m.*, (Marcus) Bibulus, a (Roman) governor of Syria.

bīduum, **-ī**, *n.*, two days.

Bīthȳnia, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.

bonus, **-a**, **-um**, good. *As noun*, **bona**, **-ōrum**, *n.*, goods, possessions, belongings, things.

bōs, **bovis**, *c.* (*dat. and abl. pl.*, **bōbus** or **būbus**); *pl.*, cattle.

Bostō, **-ōnis**, *m.*, Boston.

Braddoc, **-ocis**, *m.*, (Edward) Braddock, an English commander in the French and Indian War.

brevī, *adv.*, shortly, (with)in a short time, soon, in a moment, before long, quickly; soon afterward (67).

Britannī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, the English, the British, Englishmen.

Britannia, **-ae**, *f.*, England; Britain (101). **Britannia Nova**, New England.

Britannicus, **-a**, **-um**, English, British, of the English. See also **vir**.

Brūtus, **-ī**, *m.*, (1) Marcus Brutus, one of the murderers of Julius Caesar; (2) Decimus Brutus, husband of Sempronia (135).

Bȳzantium, **-tī**, *n.*, the ancient name of Constantinople.

C., *abbreviation of* **Cāius**, **-āī**, *m.* (Gaius).

Cabot, **-otis**, *m.*, (1) John Cabot,

(2) Sebastian Cabot; two early explorers, father and son.

cadō, 3, cecidī, fall; turn out, fall out (14).

caedēs, -is, *f.*, slaughter, carnage, massacre, murder.

caelum, -ī, *n.*, (the open) sky, heaven; (the open) air; climate.

Caesar, -aris, *m.*, (1) Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul; (2) Lucius Caesar, an officer in Pompey's navy (117).

caespes, -itis, *m.*, sod.

callidus, -a, -um, clever.

Camillus, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Camillus, a hero of ancient Rome.

Canada, -ae, *f.*, Canada.

Canīnius, -nī, *m.*, (Gaius) Caninius (Rebilus), lieutenant to Curio in the civil war.

canis, -is, *c.*, dog.

canō, 3, cecinī, play, sing.

cantus, -ūs, *m.*, singing, chanting, chant.

capiō, 3, cēpī, captus, catch, seize, capture, take, occupy; take prisoner, make prisoner; secure, get (13); adopt (plan), follow (course), make for (hills), take up (arms). *Pass.*, be attracted. pedibus captus, lame; vī capere, take by storm.

Capitōlium, -lī, *n.*, the citadel of ancient Rome, the Capitol.

Cappadocia, -ae, *f.*, the name of a district of Asia Minor.

captīvus, -ī, *m.*, prisoner, captive.

caput, -itis, *n.*, head; capital. See also damnō.

carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison.

careō, 2, -uī, *with abl.*, be without, lack; spare.

Carletō, -ōnis, *m.*, (Sir Guy) Carleton,

a British officer in the Revolutionary War.

carō, carnis, *f.*, meat, flesh.

Carolaena, -ae, *f.*, Carolina.

carpō, 3, carpsī, carptus, gather, pluck.

carrus, -ī, *m.*, wagon, cart.

cārus, -a, -um, beloved, precious, prized.

casa, -ae, *f.*, hut, shack. *Pl.*, barracks.

Casca, -ae, *m.*, the name of two brothers implicated in the murder of Julius Caesar.

castellum, -ī, *n.*, blockhouse, fort, post; stronghold (133, 139).

Castor, -oris, *m.*, the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.

castra, -ōrum, *n.*, (entrenched) camp, fortress, fortified post, encampment. See also faciō, habeō, and pōnō.

Castra (-ōrum, *n.*) Cornēlia (-ōrum), the name of the site of a camp established in Africa by Publius Cornelius Scipio at the time of the second Punic War.

cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, fall (86); accident (94), plight (84, 134), calamity (97), disaster (115), emergency (105). *Abl. as adv.*, cāsū, by chance, as chance would have it.

Catilīna, -ae, *m.*, (Lucius Sergius) Catiline, a politician who conspired to overthrow the government of Rome.

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, grounds, excuse, occasion; case (41). *Abl.* causā, *with gen. of the gerundive, gerund, or abstract noun*, for the purpose (of), for the business (of), for purposes (of), with the idea (of), with a view to, etc. ob eam causam, for that reason.

cavus, -a, -um, hollow.

cecidī, see cadō.

cēdō, 3, cessī, cessum est, fall back. locō cēdere, leave (one's) station, abandon (one's) position, give way.

celebrō, 1, celebrate.

celeritās, -ātis, f., swiftness, speed, swift action, haste.

celeriter, adv., quickly, swiftly, rapidly, speedily, fast; in haste, hastily. Superl., at top speed, with great speed, with all speed.

cēna, -ae, f., dinner.

cēnō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), dine, take dinner.

cēnseō, 2, -uī, (cēnsus), express (the) opinion, give as (one's) opinion; urge (120).

centuriō, -ōnis, m., captain, lieutenant, sergeant; centurion (103 ff.).

cēpī, see capiō.

Cercās, -ae, m., (Benjamin) Church, a celebrated Indian fighter.

cernō, 3, (crēvī, certus), see, descry, discern, observe; watch (128).

certē, adv., at any rate, certainly; as a matter of fact (90).

certus, -a, -um, certain, definite; assured (135); (a) particular (89). See also cōgnōscō, faciō, and fīō.

cēterī, -ae, -a, the other, the rest (of). As masc. noun, the others, the rest, the other men.

Ceutronēs, -um, m., the name of a people of northern Gaul.

cibus, -ī, m., food.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., (1) Marcus Tullius Cicero, consul in 63 B.C.; (2) Quintus Tullius Cicero, brother of the preceding.

Cilicia, -ae, f., the name of a district in Asia Minor.

Cimber, -brī, m., see Tillius.

circiter, adv., about.

circuitus, -ūs, m., circuit, detour; circumference (110).

circum, prep. with acc., around, about, in the neighborhood of (116).

circumdō, 1, -dedī, -datus, surround, girdle, encircle.

circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, make the rounds of.

circumsistō, 3, -stitī or -stetī, rally (gather, crowd) around.

circumstō, 1, -stitī, stand about; surround, encircle.

circumveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus, surround, encircle, hem in, bring to bay; flank, turn the flank (of).

citrō, adv., see ultrō.

cīvis, -is, c., citizen, fellow-citizen, countryman. Pl., (one's) countrymen, people, townsmen.

cīvitās, -ātis, f. (gen. pl. -um or -ium), state, country.

clādēs, -is, f., disaster.

clam, adv., secretly, stealthily, quietly; unnoticed, unobserved.

clāmō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, cry out, call out.

clāmor, -ōris, m., cry, shout.

clārus, -a, -um, famous, prominent; loud (86).

classis, -is, f., fleet.

claudō, 3, clausī, clausus, close; shut up, confine (91).

Cn., abbreviation of Cnaeus, -ī, m., (Gnaeus).

coēgī, coāctus, -a, -um, see cōgō.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, began, commenced; proceeded (130).

coerceō, 2, -ercuī, -ercitus, hold in check.

cōgitō, 1, think, imagine; with dē and abl., have (any) thought (of) (51).

cōgnōscō, 3, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus, get ac-
quainted with, learn (of), fathom,
find, observe; be informed, hear,
gain information; get information
of, gain (some) conception of
(110); realize (93, 122); recognize
(63, 89): try (case). *Pass.*, be-
come known, be known. certius
cōgnōscere, get more definite in-
formation (115).

cōgō, 3, coēgī, coāctus, compel, force,
oblige, constrain, impel, lead (126);
collect, gather, bring together, call
together, call in, get together; con-
centrate, crowd; muster, organize.

cohors, -rtis, *f.*, cohort. cohors prae-
tōria, bodyguard.

cohortor, 1, rally, cheer on; urge,
exhort. inter sē cohortārī, exhort
one another (127).

collis, -is, *m.*, hill.

collocō, 1, place, put, deposit; station,
locate, quarter, settle; establish,
build: arrange, place, lay (ambus-
cade); mount (artillery); pitch
(camp); stack (arms). in aciē
collocāre, form in line.

colloquium, -ī, *n.*, conference, inter-
view.

colloquor, 3, -locūtus sum, converse,
talk, have an interview.

colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony.

colōnus, -ī, *m.*, colonist, settler.

Columbus, -ī, *m.*, (Christopher) Co-
lumbus, the discoverer of America.

comes, -itis, *c.*, companion, attendant,
follower; hanger-on, minion (71).
Pl., (one's) men (22, 74), (one's)
fellows (86).

cōmitās, -ātis, *f.*, kindliness, courtesy.

cōmiter, *adv.*, courteously (29), kindly
(62); on friendly terms (23).

Commāgēnus, -a, -um, of Commagene
(a northern district of Syria).

commemorō, 1, relate, rehearse, state,
note.

committō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, join,
consign. proelium committere, join
battle, begin battle, engage in battle,
offer battle, fight; *pass.*, (battle)
take place; proeliō rem commit-
tere, risk an engagement, bring on
an engagement.

commodus, -a, -um, easy, expeditious
(130). *As noun*, commodum, -ī, *n.*,
well-being.

Commoris, -is, *f.* (*acc. sing.* -im), the
name of a small town of Asia
Minor.

commoveō, 2, -mōvī, -mōtus, move,
stir (75), alarm (138). *Partic.*,
commōtus, -a, -um, disturbed,
excited, upset, startled, alarmed;
concerned, stirred up, wrought up;
spurred on, moved. īrā commovērī,
become angry.

commūnis, -is, -e, common.

compellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, drive, force.

compleō, 2, -plēvī, -plētus, fill, fill up;
swamp (4), choke (122); supply
(118).

complūrēs, -ēs, -a, several, several of,
some, (quite) a number of, quite a
few, numerous; to a considerable
number (139); several (in number)
(90).

comportō, 1, bring together, gather
together, get together, collect; get
in, lay in (109).

comprehendō, 3, -prehendī, -prehēn-
sus, arrest (132); catch (fire).

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, attempt.

concēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus, allow,
grant, concede.

concilium, -ī, *n.,* council (of war), powwow; (deliberative) body (34).

concurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est, rush (together), run. **inter sē concurrere,** charge upon one another (117).

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.,* terms; proposal (110); condition, plight (91).

condō, 3, -didī, -ditus, store, deposit, hide away; found, establish (city, state).

condūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, hire, engage.

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, conlātus, bring together (117). **sē cōnferre,** betake (one's) self, make (one's) way, proceed; withdraw, return.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.,* dense (107), solid (63); (the) thick (of) (136).

cōnfēstim, *adv.,* at once, quickly, forthwith, immediately, without delay; in haste, hastily, in a hurry, hurriedly.

cōnficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, finish, complete, accomplish, bring to pass; push to a conclusion (140); wear out, exhaust, weaken, overcome.

cōnfīrmō, 1, assert, declare; cheer (up), encourage, reassure, fortify, steady (120).

cōnfodiō, 3, -fōdī, -fossus, pierce, slay.

coniciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, discharge, hurl, shoot, throw, cast; shower, pour in (missiles). **in fugam conicere,** put to flight, rout.

coniungō, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, join. **sē coniungere,** join, unite, effect (a) junction, join forces; ally one's self (103), cast in one's lot (130).

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.,* conspiracy.

cōnor, 1, try, attempt, endeavor.

cōnscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus, climb up (64); go on board, come on board, embark upon; man (rampart); mount (horse); scale (wall).

cōnsequor, 3, -secūtus sum, catch up, come up; catch up with, come up with; follow (90).

cōnservō, 1, preserve (116), save, look out for; husband (101), spare (130).

cōnsīdō, 3, -sēdī, -sessum est, settle, take up quarters; encamp, bivouac; take up (a) position (112); come to a halt (114).

cōnsilium, -lī, *n.,* plan, plans, plan of action, policy, course; design, purpose, scheme, project, venture; device, expedient, plot, stratagem, trick: advice, counsel; council (of war), conference. *Pl.,* course (135). See also **mūtō.**

cōnsistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum est, stop, halt, come to a halt; take (one's) stand, station (one's) self; stand, ride, remain (at anchor). **in orbem cōnsistere,** form in a circle.

cōnsōlor, 1, comfort, reassure; address kindly (130).

cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.,* sight, view.

cōnspiciō, 3, -spēxī, -spectus, see, catch sight of; look on (87).

cōnstantia, -ae, *f.,* firmness, resolution, steadfastness, reliability; coolness (83).

cōnstituō, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus, decide, determine, plan; designate, appoint (89); fix, establish, organize; draw up, station (115).

cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus); *perf.* (*with force of present*), be accustomed, be wont, be in the habit (of); *translated impersonally,* be (one's) custom.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*, practice, custom, policy ; the ordinary (133).

cōnsulō, 3, -suluī, (-sultus), take measures, make provision, look out.

cōnsultō, *adv.*, purposely, designedly.

cōnsūmō, 3, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, use up: eat, eat up; destroy; spend, pass (time). ignī cōnsūmere, burn.

contendō, 3, -tendī, (-tentus), proceed, march, make one's way; press (push) on, keep on, forge ahead, hurry: beg (129).

continēns, -entis, *partic. as adj.*, continuous, unremitting, unbroken. *As noun*, continēns, -entis, *f.* (sc. terra), mainland (100, 101).

contineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus, confine, coop up, restrain.

cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*, address ; assembly, meeting.

contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against, in the direction of (126).

contulī, see cōnferō.

contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult, affront, indignity, illtreatment; taunt.

conveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus, meet, interview, have interview with, see ; come together, gather, assemble.

convertō, 3, -vertī, -versus, turn (128); direct (114), convert (96). sē convertere, turn, give attention (90).

convocō, 1, call together, get together, convene, call, summon.

coorior, 4, -ortus sum, arise, come up, spring up ; close in (106).

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; outfit. *Pl.*, supplies, stores; force, forces, troops, companies, army ; (one's) following (138).

Coriolānus, -ī, *m.*, (Gaius) Coriolanus, a Roman who fought against his country.

Cornēlius, -a, -um, see Castra Cornēlia.

Cornivallis, -is, *m.*, (Lord) Cornwallis, a British general in the Revolutionary War.

corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.

cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

Cotta, -ae, *m.*, (Lucius) Cotta, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

Crassus, -ī, *m.*, (Marcus) Crassus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

crēdō, 3, crēdidī, crēditus, believe, think.

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*, torture, pain, suffering, agony.

crūdēlis, -is, -e, cruel, savage.

crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.*, cruelty, barbarity, savagery.

cruentus, -a, -um, bloody.

Cūba, -ae, *f.*, Cuba.

cum, *conj.*, (*time and circumstance*) when, while, after, as; at a time when (10): (*cause*) since, inasmuch as, as: (*concession*) though, although. *With subjunctive, often best rendered by a participial phrase.* cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also; cum prīmum, as soon as, when . . . first.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with. See also habeō (sēcum), simul, and ūnā.

cuneus, -ī, *m.*, wedge, stake.

cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly, with great eagerness.

cūr, *adv.*, why, on account of which.

Cūriō, -ōnis, *m.*, (Gaius) Curio, commander of Caesar's forces in Africa.

cūrō, 1, care for; treat (wounds); watch over (47): care for, have regard for (91).

currō, 3, cucurrī, cursum est, run,

rush; run about (90); run, play (of fire) (90).

cursus, -ūs, *m.,* course, stretch.

custōdia, -ae, *f.,* custody. *Pl.,* guards, watch, pickets.

custōdiō, 4, -īvī, -ītus, guard, watch. **memoriā custōdīre,** remember.

custōs, -ōdis, *m.,* guard, sentinel.

Cybistra, -ōrum, *n.,* the name of a city of Asia Minor.

D., *abbreviation of* **Decimus, -ī,** *m.*

damnō, 1, condemn. **capitis damnāre,** condemn to death.

dē, *prep. with abl.,* about, concerning, of, with reference to; down from, from.

decem, *indeclinable adj.,* ten.

decimus, -a, -um, tenth.

dedī, see **dō.**

dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.,* surrender. See also **veniō.**

dēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus, give up, surrender. *Partic. as noun,* **dēditī, -ōrum,** *m.,* surrendered men, prisoners. **sē dēdere,** surrender, give one's self up, capitulate.

dēdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forth, transport, conduct, escort, take, bring, lead; withdraw, lead away, call away, recall; draw down (131).

dēfendō, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus, defend, protect.

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.,* defense.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear down (56), carry, bear, bring; report. *Pass.,* be carried, drift.

dēfessus, -a, -um, weary, tired out, worn out.

dēficiō, 3, -fēcī, (-fectus), give out, fail, run low.

dēfīgō, 3, -fīxī, -fīxus, fix, plant, set up.

dēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, hurl down, hurl back (86); tear down, destroy (99). *Partic.,* **dēiectus; -a, -um,** *with abl.,* (*freely*) disappointed (in).

deinde, *adv.,* then, next, later, subsequently.

Dēiotarus, -ī, *m.,* the name of a native king who favored Roman rule in Asia Minor.

dēlātus, -a, -um, see **dēferō.**

dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētus, destroy, make away with; demolish, raze.

dēligō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, choose, select, pick out, appoint, delegate. *Partic. as adj.,* **dēlēctus, -a, -um,** chosen (34).

dēmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, lower. *Partic. as adj.,* **dēmissus, -a, -um,** downcast, crestfallen; **animō dēmissus,** disheartened, discouraged. **sē animō dēmittere,** lose heart (83).

dēmōnstrō, 1, point out, mention; explain (108).

dēmum, *adv.,* at length, finally, at last. See also **iam.**

dēnique, *adv.,* finally, in fine.

dēnuō, *adv.,* anew, again, once more, a second time.

dēpōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, put down (load), lay down, surrender (office), give up (hope).

dēscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsum est, descend, come down, charge down (121).

dēserō, 3, -seruī, -sertus, desert, leave, leave in the lurch.

dēsistō, 3, -stitī, stitum est, desist, cease. **proeliō dēsistere,** cease fighting, withdraw.

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, be wanting (84), be disloyal (14).

dēterreō, 2, -terruī, -territus, keep off, scare away; intimidate.

dētrahō, 3, -trāxī, -tractus, pull (tear, strip) off; drag out (85).

dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*, disaster, reverse, calamity, loss, harm, misfortune, mishap, accident; source of danger (100).

dētrūdō, 3, -trūsī, -trūsus, push off, shove off.

dētulī, see dēferō.

deus, -ī, *m.* (*dat. and abl. pl.*, deīs, diīs, *or* dīs), god.

dēversōrium, -ī, *n.*, inn, tavern.

dēvius, -a, -um, out of the way.

dēvorō, 1, devour.

dexter, -tra, -trum, right. *As noun*, dextra, -ae, *f.* (sc. manus), right hand.

dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus, say, speak, declare, tell, communicate, announce, report, mention, remark, suggest; express (sentiment, view), make (suggestion). male dīcere, swear, curse.

diēs, -ēī, *m. and f.*, day. in diēs, from day to day.

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus, scatter; put off, postpone.

difficilis, -is, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome; delicate (business), obstructed (slope).

dignitās, -ātis, *f.*, reputation, standing.

dīligenter, *adv.*, diligently, carefully, with care; busily (100); with all diligence (137).

dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, care, pains (99), carefulness, vigilance.

dīmicō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, fight, contend, struggle, be at war; do (one's) fighting (101).

dīmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, let go, release; let slip (through one's fingers), miss (121), lose possession of; give up, abandon (36), forego (97); dismiss, send away, allow to depart; send out (108); send on (128).

discēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessum est, withdraw, depart, go (off), march away, retreat, leave; recede (66); move (103, 105). *With ab or ex and abl.*, leave, desert. ab armīs discēdere, discard (one's) arms (110); īnferior discēdere, be beaten (39).

discessus, -ūs, *m.*, withdrawal, recall.

discō, 3, didicī, learn, acquire.

dispōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, arrange, station.

disputō, -āvī, -ātum est, discuss, continue (the) discussion (104).

diū, *adv.*, long, for a long time (period); (discuss) at length. neque . . . diūtius, and . . . no longer; nor very long (129); nōn diūtius, no longer. See also iam.

dīversus, -a, -um, different, various.

dīvidō, 3, -vīsī, -vīsus, divide, split up.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, give, grant, present; communicate, supply, provide; afford, offer, allow (109, 129); sound (signal). *Pass.*, present (it)self (121). in custōdiam dare, have arrested, arrest; in fugam dare, put to flight, rout, disperse; operam dare, give attention (91, 108); try, see to it (135); poenās dare, (pay the penalty), be punished; sē somnō dare, go to sleep, betake one's self to rest; vēla dare, set sail.

doceō, 2, -uī, doctus, show, point out; inform, tell; state, remind.

dolor, -ōris, *m.*, distress, grief; matter of chagrin.

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, owner.

Domitius, -tī, *m.*, (Gnaeus) Domitius, a cavalry officer in Curio's army.

domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home, residence, dwelling, dwelling place; **domī,** at home; **domō,** from home (see also **ēgredior**); **domum,** homeward, home, toward home, for home; to (their) homes (96).

dōnec, *conj.*, until.

dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift, present.

dubitō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, hesitate.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain. *As noun,* **dubium, -ī, *n.*,** doubt (126).

ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred.

dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus, lead, command, be commander of (9, 34); bring, conduct, take; draw, pull (56); stretch (chain). **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** marry, take in marriage.

dum, *conj.*, while, as, during the time when; provided only.

duo, duae, duo, two, the two.

duodecim, *indeclinable adj.*, twelve.

dux, ducis, *c.*, leader, commander, chief, captain, officer; conductor, guide.

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.,* (*separation, source*), from, (out) of, from out, out from; beyond (sight); after, in accordance with; (*material*), of, from; (*partitive*), of, out of, from. See also **aciēs, discēdō,** and **pars.**

Eborācopolis, -is, *f.*, Yorktown.

Eborācum (-ī, *n.*) Novum (-ī), New York (City).

ecfrēnātē, *adv.*, wildly.

edō, 3, ēdī, ēsus, eat.

ēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus, utter, give forth, give voice to.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus, carry forth, carry out, bring (forth).

efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, accomplish, bring (it) to pass; construct (99).

effugiō, 3, -fūgī, escape, make (one's) escape, make good (one's) escape, succeed in escaping, slip away, get away; find relief from (134).

ēgī, see **agō.**

ego, meī, I.

ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum, go out; disembark, come ashore; march forth, file out, step out, pass out, make (one's) way out, come forth, go forth; retire, depart; set out (107); start out (122). **domō ēgredī,** leave home.

ēlātus, -a, -um, see **efferō.**

Eleutherocilicēs, -um, *m.*, the Free Cilicians.

ēliciō, 3, -licuī, -licitus, lure forth, lure.

Elizabēta, -ae, *f.*, Elizabeth.

ēlūdō, 3, -lūsī, -lūsus, outwit, cheat, get the better of.

ēmigrō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, emigrate, move away.

ēmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send forth, send out.

emō, 3, ēmī, emptus, buy, purchase; buy up (91).

emptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, buying; *with gen.,* traffic (in).

enim, *conj.*, for.

eō, *adv.*, thither, to that place, there. **eō magis,** (on this account the more), all the more; **eō . . . unde,** to a point where.

eō, īre, iī, itum est, go, advance. *With* **ad** *and acc.,* go to meet (107).

eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place (spot); to this same point (73); for the same point (destination) (117).

Epiphanēa, -ae, f., the name of a city of Asia Minor.

eques, -itis, m., horseman, knight. *Pl.,* cavalry, horsemen; cavalry detachment (117).

equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry, cavalry force, cavalry detachment, force of cavalry; horsemen, horse.

equus, -ī, m., horse. See also **vehō.**

Erana, -ae f., the name of a town of Asia Minor.

ēripiō, 3, -ripuī, -reptus, wrest, recover, rescue. *With dat.,* take away (from) (71).

errō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, wander (about), stray.

ērumpō, 3, -rūpī, (-ruptus), burst (rush) forth, burst (rush) out, dart (out); break out, break through (43), break away (64), make a dash (68).

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., sally, sortie.

et, conj., and. **et . . . et,** both . . . and.

etiam, adv., even, also, too. See also **quīn etiam** and **sōlum.**

etsī, conj., although, even though.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., Europe.

ēvādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est, get out, escape; emerge (82).

ēveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est, turn out, go, proceed.

ēventus, -ūs, m., outcome, sequel; net result (110).

ex, see ē.

exāctus, -a, -um, see exigō.

excīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus, cut down.

excipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, except; withstand (35); await, meet (37, 101).

excitō, 1, rouse, rouse up.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est, go out (forth), come out (forth), go (out), march forth; depart, retire.

exercitus, -ūs, m., army, force, command.

exigō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus, collect (taxes); pass (time). *Partic.,* **exāctus, -a, -um,** completed, ended.

exiguus, -a, -um, small, weak; faint (sound).

exīstimō, 1, think, believe, judge, fancy, feel.

exitiālis, -is, -e, deadly, fatal.

exitus, -ūs, m., means of egress; solution.

expediō, 4, -īvī, -ītus, make ready, get ready, get out; prime (weapons).

expedītus, -a, -um, partic. as adj., unencumbered (by baggage), in light marching order. *As noun,* **expedītī, -ōrum, m.,** light-armed troops.

expellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus, drive out; dispel (doubt).

explicō, 1, -āvī or -uī, -ātus or -itus, deploy, arrange.

explōrātor, -ōris, m., scout, explorer, frontiersman.

explōrō, 1, explore, reconnoitre, examine, inspect.

expugnō, 1, take by storm, storm, capture, take.

exsiliō, 4, -siluī, leap out; spring up (20); leap (80).

exsilium, -ī, n., exile.

exspectō, 1, await, wait for, await the coming (arrival) of, delay for (111); look forward to, anticipate; wait (67, 121).

exstruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, construct, build.

extinguō, 3, extīnxī, extīnctus, extinguish, put out.

extrā, prep. with acc., outside of, outside, without; beyond (127).

Faber, -brī, *m.*, (Captain John) Smith.

Fabius, -bī, *m.*, (1) Gaius Fabius, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war; (2) Fabius Paelignus, a soldier in Curio's army; (3) Quintus Fabius Sanga, a lawyer who helped Cicero in the suppression of the conspiracy of Catiline.

facile, *adv.*, easily, with great ease, without trouble, without difficulty, readily.

facinus, -oris, *n.*, crime, outrage; deed, exploit, feat.

faciō, 3, fēcī, factus, do, perform, make; commit, perpetrate; build, construct; choose, elect, appoint, make : carry out (massacre); make, lay, place (ambuscade); make, deliver (announcement); afford (opportunity); inflict (injury); leave (tracks); take (departure). castra facere, encamp; certiōrem (-ēs) facere, inform, enlighten, send word to, notify (see also fīō); impetum facere, charge; iniūriās facere, *with dat.*, illtreat (4); iter facere, travel, journey, march, advance, proceed, push on; range (21); stīpendia facere, serve (in army). See also fīō.

facultās, -ātis, *f.*, opportunity, chance.

Faesulānus, -a, -um, of Faesulae (a town of Etruria). *As noun*, Faesulānus, -ī, *m.*, (a) citizen of Faesulae.

fallō, 3, fefellī, falsus, disappoint. *Partic. as adj.*, falsus, -a, -um, false, fictitious (137).

famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger, starvation. See also necō.

faveō, 2, fāvī, fautum est, *with dat.*, be favorably disposed (to), feel sympathy (for), side (with).

fefellī, see fallō.

fēlīciter, *adv.*, successfully, well, prosperously. nec fēlīciter, and unsuccessfully. See (rem) gerō.

fenestra, -ae, *f.*, window.

fera, -ae, *f.*, wild animal (creature, beast).

Ferdinandus, -ī, *m.*, Ferdinand, king of Spain.

ferē, *adv.*, about, nearly, almost.

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, carry, bear, bring; endure, put up with, bear, withstand, brave, hold out against; permit (139), call for (127): advance (standards); cast (vote), pass (measure). *Pass.*, be carried (hurled, thrown), roll. auxilium ferre, bring relief, bring help, give assistance, lend aid, lend a hand, assist; *with dat.*, support, help; molestē ferre, be irritated, be indignant, be in a state of indignation, be aggrieved, feel (it) keenly (60), regret (95, 97); chafe under, chafe at, bear with irritation (34, 55).

fidēlis, -is, -e, faithful, loyal, reliable.

fidēs, -eī, *f.*, credence; loyalty (120).

fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

fīlius, -lī, *m.*, son; the younger, junior (5).

fīnis, -is, *m.*, end, objective point (89). *Pl.*, boundaries, border; territory, land, lands, country.

fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, nearby, adjacent. *As noun*, fīnitimī, -ōrum, *m.*, adjacent peoples (138).

fīō, fierī, factus sum, be done, take place; be accomplished, be gone through with (109); happen, occur, come to pass, arise, come on; be, become, grow; be made, be appointed. certior (-ēs) fierī, be informed, learn. See also faciō.

fīrmō, 1, secure, strengthen.

fīrmus, -a, -um, strong.

Flāminīnus, -ī, *m.*, (Titus Quinctius) Flamininus, a Roman ex-consul.

fleō, 2, flēvī, flētum est, weep, cry.

Flōrida, -ae, *f.*, Florida.

flōs, flōris, *m.*, blossom, flower.

fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, wave.

flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river, stream, current (73). adversō flūmine, up the river, up (the) stream, (on) up the stream (98); secundō flūmine, with the current, downstream.

fluō, 3, flūxī, (fluxus), flow.

folium, -ī, *n.*, leaf.

fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring.

foris, -is, *m.; pl.*, door.

forte, *adv.*, by chance, accidentally, casually, as it chanced; perchance (77).

fortis, -is, -e, brave, courageous, heroic.

fortiter, *adv.*, bravely, courageously, valiantly, stoutly; with courage, with bravery, with fortitude (52); like a man (68).

fortitūdō, -inis, *f.*, fortitude, heroism; spirit (61).

fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, fate, luck; good fortune (135). *Pl.*, wellbeing. *As proper name*, Fortūna, -ae, *f.*, the name of the goddess of fortune.

forum, -ī, *n.*, market place. *In particular, the market place at Rome*, the Forum.

fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, moat.

frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctus, break, wreck; break down (26); break, humble (140), discourage, dishearten (33).

frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.

frequēns, -entis, *adj.; pl.*, in large numbers.

fretum, -ī, *n.*, strait, channel, sound.

frīgidus, -a, -um, icy.

frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold. *Pl.*, cold weather (7).

frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain, corn.

frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose, without success.

frūstum, -ī, *n.*, bit, piece.

fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight, rout, retreat, escape; defection (117). See also coniciō and dō.

fugiō, 3, fūgī, flee, retreat, retire, slip away; hurry, run. *Partic. as adj.*, fugiēns, -entis, flying (59, 70), in retreat (127).

fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke.

Gabīnius, -nī, *m.*, (Publius) Gabinius (Capito), a person implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, France; Gaul (101 ff.).

Gallicus, -a, -um, French; Gallic (126 ff.).

Gallus, -a, -um, Gallic. *As noun*, Gallus, -ī, *m.*, (a) Gaul: *pl.*, the Gauls (45 ff.); the French, Frenchmen.

gaudeō, 2, gāvīsus sum, rejoice, be delighted (pleased, glad).

gaza, -ae, *f.*, treasure.

gemitus, -ūs, *m.*, groan.

gēns, gentis, *f.*, nation, tribe, people.

genus, -eris, *n.*, class; birth, family (136).

Germānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Germans.

gerō, 3, gessī, gestus, do, accomplish, manage (4), carry through to completion (129): have (quarrel); wear (22, 99). *Pass.*, take place, happen, go on, proceed. bellum gerere, wage war, fight, carry on

war, be at war, take the field, go on the warpath. **rem bene (fēlīciter) gerere**, be successful, have (any) success, act successfully; **sē gerere**, behave, act, comport (one's) self. See also **rēs**.

glaciēs, -ēī, *f.,* ice.

gladius, -ī, *m.,* sword.

glōria, -ae, *f.,* luster, renown.

glōrior, 1, boast.

Gorgia, -ae, *f.,* Georgia.

Graecus, -a, -um, Greek.

grātia, -ae, *f.,* favor (89). *Pl.,* thanks.

grātus, -a, -um, acceptable, satisfactory, attractive ; grateful (45).

gravis, -is, -e, heavy; trying (110), pressing (111); extortionate, ruinous (137) : serious, dangerous (disease); heavy, deep, sound (sleep).

graviter, *adv.,* seriously, deeply, severely; much, greatly, exceedingly.

Grudiī, -ōrum, *m.,* the name of a people of northern Gaul.

gubernāculum, -ī, *n.,* steering oar. *Pl.,* steering gear, tiller, helm.

gubernātor, -ōris, *m.,* helmsman, pilot.

habeō, 2, -uī, -itus, have, hold, keep; hold, regard ; get, make (135) : deliver, make (speech), set forth (argument); attain (renown, credence). **bene sē habēre,** have a good time ; **castra habēre,** remain encamped ; **in animō habēre,** intend, plan ; think of, consider (doing a thing); **in incertō habēre,** be undecided; **rēs ita sē habēre,** matters stand thus (53); **sēcum habēre,** harbor (132).

habitō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), live, dwell, be located.

Hadrūmētum, -ī, *n.,* the name of a town of northern Africa.

Hannibal, -alis, *m.,* the name of a famous Carthaginian general.

harēna, -ae, *f.,* sand.

haud, *adv.,* by no means, not very, not. See also **aequus, invītus, libenter, longinquus, longus, magnus,** and **procul.**

Henrīcus, -ī, *m.,* Henry, king of Portugal.

herba, -ae, *f.,* grass.

hīberna, -ōrum, *n.,* winter quarters, winter camp, winter encampment.

hīc, *adv.,* here.

hīc, haec, hoc, this, that; *abl.,* **hāc** (sc. **viā**), by this route. *As noun,* he, they, this, these; *neut.,* this (thing, action, consideration, story, etc.).

hiemō, 1, -āvī, -atum est, pass the winter, winter, be quartered for the winter.

hiems, -emis, *f.,* winter, winter time, winter season.

Hispānī, -ōrum, *m.,* the Spanish, the Spaniards.

Hispānia, -ae, *f.,* Spain.

Hispāniēnsis, -is, -e, of Spain. *As noun,* **Hispāniēnsis, -is,** *m.,* (a) native of Spain.

homō, -inis, *c.,* man, fellow, individual, person, body; he, the man. *Pl.,* people, mankind (23).

honor, -ōris, *m.,* honor, mark of distinction; esteem, honor ; deference (81).

hōra, -ae, *f.,* hour.

Horātius, -tī, *m.,* Horatius (Cocles), a hero of early Rome.

horrendus, -a, -um, awful, frightful.

hortor, 1, urge, exhort, direct; encourage, cheer, rally; beg (102, 104).

hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden.

hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy.

hūc, *adv.*, to this place, thither.

Hudsō, -ōnis, *m.*, (1) Henry Hudson, the explorer; (2) the name of a river of New York state.

humus, -ī, *f.*, ground; humī, on the ground, upon the ground; in(to) the ground (90).

ibi, *adv.*, there, at that point, in that region, right there.

Īconium, -nī, *n.*, the name of a town of Asia Minor.

īdem, eadem, idem, the same, that same, this same; the very (7). *As noun*, the same man; *neut.*, the same (thing, story, procedure, etc.).

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, proper, satisfactory, well-adapted; favorable (wind).

Īdūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides (the 13th of some months, the 15th of others).

igitur, *conj.*, therefore, accordingly, and so.

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire, light, camp fire. *Pl.*, flames. See also cōnsūmō.

īgnōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace, humiliation.

īgnōtus, -a, -um, unknown, unexplored, strange.

ille, illa, illud, that, this, the. *As noun*, he, she, the one, they, these; *neut.*, this.

illūcēscō, 3, -lūxī, dawn.

impedīmenta, -ōrum, *n.*, baggage, baggage train, stores; personal effects (110).

impediō, 4, -īvī, -ītus, hinder, molest, delay; put a damper upon (138). *Partic. as adj.*, impedītus, -a, -um, hampered, weighed down, at a dis-

advantage; blockaded, obstructed, choked: difficult (ground) (128).

imperātor, -ōris, *m.*, general, commander, commanding general (officer), commander in chief.

imperium, -rī, *n.*, order (129), command (44); sway, control (81), government, rule (140).

imperō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *with dat. case, if any*, give orders (command, direction, directions), issue orders, order, direct.

impetrō, 1, win, gain, secure; buy (41).

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, assault, charge, onset, onslaught.

impōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, *with dat. or* in *and acc.*, place, load (upon, on).

īmus, -a, -um, see īnferior.

in, *prep.*; (1) *with abl.*, in, at, on, upon, on board, on the surface of; within, in the midst of, among; (2) *with acc.*, into, to, in, into the territory of; against, upon, on, at, among; toward, for; out upon (51).

incendium, -dī, *n.*, fire, conflagration.

incendō, 3, -cendī, -cēnsus, burn (up), destroy by fire; set fire to, fire.

incertus, -a, -um, irregular, devious (107); insecure (135). *As noun*, incertum, -ī, *n.*, uncertainty (135) (see habeō).

incitō, 1, spur on, stir up. sē incitāre, work one's self up (48).

incola, -ae, *c.*, inhabitant, native.

incolō, 3, -coluī, inhabit, occupy, populate, be settled in.

incolumis, -is, -e, safe, unharmed, in safety, unscathed, unmolested; scot free.

incommodum, -ī, *n.*, inconvenience (54), check, set-back, disaster, reverse.

incrēdibilis, -is, -e, fabulous, astonishing.

inde, *adv.*, thence, from thence; from there; from that point; from it.

Indiāna, -ae, *f.*, Indiana.

indīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictus, declare (war).

Indus, -a, -um, Indian. *As noun*, Indus, -ī, *m.*, (an) Indian; *pl.*, the Indians.

īnferior, -ior, -ius, inferior, lower, weaker. *Superl.*, īmus, -a, -um, (the) lowest (part of) (131). See also discēdō.

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, inlātus, inflict; *with dat.*, inflict (upon), do (to), make (war upon). iniūriās īnferre, *with dat.*, maltreat.

īnfēstus, -a, -um, threatening, opposing.

ingredior, 3, -gressus sum, enter, effect an entrance.

inimīcus, -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile, ill-disposed. *As noun*, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*, enemy, ill-wisher; *superl.*, deadly foe.

inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable.

iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong, damage; *pl.*, injuries, violence. *Abl. as adv.*, iniūriā, unjustly, wrongfully, without just cause (45). See also faciō and īnferō.

iniussū, *abl. of defective noun, with gen.*, without the order (of), against the order (of), without orders (from).

inlīdō, 3, -līsī, -līsus, dash. *Pass.*, be dashed, crash.

inmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send, throw, hurl, shoot, discharge, fire. tēlum inmittere, fire.

inopia, -ae, *f.*, lack, need, scarcity.

inquam, —, -quiī, say, exclaim, cry; inquire, reply, retort.

inrumpō, 3, -rūpī, (ruptus), break (into), burst (into), rush (into), dash (into); burst in, break in.

īnsequor, 3, -secūtus sum, pursue, follow. vestīgiīs īnsequī, follow the trail.

īnsidiae, -ārum, *f.*, ambuscade, ambush; treachery, underhand means (72). See also lateō.

īnstar, *indeclinable noun, with gen.*, the size (of), as large as.

īnstruō, 3, -strūxī, -strūctus, draw up, form, marshal; fit out, equip.

īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island. īnsula Longa, Long Island.

integer, -gra, -grum, untouched. *As noun*, integrī, -ōrum, *m.*, fresh troops.

intellegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus, realize, see, perceive, gather, understand, know.

intempestus, -a, -um, *lit.*, unseasonable. See nox.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, among, in the midst of; between. See also agō, cohortor, and concurrō.

intercipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, intercept, cut off; capture.

interdiū, by day, by daylight.

interdum, *adv.*, at times, from time to time; sometimes, occasionally; in some cases (91).

intereā, *adv.*, in the meantime, meanwhile.

intereō, -īre, -iī, perish, be killed.

interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, kill, slay, put to death; murder, massacre,

kill off, cut off, cut down, cut to pieces. **tēlō interficere**, shoot dead.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime, the while.

intermittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, check; leave between (126).

interpōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, interpose, put (place, hold) between. *Pass.*, lie between, intervene.

intervāllum, -ī, *n.*, distance.

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within, behind; (over) within (113).

intrō, 1, enter, make (one's) way into; step in (49): enter, gain (harbor).

intus, *adv.*, within, inside; on board (70).

inveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus, find, find out, discover.

invīsus, -a, -um, odious; hated (48, 75).

invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, against (one's) will, against (one's) inclination, with reluctance; exceedingly loath, much against (one's) will. **haud invītus**, nothing loath.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, himself, herself, itself, themselves, *gen.*, own: (the city) proper, (this, that) particular: on their own motion (24); in person; with his own hand (136): very, mere, even. *As noun*, he, the man himself, they, *gen.*, his (own), their (own).

īra, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath.

īrātus, -a, -um, angry, in anger, in a passion, in (one's) wrath; hotly, angrily (103).

is, ea, id, this, the, that. *As noun*, he, a man (103), she, they, these, those, (the) people, (the) men; *neut.*, it, this, that; this thing, this purpose (54), the things, the events, those

things; a thing (132), a project (139): *gen.*, his, her, their; of theirs (138). **id quod**, what.

Isabella, -ae, *f.*, the name of a queen of Spain.

iste, ista, istud, that, this; that . . . of yours (134). *As noun*, he, this (131).

ita, *adv.*, thus, so; in this way, in the following way; with matters standing thus (119); by this means (104): in such a manner (122); at such speed (139): so very (121).

Ītalia, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

itaque, *conj.*, and so, accordingly.

iter, itineris, *n.*, journey, way, road, route, march, traveling, trip, stage (138). **in itinere**, on the march, on the road, on the line of march, during the journey; **iter magnum**, forced march. See also **faciō**.

iterum, *adv.*, again, a second time, once again; the second time (64). See also **semel**.

iaceō, 2, -uī, lie, lie neglected (131). *Partic. as adj.*, **iacēns**, -entis, prostrate.

iaciō, 3, iēcī, iactus, throw, cast, shoot; throw out (anchors).

Iacsō, -ōnis, *m.*, (Andrew) Jackson.

iam, *adv.*, now, already, at length. **iam ante**, previously; **iam dēmum**, now at length, at length; **iam diū**, now for a long time, long since; **iam prīdem**, long since, long before.

Iāniculum, -ī, *n.*, the name of a hill separated from Rome by the Tiber.

Iasper, -erī, *m.*, (Sergeant) Jasper, a daring soldier of the Revolution.

Iuba, -ae, *m.*, the name of an African king.

iubeō, 2, **iussī**, **iussus**, order, command, direct, bid, tell, say (89); give orders, leave orders. *Pass.*, be under orders, be ordered.

iūdicō, 1, think, infer, believe, feel, be of the opinion.

Iūnius, **-nī**, *m.*, (Gaius) Junius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

Iūnō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, Juno, queen of the gods, as being the wife of Jupiter.

iūs, **iūris**, *n.*, law, rules (132); court (45) : *pl.*, rights, privileges, prerogatives. *Abl. as adv.*, **iūre**, rightfully, with good right. See also **vocō**.

iuvenis, **-is**, *m.*, young man, youth, young fellow; *with adj. force*, youthful (25).

iuvō, 1, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, aid, help, assist, relieve, help out.

K., *abbreviation of* **Kalendae**, **-ārum**, *f.*, the Calends (*i.e.* the first day of a month).

L., *abbreviation of* **Lūcius**, **-cī**, *m.*

Labiēnus, **-ī**, *m.*, (Titus) Labienus, lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic war.

labor, **-ōris**, *m.*, hardship, difficulty, trial; strain, toil, labor, work, exertion, effort, fatigue (124).

labōrō, 1, **-āvī**, **-ātum est**, work, toil; be hard pressed (136).

lacrima, **-ae**, *f.*, tear.

lacus, **-ūs**, *m.*, lake.

laetus, **-a**, **-um**, joyful, glad, happy, rejoicing, delighted; with joy, with alacrity (96), in high spirits (50).

Lāodicēa, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a city of Asia Minor.

largior, 4, **-ītus sum**, give freely, sacrifice.

Lārīsa, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a town in Greece.

latebrae, **-ārum**, *f.*, hiding place, sheltered spot (99); ambush (105). **in latebrīs**, in hiding (32).

lateō, 2, **-uī**, hide, skulk, be in hiding, lie in wait. **in īnsidiīs latēre**, lie in wait.

latus, **-eris**, *n.*, flank (of army).

lātus, **-a**, **-um**, see **ferō**.

laudō, 1, praise, commend.

lectus, **-ī**, *m.*, bed, couch.

lēgātus, **-ī**, *m.*, captain, commander, lieutenant, officer, staff officer (44), subordinate officer (33); ambassador, messenger, envoy (42, 110, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 138); governor (23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 62, 75, 76).

legiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, regiment; legion (102 ff.). *Pl.*, troops.

lēniter, *adv.*, slowly, leisurely.

Lexingtō, **-ōnis**, *m.*, Lexington, a town in Massachusetts.

libenter, *adv.*, readily, cheerfully, with pleasure, happily, gladly, with alacrity. **haud libenter**, with discontent; **nec libenter**, and unhappily.

līberī, **-ōrum**, *m.*, children.

Līberia, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a country of Africa.

līberō, 1, free, relieve.

lībertās, **-ātis**, *f.*, liberty, freedom, emancipation.

liburnica, **-ae**, *f.*, sloop, cutter, brigantine.

licet, 2, **licuit** or **licitum est**, *impersonal verb*, be permitted.

lignātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, felling (of) timber.

Līma, **-ae**, *f.*, the name of a town of South America.

lingua, **-ae**, *f.*, tongue, language.

littera, -ae, *f.,* letter (of the alphabet). *Pl.,* letter, communication, message; document, paper (112); alphabet (113).

lītus, -oris, *n.,* coast, shore.

Līvius, -vī, *m.,* (Titus) Livy, a famous Roman historian.

locuplēs, -ētis, *adj.,* rich, wealthy, well-to-do.

locus, -ī, *m.* (*pl.,* **loca, -ōrum,** *n.*), place, spot, point, region, locality, location, ground, position, post; part (110): station (in life) (79); position, light (118). *Pl.,* district, country (31, 33); location (65); quarters (91). **omnibus locīs,** everywhere. See also **cēdō** and **natūra.**

locūtus, -a, -um, see **loquor.**

Londīnium (-nī, *n.*) **Novum (-ī),** New London, a town in Connecticut.

longē, *adv.,* far, (to) a considerable distance, to a great distance; *with superl. or compar. of adj. or adv.,* (by) far, much.

longinquus, -a, -um, distant, remote, far away, at a distance. **haud longinquus,** at no great distance.

longus, -a, -um, long. **haud longus,** no great (distance); **longum est,** it is too long (127), 'twould be a long tale (87). See also **īnsula** and **nāvis.**

loquor, 3, locūtus sum, talk, speak, converse; state (126) ; *with* **cum** *and abl.,* talk (to).

Lovīsiāna, -ae, *f.,* Louisiana.

Lūcānius, -nī, *m.,* (Quintus) Lucanius, a soldier in Caesar's army in Gaul.

lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum est, play, sport.

lūna, -ae, *f.,* moon.

Lūsitānia, -ae, *f.,* the ancient name of Portugal.

lūx, lūcis, *f.,* light, the light of day, dawn, daybreak. **prīma lūx,** early dawn, dawn, daybreak.

Lycāonia, -ae, *f.,* the name of a district in Asia Minor.

M., *abbreviation of* **Mārcus, -ī,** *m.*

maestus, -a, -um, sad, dejected, sorrowful, sorrowing; in dejection, in gloom, in (the garb of) mourning (42); disappointed (86).

magicus, -a, -um, magic, magical. See also **ars.**

magis, *adv., compar.,* more (129) ; see also **eō** (*adv.*). *Superl.,* **maximē,** particularly, especially; exceedingly, in the highest degree : *sometimes prefixed to give superlative force to an adj. or adv.*

magister, -trī, *m.,* captain. **puerōrum magister,** tutor, school teacher.

magnopere, *adv.,* earnestly; unreasonably (103).

magnus, -a, -um, great, large, big, of large size, huge, immense, extensive : abundant (stores), dead (earnest), excessive (heat), good (courage), grave (peril), hearty, heartfelt (thanks), heavy, severe, serious (loss), heavy, severe, violent (earthquake, storm), heroic (spirit), high (column, hope), important (exploit), keen (anticipation), liberal (reward), loud (noise), long (distance), much (assistance), strong (force, guard, spirit, etc.), tremendous (curse), valuable (treasure), wide (river). **haud magnus,** no great ; **nōn magnus,** of no great size. See also **iter.**

Compar., **maior, -or, -us,** (all the) greater (84); a considerable (55), some considerable (120); elder, older. *As noun,* **maiōrēs, -um,** *m.,* fathers (13).

Superl., **maximus, -a, -um,** extreme, utmost, supreme, exceedingly great, immense, mighty; much (104); general, wholesale, frightful (slaughter).

maior, -or, -us, see **magnus.**

male, *adv.,* not fully (140). See also **dīcō.**

mālō, mālle, māluī, prefer, choose.

malus, -a, -um, wicked, evil, unprincipled, vile. *As noun,* **malum, -ī,** *n.,* evil, misfortune, trouble, difficulty.

māne, in the morning, on the morrow, next morning; early in the morning (49).

maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum est, remain, stay, tarry, live.

manipulāris, -is, -e, of the rank and file. *As noun,* **manipulāris, -is,** *m.,* soldier of the rank and file, private; *pl.,* men.

Mānlius, -lī, *m.,* (1) Marcus Manlius, a Roman who defended the Capitol against the Gauls; (2) Gaius Manlius, lieutenant to Catiline.

manus, -ūs, *f.,* hand; band, company, detachment, force.

Mārcius, -cī, *m.,* Marcius (Rufus), an officer in Curio's army.

Mārcus, -ī, *m.,* Marcus.

mare, -is, *n.,* sea, ocean; the high seas (92).

Marta, -ae, *f.,* Martha.

Mārtius, -a, -um, of March.

māter, -tris, *f.,* mother.

mātrimōnium, -ī, *n.,* marriage. See also **dūcō.**

mātrōna, -ae, *f.,* lady.

mātūrē, *adv.,* early, soon; speedily (94).

Maurī, -ōrum, *m.,* the Moors.

maximē, see **magis.**

maximus, -a, -um, see **magnus.**

Mediterrāneus, -a, -um, Mediterranean.

medius, -a, -um, middle (of), center of. See also **nox.**

melior, see **bonus.**

memor, -oris, *adj.,* *with gen.,* with a thought (of), thinking (of), remembering.

memorābilis, -is, -e, noteworthy, remarkable.

memoria, -ae, *f.,* memory, remembrance. See also **custōdiō** and **teneō.**

mēnsis, -is, *m.,* month.

mentior, 4, -ītus sum, make up (a) story, fabricate.

merīdiēs, -ēī, *m.,* midday, noon (129); the south (40, 43, 77).

metus, -ūs, *m.,* fear (122); thought of danger (119).

meus, -a, -um, my; my own (138); on my part (140).

Miantōnimō, -ōnis, *m.,* the name of an Indian chief.

mīles, -itis, *m.,* soldier, common soldier, soldier in the ranks. *Pl.,* men, privates. See also **tribūnus.**

mīlle, *indeclinable adj.; pl.,* (*noun*) **mīlia, -ium,** *n.,* thousand. **mīlle passūs,** mile; **mīlia passuum,** miles.

minimē, see **minus.**

minimus, see **parvus.**

minor, -or, -us, see **parvus.**

minus, *adv., compar.,* less; not very (80). *Superl.,* **minimē,** not at all, by no means; no (87).

mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, strange.

misceō, 2, -uī, mistus or mixtus, mingle.

miser, -era, -erum, wretched, pitiful, unfortunate, luckless, poor; hard (42). *As noun*, poor fellow, poor woman, poor wretches, etc.

mittō, 3, mīsī, missus, send, dispatch; shoot, hurl, fire; throw away, discard, lose (129). *Partic. as noun*, missī, -ōrum, *m.*, messengers, *lit.* those sent (109).

modo, *adv.*, just before, just now, lately; just, but just: only (20, 131). modo . . . modo, at one time . . . at another. See also sī.

modus, -ī, *m.*, manner, fashion, way, means, chance. eius modī, of this sort; nūllō modō, not at all (83); quō modō, thus.

molestē, *adv.*, with irritation; see ferō.

moneō, 2, -uī, -itus, warn, advise, inform (49).

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain, eminence, height.

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay, hesitation. sine morā, instantly (64).

morbus, -ī, *m.*, disease, illness, sickness.

moribundus, -a, -um, dying, at the point of death.

morior, 3, mortuus sum, die. *Partic.* (*and adj.*) mortuus, -a, -um, having died, dead: *as noun*, mortuus, -ī, *m.*, dead man; *pl.*, the dead.

moror, 1, delay, tarry, linger, dally, lounge; hold back, remain, wait, stop; be detained (9, 10).

mors, mortis, *f.*, death, dying, execution.

mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom. *Pl.*, ways (28), character (72).

moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus, move; break (camp).

mox, *adv.*, soon, shortly, quickly.

Mūcius, -cī, *m.*, (Gaius) Mucius, a hero of ancient Rome.

mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.

multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, throng, crowd, company, band, force, number, numbers; rain (of weapons).

multō, *adv.*, (by) much, (by) far.

multum, *adv.*, much, greatly. *Superl.*, plūrimum, very frequently (135).

multus, -a, -um, much. *Pl.*, many; many of, a large number of; in large numbers (28): *as masc. noun*, many, many persons, many people; *neut.*, many (things), many (stories), much (property). *Compar.*, plūs, plūris, *neut.* (*noun*), more (88): *pl.*, plūrēs, -ēs, -a, more, several (131); *as noun*, more (122). *Superl.*, plūrimī, -ae, -a, very many, numerous, a large number of; in large (great) numbers, in strong force: a cloud (multitude, shower) of.

mūniō, 4, -īvī, -ītus, intrench, strengthen, fortify. *Partic. as adj.*, mūnītus, -a, -um, strong, (strongly) fortified.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification, intrenchment. *Pl.*, fortifications; siege works (115, 123).

mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall, (stone) fence (55).

mūtō, 1, change. cōnsilium mūtāre, change (one's) mind.

nam, *conj.*, for.

nancīscor, 3, nactus sum, find, discover; gain, secure; reach (83). *Perf. tense*, have (119).

nārrō, 1, relate, narrate, tell (of).

nāscor, 3, nātus sum, be born.

nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, tribe.

natō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, float.

nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, natural inclination. *Abl. as adv.*, nātūrā, naturally (134). nātūra locī, natural situation (41).

nātus, -a, -um, *see* nāscor.

nauta, -ae, *m.*, sailor, deck hand. *Pl.*, crew.

nāvigium, -ī, *n.*, vessel.

nāvigō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, sail, cruise, coast, ply; head, journey, travel (11) : be on shipboard (91); go to sea (5), ship (2).

nāvis, -is, *f.*, ship, vessel, boat. nāvis longa, warship, man-of-war. See also solvō.

ne, *sign of a question.*

nē, *conj.; (purpose)* so as not to, not to, in order not to, so that . . . not, to the end that . . . not, lest; *(after verbs of fearing)* that, lest; *(after* recūsāre) that (132). nē quis, so that no one (54, 57); nē qua, so that no (102); nē quid, so that . . . not . . . anything (47) ; nē ūllus, that no (84).

nē . . . quidem, not even; not . . . either (93).

nec, see neque.

necessārius, -a, -um, necessary, essential, needed, needful.

necō, 1, put to death, kill. fame necāre, starve to death.

necopīnāns, -antis, *adj.*, off (one's) guard.

negō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), declare that . . . not, say " no."

negōtiātor, -ōris, *m.*, trader.

negōtior, 1, trade, have (business) dealings; be a trader (134).

negōtium, -tī, *n.*, business, commission.

nēmō, *defective noun*, *m.*, no one, none, not a man. *Gen. and abl. supplied by* nūllīus *and* nūllō.

neque, nec, *conj.*, and . . . not, nor; *when followed by* enim *or (sometimes) by* vērō, not. neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor; not . . . nor yet (126). See also alius, diū, fēlīciter, libenter, quisquam, sciō, tamen, ūllus, umquam, and volō.

Nervius, -vī, *m.*, a Nervian. *Pl.*, the Nervii (a people of northern Gaul).

nesciō, 4, -scīvī, not understand, not know, be ignorant of.

nihil, *indeclinable noun*, nothing. *Acc. as adv.*, not . . . at all (68).

Nīna, -ae, *f.*, the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

nisi, *conj.*, unless; *as adv.*, except, excepting.

nix, nivis, *f.*, snow.

nō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, swim, float.

noctū, *adv.*, at night, by night, in the night, during the night, under cover of night; one night (68).

nocturnus, -a, -um, during the night, night *(adj.).*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, not be willing, not wish, not desire, not want; object, decline, refuse.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, title; honor (35).

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.

nōnnūllī, -ae, -a, a number of. *As noun*, some.

nōnus, -a, -um, ninth.

noster, -tra, -trum, our. *As noun*, nostrī, -ōrum, *m.*, our men (soldiers, troops, forces, force).

nōtus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, known.

Noveborācēnsis, -is, -e, of New York, New York (*adj.*).

novus, -a, -um, new, strange, odd, unexpected ; revolutionary, upstart (138); *as part of a town or country name*, New. (ali)quid novī (*as neut. noun*), anything new (*lit.* of new). *Superl.*, last, hindermost (127). See also agmen and rēs.

nox, noctis, *f.*, night, darkness, nightfall. *Abl. as adv.*, nocte, under cover of the darkness (130). media nox, midnight; nocte intempestā, at dead of night.

nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked, without clothing.

nūllus, -a, -um, no, not a; nūllō, (*as masc. noun*), *supplying the lacking abl. of* nēmō, no one, none (39, 58, 82). See also modus and pars.

numerus, -ī, *m.*, number, numbers, company, contingent, class; amount (66). quōrum in numerō, among whom.

Numidae, -ārum, *m.*, the Numidians; *with adj. force*, Numidian (117).

numquam, *adv.*, never. nōn numquam, sometimes (63).

nunc, *adv.*, now, to-day.

nūntiō, 1, announce, report, send word; *with dat.*, inform.

nūntius, -ī, *m.*, messenger, envoy, herald; news, information, message.

nūper, *adv.*, lately, just before.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of. See also causa and rēs.

oblīvīscor, 3, oblītus sum, forget; *with gen.*, be forgetful (of).

obscūrus, -a, -um, dim; lowly (79).

obses, -idis, *c.*, hostage.

obsideō, 2, -sēdī, -sessus, besiege, beset, blockade, hem in, surround; guard, watch.

obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*, siege.

obstinātus, -a, -um, determined, dogged.

obtineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus, hold, have, enjoy (34). rēgnum obtinēre, rule.

occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, opportunity, chance.

occidēns, -entis, *m.*, the west.

occīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus, kill, slay, put to death, murder, slaughter, massacre; cut down, cut to pieces, cut off.

occupō, 1, occupy, take possession of, capture, seize, seize (upon); fill (89). *Partic. as adj.*, occupātus, -a, -um, guarded (133): busy, busied; interested (129).

occurrō, 3, -currī, -cursum est, *with dat.*, meet, head off.

octāvus, -a, -um, eighth.

octō, *indeclinable adj.*, eight.

Octōber, -bris, -bre, of October.

oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye.

officium, -ī, *n.*, duty, task; respect (131).

ōlim, *adv.*, once upon a time, once, at one time, on one occasion, one day, one time.

omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, entirely.

omnis, -is, -e, all, every; whole, the whole (of), all (of); any (113, 129). *As noun, masc. pl.*, all, every one, everybody, they all; all (those) (118); *neut. pl.*, everything, all the (those) things, every expedient (120), all sorts of things (123). See also locus and sciō.

onerāria, -ae, *f.*, transport, merchant vessel.

onustus, -a, -um, laden, loaded.

opera, -ae, *f.*, services; coöperation (135); attention (91, 108). See also **dō**.

oppidānī, -ōrum, *m.*, townspeople, townsmen, inhabitants of (the, one's) town.

oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town, city.

opportūnus, -a, -um, auspicious, favorable, opportune.

opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, crush, overwhelm; catch (139).

oppugnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, siege, attack, assault; (the) attacking (122).

oppugnō, 1, attack, assail, besiege, beset, invest; press the siege (140).

optimus, -a, -um, see **bonus**.

opus, -eris, *n.*, work, task; (earth) work. *Pl.*, fortifications, defenses, (siege) works. **opus est**, there is need (46).

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, speech, argument, representations, remarks, words.

orbis, -is, *m.*, circle. See also **cōnsistō**.

ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, (regular) order; rank, class; command, position (63). *Pl.*, ranks (107, 125); centurions (127).

ōrō, 1, beg.

ostendō, 3, **ostendī**, **ostentus**, display, disclose, show, point out, set forth; impart (the) information (133). **sē ostendere**, appear, show one's self.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, at leisure, off duty; quiet (33).

P., *abbreviation of* **Pūblius**, -lī, *m.*

pācō, 1, reduce to order. *Partic. as adj.*, **pācātus**, -a, -um, subdued, submissive.

Paelignus, -ī, *m.*, see **Fabius**.

paene, *adv.*, almost.

palam, *adv.*, openly, in full view; frankly, freely, boldly; with no show of secrecy (126).

palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh, glade.

pandō, 3, **pandī**, **passus**, spread. *Partic. as adj.*, **passus**, -a, -um, full spread (sails), outstretched (hands).

parcō, 3, **pepercī**, *with dat.*, be merciful (to), have pity (on), have mercy (upon), spare.

pāreō, 2, -uī, obey, comply; *with dat.*, give heed (to), obey, respond (to); be in subjection (to) (140).

pariō, 3, **peperī**, **partus**, win, gain.

parō, 1, prepare, get ready, make preparations for (51); fit out, make ready, put in order; *with infin.*, prepare, make preparations, plan. *Partic. as adj.*, **parātus**, -a, -um, in readiness, ready.

pars, partis, *f.*, part, proportion, division, section, remnant; quarter, direction, side. *Pl.*, rôle (131). **ab eā parte**, in that quarter, on that side; **ex omnibus partibus**, on all sides; **in omnīs partēs**, in every direction; **in alterā parte . . . in alterā**, on the one hand . . . on the other; **in utramque partem**, pro and con (103); **nūllam in partem**, no (sign be made) one way or the other (119); **quāscumque in partēs**, whithersoever; **ūnā ex parte**, on one side.

Parthī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Parthians.

parvus, -a, -um, small, little, scant; weak (force), low (hill). *Compar.*, **minor**, -or, -us, less, of no great size (85); lighter (shock); younger (68). *Superl.*, **minimus**, -a, -um, very small, (but) the slightest (91).

passus, -ūs, *m.*, pace. See **mīlle**.

passus, -a, -um, see **pandō** and **patior**.

patefaciō, 3, -fēcī, -factus, throw

open; disclose, divulge. *Partic. as adj.*, patefactus, -a, -um, open (64).

pater, -tris, *m.*, father.

patior, 3, passus sum, allow, permit, suffer; endure, bear, suffer.

patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, country; ancestral domain (75), rightful country (93).

paucī, -ae, -a, few, a few (of), the few. *As masc. noun*, a few, a mere handful, (only) a few (45); *neut.*, a few (things, words, questions).

paulātim, *adv.*, slowly, by slow degrees, gradually.

paulō, *adv.*, a little, somewhat. paulō ante, a little before (earlier), shortly before, a little while before; a little while ago (69); paulō post, a little later, shortly afterward, a short time afterward.

paulum, *adv.*, a little, a little way, a little (short) distance; a short time.

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace, state of peace.

Pecsuot, -otis, *m.*, the name of an Indian killed by Miles Standish.

pecūnia, -ae, *f.*, money, funds; pay (94), bribe (94). See also solvō.

pedes, -itis, *m.*, foot soldier. *Pl.*, infantry, footmen, foot soldiers.

pedetemptim, *adv.*, gradually, little by little, warily, slowly.

peditātus, -ūs, *m.*, foot soldiery, infantry, foot, foot soldiers, footmen; force of infantry (138).

Pennsylvēnia, -ae, *f.*, Pennsylvania.

per, *prep. with acc.; (of space)* through, across, over, along; around in (the grass), on (the sea); *(of time)* through, for; *(agency)* through *(translated freely* "from" *or* "by"). See also simulātiō and tenebrae.

percutiō, 3, -cussī, -cussus, strike, strike down.

perdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, conduct. *Pass.*, be protracted, last (129).

peregrīnus, -ī, *m.*, foreigner.

pereō, -īre, -iī, perish, die, lose (one's) life, be killed, fall.

perficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, complete, finish, carry to completion, carry out; do, perform; construct, build.

perfidia, -ae, *f.*, treachery, treason.

perfuga, -ae, *c.*, renegade, traitor; *with adj. force*, deserting (123).

perfugiō, 3, -fūgī, desert, flee; *with* ad *and acc.*, take refuge (with) (111).

perīculōsus, -a, -um, perilous, beset with dangers.

perīculum, -ī, *n.*, danger, peril, risk; crisis (104), dangerous state (112).

perlegō, 3, -lēgī, -lēctus, read through.

permōtus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, startled, surprised, taken aback, confused; stirred (up), alarmed, shaken, worried, concerned; incensed (66), inspired (83), shamed (120).

perpaucī, -ae, -a, very few, a very few.

perpetuus, -a, -um, everlasting, ever troublesome (139). in perpetuum *(as neut. noun)*, for all time (108).

perrumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus, break through, break down, destroy.

persevērō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, persist, remain firm; *with infin.*, continue (to do a thing), persist (in doing a thing).

persuādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est, *with dat.*, make it agreeable (to), persuade, induce.

perterritus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, terrified, thoroughly frightened, in great fear, panic-stricken, thrown

into a panic, in terror, scared out of (one's) wits; in their terror (129).

pertinācia, -ae, *f.,* obstinacy, persistence.

pertineō, 2, -tinuī, *with* ad *and acc.,* be not far from (129); have a bearing upon, be of importance for (140).

perturbō, 1, throw into confusion, disconcert.

perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est, arrive, come, venture, make (one's) way: *with* ad *and acc.,* reach, arrive (at); be reduced (to) (125): *with* in *and acc.,* reach; effect an entrance (into) (85). **pervenīre in potestātem,** *with gen.,* surrender (to).

pēs, pedis, *m.,* foot. See also **captus** (under **capiō**).

pessimus, -a, -um, see **malus.**

petō, 3, -īvī, -ītus, look for, seek; ask, ask for, beg, sue for (peace); desire, try to get; get, find, secure: head for, make for (128, 139); hunt down (133); attack (131): *with* ab *and abl.,* request (132).

Petrēius, -ēī, *m.,* (Marcus) Petreius, commanding officer of the army that defeated Catiline.

Petrosidius, -dī, *m.,* (Lucius) Petrosidius, a standard bearer in Caesar's army in Gaul.

Philadelphia, -ae, *f.,* Philadelphia.

Philippus, -ī, *m.,* (King) Philip, an Indian chief.

Philomēlium, -lī, *n.,* the name of a city of Asia Minor.

pīlum, -ī, *n.,* javelin.

Pindenissus (or **-um**), **-ī,** *m.* or *n.,* the name of a city of Asia Minor.

Pinta, -ae, *f.,* the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

pīrāta, -ae, *m.,* pirate, robber.

piscis, -is, *m.,* fish.

plānē, *adv.,* clearly, full well; fully, utterly.

plānitiēs, -ēī, *f.,* plain, level ground.

plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque, most of, the majority of. *As masc. noun,* the majority, the most part, nearly all.

plūrimī, -ae, -a, see **multus.**

plūrimum, see **multum.**

plūs, plūris, *n.,* see **multus.**

Pōcahonta, -ae, *f.,* the name of an Indian princess.

pōculum, -ī, *n.,* cup.

poena, -ae, *f.,* penalty. See also **dō** and **repetō.**

Poenī, -ōrum, *m.,* the Carthaginians.

polliceor, 2, pollicitus sum, promise, agree, declare (89); offer, make offer of. **bene pollicērī,** make fair promises (135).

Pollūx, -ūcis, *m.,* the name of a god worshiped by the Romans.

Pompēiānī, -ōrum, *m.,* the Pompeians (*i.e.* adherents of Pompey).

Pompēius, -ēī, *m.*; (1) Gnaeus Pompey, the opponent of Caesar in the civil war; (2) Gnaeus Pompey, an interpreter attached to Caesar's army in Gaul; (3) Pompey, a slave name (99).

Pomptīnus, -ī, *m.,* (Gaius) Pomptinus, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

pōnō, 3, posuī, positus, place, put, station, fix; establish, build: *with* in *and abl.,* stake (upon) (112). *Partic. as adj.,* **positus, -a, -um,** located, situated. **castra pōnere,** encamp, pitch camp.

Pontiac, -acis, *m.,* the name of an Indian chief.

populus, -ī, *m.*, people (*i.e.* nation).

porrigō, 3, **-rēxī, -rēctus,** hold out, stretch out; display.

Porsinna, -ae, *m.*, the name of a king of Etruria.

porta, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.

portō, 1, carry, bring; accommodate (91).

portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, bay, port.

possum, posse, potuī, be able (can, etc.).

post, *adv.*, after, afterward, later. See also **paulō** and **postquam.**

post, *prep. with acc.*, after, later than; behind. See also **tergum.**

posteā, *adv.*, afterward, later, thereafter.

(posterus), -a, -um, next, following. *As noun,* **posterī, -ōrum,** *m.*, descendants, posterity.

postquam or **post . . . quam,** *conj.*, after, when; when at length (64), as soon as (82).

postrēmō, *adv.*, finally, at last, at length, in the end.

postrīdiē, *adv.*, the next day, on the following day. **postrīdiē eius diēī,** on the following day (123).

postulō, 1, demand, require, ask.

potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power, control, possession; opportunity (109, 121). See also **perveniō.**

potior, 4, **-ītus sum,** *with abl.*, gain, get, secure; capture, gather in (117), get (take) possession of; occupy (129).

praeda, -ae, *f.*, plunder, booty, prize.

praedium, -ī, *n.*, estate, plantation, ranch, farm.

praefectus, -ī, *m.*, commander; captain (70, 74, 81), general (123), officer (70, 125), governor (4).

praemittō, 3, **-mīsī, -missus,** send ahead, send forward.

praemium, -ī, *n.*, reward, present, bonus, largess; bribe (71).

praeoccupō, 1, forestall, anticipate; reach first (125).

praepōnō, 3, **-posuī, -positus,** *with dat.*, put in charge (of).

praesēns, -entis, see **praesum.**

praesertim, *adv.*, especially.

praesidium, -ī, *n.*, garrison, guard, escort; guard(ing) (138).

praestō, 1, **-stitī, -stitus,** show, exhibit, manifest, display; perform (105); guarantee (107).

praesum, -esse, -fuī, be in charge, be in command; *with dat.*, be in charge (of), be in command (of). *Partic.* **praesēns, -entis,** present (135); *as adj.*, instant (death).

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, by, past, beyond.

praetereā, *adv.*, besides, furthermore, in addition.

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, pass by; *perf. tense,* be past, be gone (131).

praetervehor, 3, **-vectus sum,** sail past.

praetōrius, -a, -um, of the commander; see **cohors.**

premō, 3, **pressī, pressus,** press hard, harass, beset.

prīdem, see **iam.**

prīdiē, *adv.* (*sometimes as prep. with an acc.*), (on) the day before.

prīmō, *adv.*, at first, at the outset, in the beginning.

prīmum, *adv.*, first. See also **cum** (*conj.*) and **ubi** (*conj.*).

prīmus, -a, -um, first, chief, foremost, leading; the beginning of, the first part of; early, earliest; the very

(88). **in prīmīs** (*as masc. noun*), in the front rank (136). See also **aciēs**, **agmen**, and **lūx**.

prīnceps, -ipis, *m.*, chief citizen. *Pl.*, chief men, leading men.

Prissilla, -ae, *f.*, Priscilla.

prīstinus, -a, -um, former, old-time; past (133).

prius, *adv.*, first, previously.

priusquam, *conj.*, before; *after a negative*, until (88, 109).

prō, *prep. with abl.*, in return for, instead of; as, for (10, 16, 83); for, in behalf of, in defense of (14, 35, 61, 63); before, in front of (107).

probō, 1, approve.

procul, *adv.*, far, far away, remote, at a distance; in the distance (94, 113); from a distance (87, 125). **haud procul,** at no great distance, near at hand, near by.

prōcurrō, 3, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum est,** run forward, charge.

prōdō, 3, -didī, -ditus, betray; disclose (52).

prōdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, bring out, lead out, (cause to) march out.

proelium, -ī, *n.*, battle, fight, fighting, (scene of) battle; battle (in the open) (122). See also **committō** and **dēsistō**.

profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, departure.

proficīscor, 3, profectus sum, set out, set forth, start, start off, start out, proceed; depart (27), slip away (62).

prōgredior, 3, -gressus sum, advance, progress, proceed, move forward, move on, take up (the) march, go forward, go ahead; go forth (75); march, travel; sail, coast; push out (2), venture (3, 6).

prōiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus, throw (out), hurl; throw over (98); lay down (arms). *Pass.*, fall forward (130).

prōlābor, 3, -lapsus sum, fall forward, slip down (57).

prōmunturium, -i, *n.*, promontory, cape.

prōnūntiō, 1, announce, make announcement.

prope, *adv.*, near, near by. *Compar.*, rather near, quite near, very near, too near; *as prep. with acc.*, quite near to (107).

prope, *prep. with acc.*, near, close to, by, in the neighborhood of.

properō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, hasten, hurry, scurry; *with infin.*, make haste (78).

propinquus, -a, -um, near-by, near. *As noun,* **propinquī, -ōrum,** *m.*, relatives.

prōpōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus, set forth, explain.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, because of; through (fear).

prōsper (or **-erus**), **-era, -erum,** good (fortune, luck).

prōspiciō, 3, -spēxī, (-spectus), look forth, look out.

prōtinus, *adv.*, straight on; forthwith (129).

prōvideō, 2, -vīdī, -vīsus, foresee, determine; look after, look out for (136).

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province, colony, territory, district.

proximus, -a, -um, next, nearest, adjoining, neighboring, near-by; next, following, next succeeding; that (night) (119).

Prūsia (or **-ās**), **-ae,** *m.*, the name of a king of Bithynia.

pūblicus, -a, -um, public, official (112). See also rēs.

puella, -ae, *f.*, girl, maiden, maid.

puer, -erī, *m.*, boy, lad; slave (133). See also magister.

puerītia, -ae, *f.*, boyhood, childhood.

pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle.

pugnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, fight, war; keep up (the) fight (106).

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, fair, pretty, charming; splendid, fine, (2, 98).

pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust (90, 118); powder.

putō, 1, think, believe.

Q., *abbreviation of* Quīntus, -ī, *m.*

quadrīduum, -ī, *n.*, four days, a period (space) of four days.

quaerō, 3, quaesīvī, quaesītus, seek, search, look for, hunt for; secure, get, find, recover; ask, inquire (122).

quaestus, -ūs, *m.*, profit, gain.

quam, *conj. and adv.*, than, rather than; *with the superl. of adjs. and advs.*, as . . . as possible.

quamquam, *conj.*, although.

quandō, *adv.*, see sī.

quantus, -a, -um, how great; what, what a. *As noun*, quantum, -ī, *n.*, how much? See also tantus.

quārē, *conj.*, therefore, wherefore, (and) accordingly, (and) so, (and) consequently; because of which, on which account, (and) on this account, as a consequence of which; whereat, whereupon.

quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quasi, *conj., with partic.*, as if, pretending (to).

quattuor, *indeclinable adj.*, four.

-que, *conj.*, and; and (so) (139).

queror, 3, questus sum, complain.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which (*gen.*, whose). *With antecedent implied : masc. pl.*, (some) who, (people) who, (those) who (90, 93, 120, 129, 140); *neut. sing.*, (a thing) which (37), (one) which (131); *neut. pl.*, (the things) which (110).

At the beginning of a sentence : as noun, who, which, he, she, it, this, they, these; *neut.*, this thing, these things, this: *as adj.*, which, what, this. (*When a personal or demonstrative pronoun is used to render a relative, it is often desirable to supply a conjunction, such as* "and," "but," *etc.*) See also modus. *For the corresponding interrog. and indef. pron.*, see quis.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), a certain; a (3); a sort of (137). *Pl.*, some, certain, certain of. *As masc. noun*, a certain one; *pl.*, certain, some (people).

quidem, *adv.*, indeed; at any rate (93). See also nē . . . quidem.

quiēscō, 3, quiēvī, (quiētus), rest, repose; take (one's) nap (71). somnō quiēscere, be sunk in sleep.

quīn etiam, indeed, in fact, as a matter of fact, nay more, even; why (*not interrog.*).

Quīnctius, -tī, *m.*, see Flāminīnus.

quīndecim, *indeclinable adj.*, fifteen.

quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um, fiftieth.

quīnquāgintā, *indeclinable adj.*, fifty.

quīnque, *indeclinable adj.*, five.

Quīntus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus.

(quis) quī, quae, (quid) quod, *indef. pron.*, any one, any, etc. (see nē and sī).

(quis) quī, quae, (quid) quod, *in-*

terrog. pron., who? what? (*the latter, both noun and adj.*).

quisquam, —, quicquam, *in negative clauses*, any one, anything.   nec quisquam, and no one; nec quicquam, and . . . nothing.

quisque, quaeque, quodque (quidque): *adj.*, each, every; *noun*, each (man) (120).

quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs (quidvīs): *adj.*, any whatsoever; *noun*, any one whatsoever, anything whatsoever (77).

quō, *adv.*, whither, to which place; to which, into which: to the place to which (118); thither, there.

quō, *conj.*, in order that, so that.

quod, *conj.*, because, since, as, because of the fact that; on the ground that; that (60, 100); as for the fact that (45).

quondam, *adv.*, once, in days gone by, at one time, on one occasion, one time; previously (33).

quoniam, *conj.*, since, inasmuch as.

quoque, *adv. and conj.*, also, too, as well; even.

quotiēns, *conj.*, as often as.

rāmus, -ī, *m.*, branch.

rapiō, 3, rapuī, raptus, seize, catch, catch up, snatch away; carry away, steal, plunder (38).

rārus, -a, -um, (*in pl.*), scattered, far apart, few.

ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, manner, way.

ratus, -a, -um, see reor.

Rebilus, -ī, *m.*, see Canīnius.

recipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, receive, admit, harbor (140); regain, recover, retake. in nāvigium recipere, get (take) on board: sē recipere, with-

draw, retreat, retire, return, go back, march back, fall back; march, proceed (117); *with* in *and acc.*, take refuge (in) (115).

recūsō, 1, object to, reject; shun, shrink from (15).

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est, return, come back, get back, make (one's) way back, go back; come again (125); *with* ad *and acc.*, be reduced (to) (112). domum redīre, arrive home (5).

redintegrō, 1, renew.

redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus, lead back, conduct back, withdraw, remove (122), bring back, carry back, take back, pull back; bring (123); *with* ad *and acc.*, restore (to) (93).

referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus, carry (back); repay (favor).

refugiō, 3, -fūgī, flee for protection; retire in haste (129).

rēgīna, -ae, *f.*, queen.

regiō, -ōnis, *f.*; *sing. and pl.*, region, territory, district, locality, country, neighborhood.

rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, sway, control; kingdom, realm.   See also obtineō.

regredior, 3, -gressus sum, return, withdraw.

religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, religion, (religious) belief, religious system; religious considerations (131).

religō, 1, fasten, bind.

relinquō, 3, -līquī, -lictus, leave, leave behind, abandon; leave, set sail from; raise (siege): leave, allow (116). *Partic. as adj.*, relictus, -a, -um, remaining (88).

reliquiae, -ārum, *f.*, remnants.

reliquus, -a, -um, the rest of, the remaining. *Pl.*, the other, other, the

remaining, the rest of; the follow-
ing (109); *as noun*, the others,
those remaining, the remnant, the
remainder, the rest. **reliquus esse,**
be left, remain (115, 125).

remittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus, send back;
subtract (114).

reor, 2, ratus sum, expect (136).
Partic., **ratus, -a, -um,** thinking, be-
lieving.

repente, *adv.*, suddenly, (all) of a
sudden.

repentīnus, -a, -um, sudden, unex-
pected.

reperiō, 4, repperī, repertus, find,
discover.

repetō, 3, -petīvī, -petītus, exact (*lit.*
demand back). **poenās repetere,**
with **ab** *and abl.*, discipline, punish.

reportō, 1, carry back, bring back.

repperī, see **reperiō.**

reprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus, stop,
suppress, check.

rēs, reī, *f.*, thing, things, action; affair,
business, circumstance, fact, hap-
pening, matter, matters; act (121),
casualty (106), concession (50),
development (103); engagement,
the fighting (129, 136); errand
(14), event (42), incident (88),
issue (72), observation (48), occur-
rence (71), performance (58), plan
(94), point (129), proceeding (69),
result (99), situation (108, 114),
transaction (118), turn (of events)
(92, 125), undertaking (40), ven-
ture (100). *Pl.*, business (139),
cause (126), demonstration (121),
means (127), things, appliances
(122). **haec rēs** *or* **quae rēs** (*all
cases, sing. and pl.*), this; **quam
ob rem,** wherefore, and so, accord-

ingly; **rēs gestae,** exploits; **rē vērā,**
in very truth; **rēs novae,** insurrec-
tion, revolution (25); **rēs pūblica,**
commonwealth, state, (one's) coun-
try (60). See also **committō** and
gerō.

resistō, 3, -stitī, -stitum est, *with dat.
case, if any,* resist, offer resistance,
oppose, make opposition; hold
(one's) own, stand (one's) ground,
make a stand (136); go (against),
hold out (against), hold (one's)
ground (against).

respondeō, 2, -spondī, -spōnsum est,
answer, reply; make answer, send
answer; declare.

respōnsum, -ī, *n.*, answer, reply.

retineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus, hold back;
hold down (91); keep (101);
maintain, hold fast to (113); save
(133).

rettulī, see **referō.**

revocō, 1, recall, call back.

rēx, rēgis, *m.*, king, chief, ruler.

Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, the ancient name of
the Rhine.

rīdeō, 2, rīsī, (rīsus), laugh, smile.

rīpa, -ae, *f.*, (river) bank, bank (of
river).

rīvus, -ī, *m.*, stream; brook (82).

rogō, 1, ask, beg, request.

Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. *As noun,*
Rōmānī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Romans.
See also **vir.**

Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, see **Mārcius.**

rursus, *adv.*, again, in turn, once more.

Sabīnus, -ī, *m.*, (Quintus) Sabinus,
lieutenant to Caesar in the Gallic
war.

Saburra, -ae, *m.*, the name of a gen-

eral in the army of the African king Juba.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, *c.,* priest, priestess; medicine man; minister (97).

saepe, *adv.,* often, ofttimes, on many occasions, many times, frequently, repeatedly. *Compar.,* over and over again (87), repeatedly (122).

saevitia, -ae, *f.,* brutality, roughness, savagery, barbarity, bloodthirstiness.

sagitta, -ae, *f.,* arrow.

sagum, -ī, *n.,* cloak.

saltem, *adv.,* at least, at any rate.

saltō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, dance.

salūs,-ūtis, *f.,* safety, well-being (91); salvation, escape, saving the day (125); life, lives (50, 72, 130). **salūtī esse,** *with a second dat.,* save, prove the salvation (of), save the day (for) (63).

Samarobrīva, -ae, *f.,* the name of a city of northern Gaul.

Sanga, -ae, *m.,* see **Fabius.**

Santa (-ae) Marīa, -ae, *f.,* the name of one of the ships of Columbus.

Saratōga, -ae, *f.,* Saratoga.

satis, *adv.,* sufficiently, enough; quite, rather (58), very (56). See also **sciō.**

Savanna, -ae, *f.,* Savannah.

saxum, -ī, *n.,* rock, cliff.

scapha, -ae, *f.,* skiff, open boat, row-boat.

scelerātus, -a, -um, rascally, wicked, villainous.

scīlicet, *adv.,* of course, to be sure, naturally; evidently (133).

sciō, 4, scīvī, scītus, know, understand. **nec satis scīre,** and be somewhat undecided (104); **omnia scīre,** know all (about the subject) (31). ·

scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write; state (114).

sē, sēsē, see **suī.**

secundum, *prep. with acc.,* along.

secundus,-a,-um, following; favorable (131). See also **flūmen.**

secūris, -is, *f.,* battle-ax, ax, toma-hawk.

secūtus, -a, -um, see **sequor.**

sed, *conj.,* but; *resuming,* now (136).

sēdecim, *indeclinable adj.,* sixteen.

sedeō, 2, sēdī, sessum est, take a seat, sit.

sēdēs, -is, *f.,* seat (of war) (82). *Pl.,* location, abode (65); district, habitat (66).

semel, *adv.,* once. **semel atque iterum** *or* **semel iterumque,** time and again, several times.

semper, *adv.,* always, ever, at all times.

Semprōnia, -ae, *f.,* the name of a woman implicated in the conspiracy of Catiline.

senātus, -ūs, *m.,* Parliament (34, 35); Congress (39, 43, 44); session of Congress (44); (the Roman) senate (42, 132, 134, 137).

senex, senis, *m.,* old man; *with adj. force,* aged.

sententia, -ae, *f.,* view, sentiment, opinion, suggestion.

sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus, realize, know, feel; see, perceive, notice; find (96).

septem, *indeclinable adj.,* seven.

September, -bris, -bre, of September.

septimus, -a, -um, seventh. **septimus quīnquāgēsimus,** fifty-seventh.

septuāgēsimus, -a, -um, seventieth.

septuāgintā, *indeclinable adj.,* seventy.

Sepyra, -ae, *f.,* the name of a small town of Asia Minor.

sequor, 3, **secūtus sum**, follow. **ve-stīgiīs sequī**, follow the trail (61).

servō, 1, save, rescue, preserve, keep.

servus, -ī, *m.*, slave; helper (74).

sex, *indeclinable adj.*, six.

sexāgintā, *indeclinable adj.*, sixty.

Sextīlis, -is, -e, of August.

sī, *conj.*, if, in case; if perchance, on the chance that, in the hope that; (to see) if (121). **sī modo**, if only, provided (that); **sī quandō**, if at any time, whenever; **sī quī** (*noun*), if any; **sī quid novī**, if anything new.

sīc, *adv.*, thus, so, in this manner, in this way, through (by) this means; in such a way (54, 133).

sīca, -ae, *f.*, dagger.

Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily.

Siculus, -ī, *m.*, (a) Sicilian.

sīcut, *conj.*, just as; thus, for example.

sīgnum, -ī, *n.*, sign, signal; watchword, countersign (99). *Pl.*, standards.

silentium, -ī, *n.*, silence, quietness (86). *Abl. as adv.*, **silentiō**, silently, in silence.

silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods, wood, grove.

similis, -is, -e, similar; *with dat.*, similar (to), resembling, like.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time, simultaneously; at one and the same time (105, 136). **simul atque**, as soon as (124); **simul cum**, together with (139).

simulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, pretense, show. **per simulātiōnem**, under pretense (122).

simulō, 1, pretend, make believe, make it appear (49); affect, pretend (135).

sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. See also **mora** and **timor**.

singulī, -ae, -a, one at a time, one by one, isolated (66).

socius, -a, -um, allied (137). *As noun*, **socius**, -ī, *m.*, ally, assistant, partner (98). *Pl.*, allies, friends; participants (135); friendly natives (140).

soleō, 2, **solitus sum**, be accustomed, be wont, be apt, be in the habit (of doing a thing); *imperf. and perf. tenses*, used. *Translated impersonally*, be (one's) wont, be (one's) custom.

sōlum, *adv.*, only. **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

sōlus, -a, -um, alone, in solitude; unaided, single-handed; in single combat (72).

solvō, 3, **solvī**, **solūtus**, unfetter (91); pay (debt). **nāvem** (-ēs) **solvere**, cast off, set sail; **pecūniam solvere**, defray expense (89).

somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep, slumber, nap. See also **dō**.

sonus, -ī, *m.*, sound, noise.

sōpītus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.*, asleep.

spatium, -ī, *n.*, space, room; period (120), respite (129).

speciēs, -ēī, *f.*, show, display, parade, pretense, guise. **ad speciem**, as a blind (122).

spectō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus), look, verge, lie.

speculor, 1, spy, view.

spernō, 3, **sprēvī**, **sprētus**, scorn, disregard.

spērō, 1, hope, hope for.

spēs, -eī, *f.*, hope, reliance (125); expectation (128), anticipation (135); chance (125), prospect (126), promise (111).

spoliō, 1, spoil, plunder, despoil, pillage; prey upon (81, 92, 98).

sprētus, -a, -um, see **spernō**.

Spurinna, -ae, *m.,* the name of a priest who predicted the death of Julius Caesar.

Standisius, -sī, *m.,* (Miles) Standish.

statim, *adv.,* at once, immediately, instantly, promptly, without delay, without parley (71); at the very outset (120).

statuō, 3, statuī, statūtus, set up (35); decide, determine, make up (one's) mind.

stīpendium, -ī, *n.,* pay. *Pl.,* military service; see **faciō.**

stō, 1, stetī, stand, be stationed; ride (at anchor); stand, stop, halt (85).

strēnuus, -a, -um, active, energetic, sturdy.

strepitus, -ūs, *m.,* bustle, noise, confusion.

sub, *prep. with abl.,* under, beneath; *with acc.,* toward.

subitō, *adv.,* suddenly, unexpectedly, without warning.

sublātus, -a, -um, see **tollō.**

subsequor, 3, -secūtus sum, follow rapidly; follow (124).

subsidium, -ī, *n.,* support, reënforcement, relief, help. See also **veniō.**

suī, sibi, himself, him; herself, her; itself, it; themselves, them. See also: **sē** with **cōnferō, coniungō, dēdō, dēmittō, dō, gerō, habeō, ostendō, recipiō, tegō,** and **teneō: inter sē** with **agō, cohortor,** and **concurrō: sēcum** with **habeō.**

sum, esse, fuī, be, become (111), prove to be; remain, stop (137); stand, be located; happen (127). See also **auxilium, salūs,** and **ūsus.**

summus, -a, -um, see **superior.**

sūmō, 3, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take, pro-cure, get; swallow (133); put on (100).

super, *prep. with acc.,* above, over (72); upon, on top of (56).

superbia, -ae, *f.,* haughtiness, arrogance.

superior, -ior, -ius, superior, stronger; higher (130); past, former, earlier, previous. *Superl.,* **suprēmus, -a, -um,** supreme, *and* **summus, -a, -um,** greatest, very great, great; the top of (86): acute (crisis); full (speed), all (speed), the top of (one's speed); grave (peril), hardest, heaviest (work), hearty (approval), (commander) in chief, most distressing (scarcity), most splendid (valor), pressing (need), severest (hardship), utmost (daring), utter (despair, lawlessness).

superō, 1, surpass, excel, prevail (104); defeat, overcome, outdo, worst, beat.

supīnus, -a, -um, on (one's) back, upon (one's) back, face upward; placed flat on (one's) back (94).

suprā, *adv.,* above.

suprēmus, -a, -um, see **superior.**

surgō, 3, surrēxī, surrēctum est, rise up, arise, rise.

suscipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus, undertake.

suspēnsus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.,* anxious.

suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.,* suspicion; impression (127).

suspicor, 1, suspect, think.

sustineō, 2, -tinuī, -tentus, withstand, sustain, break the force of (118); stay (hunger).

sustulī, see **tollō.**

suus, -a, -um, his, of his, her, their, of theirs; his own, her own, etc. *As noun,* **suī, -ōrum,** *m.,* his men

(followers, following, forces, force);
their men (followers): his own
people (16); their own lines
(121).

Synnada, -ōrum, *n.,* the name of a
city of Asia Minor.

Syria, -ae, *f.,* the name of a country
of Asia.

T., *abbreviation of* **Titus, -ī,** *m.*

tabernāculum, -ī, *n.,* tent, wigwam.

tacitus, -a, -um, *partic. as adj.,* silent,
motionless; quiet, in silence.

Taeconderōga, -ae, *f.,* Ticonderoga.

Tallapūsa, -ae, *m.,* Tallapoosa, a
river of Alabama.

tam, *adv.,* so.

tamen, *adv. and conj.,* however, but,
nevertheless, notwithstanding, still.
nec tamen, and yet . . . not.

tantopere, *adv.,* so greatly.

tantum, *adv.,* merely, only, but.

tantus, -a, -um, so great, so large,
such, such great, such large ; so
base, such base (41), so grievous
(34), so remarkable (110), so severe
(33), such (absolute) (86), such
serious (134), overwhelming (134).
quantō . . . tantō, (*with two com-
paratives*) the . . . the ; **tantus
. . . quantus,** such . . . as.

tardē, *adv.,* slowly, with little speed.

Taurus, -ī, *m.,* the name of a moun-
tain range of Asia Minor.

Tebarānī, -ōrum, *m.,* the name of a
people of Asia Minor.

tēctum, -ī, *n.,* roof; structure, building.

Tecumsa, -ae, *m.,* Tecumseh, an
Indian chief.

tegō, 3, tēxī, tēctus, cover, conceal;
bury (64). **sē tegere,** get under
cover.

tēlum, -ī, *n.,* missile, weapon; shaft
shot, bullet. *Pl.,* ammunition (59,
83, 92). See also **inmittō** and
interficiō.

temerē, *adv.,* rashly, hastily, incau-
tiously, lightly (82).

temeritās, -ātis, *f.,* rashness, rash ac-
tion, hasty act, incautiousness, folly.

tempestās, -ātis, *f.,* storm.

templum, -ī, *n.,* temple (71); church.

tempus, -oris, *n.,* time, period, season,
occasion, hour (100); circum-
stances (139). *Pl.,* days, times;
ages (45).

tenebrae, -ārum, *f.,* darkness. **per
tenebrās,** in the darkness (gloom).

teneō, 2, -uī, hold, occupy, garrison;
have (128); keep to (139). **me-
moriā tenēre,** remember (34); **sē
tenēre,** remain constantly (133).

tergum, -ī, *n.,* back. **ā tergō** and
post tergum, in the rear. See also
vertō.

terra, -ae, *f.,* the earth, land; coun-
try, land, district; the ground; dirt,
earth (110).

terreō, 2, -uī, -itus, frighten, intimi-
date, overawe, scare. *Partic. as adj.,*
territus, -a, -um, frightened, terror-
stricken, alarmed, abashed.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

Thrācēs, -um, *m.,* the Thracians, a
nation dwelling to the north of an-
cient Greece.

Tiberis, -is, *m.* (*acc. sing.,* **-im**), the
Tiber.

Tillius, -lī, *m.,* (Lucius) Tillius (Cim-
ber), one of the murderers of Julius
Caesar.

timeō, 2, -uī, be afraid, fear, be appre-
hensive ; fear, be afraid of, be in
fear of.

timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, apprehension, alarm, panic (117), demoralization (122). **sine timōre**, with no thought of danger, unconcerned.

tolerō, 1, keep at bay; tide over (112).

tollō, 3, **sustulī, sublātus**, raise, put up, lift; set up (shout, cry); weigh (anchor): dislodge, drive away (139). *Pass.*, (hope) be dispelled (given up, gone). *Partic. as adj.*, **sublātus, -a, -um**, puffed up (108).

tot, *indeclinable adj.*, so many.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole, the whole of, total, all, entire.

tractō, 1, handle, manage; have on (one's) hands, be engaged in (40).

trādō, 3, **-didī, -ditus**, give up, surrender, hand over, pass over; pass (hand) up (86); cede; transfer (91): assign (112); impart (27): say (88), state (131). **trāditum est**, it is related (stated, *lit.* handed down); the story runs (88).

trādūcō, 3, **-dūxī, -ductus**, take across, bring across.

trāgula, -ae, *f.*, dart.

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, over.

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itus, cross, cross over, come over, go over; come over, desert (119).

trānsportō, 1, take over, carry over; carry away (91, 92).

Trasumennus, -ī, *m.*, the name of a lake of central Italy.

trēs, trēs, tria, three.

Trēverī, -ōrum, *m.*, the name of a people of northern Gaul.

tribūnus, -ī, *m.* (with or without **mīlitum**), captain (27), major (28), staff-officer (32); (military) tribune (103 ff.).

tribūtum, -ī, *n.*, tribute, tax.

trīduum, -ī, *n.*, three days.

trīgintā, *indeclinable adj.*, thirty.

tū, tuī, you; *reflexive*, yourself (14).

tulī, see **ferō**.

Tullius, -lī, *m.*, (Lucius) Tullius, lieutenant to Marcus Cicero.

tum, *adv.*, then, at that time, on that occasion, on this occasion; at the time (28, 83); at such times (7); for the time being (122); now (139): thereupon, whereupon; later (113): furthermore, in the second place (16, 114). See also **cum** (*conj.*).

tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, alarm, confusion.

turma, -ae, *f.*, company (of cavalry), squadron. (*A* **turma** *enrolled about 30 men.*)

turris, -is, *f.*, (*acc. sing.* **-im**), tower.

tūtō, *adv.*, safely, in safety.

tūtus, -a, -um, safe; (place) of safety.

ubi, *adv.*; (*interrogative*) where? (*Relative*) where; upon which (11), in which (33); *beginning a new sentence*, there, (and) there, (but) there, etc. (*cf. what is said of the translation of the relative* **quī**).

ubi, *conj.*, when. **ubi prīmum**, on the first occasion that, the first time that.

ūllus, -a, -um, any; some (65); a single (137). **nē ūllus**, that no; **nec ūllus**, and . . . no, and . . . none.

ulterior, -ior, -ius, farther; *in some proper names*, South (60, 70). *Superl.*, **ultimus, -a, -um**, last, final.

ultimus, -a, -um, see **ulterior**.

ultrō, *adv.*, voluntarily, actually. **ultrō citrōque**, back and forth, up and down.

ululātus, -ūs, *m.*, yell, cry, shriek, warwhoop.

Umbrēnus, -ī, *m.*, (Publius) Umbrenus, a freedman implicated in Catiline's conspiracy.

umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever. **neque umquam,** and never.

ūnā, *adv.*, together. **ūnā cum,** *with abl.*, along with, together with, in company with, with; side by side with (83).

Uncās, -ae, *m.*, the name of an Indian chief.

unde, *adv.*, whence, from which, from whence ; from thence (39).

ūndecimus, -a, -um, eleventh.

ūndēvīgintī, *indeclinable adj.*, nineteen.

undique, *adv.*, on all sides, in all quarters, everywhere, all about, in all directions, in every direction ; from every side, from all sides, from every quarter, from all quarters.

ūniversī, -ae, -a, all, one and all, in a body.

ūnus, -a, -um, one, a single; (but) one (125); the one, the single (126). *As noun, masc. sing.*, one (132). **ad ūnum,** to a man, to the last man, utterly.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city; the city (*i.e.* Rome) (42, 45, 86).

usque, *adv.*, even. **usque ad,** *with acc.*, as far as, even to; until.

ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, assistance, service ; experience (133). **ūsuī esse,** (*freely*), be useful, be helpful, be used ; be needed, be needful (110, 122, 123). See also **veniō.**

ūsus, -a, -um, see **ūtor.**

ut, utī, *conj.* ; (*causal*) inasmuch as (126) : (*purpose*) to, in order to, in order that, so that, that ; for the purpose (of doing a thing), with the idea (of doing a thing) : (*relative*), as; (just) as (135) : (*result*) so that, that, as to: (*substantive*) that (110) : (*temporal*) when (131, 138).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two), either, both. *As noun, masc. sing.*, each, each man (of two).

utī, see **ut.**

Utica, -ae, *f.*, the name of an African city.

ūtor, 3, ūsus sum, *with abl.*, use, make use of, enjoy, have, employ, have recourse to, have occasion to use, bring into play, put into execution: accept, profit by (129), depend upon (71); devote (109); give utterance to (92); keep up (127); stoop to (63); *with a second abl.*, use (have) . . . (as) (129).

uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife ; squaw.

vagor, 1, wander, drift.

valētūdō, -inis, *f.*, health.

validus, -a, -um, strong, hardy, powerful; large (army).

vallēs, -is, *f.*, valley, glade.

vāllum, -ī, *n.*, wall, rampart, intrenchment.

varius, -a, -um, varying, various, of various kinds.

Vārus, -ī, *m.*, see **Attius.**

Vasingtō, -ōnis, *m.*, (George) Washington.

-ve, *conj.*, or; and (120).

vectus, -a, -um, see **vehō.**

vehementer, *adv.*, exceedingly much; deeply (42), energetically (94), earnestly (104), highly (139), zealously (135).

vehō, 3, vēxī, vectus, carry, bring,

convey, ferry over. *Pass.*, be carried, proceed, sail, ride. **equō vectus**, on horseback.

vel, *conj. and adv.; with superl. of adjs. or advs.*, even (98). **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or, both . . . and.

vēlum, -ī, *n.*, sail. See also **dō**.

vēndō, 3, vēndidī, vēnditus, sell.

venēnum, -ī, *n.*, poison.

venia, -ae, *f.*, pardon.

veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum est, come, proceed, march; arrive (126); draw near (118); *with* in *and acc.*, arrive (in). **auxiliō venīre**, (*freely*) come to help; *with a second dat.*, come to the help (of) : **in dēditiōnem venīre**, surrender; **in manūs venīre**, *with gen.*, fall into the hands (of) : **subsidiō venīre**, (*freely*) come to the rescue; *with a second dat.*, come (go) to the help (of) : **ūsū venīre**, be experienced, happen (133) (**ūsū** *is perhaps an irregular dat. form*).

vēnor, 1, hunt.

ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind.

verbum, -ī, *n.*, word.

vereor, 2, -itus sum, fear, be afraid. *Partic.*, **veritus, -a, -um**, fearing, apprehensive; apprehensive of, alarmed at.

vērō, *conj.*, indeed, but, nevertheless, however, whereas ; in truth, as a matter of fact, in fact: moreover (27); and (29, 42, 120).

Verrēs, -is, *m.*, (Gaius) Verres, a (Roman) governor of Sicily.

versor, 1, be involved; be; move about; bear a part (79).

versus, see **ad . . . versus**.

Verticō, -ōnis, *m.*, the name of a Gaul friendly to the Romans.

vertō, ჳ, vertī, versus, turn. **terga vertere**, wheel about.

vesper, -erī and **-eris**, *m.*, evening. **sub vesperum**, toward evening.

vestīgium, -ī, *n.*, track, mark. See also **īnsequor** and **sequor**.

vestīmentum, -ī, *n.*, garment. *Pl.*, clothing, clothes, dress.

vestis, -is, *f.*, clothing.

veterānī, -ōrum, *m.*, veterans, veteran soldiers, veteran troops.

vetus, -eris, *adj.*, old-time, one-time.

via, -ae, *f.*, route, road, way, highway, track, trail, path; journey (126).

vīcīnus, -ī, *m.*, neighbor.

victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory.

victus, -a, -um, see **vincō**.

vīcus, -ī, *m.*, village, hamlet.

videō, 2, vīdī, vīsus, see, view, behold, observe, watch; catch sight of, sight; see, find, discover (134).

videor, 2, vīsus sum, seem, appear. *Used impersonally*, **vidētur**, seem best (103).

vigilia, -ae, *f.*, watch (*i.e.* division of the night). *Pl.*, wakefulness (104).

vigilō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, keep awake, be alert, be awake; sit up (39).

vīgintī, *indeclinable adj.*, twenty.

vīlla, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse; farm (53).

vincō, 3, vīcī, victus, defeat, conquer, subdue, overcome, worst, beat, repulse; be victorious, prevail. *Partic. as adj.*, **victus, -a, -um**, defeated, beaten.

vinculum, -ī, *n.*, chain. *Pl.*, fetters, chains.

vir, virī, *m.*, man, gentleman; husband (73). **vir Britannicus**, (an) Englishman; **vir Rōmānus**, (a) Roman.

Virginia, -ae, *f.*, Virginia.

virtūs, -ūtis, *f.,* valor, bravery, courage, grit; coolness (110).

vīs, —, *f.,* force (73), violence (131); vigor (136), (dead) earnest (136): amount (70, 74, 82), cloud (of dust) (118). *Pl.,* strength. See also **capiō**.

vīta, -ae, *f.,* life. *Sing. often found where Engl. would use pl.* See also **agō**.

vītō, 1, avoid, make (one's) way around; avert (danger) (122).

vīvō, 3, vīxī, vīctum est, live; eke out an existence (39).

vīvus, -a, -um, alive (132). *As noun,* **vīvī, -ōrum,** *m.,* the living (91).

vix, *adv.,* scarcely, hardly.

vocō, 1, call, summon, invite; call, name. **in iūs vocāre,** prosecute, bring to trial (45).

volō, velle, voluī, desire, wish, please; be anxious, want, aim, plan; be willing, be ready. **nec velle,** and . . . be unwilling, and . . . refuse (86).

vōx, vōcis, *f.,* voice; tones (95), articulation (131); remark, question (14).

vulnerō, 1, wound. *Partic. as adj.,* **vulnerātus, -a, -um,** wounded; *as noun,* **vulnerātī, -ōrum,** *m.,* the wounded.

vulnus, -eris, *n.,* wound, injury.

vultus, -ūs, *m.,* countenance, expression.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

(Numbers in parentheses refer to sections of the English-Latin Exercises. For numerals, see the list included in the Summary of Forms, p. 353 ff.)

a, an, **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**; *but usually not translated.*

a certain, **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam**.

able, be, **possum, posse, potuī.**

about, *adv.*, **circiter.**

about, *prep.*, **dē** *with abl.*

about to: *translate by the future participle.*

abundance, **cōpia, -ae, F.**

accomplish, **efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.**

accustomed, be, *perf. tense of* **cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus).**

across, **trāns** *with acc.*

address, **appellō, 1.**

adopt (*plan*), **capiō, 3, cēpī, captus.**

advance, **prōgredior, 3, -gressus sum.**

afraid, be, **timeō, 2, -uī.**

Africa, **Āfrica, -ae, F.**

after, *adv.*, **post.**

after, *conj.*, **cum.** *In connection with a participle, often well rendered by an ablative absolute construction.*

afterward, **post; posteā** (96).

again, **iterum.**

against, **in** *with acc.*

age, **aetās, -ātis, F.**

of age, *use* **nātus, -a, -um.**

ago, **abhinc.**

aid, *noun*, **auxilium, -lī, N.** *See also under* send.

aid, *verb*, **adiuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus.** *See also* come to aid.

alarm, **terreō, 2, -uī, -itus.**

Alexandria, **Alexandrēa, -ae, F.**

all, **omnis, -is, -e.**

all (*speed*), **summus, -a, -um;** *superl. of* **magnus, -a, -um.**

allow, **patior, 3, passus sum.**

almost, **paene.**

alone, **sōlus, -a, -um.**

along with, **ūnā cum** *with abl.*

already, **iam.**

also, **quoque.**

although, **quamquam.**

always, **semper.**

ambassador, **lēgātus, -ī, M.**

America, **America, -ae, F.**

American, **Americānus, -a, -um.**

Americans, the, **Americānī, -ōrum, M.**

among, **apud** *with acc.*; **in** *with abl.* (75, 77); **inter** *with acc.* (109).

and, **et; -que; atque, ac.**

and never, **neque umquam.**

and nobody, and no one, **nec quisquam.**

and not, **neque, nec.**

and . . . not any one, **nec quisquam.**

and nothing, **nec quicquam.**

and so, **itaque.**

animal, **animal, -ālis, N.**

announce, nūntiō, 1.

another, alius, alia, aliud.

answer, inquam; respondeō, 2, -spondī, -spōnsum est (130).

Antonius, Antōnius, -nī, M.

anxious, be, volō, velle, voluī.

any, ūllus, -a, -um. *The word is omitted in such phrases as* "if there are any who," *etc.*

    any one: *see* and . . . not any one, *and* if any one.

anybody, anything: *see under* if.

appear, videor, 2, vīsus sum.

appoint, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.

approach, *noun*, adventus, -ūs, M.

approach, *verb*, appropinquō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est (*with dat., or* ad *and acc.*); accēdō, 3, -cessī, cessum est (*with* ad *and acc.*).

arms, arma, -ōrum, N.

army, exercitus, -ūs, M.

Arnold, Arnoldius, -dī, M.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.

arrive, perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est.

    arrive at, perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est, *with* ad *and acc.*

arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.

as, *temporal and causal conj.*, cum.

    as to, *introducing a result clause*, ut.

    as yet, adhūc.

Asia, Asia, -ae, F.

ask, ("*inquire*") inquam (4, 6); rogō, 1; quaerō, 3, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *with* ex *and abl. of the person questioned:* ("*request*") hortor, 1.

assassinate, occīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus.

assault, impetus, -ūs, M.

assist, adiuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus. *See also* come to assist.

assistance: *see under* go.

at, in *with acc. See also* arrive at.

    at any rate, certē.

    at home, domī.

    at last, at length, postrēmō.

    at night, noctū.

    at once, statim.

    at times, interdum.

Atlantic, Atlanticus, -a, -um.

attack, *noun*, impetus, -ūs, M.

attack, *verb*, adorior, 4, -ortus sum.

attempt, cōnor, 1.

Aurelian, Aurēlius, -a, -um.

authority, auctōritās, -ātis, F.

away, be, absum, -esse, āfuī.

ax, secūris, -is, F.

back, tergum, -ī, N.

bad, malus, -a, -um.

badly, male.

baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, N.

Balbus, Balbus, -ī, M.

band, manus, -ūs, F.

bank, rīpa, -ae, F.

basket, corbula, -ae, F.

battle, proelium, -ī, N.; pugna, -ae, F.

    battle line, aciēs, -ēī, F.

    battle rage, there be a fierce battle, *pass. of* pugnō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est, *with* ācriter.

battlefield, proelium, -ī, N.

bay, portus, -ūs, M.

be, sum, esse, fuī.

bear, *noun*, ursa, -ae, F.

bear, *verb*, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.

beat, vincō, 3, vīcī, victus.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod.

become, fīō, fierī, factus sum.

before, *adv.*, ante.

began, coepī, coepisse, coeptus.

believe, crēdō, 3, crēdidī, crēditus; putō, 1.

bench, subsellium, -ī, N.

berry, bāca, -ae, F.

better, best : *see* good *and* well.

bier, feretrum, -ī, N.

bird, avis, -is, F.

black, āter, -tra, -trum.

board, cōnscendō, 3, -scendī, -scēnsus.

boast, glōrior, 1.

bold, audāx, *gen.* -ācis.

boldly, audācter.

boldness, audācia, -ae, F.

book, liber, -brī, M.

boy, puer, -erī, M.

brave, fortis, -is, -e.

bravely, fortiter.

bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, F.

break, break down, frangō, 3, frēgī, frāctus.

    break camp, castra moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus.

bridge, pōns, pontis, M.

bring, (" *carry* ") adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; *by animals, ships, etc.,* vehō, 3, vēxī, vectus : (" *lead* ") dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus.

    bring back, redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

British, the British, Britannī, -ōrum, M.

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

brother, frāter, -tris, M.

Brundisium, Brundisium, -sī, N.

build, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.

bullet, tēlum, -ī, N.

burn, incendō, 3, -cendī, -cēnsus.

burst forth, ērumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptum est.

busied, busy, occupātus, -a, -um.

but, sed ; autem.

buy, emō, 3, ēmī, emptus.

by, ā, ab *with abl.*

    by chance, forte.

Cabot, Cabot, -otis, M.

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, M.

call, (" *name* ") appellō, 1 (*the participle* " called " *may often be rendered by the abl.* nōmine, *lit.* " by name ") : (" *summon* ") vocō, 1 ; arcēssō, 3, -īvī, -ītus.

    call for, arcēssō, 3, -īvī, -ītus.

camp, castra, -ōrum, N.

can, possum, posse, potuī.

Canada, Canada, -ae, F.

captain, lēgātus, -ī, M. ; (*of ship*) praefectus, -ī, M.

capture, capiō, 3, cēpī, captus.

Capua, Capua, -ae, F.

care, *noun*, dīligentia, -ae, F.

care for, cūrō, 1.

    not care, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.

Carpenter, Faber, -brī, M.

carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; portō, 1 ; adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (24, 60) ; *by animals, ships, etc.,* vehō, 3, vēxī, vectus.

    carry back, redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, F.

Carthaginians, the, Poenī, -ōrum, M.

Castor, Castor, -oris, M.

catch, capiō, 3, cēpī, captus.

Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, M.

cattle, (*masc.*) *pl.* of bōs, bovis, C.

cavalry, cavalrymen, *pl.* of eques, -itis, M.

centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.

certain : *see* a certain.

certainly, certē (2, 8) ; profectō (77, 128).

chance, **facultās**, -ātis, F.
    by chance, **forte.**
chicken, **gallīna**, -ae, F.
children, **līberī**, -ōrum, M.
Cicero, **Cicerō**, -ōnis, M.
circumstance, **rēs, reī**, F.
citizen, **cīvis**, -is, C. (*pl.*, M.).
city, the city, **urbs, urbis**, F.
Claudia, **Claudia**, -ae, F.
climb, **cōnscendō**, 3, -scendī, -scēn-
    sus.
Cloelia, **Cloelia**, -ae, F.
close, **claudō**, 3, clausī, clausus.
cloud, **nūbēs**, -is, F.
coast : *see* shore.
Columbus, **Columbus**, -ī, M.
come, **veniō**, 4, **vēnī, ventum est** ;
    perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est
    (40, 60, 74, 102).
   come back, **redeō**, -īre, -iī, -itum
     est.
   come nearer, **propius accēdō**, 3,
     -cessī, -cessum est.
   come to aid, come to assist, come
     to help, **auxiliō veniō**, 4, **vēnī,**
     ventum est (*with a second da-*
     tive).
   come to reënforce, (*or*
     auxiliō) **veniō**, 4, **vēnī, ventum**
     est (*with a second dative*).
   come together, **conveniō**, 4, -vēnī,
     -ventus.
   come up, **accēdō**, 3, -cessī, -cessum
     est.
commander, **dux, ducis**, M. ; **imperā-**
     tor, -ōris, M. ; **lēgātus**, -ī, M. ;
     praefectus, -ī, M.
companion, **comes**, -itis, C.
company, **cohors**, -rtis, F.
compel, **cōgō**, 3, coēgī, coāctus.
conduct, **dēdūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

confusion, **strepitus**, -ūs, M.
conquer, **superō**, I.
consequently, **itaque.**
consul, **cōnsul**, -ulis, M.
Cornwallis, **Cornivallis**, -is, M.
country, **rūs, rūris**, N.
countryman, **cīvis**, -is, C. (*pl.*, M.).
courage, **virtūs**, -ūtis, F.; **animus**, -ī,
     M.; **fortitūdō**, -inis, F.
Crassus, **Crassus**, -ī, M.
crops, *pl. of* **frūmentum**, -ī, N.
cross, cross over, **trānseō**, -īre, -iī,
     -itus.
crush, **opprimō**, 3, -pressī, -pressus.
cry : *see* weep.
   cry out, **clāmō**, I.
Cuba, **Cūba**, -ae, F.
Curio, **Cūriō**, -ōnis, M.
Custer, **Custer**, -trī, M.
custom, be (one's), *perf. tense of*
     cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus).

dagger, **sīca**, -ae, F.
daily, **cotīdiē.**
dally : *see* delay (*verb*).
dare, **audeō**, 2, **ausus sum.**
daring, **audācia**, -ae, F.
daughter, **fīlia**, -ae, F.
day, **diēs**, -ēī, M. (*sing. sometimes* F.).
   days, *pl. of* **tempus**, -oris, N. (8,
     54, 72).
   one day, **ōlim.**
dead, **mortuus**, -a, -um.   *See also*
     shoot dead.
decide, **cōnstituō**, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus.
declare war upon, **bellum indīcō**, 3,
     -dīxī, -dictus, *with dat.*
defeat, **vincō**, 3, **vīcī, victus.**
defend, **dēfendō**, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus.
delay, *noun*, **mora**, -ae, F.
delay, *verb*, **moror**, I.

depart, abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.

departure, discessus, -ūs, M.

desert, relinquō, 3, -līquī, -lictus.

deserter, perfuga, -ae, M.

design, cōnsilium, -lī, N.

desire : *see* want.

destroy, dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētus.

detained, be, moror, 1.

determine : *see* decide.

die, morior, 3, mortuus sum (*future partic.* moritūrus).

diligence, dīligentia, -ae, F.

dine, cēnō, 1, -āvī, (-ātus).

dinner, cēna, -ae, F.

direction, pars, partis, F.

  in every direction, undique.

discover, inveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.

disembark, ē nāvī (nāvibus) ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum.

distant, longinquus, -a, -um.

disturbed, commōtus, -a, -um.

do, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus (*pass.* fīō, fierī, factus sum).

  do not, don't, *in prohibitions*, nōlī, nōlīte (*from* nōlō).

doctor, medicus, -ī, M.

dog, canis, -is, M.

draw, dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus.

  draw near, appropinquō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est (*with dat., or* ad *and* acc.).

drive, pellō, 3, pepulī, pulsus (111); expellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus (67, 126).

  drive back, pellō, 3, pepulī, pulsus.

  drive out, expellō, 3, -pulī, -pulsus.

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.

  each man, *masc. sing. of* quisque.

eagle, aquila, -ae, F.

earlier, ante.

easily, facile.

eat, edō, 3, ēdī, ēsus.

Egypt, Aegyptus, -ī, F.

either . . . or, aut . . . aut.

embark upon : *see* board.

encamp, castra pōnō, 3, posuī, positus.

endeavor : *see* try.

enemy, hostis, -is, C. ; *mostly pl.* (M.).

England, Britannia, -ae, F.

English, the, Britannī, -ōrum, M.

enough, satis (*adv., used as indecl. noun*).

enraged, īrātus, -a, -um.

enthusiasm, studium, -ī, N.

entire, the entire, tōtus, -a, -um.

equal, pār, *gen.* paris.

escape, ēvādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsum est.

establish, cōnstituō, 3, -stituī, -stitūtus.

Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, F.

even, etiam. *See also* not even.

ever, umquam.

every, *pl. of* omnis, -is, -e.

excel, superō, 1 ; superior (-ior, -ius) sum, esse, fuī.

Fabius, Fabius, -bī, M.

fall, cadō, 3, cecidī.

  fall back, mē recipiō (3, -cēpī, -ceptus ; *mostly in the third person,* sē recipere).

far, longē.

  not far, not far away, haud procul.

  not far away, not far distant, (*modifying a noun*) haud longinquus, -a, -um.

farmer, agricola, -ae, M.

farmhouse, vīlla, -ae, F.

fashion, modus, -ī, M.

fasten to, dēligō, 1, *with* ad *and* acc.

father, pater, -tris, M.

fear, *noun*, **timor, -ōris,** M.

in fear of, be, **timeō,** 2, **-uī.**

fear, *verb*, **timeō,** 2, **-uī; vereor,** 2, **veritus sum.**

feel, **sentiō,** 4, **sēnsī, sēnsus.**

few, a few, **paucī, -ae, -a.**

field, **ager, -grī,** M.

field of battle, **proelium, -ī,** N.

fierce, **ācer, ācris, ācre.** *See also under* battle *and* fight (*noun*).

fiercely, **ācriter.**

fight, *noun*, **pugna, -ae,** F.

fierce fight be in progress, **ācriter,** *with the pass. of* **pugnō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est.**

fight go on, fight last, fight rage, *pass. of* **pugnō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est.**

fight, *verb*, **pugnō,** 1, **-āvī, -ātum est.**

fill, **compleō,** 2, **-plēvī, -plētus.**

finally, **postrēmō.**

find, **inveniō,** 4, **-vēnī, -ventus; quaerō,** 3, **quaesīvī, quaesītus** (34): ("*learn*") **cōgnōscō,** 3, **cōgnōvī, cōgnitus; certior** (**-ior, -ius**) **fīō, fierī, factus sum.**

find out, **cōgnōscō,** 3, **cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.**

fine, **pulcher, -chra, -chrum.**

fire, *noun*, **ignis, -is,** M.

fire, *verb*, ("*ignite*") **incendō,** 3, **-cendī, -cēnsus:** ("*shoot*") **tēla mittō,** 3, **mīsī, missus.**

fish, **piscor,** 1.

flag, **vēxillum, -ī,** N.

flee, fly, **fugiō,** 3, **fūgī** (*future partic.* **fugitūrus**).

fleet, **classis, -is,** F.

flight : *see* put to flight.

flower, **flōs, flōris,** M.

fly, *of missiles, pass. of* **mittō,** 3, **mīsī, missus.** *See also* flee.

follow, **sequor,** 3, **secūtus sum.**

food, **cibus, -ī,** M.

footpath, **sēmita, -ae,** F.

for, *conj.*, **enim, nam.**

for, *prep.*, **ad** *with acc.*

for a long time, **diū.**

for the purpose of, **causā,** *with gen.*

force, *noun*, **vīs, —,** F.

forces, **cōpiae, -ārum,** F. *See also* our forces.

force, *verb*, **cōgō,** 3, **coēgī, coāctus.**

forest, **silva, -ae,** F.

forgive, **īgnōscō,** 3, **īgnōvī, īgnōtum est.**

formerly, **quondam.**

fort, **castellum, -ī,** N.

fortification, **mūnītiō, -ōnis,** F.

fortitude, **fortitūdō, -inis,** F.

Frenchmen, **Gallī, -ōrum,** M.

frequently : *see* often.

frighten, **terreō,** 2, **-uī, -itus.**

frightened, **territus, -a, -um.**

from, **ē, ex** *with abl.; **ā ab** *with abl.* (90, 111).

from all sides (quarters), from every side, **undique.**

from time to time, **interdum.**

Gaius, **Cāius, -āī,** M.

garden, **hortus, -ī,** M.

gate, **porta, -ae,** F.

Gaul, **Gallia, -ae,** F.

Gaul, a, **Gallus, -ī,** M.

Gauls, the, **Gallī, -ōrum,** M.

general, **imperātor, -ōris,** M.

Germans, the, **Germānī, -ōrum,** M.

get, **petō,** 3, **-īvī, -ītus.**

get possession of, **potior,** 4, **-ītus sum.**

get water, **aquor,** 1.

gift, **dōnum, -ī,** N.

girl, **puella**, -ae, F.

give, **dō, dare, dedī, datus.**

   give (*aid, help*), **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** (*with dat.*).

   give orders, **imperō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.**

glad, **laetus, -a, -um.**

gladly, **libenter.**

go, **eō, īre, iī, itum est; abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est** (73, 91); **proficīscor, 3, profectus sum.**

   go away, **abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est.**

   go out, **exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum est; ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum.**

   go to the assistance of, **auxiliō eō, īre, iī, itum est** (*with a second dative*).

   go to the relief of, **subsidiō eō, īre, iī, itum est** (*with a second dative*).

god, **deus, -ī, M.**

going to: *translate by the future participle.*

good, **bonus, -a, -um.**

grain, **frūmentum, -ī, N.**

grandfather, **avus, -ī, M.**

grandmother, **avia, -ae, F.**

grass, **herba, -ae, F.**

great, **magnus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um** (27). *See also* so great *and* such great.

   greatest, *also* **summus, -a, -um.**

ground, **locus, -ī, M.; terra, -ae, F.** (24).

   on the ground, **humī.**

guard, *noun*, **custōs, -ōdis, M.**

guard, *verb*, **custōdiō, 4, -īvī, -ītus.**

guide, **dux, ducis, M.**

Hamilcar, **Hamilcar, -aris, M.**

hand :

   on every hand, **undique.**

Hannibal, **Hannibal, -alis, M.**

happen, (*neut.*) *third pers. sing. of* **fīō, fierī, factus sum.**

happening, **rēs, reī, F.**

harm, **noceō, 2, -uī** (*future partic.* **nocitūrus**).

haste :

   in haste, **celeriter.**

hasten, **properō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.**

have, **habeō, 2, -uī, -itus.** *With a form of* **sum,** *a dative of possession is often used to express this idea.*

he, she, it, **is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud** : (*reflex.*) **suī, sibi** (*see also* his *and* their).

head, **caput, -itis, N.**

hear, **audiō, 4, -īvī, -ītus.**

help, *noun*, **auxilium, -lī, N.**

   through the help of, with the help of, **per** *with acc.*

help, *verb*, **adiuvō, 1, -iūvī, -iūtus; auxiliō** (*or* **subsidiō**) **sum, esse, fuī** (*with a second dative*). *See also* come to help *and* send to help.

hem in, **claudō, 3, clausī, clausus.**

here, **hīc** (124); *with verbs of motion,* **hūc.**

hesitate, **dubitō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.**

hide, **lateō, 2, -uī.**

hiding place, **latebrae, -ārum, F.**

high, **altus, -a, -um.**

hill, **collis, -is, M.**

himself, herself, itself, (*intens.*) **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** : (*reflex.*) **suī, sibi.**

his, her, its, *see* he : (*reflex.*) **suus, -a, -um.**

   his men, (*reflex.*) **suī, -ōrum, M.**

   his own, (*reflex.*) **suus, -a, -um** *placed* BEFORE *the modified noun.*

hither, **hūc.**

hold, **teneō**, 2, -uī.

home, **domus**, -ūs, F.

　　at home, **domī**.

hope, *noun*, **spēs**, -eī, F.

hope, *verb*, **spērō**, 1.

horn, **cornū**, -ūs, N.

horse, **equus**, -ī, M.

horseman, **eques**, -itis, M.

hostage, **obses**, -idis, C.

hour, **hōra**, -ae, F.

however, **autem**.

Hudson, **Hudsō**, -ōnis, M.

huge: *see* large.

hunt, **vēnor**, 1.

　　hunt for, **quaerō**, 3, **quaesīvī**, **quae-**
　　　　sītus.

hunter, **vēnātor**, -ōris, M.

hurl: *see* throw.

hurry, **properō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

I, **ego**, **meī**.

if, **sī**.

　　if anybody, if any one, **sī quis**.

　　if anything, if something, **sī quid**.

ill, **aeger**, -gra, -grum.

imagine, **putō**, 1.

in, **in** *with abl.: with verbs of mo-*
tion (excepting colloco *and* pōnō*)*,
in *with acc. See also under* di-
rection.

　　in haste, **celeriter**.

　　in order that, in order to, **ut**, **quō**.

　　in order that not, **nē**.

　　in progress, be: *see under* fight
　　　　(noun).

　　in safety, **incolumis**, -is, -e.

　　in this way, **sīc**.

Indian, an, **Indus**, -ī, M.

　　Indians, the, **Indī**, -ōrum, M.

infantry, *pl. of* **pedes**, -itis, M.

inferior, **īnferior**, -ior, -ius.

influence, **auctōritās**, -ātis, F.

inform, **certiōrem** (-ēs) **faciō**, 3, **fēcī**,
factus (*pass.* certior fīō, fierī,
factus sum).

inhabitant, **incola**, -ae, M.

injure, **noceō**, 2, -uī (*future partic.*
nocitūrus).

inquire, **rogō**, 1; **inquam** (15).

insight, **ingenium**, -nī, N.

interview, **conveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.

intimidate, **terreō**, 2, -uī, -itus.

into, **in** *with acc.*

island, **īnsula**, -ae, F.

it: *see* he.

Italy, **Ītalia**, -ae, F.

Jackson, **Iacsō**, -ōnis, M.

join, **mē coniungō**, 3, -iūnxī, -iūnctus,
with cum *and abl.; mostly in the*
third person, sē coniungere.

journey, **iter**, **itineris**, N.

Julia, **Iūlia**, -ae, F.

just, just now, **modo**.

keen, **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**.

kill, **interficiō**, 3, -fēcī, -fectus;
occīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus.

kindliness, **cōmitās**, -ātis, F.

king, **rēx**, **rēgis**, M.

know, **sciō**, 4, -īvī, -ītus.

　　not know, **nesciō**, 4, -scīvī.

labor: *see* work.

land, **terra**, -ae, F.

large, **magnus**, -a, -um. *See also* so
large *and* such large.

later, **post**.

　　a little later, **paulō post**.

laugh, **rīdeō**, 2, **rīsī**, (**rīsus**).

lead, **dūcō**, 3, **dūxī**, **ductus**.

　　lead away, **dēdūcō**, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

leader, **dux**, **ducis**, M.

learn, cōgnōscō, 3, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus.

leave, relinquō, 3, -līquī, -lictus; ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum, *with* ē, ex *and abl.* (119).

left, (*as contrasted with* "*right*") sinister, -tra, -trum.

less, *adj.: see* little (*adj.*).

less, *adv.*, minus ; *may be used as an indecl. noun.*

let loose, ēmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.

lie, iaceō, 2, -uī.

lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.

light, lūmen, -inis, N.

like, *adj.*, similis, -is, -e.

like, *verb*, amō, I.

likely to : *use future partic.*

liking, studium, -ī, N.

line (*of battle*), aciēs, -ēī, F.

linger, moror, I.

little, *adj.*, parvus, -a, -um.

little, *adv.: see under* too *and* later.

live, habitō, I.

location : *see* place (*noun*).

loiter, moror, I.

London, Londīnium, -nī, N.

long, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um. *See also under* time.

long, *adv.*, diū.

look for, petō, 3, -īvī, -ītus ; quaerō, 3, quaesīvī, quaesītus.

lose, āmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.

Louisiana, Lovīsiāna, -ae, F.

love, amō, I.

maiden *see* girl.

make, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus (*pass.* fīō, fierī, factus sum).

man, homō, -inis, C. (*pl.*, M.); vir, virī, M.

men, the, *masc. pl. of* is, ea, id; *pl. of* mīles, -itis, M. *See also each*

man, his men, our men, *and* their men.

many, many of, multī, -ae, -a. *See* more.

Marcella, Mārcella, -ae, F.

march, *noun*, iter, itineris, N.

on the march, in itinere.

march, *verb*, iter faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.

march out, ēgredior, 3, -gressus sum.

Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.

Marius, Marius, -rī, M.

matter, rēs, reī, F.

means, modus, -ī, M.

meanwhile, interim.

Mediterranean, Mediterrāneus, -a, -um.

medium :

through the medium of, per *with acc.*

meet, conveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.

merely, tantum.

messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.

might, possum, posse, potuī; *but often simply a mark of the subjunctive mood* (*as in purpose clauses*).

miles, mīlia (-ium, N.) passuum.

mind, animus, -ī, M.

mine : *see* my.

miss, dīmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.

money, pecūnia, -ae, F.

monkey, sīmia, -ae, F.

month, mēnsis, -is, M.

more, plūrēs, -ēs, -a. *Sing.* (*noun*) plūs, plūris, N.

mother, māter, -tris, F.

mount : *see* climb.

mountain, mōns, montis, M.

much, vehementer (10) : *with comparatives*, multō.

murder : *see* kill.

must : *translate by the gerundive*.

my, **meus, -a, -um**.

myself, (*intens.*) **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**.

name, *noun*, **nōmen, -inis, N.**

name, *verb*, **appellō, 1.** *The participle* " named " *may often be rendered by the abl.* **nōmine** (*lit.* " by name ").

narrow, **angustus, -a, -um**.

nation, **gēns, gentis, F.**

native, **incola, -ae, M.**

near, *adv.*, **prope.** *See* come nearer *and* draw near.

near, *prep.*, **prope** *with acc.*

need : *translate by the gerundive*.

never, **numquam.** *See also* and never.

nevertheless, **tamen**.

new, **novus, -a, -um**.

  New England, **Nova (-ae) Britannia, -ae, F.**

  New York (*city*), **Novum (-ī) Eborācum, -ī, N.**

night :

  at night, by night, during the night, **noctū**.

no, **nūllus, -a, -um**.

nobody, no one, **nēmō, —, M.** *See also* and no one, *and* (so) that no one.

noise, **strepitus, -ūs, M.**

nor, **neque, nec**.

not, **nōn;** *with hortatory subjunctive*, **nē**: *in questions implying the answer* " yes," **nōnne**: *in prohibitions, embodied in* **nōlī** *and* **nōlīte** (*from* **nōlō**). *See also* and not, and not any one, in order that not, so as not to, (so) that not, *and under* far.

  not even, **nē . . . quidem**.

  not to, **nē**.

noteworthy, **īnsīgnis, -is, -e**.

nothing, **nihil, N.,** *indecl. See also* and nothing, *and* so that nothing.

notice, **animadvertō, 3, -vertī, -versus**.

now, **iam, nunc**.

numbers, number, **numerus, -ī, M.**

oblige : *see* force (*verb*).

occupy, **occupō, 1**.

ocean, **mare, -is, N.**

of, **ē, ex** *with abl.*: (" *concerning* ") **dē** *with abl.*

  of age : *use* **nātus, -a, -um**.

  of course, **scīlicet**.

officer, **lēgātus, -ī, M.**

often, **saepe**.

old : *see* of age.

on, in *with abl.*; in *with acc.* (24). *See also under* march *and* road.

  on all sides, on every side (hand), **undique**.

  on the ground, **humī**.

once, **ōlim**.

one, **ūnus, -a, -um; quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (7, 21, 108). *See also under* day *and* time.

only, the only, **sōlus, -a, -um**.

only, *adv.*, **tantum**.

open boat, **scapha, -ae, F.**

opportunity, **facultās, -ātis, F.**

or, **aut**.

order, **iubeō, 2, iussī, iussus**.

other, *pl. of* **alius, alia, aliud**.

  other, the, **cēterī, -ae, -a** : (*of two*) **alter, -era, -erum**.

others, **aliī, -ōrum, M.**

  others, the, **cēterī, -ōrum, M.**

ought : *translate by the gerundive*.

our, ours, **noster, -tra, -trum**.

  our forces, our men, our soldiers, **nostrī, -ōrum, M.**

ourselves, (*intens.*) *pl. of* ipse, ipsa, ipsum.

over, trāns *with acc.*

overcome, vincō, 3, vīcī, victus; superō, 1.

own : *see* his own *and* their own.

pain, dolor, -ōris, M.

pardon, īgnōscō, 3, īgnōvī, īgnōtum est.

part, pars, partis, F.

path, sēmita, -ae, F.

peace, pāx, pācis, F.

Pelusium, Pēlūsium, -sī, N.

perhaps, fortasse.

persuade, persuādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum est.

Petreius, Petrēius, -ēī, M.

Petronius, Petrōnius, -nī, M.

Pharsalus, Pharsālus, -ī, F.

pigeon, columba, -ae, F.

pirate, pīrāta, -ae, M.

place, *noun*, locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, N.).

place, *verb*, collocō, 1.

plan, cōnsilium, -lī, N.

plantation, praedium, -ī, N.

plate, patera, -ae, F.

play, lūdō, 3, lūsī, lūsum est.

please, sīs, sultis (*i.e.* sī vīs, sī vultis).

plenty, satis (*adv., used as indecl. noun*).

Pliny, Plīnius, -nī, M.

point :
    be on the point of : *translate by the future participle.*

poison, venēnum, -ī, N.

Pollux, Pollūx, -ūcis, M.

Pompey, Pompēius, -ēī, M.

poor, ("*wretched*") miser, -era, -erum.

Porsinna, Porsinna, -ae, M.

powerful, validus, -a, -um.

practice, cōnsuetūdō, -inis, F.

prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī.

prepare, parō, 1.

present, dō, dare, dedī, datus.

pretend, simulō, 1.

pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

prevail, superō, 1; vincō, 3, vīcī, victus.

Priscilla, Prissilla, -ae, F.

prisoner, captīvus, -ī, M.

proceed, contendō, 3, -tendī, (-tentus); prōgredior, 3, -gressus sum.

progress, be in : *see under* fight (*noun*).

promise, polliceor, 2, pollicitus sum.

promptly : *see* at once.

protect, praesidiō sum, esse, fuī (*with a second dative*); dēfendō, 3, -fendī, -fēnsus (68).

protection, praesidium, -ī, N.

Ptolemy, Ptolomaeus, -ī, M.

purpose :
    for the purpose of, causā (*with gen. of the gerund or gerundive*).

put, collocō, 1 ; pōnō, 3, posuī, positus.
    put to flight, in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus.

quarters :
    from all quarters, undique.

quickly, celeriter.

quietly, clam.

Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, M.

rampart, vāllum, -ī, N.

rapidly : *see* quickly.

reach, **perveniō**, 4, -**vēnī**, -**ventum est**, *with* **ad** *and acc.*

read, **legō**, 3, **lēgī**, **lēctus**.

readily, **libenter**.

ready to: *translate by the future participle.*

realize, **sentiō**, 4, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**.

reënforce, **subsidiō sum, esse, fuī**; **subsidiō veniō**, 4, **vēnī, ventum est**. *Both with a second dative. See also* come (send) to reënforce.

reënforcement, **subsidium**, -**ī**, N.

refuse, **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**.

regiment, **legiō**, -**ōnis**, F.

region, **regiō**, -**ōnis**, F.

relief : *see under* go *and* send.

remain, **maneō**, 2, **mānsī**, **mānsum est**; **moror**, 1.

remark, **inquam**.

reply, **inquam**.

repulse, **pellō**, 3, **pepulī**, **pulsus**.

retire, retreat, **mē recipiō** (3, -**cēpī**, -**ceptus**; *mostly in the third person*, **sē recipere**).

return, **redeō**, -**īre**, -**iī**, -**itum est**.

right, **dexter**, -**tra**, -**trum**.

river, **flūmen**, -**inis**, N.

road, **via**, -**ae**, F.

on the road, **in itinere**.

rock, **saxum**, -**ī**, N.

Roman, a, **Rōmānus**, -**ī**, M.

Romans, the, **Rōmānī**, -**ōrum**, M.

Rome, **Rōma**, -**ae**, F.

rough, **asper**, -**era**, -**erum**.

route, **iter, itineris**, N.; **via**, -**ae**, F.

run, **currō**, 3, **cucurrī**, **cursum est**.

run away, **fugiō**, 3, **fūgī** (*future partic.* **fugitūrus**).

rush : *see* run.

rush forth, **ērumpō**, 3, -**rūpī**, -**ruptum est**.

Sabinus, **Sabīnus**, -**ī**, M.

sadly : *use* **maestus**, -**a**, -**um**.

safe, **incolumis**, -**is**, -**e**; **tūtus**, -**a**, -**um**.

safely : *use* **incolumis**, -**is**, -**e**.

safety, **salūs**, -**ūtis**, F.

in safety, **incolumis**, -**is**, -**e**.

sail, **nāvigō**, 1, -**āvī**, -**ātum est**.

sailor, **nauta**, -**ae**, M.

same, the, **īdem, eadem, idem**.

Saratoga, **Saratōga**, -**ae**, F.

save, **cōnservō**, 1; **salūtī sum, esse, fuī** (*with a second dative*).

say, **inquam**; **dīcō**, 3, **dīxī, dictus**.

scout, **explōrātor**, -**ōris**, M.

sea, **mare**, -**is**, N.

seaman, **nauta**, -**ae**, M.

season, **tempus**, -**oris**, N.

see, **videō**, 2, **vīdī**, **vīsus**.

seek, **quaerō**, 3, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**.

seem, **videor**, 2, **vīsus sum**.

seize, **rapiō**, 3, **rapuī, raptus**; **arripiō**, 3, -**ripuī**, -**reptus**.

senate, **senātus**, -**ūs**, M.

send, **mittō**, 3, **mīsī, missus**.

send out, **ēmittō**, 3, -**mīsī**, -**missus**.

send to help, send to the aid (relief) of, **auxiliō mittō**, 3, **mīsī, missus** (*with a second dative*).

send to reënforce, **subsidiō mittō**, 3, **mīsī, missus** (*with a second dative*).

Sertorius, **Sertōrius**, -**rī**, M.

set on fire, **incendō**, 3, -**cendī**, -**cēnsus**.

set out, **proficīscor**, 3, **profectus sum**.

set sail, **nāvem** (-**ēs**) **solvō**, 3, **solvī, solūtus**.

settler, **colōnus**, -**ī**, M.

several, **complūrēs**, -**ēs**, -**a**.

shade, shadow, **umbra**, -**ae**, F.

she : *see* he.

ship, nāvis, -is, F.

shoot, ("*fire*") tēlum (tēla) mittō, 3, mīsī, missus.

  shoot dead, tēlō (tēlīs) interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.

shore, lītus, -oris, N.

shortly, brevī.

should : *often to be translated by the gerundive ; sometimes by the subjunctive (as in conditional sentences).*

shout, clāmō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.

  sick, the, aegrī, -ōrum, M.

side :

  from all sides, from every side, on all sides, on every side, undique.

sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, M.

similar, similis, -is, -e.

since, *causal conj.*, cum.

sit, sit down, sedeō, 2, sēdī, sessum est.

skiff, scapha, -ae, F.

skill, sollertia, -ae, F.

sky, caelum, -ī, N.

slave, servus, -ī, M.

slay, occīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus.

small, parvus, -a, -um.

smile, rīdeō, 2, rīsī, (rīsus).

Smith, Faber, -brī, M.

so, tam ; ita (105). *See also* and so.

  so as not to, nē.

  so as to, ut, quō.

  so great, so large, tantus, -a, -um.

  so many, so numerous, tot, *indecl. adj.*

  so that, ut, quō.

  so that . . . not, (*purpose*) nē.

  so that nobody, so that no one, nē quis.

  so that nothing, nē quid.

soldier, mīles, -itis, M. *See also* our soldiers.

some, some of, *pl. of* quīdam, quaedam, quoddam.

  some one : *see* that some one.

something : *see under* if.

sometimes, interdum.

son, fīlius, -lī, M.

soon, brevī ; mox.

sortie, ēruptiō, -ōnis, F.

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.

Spaniards, the, Hispānī, -ōrum, M.

spare, parcō, 3, pepercī (*future partic.* parsūrus).

Spartacus, Spartacus, -ī, M.

speed, celeritās, -ātis, F.

spirit, animus, -ī, M.

spot : *see* place (*noun*).

spy upon, speculor, 1.

standard, sīgnum, -ī, N.

Standish, Standisius, -sī, M.

start, proficīscor, 3, profectus sum ; contendō, 3, -tendī, (-tentus).

  start out, proficīscor, 3, profectus sum.

state, cīvitās, -ātis, F.

station, collocō, 1.

stay, maneō, 2, mānsī, mānsum est.

steal, rapiō, 2, rapuī, raptus.

still, ("*nevertheless*") tamen ; ("*up to this time*") adhūc.

stone, saxum, -ī, N.

stop, moror, 1.

storm : *see* take by storm.

story, fābula, -ae, F.

stream, rīvus, -ī, M.

street, via, -ae, F.

strength, *pl. of* vīs, —, F.

strong, validus, -a, -um.

subdue, vincō, 3, vīcī, victus.

such, such great, such large, **tantus**, -a, -um.

sudden, **repentīnus**, -a, -um.

suddenly, **subitō**.

suffering, **dolor**, -ōris, M.

sufficient, **satis** (*adv., used as indecl. noun*).

suitable, **idōneus**, -a, -um.

summer, **aestās**, -ātis, F.

summon, **arcessō**, 3, -īvī, -ītus.

superior, **superior**, -ior, -ius.

supply, **cōpia**, -ae, F.

suppose, **arbitror**, 1; **putō**, 1.

surely, **profectō**.

surpass, **superō**, 1.

surrender, ("*relinquish*") **dēdō**, 3, -didī, -ditus.

surround, **circumveniō**, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.

swiftly, **celeriter**.

swiftness, **celeritās**, -ātis, F.

swim, **nō**, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

sword, **gladius**, -ī, M.

take, ("*conduct*," "*carry*") **dūcō**, 3, **dūxī**, **ductus**; **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**; **portō**, 1; *by animals, ships, etc.*, **vehō**, 3, **vēxī**, **vectus**: ("*capture*") **capiō**, 3, **cēpī**, **captus**.

take by storm, **expugnō**, 1.

take place, **fīō**, **fierī**, **factus sum**.

talk, **loquor**, 3, **locūtus sum** (*with* **cum** *and abl.*).

tall, **altus**, -a, -um.

tarry, **moror**, 1.

teach, **doceō**, 2, -uī, **doctus**.

teacher, **magister**, -trī, M.

tell, **nārrō**, 1; **dīcō**, 3, **dīxī**, **dictus** (5, 59, 90, 118). *Both with dat. of the person spoken to.*

tent, **tabernāculum**, -ī, N.

terrified, **territus**, -a, -um.

terrify, **terreō**, 2, -uī, -itus.

that, *pron.*, (*demon.*) **ille, illa, illud**; **is, ea, id**; **hīc, haec, hoc** : (*rel.*) **quī, quae, quod**.

that, *conj.*, **ut, quō**; *with verbs of fearing*, **nē**. *Often marks indirect discourse or the complementary infin.*

that no one, **nē quis**.

that not, **nē** : *with verbs of fearing*, **ut**.

that some one, *with verbs of fearing*, **nē quis**.

the, *usually untranslated :* **is, ea, id** (6).

their: *see* he: (*reflex.*) **suus**, -a, -um.

their men, (*reflex.*) **suī**, -ōrum, M.

their own, (*reflex.*) **suus**, -a, -um *placed* BEFORE *the word modified*.

themselves: *see* himself.

then, **tum**.

there, **ibi**: *with verbs of motion*, **quō**.

therefore, **igitur**; **itaque**.

these : *see* this.

they : *see* he *and* their.

thing, **rēs, reī**, F.

think, **putō**, 1; **arbitror**, 1; **crēdō**, 3, **crēdidī, crēditus**.

thinking, **ratus**, -a, -um.

this, **hīc, haec, hoc**; **is, ea, id**.

thoroughly frightened, thoroughly terrified, **perterritus**, -a, -um.

those : *see* that (*pron.*).

though, **quamquam**.

thousands, thousand, **mīlia**, -ium, N.

three, **trēs, trēs, tria**.

three times, **ter**.

through, through the help of, through the medium of, **per** *with acc.*

throw, **iaciō**, 3, **iēcī, iactus**.

thus, **ita, sīc.**

time, **tempus, -oris,** N.

 at times, from time to time, **interdum.**

 for a long time, **diū.**

 one time, **ōlim.**

 up to this time, **adhūc.**

tired, tired out, **dēfessus, -a, -um.**

to, **ad** *with acc.:* in *with acc. Marking a purpose clause:* **ad** *with acc.;* **causā** *with gen.;* **quī** (*rel.*) *or* **ut,** *with subjunctive.*

to-day, **hodiē.**

to-morrow, **crās.**

too, (*"also"*) **quoque.**

 too little, **parum** (*adv., used as indecl. noun*).

top (*speed*), **summus, -a, -um.**

torch, **lūmen, -inis,** N.

tower, **turris, -is,** F.

town, **oppidum, -ī,** N.

townspeople, **oppidānī, -ōrum,** M.

travel, **iter faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.**

tree, **arbor, -oris,** F.

troops, **cōpiae, -ārum,** F.

try, **cōnor, 1.**

turn out, **ēveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum est.**

twice, **bis.**

two, the two, **duo, duae, duo.**

under, **sub** *with abl.*

understand, **intellegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus.**

unfavorable, **inīquus, -a, -um.**

unknown, **īgnōtus, -a, -um.**

unobserved, **clam.**

until, **dōnec.**

unwilling, be, **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.**

up :

 up to this time, **adhūc.**

upon, **in** *with abl.: with verbs of motion (excepting* **collocō** *and* **pōnō**), **in** *with acc.*

urge, **hortor, 1.**

use, **ūtor, 3, ūsus sum.** *Pass. supplied in part by* **ūsuī sum, esse, fuī.**

 use up, **cōnsūmō, 3, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus.**

used, (*"was accustomed," etc.*), *imperfect and perfect tenses of* **soleō, 2, solitus sum;** *pluperfect tense of* **cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus).**

useful, be, **ūsuī sum, esse, fuī.**

 very useful, be, **magnō ūsuī sum, esse, fuī.**

usually : *use* **soleō, 2, solitus sum;** *perfect tense of* **cōnsuēscō, 3, -suēvī, (-suētus)** (83).

valley, **vallēs, -is,** F.

valor, **virtūs, -ūtis,** F.

venture, **audeō, 2, ausus sum.**

very, *adv., mark of the superlative degree. See also under* useful.

very, the very, **ipse, ipsa, ipsum.**

vessel, **nāvigium, -ī,** N.; **nāvis, -is,** F.

Vesuvius, **Vesuvius, -vī,** M.

view, **speculor, 1.**

violence, **vīs, —,** F.

wage (*war*), **gerō, 3, gessī, gestus.**

wagon, **carrus, -ī,** M.

wait for, **opperior, 4, oppertus sum; exspectō, 1.**

wall, **mūrus, -ī,** M.

want, **volō, velle, voluī.**

war, warfare, **bellum, -ī,** N.

warn, **moneō, 2, -uī, -itus.**

Washington, **Vasingtō, -ōnis,** M.

watch, **speculor, 1.**

watchfulness, **dīligentia, -ae,** F.

water, **aqua, -ae,** F.

wave, **fluctus, -ūs,** M.

way, modus, -ī, M.: ("*road*") via, -ae, F.

in this way, sīc.

weapon, tēlum, -ī, N.

weary: *see* tired.

weep, fleō, 2, flēvī, flētum est.

weight, pondus, -eris, N.

well, bene.

what: *see* who (*interrog.*).

when, cum. *Clauses so introduced may often be rendered by an ablative absolute.*

where, ubi; *with verbs of motion*, quō.

whether, *introducing an indirect question*, num.

which: *see* who (*rel.*).

while, dum.

who, which, what (*interrog.*): *noun*, quis, quid; *adj.*, quī, quae, quod.

who, which, that (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod.

whole, the whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

why, cūr.

wife, uxor, -ōris, F.

willing, be, volō, velle, voluī.

win, vincō, 3, vīcī, victus.

wind, ventus, -ī, M.

window, fenestra, -ae, F.

wing (*of army*), cornū, -ūs, N.

winter, winter time, hiems, hiemis, F.

winter, *verb*, hiemō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

wish, volō, velle, voluī.

with, cum *with abl.* *See also* along with.

with the help of, per *with acc.*

withdraw, ("*go away*") mē recipiō (3, -cēpī, -ceptus; *mostly in the third person*, sē recipere): ("*take away*") redūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.

without, sine *with abl.*

wits, ingenium, -nī, N.

woman, mulier, -ieris, F.

woods, the, silva, -ae, F. (*sing. or pl.*).

word, verbum, -ī, N.

work, labōrō, 1, -āvī, -ātum est.

worse, worst: *see* bad.

would: *often to be translated by the imperfect of customary past action; sometimes by the subjunctive (as in conditional sentences).*

wound, vulnerō, 1.

wounded, the, vulnerātī, -ōrum, M.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, scrībō, 3, scrīpsī, scrīptus.

year, annus, -ī, M.

yesterday, herī.

yet, ("*however*") tamen: ("*up to this time*") adhūc. *See also* as yet.

you, tū, tuī.

young man, youth, iuvenis, -is, M.

your, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.

INDEX

(Unless otherwise specified, all references are to page and footnote: *e.g.* 216.
18 signifies "page 216, footnote 18." Notes and Remarks in the body of a page are
indicated by the abbreviations N. and Rem. respectively. To facilitate the use of
the Index, all references to matter contained in the English-Latin Exercises are set
in black-faced type.)